

A portrait of a man with short dark hair and a goatee, wearing a white shirt, looking directly at the camera. The background is a light, textured surface with a faint, ornate circular pattern on the right side.

VICTOR
BOLOGAN

THE KING'S INDIAN

A COMPLETE BLACK REPERTOIRE



www.chess-stars.com



Special Editor: IM Vladimir Barskiy
Technical Editor: IM Sergey Soloviov
Translation by: GM Evgeny Ermenkov
Cover design by: Kalojan Nachev

Copyright © Victor Bologan 2009

Printed in Bulgaria by “Chess Stars” Ltd. - Sofia
ISBN13: 978 954 8782 71 5

Victor Bologan

The King's Indian

A Complete Black Repertoire

Chess Stars

Bibliography

Understanding The King's Indian by M.Golubev, Gambit Publications, 2006

Openings for White According to Kramnik (1a, 1b) by A.Khalifman, Chess Stars 2006

Other CHESS STARS Books

Repertoire books:

Opening for White According to Kramnik 1.♟f3 by A. Khalifman

Volume 1a: Old Indian, rare lines in the Classical Variation, 2006

Volume 1b: The Classical Variation, 2006

Volume 2: Anti-Nim-Ind, Anti-Queen's Indian, English, Knight Tango, 2008

Volume 3: Maroczy, English (1...c5), Modern, Dutch

Volume 4: Queen's Gambit Accepted, Slav, Semi-Slav

Volume 5: Queen's Gambit Declined

Opening for White According to Anand 1.e4 by A. Khalifman

Volume 6: The French Defence 3.♟c3 dxe4, 3...♟f6, 2006

Volume 7: The French Defence 3.♟c3 ♟b4, 2006

Volume 8: The Sicilian, Paulsen-Kan and rare lines, 2006

Volume 9: The Sicilian, Paulsen-Taimanov and other lines, 2007

Volume 10: The Sicilian, Sveshnikov, 2007

Volume 11; The Sicilian, Dragon, 2009

Opening for Black According to Karpov by Khalifman

Current theory and practice series:

Challenging the Sicilian with 2.a3! by Bezgodov, 2004

An Expert's Guide to the 7.Bc4 Gruenfeld by Sakaev, 2006

The Sharpest Sicilian by Kiril Georgiev and At. Kolev, 2007

The Safest Sicilian by Delchev and Semkov, 2nd rev.ed. 2008

The Queen's Gambit Accepted by Sakaev and Semkov, 3rd. rev. ed., 2008

The Easiest Sicilian by Kolev and Nedev, 2008

The Petrosian System Against the QID by Beliavsky and Mikhachishin, 2008

Kill K.I.D. by Semko Semkov, 2009

Games collections

My One Hundred Best Games by Alexey Dreev, 2007

Bogoljubow. The Fate of a Chess Player by S. Soloviov, 2004

Shirov's 100 Wins by Soloviov 316 p., interviews, biography, colour photos, 2003

Leko's 100 Wins by Soloviov 340 pages, biography, colour photos, 2003

More details at www.chess-stars.com

Contents

Preface	7
---------------	---

Part 1. Minor Variations

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7

1	4.♙g5.....	12
2	4.♘f3 0-0 5.♙g5.....	17
3	4.♘f3 0-0 5.♙f4.....	29
4	4.e4 d6 5.♙g5.....	37
5	4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙d3.....	56
6	4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙e3.....	62
7	4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙g5.....	76
8	4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♘f3.....	89
9	4.e4 d6 5.♘ge2.....	105
10	4.e4 d6 5.♙d3.....	113

Part 2. Averbakh Variation

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♙e2 0-0 6.♙g5

11	6...♘a6.....	122
12	6...h6.....	132

Part 3. Saemisch Attack

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.f3 0-0

13	6.♘ge2.....	140
14	6.♙g5.....	150
15	6.♙e3 c5 7.dc.....	157
16	6.♙e3 c5 7.d5; 7.♘ge2.....	167

Part 4. Four Pawns Attack

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.f4 0-0 6.♘f3 c5

17	7.♙e2; 7.dc.....	183
18	7.d5 e6 8.de; 8.♙e2 ed 9.cd ♙g4.....	194
19	7.d5 e6 8.♙e2 ed 9.cd ♖e8.....	201

Part 5. Classical Variation

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♘f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5

20	7.de; 7.0-0 ♘c6 8.de	211
21	7.♙e3 ♘g4	221
22	7.d5 a5	236
23	7.0-0 ♘c6 8.♙e3 ♘g4; 8.d5 ♘e7 9.♙g5; 9.♙d2; 9.♙e3; 9.a4	245
24	7.0-0 ♘c6 8.d5 ♘e7 9.b4 ♘h5	251
25	7.0-0 ♘c6 8.d5 ♘e7 9.♘e1 ♘d7	265
26	7.0-0 ♘c6 8.d5 ♘e7 9.♘d2 c6	283
27	7.0-0 ♘c6 8.d5 ♘e7 9.♘d2 a5	288

Part 6. Fianchetto Systems

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘f3 ♙g7 4.g3 0-0 5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♘c6

28	7.d5; 7.♘c3 a6 without 8.h3, 8.d5, 8.b3	298
29	7.♘c3 a6 8.h3 ♙d7	311
30	7.♘c3 a6 8.d5 ♘a5	320
31	7.♘c3 a6 8.b3 ♙b8	332

Other Fianchetto Systems

Double Fianchetto for White

32	1.♘f3 ♘f6 2.g3 g6 3.b3 ♙g7 4.♙b2 d6 5.d4 c5	339
----	---	-----

Fianchetto without c2-c4 and ♘c3

33	1.♘f3 ♘f6 2.g3 g6 3.d4 ♙g7 4.♙g2 0-0 5.0-0 d6	342
----	---	-----

King's Indian English

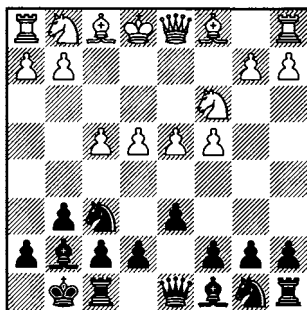
34	1.c4 ♘f6 2.♘c3 g6 3.g3 ♙g7 4.♙g2 0-0 5.e4; 5.0-0	345
----	--	-----

*This book is dedicated to a remarkable man,
my “life-long” coach Zigurds Lanka,
who uncovered for me the mysteries of
the King’s Indian Defence!*

PREFACE

The King’s Indian Household

The King’s Indian Defence is probably the most romantic response to 1.d4. It has survived the test of time and has been played at the highest level even to the present day.. Black gives his opponent complete freedom of choice in how to control the center and just develops quietly within his King’s Indian household, relying on his powerful fianchettoed toed bishop.



This position arose in the first recorded game (in the latest computer database) with the King’s Indian Defence. It took place in Leipzig back in the year 1879 and one of the most eminent theoreticians of the 19th century, Louis Paulsen, was playing with Black. The Hungarian Adolf Schwarz was White and he was probably quite amazed why his opponent, despite all of the principles of playing in the opening at that time, did not fight for the center at all. He was so happy that he pushed forward all his four central pawns outright! His impressive pawn-chain was soon attacked from both sides of the board, however, and Black seized the initiative. Ironically, the outcome of the game was decided by a black passed pawn right along the central d-file.

This was all just a whim of destiny, since neither Paulsen, nor Schwarz knew then that they had been playing the Four Pawns Attack. It is still fashionable today. The name of the variation appeared about forty years later thanks to the famous GM, Savielly Tartakower – mostly due to his witty vocabulary. Right then, during the 1920s, the King's Indian Defence became a part of the opening repertoire of the future world-champion Max Euwe. The challenger for the world crown, Efim Bogoljubow, often played it too. Later, Muguel Najdorf, Andre Lilienthal and another future world-champion Vassily Smyslov all became King's Indian exponents.

The present burst of popularity is due to the period of the 40`s and 50`s of the past century, when it was thoroughly analyzed by some outstanding theoreticians and powerful practical players such as Isaak Boleslavsky, David Bronstein and Efim Geller. They had to face some magnificent opposition from the White side and it would be enough to mention here two world-champions – Mikhail Botvinnik and Tigran Petrosian. (The latter once remarked , in the ironical style so typical for him, that he had fed his family thanks to the King's Indian Defence for many, many years...!). The theory of this already very popular opening began to develop like an avalanche. It was almost refuted at times, described as "an incorrect opening" by many, but then it would resurrect itself like Phoenix from the ashes. The poet and chess-player Evgenij Iljin even wrote a poem about it:

So many efforts and notes
Were devoted to it
It was buried so many times
"For ever disputed...!"
Was this witchcraft
Or dark-squared magic...?

Well, you need to be a romantic deep in your soul and something of a poet in order to play the King's Indian Defence well!. You have to believe in the power of your bishop on g7 and in your kingside attack to enable the triumph of spirit over matter!

We will have to interrupt this short historical and lyrical escapade; otherwise, we may not even come to the essence. The book, which you are holding in your hands, is a personal endeavour. This is not just a monograph about a popular opening; it can be called "The King's In-

dian Defence According to Bologan” as I am trying to explain to you how I understand and how I play this opening.

My relationship with the Kings Indian began when I was just a child, during the 1970`s. My first coach, Ivan Jakovlevich Solonar, made a very reasonable decision that he should build up the opening repertoire of his pupils according to Fischer! The King’s Indian Defence was an integral part of the armoury of the eleventh World Champion since more than 10% of his games started with it. The statistical result, as could be expected from Bobby Fischer, was absolutely terrific for him: 66 – 40 in his favour. Meanwhile, the result of another super-champion and devoted King’s Indian player Garry Kasparov is also superb: 91 – 53 in his favour, with the inclusion of some rapid chess games.

Frankly speaking, I did not remember so well those first lessons, because at that time the opening was not the main focus of my attention. I simply wanted to learn to play chess well. Still, the foundations remained and later on the process was running smoothly. The Moldavian players were very fond of The King’s Indian Defence. I was coached only for a month by IM Nikolay Popov (presently a famous sports commentator), but I remembered well how to play against the Fianchetto system.

My understanding of the King’s Indian Defence was enriched immensely by the concepts of the outstanding Moldavian coach Vjacheslav Andreevich Chebanenko. His ideas were entirely different from the contemporary classical axioms and he used to respect the past when, at the dawn of the appearance of the opening, players had preferred to develop the knight to the d7-square. His recommended schemes were a bit passive, perhaps, but they brought us excellent practical results. Some of them, for example 7...♖bd7 in response to the Gligoric system, are modern even today.

Still, at present, I play the King’s Indian Defence according to the Latvian GM and theoretician Zigurds Lanka. I have tried to recollect everything which he showed me at the beginning of the 90`s and after seeing the notes in the old notebooks and after having compared his variations with what I play now, I see no difference whatsoever. The main lines are all the same. Lanka’s schemes proved to withstand the test of time in an amazing fashion!

We have already come to the subject of the concept of the book. It is understandable that one book cannot include everything which has been introduced and analyzed by numerous generations of players for a period of more than 100 years. I therefore have suggested a repertoire for Black only. I wished to follow Lanka's example and have tried to reveal to you the true spirit of the King's Indian Defence – to uncover for you its secrets and to show you its typical resources. The Yugoslavian "Chess Encyclopedia" devotes almost a half of Volume 5 to the K.I.D., with indexes from E60 up to E99. However, I did not feel bound by these frames, despite their size, and I have tried to explain to you when Black should direct the fight in the spirit of the Benko Gambit or the Modern Benoni. In the final part of the book, I have mentioned how to furnish your "King's Indian Household" in case White acts in the spirit of the King's Indian English, the King's Fianchetto without c2-c4 and ♖c3, or the Double Fianchetto. I realized that one could never conquer infinity; nevertheless in the process of my work on the book, I wished I did just that!

The King's Indian Defence is a living entity and is in a state of constant development. The evaluations of its various lines change constantly and sometimes quite dramatically at that. I feel I should warn my readers that the book does not contain all the answers to every question. You can go, however, with this book under your arm to your next tournament with confidence. (This is, of course, an abstract assessment, since if you do accept this advice literally; there might be unwanted consequences...).

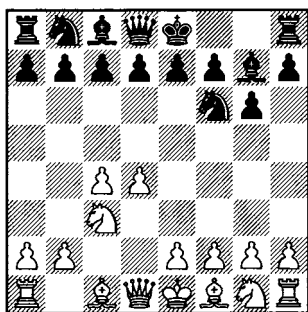
The book is written for chess players of all levels, since the principles of the King's Indian Defence are equally applicable to the amateurs as well as to the super-grandmasters.

Victor Bologan
Moscow 2009

Part 1

Minor Variations

1.d4 ♖f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♗g7



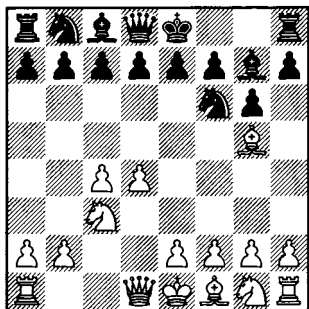
We will begin our survey of the King's Indian Defence with the so-called "sidelines". Their name implies that they are not at the focus of the modern theory and they are only seldom played in the contemporary tournament practice, so they should not be that dangerous for Black. This might be however, a hasty and principally wrong assumption! For example, the set-up, which we analyze in our chapter four, is regularly played and successfully at that by a very aggressive White player like the Dutch GM Ivan Sokolov, while the plan, we deal with in chapter six, has been

employed quite effectively by the twelfth world champion Anatolij Karpov. Fashion in general, including chess, is very volatile and sometimes narrow paths turn into highways, while well-trodden roads are covered by grass...

The main systems against the King's Indian Defence, like the Classical, Saemisch, Averbakh and the Four Pawns Attack were recognized (and named!) during the middle of the past century. The "sidelines" were introduced later and they remained in the shadow for a long time. The author does not plan to invent new names of variations of the type "The Sokolov Attack", or "The Karpov System" etc. I will leave this task to the professional theoreticians. I intend to suggest reliable ways for Black to obtain counterplay in the super-popular schemes, as well as in the semi-forgotten lines. Some day, who knows (!), they may become the arena of theoretical discussions even at the highest level.

Chapter 1

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.♙g5



White still does not wish to clarify what his plans are concerning his e-pawn and the knight on g1. It is evident that he might be eyeing castling long with his last move and he also keeps the possibility of transferring to the Sae-misch Attack.

In chapter two, which is also devoted to the development of the bishop to g5, we will deal with another move-order, which is more typical for the Smyslov variation: at first 4.♘f3 0–0 and only then 5.♙g5.

A) 4...d6

B) 4...c5

A) 4...d6!?

After this move, there arise

variations connected with 4...c5; the only difference being that Black cannot play d7-d5 in one move.

In case of 4...0–0 5.♘f3, we reach a position, which we analyze in Chapter2 (after 4.♘f3 0–0 5.♙g5).

5.♘f3

Following 5.♙d2, it deserves attention for Black to clarify immediately the situation with the bishop on g5 by playing 5...h6. For example: 6.♙f4 ♘h5 7.♙e3 ♘c6 8.♘f3 e5 9.dxe5 dxe5 10.0–0–0 ♙xd2 11.♙xd2 ♙e6 12.e3 0–0–0 13.♙e2 ♘f6 14.h3 ♘d7= Galinsky – Kosikov, Kiev 2005, or 6.♙h4 ♘bd7 7.♘f3 0–0 8.e3 e5 9.dxe5 dxe5 10.♙d1 ♙e8 11.♙c2 c6 12.♙e2 ♙c7 13.0–0 a5 14.♘a4 b6 15.♙d2 ♘f8 16.♘c3 ♙f5 17.♙c1 ♘8d7 with a double edged position, Troianescu – Hort, Venice 1969.

After 5.e4, the game transposes to the variation with 5.♙g5, which will be analyzed in chapter four.

In case of 5.e3, Black has at his disposal another tricky idea – 5...c6!? (planning ♙a5 and ♙g4). 6.♙d3 (After 6.♘f3, Black equaliz-

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♙c3 ♗g7 4.♗g5

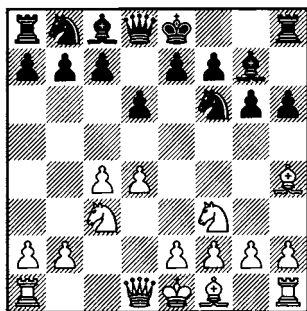
es by playing 6...♙a5 7.♙d2 ♗g4= Smyslov – Geller, USSR 1969, or 7.♙a4 ♙xa4 8.♙xa4 h6 9.♗h4 g5 10.♗g3 ♙h5=, or 7.♗d3 ♗g4 – see 6.♗d3. White does not achieve anything much after 6.♙c2 ♙a5 7.♙f3 ♗g4=) 6...♙a5 7.♙f3 ♗g4 8.♗h4 ♙h5 (The exchanges are unavoidable.) 9.♙b3 (9.♗g3 ♗xf3 10.♙xf3 ♙xf3 11.gxf3=) 9...b6 (It would be too risky for Black to play 9...♗xf3 10.♙xb7.) 10.♗xf6 ♗xf6 11.♗e2 ♙a5 12.♙d2 ♗xe2 13.♙xe2 0–0 14.♙de4 ♗g7 15.h4 h5= and the game is equal.

5...h6

It is also possible for Black to try here 5...0–0 6.e3 c5 (6...♙bd7 7.♗e2 c6 8.0–0 h6 9.♗h4 g5 10.♗g3 ♙h5 11.♙c2 ♙xg3 12.hxg3 e6 13.♙f3d1±) 7.d5 with a transposition to the variations with 4.♙f3.

In this situation, it is not so good for Black to play 5...c6, because White can advance his pawn to e4: 6.e4 ♙a5 7.♗d3 ♗g4 8.♗e3±

6.♗h4



6...g5

Or 6...♙bd7?! 7.h3! ♙h5 8.e3

g5 9.♙d2 ♙df6 10.♗e2 gxh4 11.♗xh5±

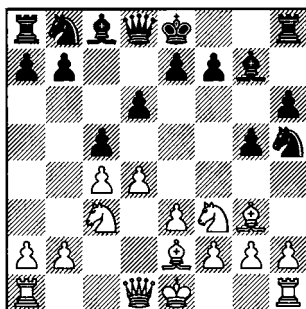
7.♗g3 ♙h5 8.e3 c5

After the placement of White's dark-squared bishop has been clarified, Black can begin the fight for the weakened squares.

9.♗e2

In case of 9.d5, we can recommend to Black to follow the plan of Vasily Ivanchuk, connected with the creation of a piece-counterplay on the queenside: 9...♙a5 10.♙c2 ♙d7 11.♗e2 ♙b6 12.♙d2 ♙xg3 13.hxg3 ♗d7 14.♙c1 ♙a4 15.♙d1 b5± Jussupow – Ivanchuk, Dortmund 1998.

Black has nothing to fear after 9.dxc5, which was proved even in the early games of Tigran Petrosian: 9.dxc5 ♙xg3 10.hxg3 dxc5 11.♙xd8 ♙xd8 12.0–0–0 ♗d7 13.♗e2 ♙c6 14.♙d2 (14.♙d3 ♙e8 15.♙hd1 ♗e6 16.♙d5 ♙c8 17.♙h2 h5± Kramer – Petrosian, Leipzig 1960) 14...b6 15.♙db1 e6 16.♗f3 ♙c8= Smyslov – Petrosian, Bled 1959.

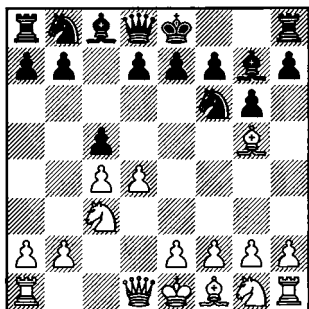


9...cxd4 10.♙xd4 ♙xg3 11.

hxg3 ♖c6 – Black has solved completely all his opening problems, Anstad – S.Soloviov, Copenhagen 1991.

B) 4...c5

I believe this energetic counter strike in the centre suits best the spirit of the position.



B1) 5.e3

B2) 5.d5

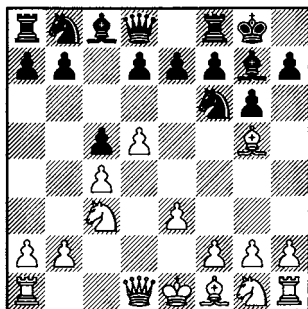
White does not pose any problems to Black with the line: 5.♖f3 cxd4 6.♖xd4 ♖c6 7.♖xc6 (7.e3 0-0 8.♙e2 d6 9.0-0 ♞e8 10.♙f3 ♖e5 11.♙e2 ♙d7 12.♖d5 ♖e4 13.♙f4 e6 14.♖b4 a5 15.♖bc2 ♞c8 – Yousefzadeh – Wu, Canada 2002) 7...bxc6 8.♞d2 h6 9.♙h4 ♞b8 10.♞b1 ♞a5 11.e4 ♖h5 12.♞c1 g5 13.♙g3 d6 14.b3 ♙e6 = Dorosiev – Bojkov, Bulgaria 2005.

B1) 5.e3

White postpones the decision to close the centre.

5...0-0 6.d5

In case of 6.♖f3, Black can follow with a spectacular exchange combination in the centre: 6... cxd4 7.exd4 d5! 8.♙xf6 ♙xf6 9. ♖xd5 (or 9.cxd5 ♖d7 10.♙c4 ♖b6 11.♙b3 ♙g4 12.0-0 ♖c8 13.♖e4 ♙g7 14.♞e1 ♖d6 = Allan – Nunn, Szirak 1987) 9...♙g7 10.♖c3 (After the retreat 10.♖e3, White can try the sharp piece-sacrifice, as well as the transition to an approximately equal endgame after: 10... ♞a5 11.♞d2 ♞xd2 12.♖xd2 ♞d8 =, or 10...♖c6 11.d5 ♙xb2 12.dxc6 ♞a5 13.♖e2 ♞d8 14.♞e1 ♙c3 15. ♞c1 bxc6 =) 10...♙g4 11.♙e2 ♖c6 12.d5 ♙xf3 13.♙xf3 ♙xc3 14.bxc3 ♖e5 = M.Gurevich – Bekker-Jensen, Antwerp 1999.



6...b5!

This is just classical economy of resources. Black has played only the strictly necessary moves in order to begin his queenside offensive without doing anything in excess.

7.cxb5

In the game Erofeeva – K.Koz-

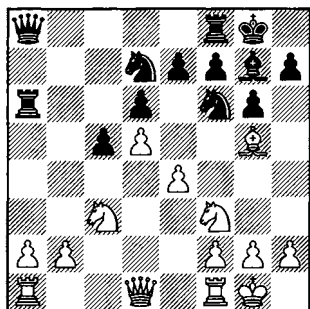
1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♙c3 ♙g7 4.♙g5

lov, played on the Internet in the year 2002, White tried to place immediately a wedge in his opponent's position with the move 7. d6!? and after 7...♙b7? 8.cxb5 ♖a5 9.dxe7 ♙e8 10.♖a4 ♖b4 11. 0-0-0, Black had serious problems. It had been much stronger for him however to play 7...bxc4!, for example: 8.♙xc4 (8.dxe7 ♖xe7 9. ♘d5 ♖e5±) 8...♙a6 9.♙xa6 ♘xa6 10.dxe7 (10.♘f3!?) 10...♖xe7 11. ♘f3 ♙ab8 12.♖d2 h6 13.♙xf6 ♖xf6= and Black had nothing to be afraid of.

7...d6

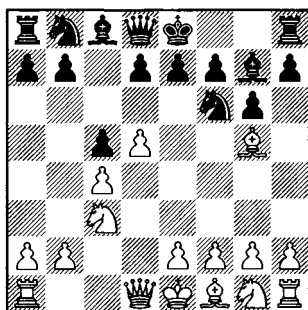
In case of 7...a6, White has the rather unpleasant resource 8.d6!? and he can rely on obtaining the advantage in the opening thanks to his control over the d5-square. For example: 8...♙b7 9.♘f3 axb5 10.♙xb5 exd6 11.0-0 (11.♖xd6 ♘e4! 12.♘xe4 ♖a5∞) 11...♖b6 12.a4 ♙e8 13.♖d3 ♙e6 14.♙c4 ♙a6 15.♙xf6 ♙xc4 16.♖xc4 ♙xf6 17.♘d5±

8.♘f3 ♘bd7 9.e4 a6 10. bxa6 ♙xa6 11.♙xa6 ♙xa6 12. 0-0 ♖a8



13.♙e1 ♙b8 14.♙e2 h6 15. ♙h4 g5 16.♙g3 ♘h5, and Black has obtained an excellent position from the Benko Gambit, Gagarin – B. Savchenko, Moscow 2006.

B2) 5.d5



5...h6

Now, after the long diagonal is opened for the bishop on g7, it is advantageous for Black to trade his knight for White's dark-squared bishop.

6.♙h4

6.♙f4 d6 7.e4 ♖b6 (It is possible for Black to try a transition to one of the variations of the Nimzo-Indian Defence, but still it is insufficient for him to equalize after: 7...♘h5 8.♙e3 ♙xc3 9.bxc3 ♖a5 10.♖b3 ♘d7 11.♙e2 ♘hf6 12.f3 e5 13.dxe6 fxe6 14.♙d1 ♖c7 15.♘h3± Chernyshov – Svidler, Voronezh 2003.) 8.♖d2 (8.♖c2 ♘a6) 8...g5 (White's bishop is again exchanged.) 9.♙g3 ♘h5 10.♙e2, Oral – Slekyš, Olomouc 1996, 10...♘f4! 11.♙xf4 gxf4 12. ♘f3 ♘d7 13.0-0 ♙e5=

Chapter 1

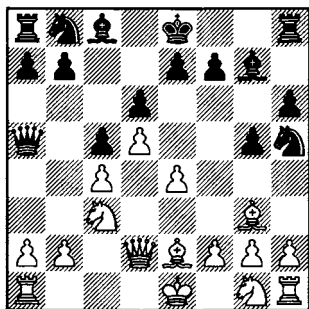
6.♔d2 d6 7.♖c1 e6 8.dxe6 ♕xe6
9.e4 ♘c6 10.f3 ♘d4 11.♔d3 ♘d7
12.f4 ♖h4 13.g3 ♖e7 14.♘ce2 ♖c8
15.♘f2 f5† S.Nikolic – Lanka, Old-
enburg 2001.

6...♖a5 7.♖d2 d6 8.e4

After 8.e3, Black will gradually prepare b5, reaching favourable positions from the Benko Gam-
bit. For example: 8...a6 9.♘f3
0–0 10.h3 g5 11.♔g3 ♘bd7 12.♔d3
b5 13.0–0 bxc4 14.♔xc4, Sko-
morokhin – Kalashnikov, Mos-
cow 2008, 14...♘b6 15.♔e2 ♘a4!♞

8...g5 9.♔g3 ♘h5 10.♔e2

In case of 10.♔d3, Black should
not be in a hurry to exchange on
g3 and he should at first prepare
the blockade of the kingside. For
example: 10...♘d7 11.♘ge2 ♘e5
12.♖b1 ♘xg3 13.hxg3 g4 (Black
prevents the move f4.) 14.a3 ♔d7
15.♘f4 ♘xd3 16.♘xd3 0–0–0 17.
♘e2 ♖xd2 18.♘xd2, draw, Olsen
– P.Hansen, Helsingor 2008.



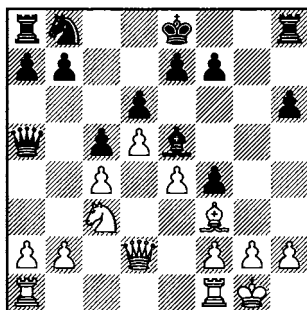
10...♘f4

This is more precise than 10...
♘xg3 11.hxg3 ♘d7, since White
then has the possibility to fight for
the dark squares after 12.f4 gxf4
13.gxf4 a6 14.♘f3, Chilingirova
– Richtrova, Wuppertal 1990,
14...b5 15.cxb5 axb5 16.♔xb5 ♖b8
17.♔xd7 ♔xd7 18.0–0±. White will
gradually parry his opponent's di-
rect threats and his control over
the centre and his extra pawn
should prevail.

11.♔xf4 gxf4 12.♘f3 ♔g4

Black will annihilate the piece
controlling the e5-square.

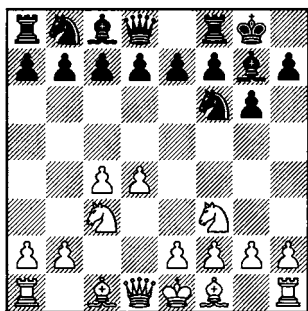
13.0–0 ♔xf3 14.♔xf3 ♔e5=
Letelier – Perez Perez, Cuba
1963.



Black has only good pieces left
and this does not apply to White's
light-squared bishop. Black can
even play for a win in this posi-
tion.

Chapter 2

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♙g7 4.♗f3
0-0



5. ♙g5

In case of the rather tentative move 5.e3 (White fortifies his centre and he completes his development without being too ambitious.) Black has at his disposal several good plans to create counterplay and they are about equally strong:

5...d6 6.b4 (6.♙e2 ♗bd7 7.0-0 ♖e8 8.♝c2 c6 9.a3 e5 10.dxe5 dxe5 11.e4 ♝c7 12.b4 ♗f8 13.♙b2 ♗e6 14.♗d1 ♗f4 Grabovets – Bodnaruk, Moscow 2008; 6.♙d3 ♗bd7 7.0-0 e5 8.h3 ♝e7 9.♝c2 ♖e8 10.♗g5 c6 11.b3 d5! 12.cxd5 ♗xd5 13.e4? ♗b4 14.♝e2 exd4 Edward – Lahno, Turin 2006) 6...c6 7.♙b2 ♗bd7 8.♙e2 a5 9.b5 a4 10.♖c1 ♝a5 11.0-0 c5 12.♗d2

♗b6 13.♗ce4 ♗xe4 14.♗xe4 cxd4 15.exd4 d5 16.♗d2 ♗xc4 17.♗xc4 dxc4 18.♙xc4 ♙f5 Dreev – Kasimdzhanov, Moscow 2007;

5...d5 – After this move, the game transposes to a line from the Gruenfeld Defence in which Black has no problems at all. 6.cxd5 ♗xd5 7.♙c4 ♗xc3 8.bxc3 c5 9.0-0 ♝c7 10.♗d2 b6 11.♙d5 ♗c6 12.♝a4 ♙d7 13.♝a3 cxd4 14.cxd4 e5 15.♙b2 exd4 16.exd4 ♝f4 T.Mamedjarova – Maslak, Pardubice 2007.

5...c5

White has determined the placement of his dark-squared bishop a bit too early and he has thus weakened his queenside. I believe that the best way for Black to counter this is to attack immediately the enemy centre with the help of his c-pawn in order to open the long diagonal for his bishop on g7 and to try to organize counterplay on the queenside.

6.d5

We have dealt with the move 6.e3 in Chapter 1 after the move-order 4.♙g5 c5 5.e3 0-0 6.♗f3.

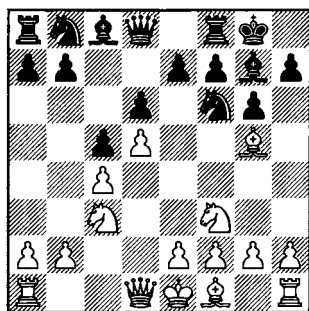
A) 6...d6

B) 6...h6

The gambit idea 6...b5 7.cxb5 a6, does not work well here in view of 8.e4 d6 9.♘d2 (9.a4!? h6 10.♙f4 g5 11.♙c1±) 9...h6 10.♙f4 e6 11.♙e2 exd5 12.exd5 axb5 13.♙xb5 ♖h5 14.♙e3 f5 15.♘f3 ♘d7 16.0-0 ♖b8 17.a4 ♘df6 18.♙e1 g5 19.♙d2 – White has manoeuvred quite well and he has neutralized his opponent's initiative remaining with a solid extra pawn, I.Sokolov – Nijboer, Breda 2000.

A) 6...d6

This move is quite in order, since Black can counter successfully the immediate pawn-advance e2-e4, while in case of e2-e3 he can either attack the enemy bishop with the move h6, or he can play e6, entering positions in the spirit of the Benoni system.



7.e3

About 7.e4 h6 – see variation

B.

7...e6

After this undermining move, we reach positions with the Benoni pawn-structure.

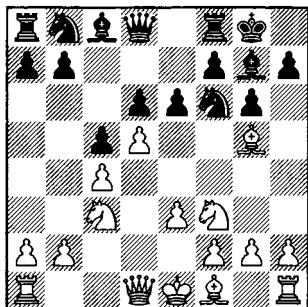
About 7...h6 8.♙h4 – see variation **B**.

Whenever White's pawn is on e3, it is quite reasonable to have in mind the gambit idea, since White's pawn on d5 is weaker in comparison to the variations with e4. So – 7...a6 8.♘d2 b5 9.cxb5 axb5 (9...♘bd7 10.e4 e6 11.dxe6 fxe6 12.♙c4 ♘e5 13.0-0 h6 14.♙h4 g5 15.♙g3 ♘xc4 16.♘xc4 d5 17.exd5 axb5 18.♘xb5 exd5 19.♘cd6± Sargissian – Conquest, Barcelona 2000.) 10.♙xb5 ♙a6 11.a4 ♘bd7 12.0-0 h6 13.♙h4 ♙xb5 14.axb5 ♙xa1 15.♙xa1 g5 16.♙g3 ♘b6 17.e4 ♘h5±. Still, Black does not have full compensation for the sacrificed pawn.

7...e5 8.♘d2 h6 9.♙h4 ♘a6 10.♙d3 ♘c7 11.0-0 ♙d7 12.a3 ♘h7 13.f4 exf4 14.exf4 f5. White must be better in similar positions, since he has a space advantage and the outpost on e6, being on the only open file, forces Black to protect it additionally. 15.♙c2 b6 (Black cannot solve all his problems with 15...b5 16.♘xb5 ♘xb5 17.cxb5 ♙b7 18.♙ae1 ♘f6 19.♙c4 ♙ae8 20.♙xf6 ♙xf6 21.♙e6±) 16.♙ae1 ♘f6 17.h3 (17.g4!?) 17...♙b7 18.g4 b5 19.gxf5 bxc4 20.♘xc4 ♘cxd5 21.♙e6 ♘xc3, Speelman – Cramling, Pamplona 1996 and here White had to continue with 22.bxc3 ♙ad8 23.♙fe1 ♙c6 24.♙h2±. Black's initiative has been

1.d4 ♖f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♗g7 4.♟f3 0-0 5.♗g5 c5 6.d5

neutralized, while White's threats are quite serious.



8.♗e2

White can try to play a little trickier – 8.♟d2!?, in order to counter the routine reaction 8...exd5?! with 9.cxd5 ♖a6, obtaining besides the move 10.♗e2, the additional possibility 10.♗c4!? For example: 10...♟c7 11.0-0 h6 12.♗h4 a6 13.a4 b6 14.♞b1 ♔d7 15.♞e2± Piskov – Kotsur, Muenster 1995. Still after 8...♖a6 (Black can play this immediately, or after he includes 8...h6 9.♗h4.) 9.♗e2 exd5 10.cxd5, it all comes down to a transposition of moves.

8...exd5 9.cxd5 ♞e8 10.♟d2

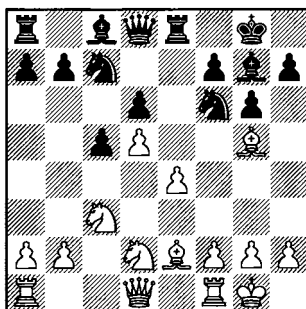
This is a quite typical maneuver for this pawn-structure. White's knight has nothing much to do on the f3-square, therefore he wishes to redeploy it on c4, or eventually on the e4-square. Meanwhile, after the knight retreats to d2, it frees the way for the f-pawn, so that White can support the future advance of his e-pawn.

10...♖a6

The best square for Black's queen knight is c7, because it attacks White's d5-pawn from there and it helps the advance b7-b5, or b7-b6 followed by ♗a6 and the exchange of the light-squared bishops. On the other hand, if it occupies the d7-square, it can go to the beautiful e5-square, but it can hardly remain there for long (as we have already mentioned, White has freed the way forward of his f-pawn) and on d7 it will then stand in the way of Black's other pieces impeding even the possibility for his queen to protect the d6-pawn.

11.0-0 ♟c7 12.e4

So, contrary to the main lines of the Benoni system, White had to advance e2-e4 in two moves. The position is open, so each tempo is very important, so Black succeeds in obtaining a good counterplay thanks to the extra tempo.



12...b6

White has some space-advantage, therefore the exchange of an

Chapter 2

additional couple of pieces will be definitely in Black's favour.

In the next game however, he played too passively and he allowed his opponent to seize the initiative for long: 12...♖e7 13.a4 ♘d7 14.♖a3 ♜f8 15.♖b3 ♖ab8, Efimov – Karl, Saint Vincent 2003, 16.♖e1±

13.f4

White is threatening with the pawn-break e4-e5, followed by ♖de4.

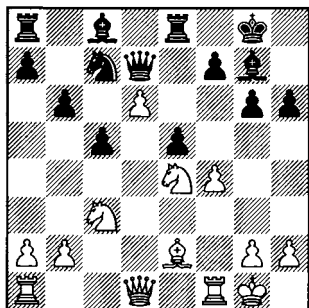
13...h6

It will be useful for Black to repel White's bishop to the h4-square. White might have the idea to try to open the f-file with f4-f5 (either immediately, or in some lines after e4-e5 d6xe5 and then f4-f5). In this case, after f4-f5, Black will have the possible resource g6-g5, blocking the king-side.

14.♘h4 ♜d7 15.♘xf6

White provokes an immediate crisis, while his opponent is a bit behind in development.

15...♘xf6 16.e5 dxe5 17. ♖de4 ♘g7 18.d6

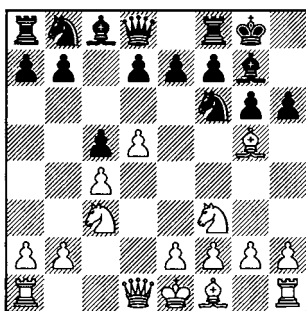


This is the essence of White's idea. He has already deployed one of his knights in the centre (on e4) and he wishes to place the other one on d5 creating numerous threats. Meanwhile, after the retreat of Black's knight from c7, White will have the simple counter measure 19.♘b5, winning the exchange and maintaining all the pluses of his position. Therefore, Black is forced to sacrifice a piece for which he obtains three pawns and he activates all his pieces.

18...exf4 19.dxc7 ♜xc7 20. ♘f3 ♘d4 21.♖h1 ♘a6 22.♖e1 ♖g7 23.♖a4 ♘b7 24.♖d2 ♖e3± Pedersen – McShane, Saint Vincent 2005.

B) 6...h6

Black wishes to clarify immediately the position of his opponent's bishop in order to make up his mind about his further plans depending on this.



B1) 7.♘h4

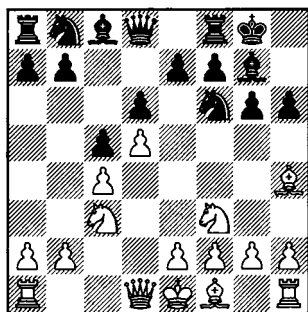
B2) 7.♘f4

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♗g7 4.♘f3 0-0 5.♗g5 c5 6.d5

In answer to the melancholic move 7.♗d2?! Black can undermine immediately the d5-pawn with the move 7...e6 and he obtains a very comfortable game. For example: 8.dxe6 (8.e3 exd5 9.cxd5 d6 10.♗d3 ♘a6 11.a3 ♘c7 12.♗c4 b5 13.♘xb5 ♘cxd5 14.0-0 ♘b6 15.♗e2 ♘e4↑ Ousatchij – Shestoperov, Lignano 2005) 8... dxe6 9.g3 ♘c6 10.♗g2 e5 11.♗e3 ♗e7 12.♘d2 ♗f5 13.♗c1 ♘d4♞ Conquest – Shirov, Reykjavik 1992.

B1) 7.♗h4 d6

This is not the right moment for the sacrifice – 7...b5 8.cxb5 ♗a5 9.♘d2 ♗b4 10.e4 ♗xb2 11.♗c1 ♗b4 12.a3 ♗xa3 13.e5 ♗b4 14.exf6 exf6 15.♗c4 f5 16.♘a2 ♗e8 17.♘f1 ♗b2 18.d6± Tomashevsky – Kovalev, Pardubice 2006.



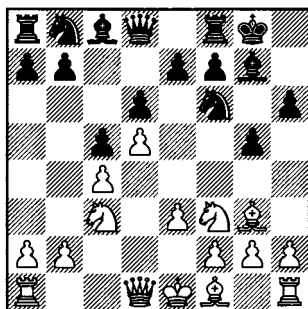
8.e3

The careless move 8.e4 enabled Black to seize quickly the initiative in the following game: 8...♗a5 9.♘d2 g5 10.♗g3 ♘xe4 11.♘dx4 f5 12.♘d2 f4 13.♗e2

♗xc3 14.bxc3 ♗xc3 15.♗b1 ♘d7 16.♗b3 ♗d4 17.♗d3 ♗f6 18.0-0 ♘e5♞ Bruzon – Arencibia, Santa Clara 2005.

The variation 8.♘d2 g5 9.♗g3 ♘h5 10.e3 will be analyzed later – see 10.♘d2.

8...g5 9.♗g3



9...♘h5

Black can also complete here his development with tempi: 9... ♗b6 10.♗c2 (10.♗c1 ♗f5) 10...♗f5 11.e4 ♗g6 12.♗d3 ♘h5 13.0-0 ♘d7 and the game is equal.

10.♗d3

The sacrifice 10.♘xg5? would not work in view of 10...♘xg3 11.hxg3 hxg5 12.♗h5 ♗f5 and his compensation for the piece is evidently insufficient.

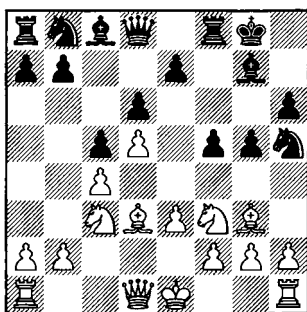
In case of the thematic, but a bit too slow move – 10.♘d2, Black organizes counterplay with the line: 10...♘xg3 11.hxg3 e6, for example: 12.♗d3 exd5 13.cxd5 ♘d7 14.♗c2 ♘e5 15.♗h7 ♘h8 16.♗f5 ♗f6 17.♗xc8 ♗axc8 18.0-0 c4♞ Dinstuhl – Kasimdzhanov, Germany 2000.

After the seemingly elastic move 10.♖c2 (White does not determine yet the placement of his light-squared bishop.) Black can begin immediate kingside actions and in the centre too with the move 10...f5. Later, there might follow: 11.♙e2 (In case of 11.♙d3, Black does not exchange the bishop on g3, but instead he should try to trap it: 11...e5 12.dxe6 ♗xe6 13.♞d1 ♜c6 14.♙e2 f4 15.exf4 g4 16.♞h4 ♜xf4 17.0-0 ♞d4 18.♖e4 d5 19.♖e3 ♜fxe2 20.♞xe2 ♞e8+ Lysyj – Bragin, Tula 2003.) 11...♞xg3 (Black fell into a simple but beautiful trap in the next game: 11...♞d7? 12.♞xg5! ♞xg3 13.♞e6 ♞xe2 14.♞xd8 ♞xc3 15.♞e6 ♞e4 16.g4+- Speelman – Polzin, Germany 2002.) 12.hxg3 e5 13.dxe6 ♞c6 14.♞d1 ♙xe6 15.a3 ♖e7 16.♞d5 ♖f7 17.♞d2 ♙xd5 18.cxd5 ♞e5+ Bruzon – Arencibia, Santa Clara 2005.

10...f5

This is not aggression (Black is not threatening to win the bishop with f5-f4 anyway.), it is prophylactic, since he must cover the b1-h7 diagonal, which leads all the way up to the shelter of his king, particularly because with a white bishop on d3, the above mentioned tactical strike ♞xg5 has become a real threat. On the other hand, Black does not wish to exchange deliberately his somewhat hanging knight on h5 for the bishop on g3, because White then obtains the h-file and he can organize a powerful attack (He can

leave then his king in the centre, on e1, or f1, or he can also evacuate it to the queenside.).



11.♞d2

After 11.0-0, Black should not worry too much about his king, since White's rook has abandoned the h-file. Instead, Black must play actively in the centre and he will exchange on g3 at the most appropriate moment: 11...e5 12.dxe6 ♙xe6 13.♞b1 ♞c6 14.♞d5 ♞xg3 15.hxg3, Speelman – Natf, Esbjerg 2001 and here the position will be approximately equal after 15...♖d7 16.♖d2 ♖f7 17.e4 ♙xd5 18.exd5 ♞b4. White's knight does not have any reliable squares in the centre and after the unavoidable exchange of the bishop on d3, the vulnerability of Black's kingside will be practically immaterial.

The retreat of White's knight to d2 forces Black to exchange on g3, opening the h-file, but after this he should not worry any more about tricks like ♞xg5 and their terrible consequences.

1.d4 ♖f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♙g7 4.♟f3 0-0 5.♙g5 c5 6.d5

11...♟xg3 12.hxg3 ♖a6

In principle, Black could have started with 12...e6, for example: 13.♖c2 ♖a6 14.a3 ♟c7 15.dxe6 ♙xe6 16.0-0-0 (The vulnerability of Black's kingside might become dangerous only in a position with opposite sides castling. It is too harmless for White to follow with 16.0-0 ♖f6 17.e4 f4 18.gxf4 ♖xf4= Henrich – Richter, Germany 2000.) 16...♖e7 17.e4 fxe4 18.♟dxe4 ♙d8 19.♙del b5!♞. Black begins his counter offensive on the queenside just in time and now White's monarch cannot feel safe at all.

13.e4

White wishes to either open the b1-h7 diagonal, or (in case of 13...f4) to stabilize the situation in the centre in order to complete calmly his development and then to break systematically Black's kingside.

13...e6

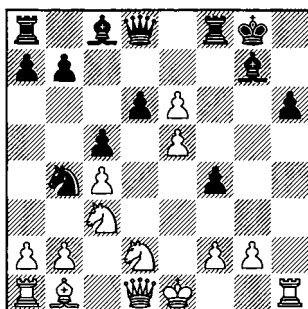
This is the correct reaction – Black's bishops need space and White's pawn on d5 cramps Black's position.

14.dxe6 ♟b4 15.♙b1 f4

The e6-pawn is now running away and in principle Black wishes to establish a blockade on the dark squares and then to deploy his knight on d4 and the bishop on e5, or vice versa.

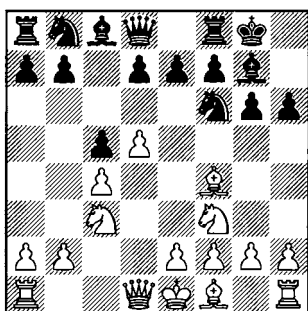
16.gxf4 gxf4 17.e5!?

This is absolutely necessary; otherwise White's bishop on b1 will look and act like a pawn.



17...♙xe6 18.♙e4, Sargissian – Inarkiev, Kemer 2007 and here Black could have simply captured on e5. 18...dxe5 19.♖e2 (19.0-0 ♟c6 20.♟d5 ♟d4♞) 19...♖c7 20.0-0-0 ♙d8 21.a3 ♟c6 22.♟d5 ♟d4 23.♖d3 ♖d6. White has sufficient compensation in order to maintain the dynamic balance thanks to his pressure along the h-file and his control over the light squares, but this is all he can brag about.

B2) 7.♙f4



B2a) 7...♟h5

B2b) 7...d6

B2a) 7...♘h5!?

It is interesting to ask White's bishop where it is heading right now in case it is attacked?

8.♙d2

The exchange of the dark-squared bishops does not guarantee any advantage for White: 8.♙e5 ♙xe5 9.♘xe5 d6 10.♘f3 e5 11.dxe6 ♙xe6, Blees – Nijboer, Amsterdam 1996, 12.♚d2 ♗g7 13.♘e4 ♘c6 14.0-0-0 ♖b6 15.♙c3 ♗g8 16.♙xd6 ♙ad8=

8...d6 9.e4 e5

White has fortified reliably his pawn-centre, therefore Black must try to focus the fight on the flanks. He plans to proceed with the standard break for the King's Indian Defence f7-f5, and his knight on h5 is headed for the f4-square.

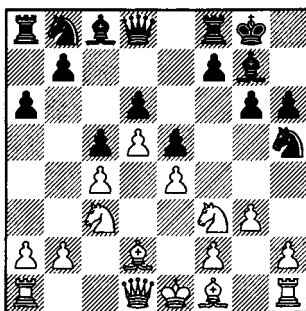
10.g3

White prevents the activation of Black's knight.

10...a6

The move 10...f5 would not work for Black, because of the simple response 11.exf5. Naturally, he does not wish to present his opponent with an outpost on e4, meanwhile after 11...♙xf5, it is very good for White to play 12.♘h4 and after 11...gxf5, White's standard reaction would be 12.♘xe5, exploiting the defencelessness of the knight on h5. The move 10...a6 protects just in time the b5-square and Black plans to follow with ♖e8 and f7-f5 (After the pawn-exchange on f5, the knight

on h5 will be protected by Black's queen). Additionally, the queen on e8 supports the pawn-break b7-b5, which might become possible, for example after ♙f1-g2.



11.♘h4

This move is aimed against f7-f5 and at the same time White wishes to postpone his decision concerning the future of his bishop on f1. For example after 11...♖e8, he can follow with 12.♙e2 and the knight on h5 will have to retreat.

11...♗h7 12.♙d3 ♘f4

Black succeeds in redeploying his knight to a more active position, thanks to this small tactical trick.

Note that Black has waited patiently for the development of White's bishop on f1 and he has played his last move with tempo.

13.♙c2 ♘h3 14.♖e2

Castling short has become impossible, so White begins the preparation of castling long.

14...♘d7 15.a4

In case of 15.0-0-0?! it

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.♘f3 0-0 5.♙g5 c5 6.d5

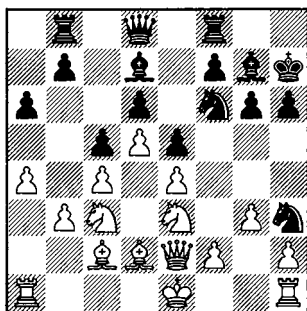
would be rather unpleasant for White to counter the move 15...b5 (This is what the move 10...a6 was about...), opening files on the queenside.

15...♙b8 16.♘g2 ♘f6

Black creates the rather unpleasant tactical threat ♘g4 and he also frees the d7-square for the bishop.

17.♘e3 ♙d7 18.b3

White decides to leave his king in the centre for the time being, since after 18.0-0-0?! it might easily come under attack.



18...♖h8

Black does not have enough space and there are still numerous pieces and pawns left on the board. Accordingly, each piece should mind its own maneuvers, so that it does not impede the mobility of the other pieces. Presently, Black has freed the h7-square for his knight and after this the pawn-break f7-f5 will become possible.

19.f3 ♘h7 20.♙g2 ♘g5

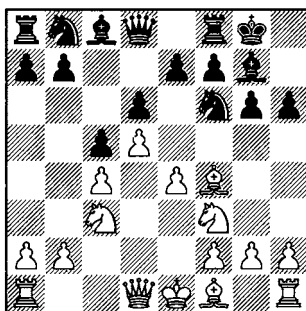
The knight on h3 is quite an-

noying for White and of course Black does not wish to retreat it from there.

21.♙f1 ♔f5! – Black has fulfilled his plan and he has obtained excellent counter chances, Ghaem Maghami – Rathnakaran, New Delhi 2008.

B2b) 7...d6 8.e4

If now White manages to complete calmly his development (♙d3, 0-0 etc.), then he will have the advantage thanks to his extra space. Therefore Black must play very energetically in order to obtain good counter chances.



8...e5!

This typical sacrifice of the d6-pawn is also encountered in the Averbakh system.

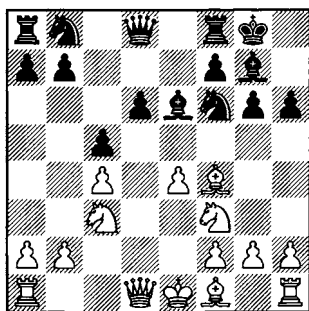
It is worse for Black to play 8...b5 9.cxb5 a6 10.♘d2, since he thus enters the course of actions in the game I.Sokolov – Nijboer, Breda 2000, which we have already analyzed after the move order 6...b5 7.cxb5 a6.

On the other hand, it is always

Chapter 2

interesting for Black to try the move: 8...♖h5 9.♙e3 e5 10.dxe6 (In case White does not capture en passant, then Black maneuvers in the spirit of the variation **B2a** and it would not be quite clear whether White's bishop is better placed on e3, or on d2.) 10...♙xe6 11.♚d2 ♖h7 12.♞d1 ♚b6 13.♙e2 ♖c6 14.0-0 ♞ad8 15.b3 ♖f6 16.h3 ♚a5 17.♞c1, draw, Kanep – Nataf, Dresden 2007.

9.dxe6 ♙xe6



10.♙xd6

In case of 10.♚d2, Black has an excellent reply – 10...♚a5, protecting indirectly his h6-pawn. For example: 11.♙e2 (11.♙xh6 ♙xh6 12.♚xh6 ♖xe4 13.♖g5 ♖xg5 14.♚xg5 ♖c6=) 11...g5 12.♙g3 ♖c6 13.0-0 ♖h5 14.♙xd6 ♞fd8= Silva – Damaso, Portugal 1996.

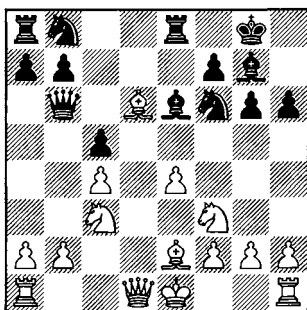
10...♞e8 11.♙e2

The loss of the second pawn should not be dangerous for Black: 11.♙xc5, Lengyel – Kavalek, Tel Aviv 1964, 11...♚a5 12.b4 ♚a6 13.♞c1 ♖bd7 14.♙e3 (14.♙d4 ♙xc4 15.b5 ♚e6=) 14...♞ac8 15.b5

♚a5=. He has already completed his development and the problem with regaining the pawns on e4 and c4 seems to be almost a sure thing in the future.

11...♚b6

This is a multi-purpose move. The queen attacks the b2-pawn, it protects the c5-pawn and it also frees the d8-square for the rook.



12.♙xb8

White's bishop is very unstable on d6 and it might be pinned there, so he decides to get rid of it. Still, after this the powerful King's Indian bishop on g7 remains without an opponent and Black obtains an excellent game despite being a pawn down.

It would be harmless for Black if White plays 12.0-0 ♞d8 13.e5 ♖e8 14.♖d5?! (White should better continue here with 14.♚d2 ♖xd6 15.♞ad1 ♖f8 16.exd6 ♞xd6 17.♖d5, maintaining the balance.) 14. ♙xd5 15.♚xd5 ♖xd6 16.♞ad1 ♖f8 17.exd6 ♞xd6 18.♚e4 ♞e6 19.♚c2 ♖c6= Chekhov – Dydyshko, Tallinn 1980.

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♘g7 4.♟f3 0-0 5.♘g5 c5 6.d5

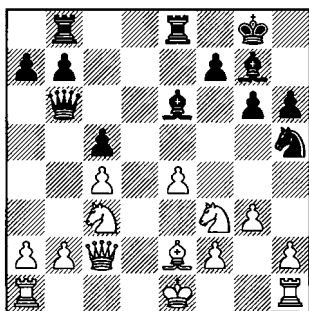
White's only serious alternative to the move in the text is 12.e5, but then Black has a sufficient counterplay by attacking the e5-pawn. 12...♟fd7 (Black can even capture a pawn: 12...♝xb2!? 13.♟c1 ♟fd7 14.0-0 ♟c6 15.♟d5 ♟dxe5 16.♟c7 ♟ed8 17.♟xa8 ♟xd6 18.♝xd6 ♝xe2 19.♟xe5 ♘xe5 20.♝d1 ♝xa2. Black is in fact two exchanges down, but he has two pawns and White's knight on a8 is out of the actions, so Black's prospects are superior.) 13.♟b5 (13.0-0 ♟c6 14.♟a4 ♝a5 15.a3 ♟cxe5 16.♟xe5 ♟xe5 17.b4 cxb4 18.axb4 ♝d8 19.♟c1 ♟c6 20.♟c5 ♘c8 21.♘f3 ♟d4 22.♘g3 ♝b6 23.♟e4, Alburt – Hebden, Hastings 1984, 23...♝xb4!? 24.♟d6 ♟e7, or 24...♟xf3 25.♝xf3 ♟e7 26.♟b5 ♝a5±) 13...♟c6 14.♘c7 (14.0-0 ♟ac8 15.♝d2 ♟dxe5 16.♟xe5 ♟xe5 17.♘xe5 ♘xe5± Grigorov – Maslak, Internet 2006; White can capture the exchange with the move 14.♟c7, but he fails to keep it: 14...♟dxe5 15.♟xe5 ♟xe5 16.♟xa8 ♟xa8 17.♘xe5 ♘xe5 18.0-0 ♘xb2 – 18...♟d8!? 19.♝c2 ♝xb2 20.♝xb2 ♘xb2 21.♟ab1 ♟d2 and Black's counterplay is quite sufficient – 19.♟b1 ♟f5 20.♝d2 ♘xb1 21.♟xb1 ♟c3 22.♟xb6 ♟xd2 23.♟xb7 ♟e8 24.♟f1 a5= Yatneva – Ershova, Serpuhov 2003.) 14...♝a6 15.0-0 ♟ec8 16.♝b3 (16.b3 ♟dxe5 17.♟xe5 ♟xe5 18.♝d2 ♝c6 19.♘xe5 ♘xe5 20.♘f3 ♝b6=) 16...♟dxe5 17.♟xe5 ♟xe5 18.♘xe5 ♘xe5 19.♟fe1 ♝b6 20.♘f3 ♘g7 21.♟c3 ♟d8=

Neishtadt – Nesis, corr. 1984.

12...♟axb8 13.♝c2 ♟h5

It is not acceptable for White to let the enemy knight to the f4-square, so he needs to weaken his kingside.

14.g3



14...♘xc3

White's knight on c3 was not threatening to go to d5 in the next few moves, so maybe Black did not need to exchange it. Instead, he could have played for example 14...♘h3!? Meanwhile, Black has an excellent game after the move in the text as well.

15.bxc3

In case of 15.♝xc3, Black regains his pawn by force and he equalizes: 15...♘h3 16.e5 ♘g2 17.♟g1 ♟xf3 18.♟xf3 ♝d6 19.♟f1 ♝xe5 20.♝xe5 ♟xe5 21.♟g2 (21.♟e1 ♟xe1 22.♟xe1 ♟g7=) 21...♟g7 22.♟ge1 ♟xe1 23.♟xe1 ♟f8 24.♟e3 b6= Tukmakov – Gufeld, Moscow 1983.

15...♘g4

Black frees the e6-square for his queen in order to regain his sacrificed pawn.

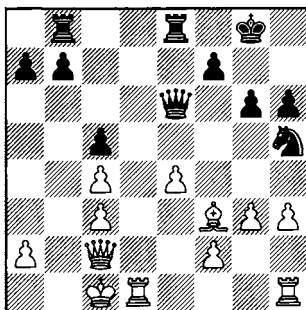
16.h3

White can hold the pawn with the move 16.♘d2 as well, but this move seems too risky. After 16... ♙xe2 17.♙xe2 ♖e6 18.f3 ♜bd8 19. ♜hf1 ♖h3 20.♜f2 f5 21.♞e1 fxe4 22.fxe4 ♞e6 23.♙d1 ♘f6 24.e5 ♘g4 25.♜fe2 ♖h5, in the game Agzamov – Chekhov, Telavi 1982, the opponents agreed to a draw. The computer programme Rybka however, asserts that Black had been better....

16...♙xf3 17.♙xf3 ♖e6 18. 0-0-0

18.♙f1 ♘f6 19.♞e1 ♖xc4 20. ♘g2 b5 21.e5 ♘d7 22.♞e4 ♖e6 23.♞he1 h5 24.♖d2 c4 25.♖h6 ♘c5 ♞ Goriatchkin – Kurnosov, Orsk 2001.

18.0-0 ♖xh3 19.♜fel ♘f6 20.♙g2 ♖h5 21.f3 ♖g5 22.♖f2 ♖e5 23.♞e3 b5 ♞ Muse – Nowak, Poznan 1986.

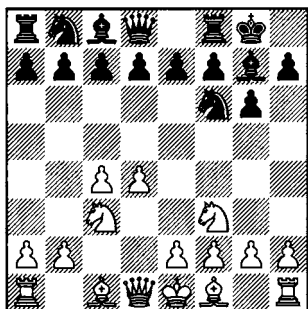


18...b5! ♞. The game Yermolinsky – Kindermann, Groningen 1997, followed later with **19.♞he1 b4?! 20.e5 ♖a6 21.♞d7 ♘f6 22.♞d3 ♖a3 23.♖b2 ♖a6 24.♞e2 ♘h7 25.♙d5** and White obtained the advantage. It was much stronger for Black to have played **19... bxc4!**, opening files against the enemy king immediately. After **20.♙xh5 gxf5 21.h4 ♖a6** the position would be double edged.

Chapter 3

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♗g7 4.♘f3
0-0

Black's attempt to wait for White's bishop to come to f4 and then to chase it will not be successful: 4...d6 5.♗f4 ♘h5 6.♗g5 h6 7.♗e3.



5.♗f4

In principle, White's ideal setup would look like this – pawns on e3, d4 and c4, knights on f3 and c3, bishops on e2 and f4, queen on c2 and his king's rook on d1, so that Black will have great problems advancing both c5 as well as e5, while White could increase his pressure on the queenside with b4 and c5.

5...d6

After 5...d6, there arises one of the variations of the Gruenfeld Defence.

A) 6.h3

B) 6.♖d2

C) 6.e3

The pawn-move 6.e4 does not seem to combine well together with the development of the bishop on f4: 6...♗g4 7.♗e2 ♘fd7 8.0-0 ♗xf3 9.♗xf3 e5 10.♗e3 ♘c6=

A) 6.h3

White wishes to save his dark-squared bishop from its being exchanged and he ensures the h2-square for its retreat. This move is a bit too slow however.

6...c5

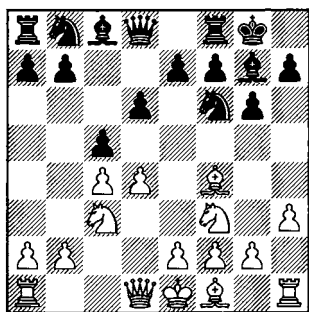
In general, if Black wishes to obtain equality in this system he must almost always go for the pawn-break c7-c5.

The plans with c7-c6 and b7-b6 seem to be too slow, for example:

6...c6 7.e3 a6 8.♗e2 (Black can counter 8.a4 with the typical reply 8...a5. His pawn has reached the a5-square in two moves indeed, but he obtains an excellent position mostly because of his control over the b4-square. 9.♗e2 ♘a6 – 9...♘fd7!? – 10.0-0 ♘d7 11.♖d2

e5 12.♙h2 ♖e7 13.♟fd1 ♜e8 14.♙f1
 ♜b4 15.♟ac1 e4 16.♞e1 ♞f6∞ Al-
 burt – Kristiansen, Reykjavik
 1986.) 8...b5. This plan is not so
 dangerous for White however,
 since it does not solve Black's
 main problem – to fight for the
 centre. 9.0–0 (9.♞d2 ♙b7 10.0–0
 ♞bd7 11.♙g3 ♞b6 12.♖b3 ♞fd7
 13.a4± Zacurdajev – V.Onischuk,
 Narva 2006) 9...♞bd7 10.♟c1 ♜e8
 11.♙h2 ♖a5 12.♞d2 ♙b7 13.c5 d5
 14.a3 e5 15.b4 ♖d8 16.♞b3± Ser-
 geev – Folk, Usti nad Orlici
 2006;

6...b6 7.e3 c5 8.d5 b5. This is
 something like the Benko Gambit
 in a rather slow version. In the
 next game Black failed to obtain
 complete equality: 9.cxb5 a6 10.a4
 ♖a5 11.♞d2 ♙b7 12.e4 ♖b4 13.
 ♖b3 ♞bd7 14.♙e2 axb5 15.♙xb5
 ♙a6 16.0–0 ♟fb8 17.♖c2 ♙xb5
 18.axb5± Drozdovskij – Kasim-
 dzhanov, Ajaccio 2006.



White has three possibilities
 with his pawn on d4 – to go the
 side, to go forward and to keep it
 there.

A1) 7.dxc5

A2) 7.d5

A3) 7.e3

**A1) 7.dxc5 dxc5 8.♖xd8
 ♟xd8 9.♞b5**

This attack on the flank can be
 easily parried by Black.

9...♞e8 10.♙e5 ♞c6 Black's
 pieces are better mobilized and
 therefore his chances are better in
 this symmetrical position.

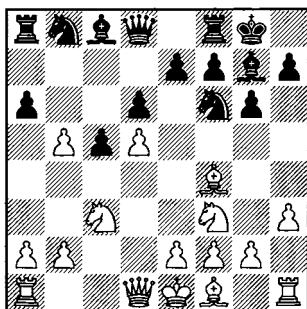
A2) 7.d5

Now, Black has again the per-
 fect possibility to enter the Volga
 Gambit with the ridiculously
 looking moves for White like ♙f4
 and h3.

7...b5 8.cxb5

In case of 8.♞xb5, it is very
 strong for Black to play 8...♞e4!,
 opening the diagonal for the
 bishop on g7 and cutting off the
 ways of retreat of the knight on
 b5. After 9.♙c1, Iljin – Novikov,
 Moscow 2008, 9...a6 10.♞a3 ♖a5
 11.♞d2 f5 12.e3 f4, Black's initia-
 tive is very powerful.

8...a6



1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.♘f3 0-0 5.♙f4 d6

9.bxa6

After this straightforward move Black's game is easy and quite understandable. His queen goes to a5, the bishop goes to a6, his queen's knight to d7 and his rooks occupy the a and b-files. White will be faced with a rather unpleasant defence in the middle game as well as in the majority of the endgames.

It would be trickier for White to play 9.e3, trying to win several tempi in order to develop his pieces. Black must then capture on b5 only after careful preparation, for example: 9...♘bd7 10.♙d3 ♖a5 11.♗b3 ♜b8 12.0-0 axb5 (This is the right moment, because if White recaptures on b5, his pieces will be pinned.) 13.♘xb5 (In case White does not recapture, he will have problems again, because Black will have a powerful initiative in a position with material equality.) 13...♙a6 14.a4 ♘b6 15.e4 c4! 16.♙xc4 ♘xe4. White's extra pawn is absolutely immaterial, his pieces are hanging and his pawns on d5 and b2 are weak.

Black can counter 9.a4 with 9...♖a5, creating the threats axb5 and ♘e4. After 10.♙d2 axb5 11.♘xb5 ♗b6 12.♘c3 (This is a smart resource for White, but Black is not forced to capture on b2, isolating his queen from the actions.) 12...♙a6 (but not 12...♗xb2? 13.♜b1 ♖a3 14.♗c2 and 15.♙c1) 13.♗c2 ♘bd7. The end is more or less similar – White is noticeably

behind in development, he has numerous weaknesses and his extra pawn is meaningless.

9...♖a5 10.♗d2 ♙xa6 11.g4

This move seems to be too slow and artificial.

White should better follow with 11.e3, complying with the loss of his castling rights.

11...♙c4!

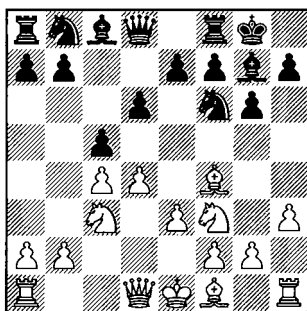
Black attacks immediately White's pawn on d5, which has run away from the pack.

12.♙d1 ♗b4

Black's initiative is developing quite effortlessly. White saves his pawn on a2, but he must weaken his flank.

13.a3 ♗b3 14.e3 ♘bd7 F. Portisch – Kozma, Budapest 1992. Black's next move will be ♜fb8 and White's pawns will start falling like ripe apples.

A3) 7.e3

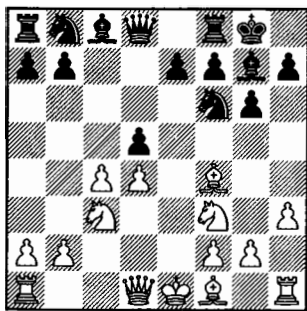


7...cxd4

Denis Yevseev demonstrated an interesting plan of quick un-

dermining of White's centre: 7... ♖a5!? 8. ♔d3 cxd4 9. exd4 e5!? This move has become possible because of the placement of Black's queen on a5 and also due to the fact that White's king is still in the centre. 10. ♔d2 (White loses after 10. dxe5 dxe5 11. ♖xe5? ♜e8.) 10... exd4 11. ♖xd4 ♜e8 12. ♖ce2 ♖b6 13. 0-0. White has managed to complete his development somehow, but his pieces are rather uncomfortably piled up in the centre. 13... ♖c6 14. ♔e3. If White exchanges on c6, Black will get rid of his only weakness covering the d5-square. White does not wish to retreat his knight from the d4-square either, since Black's knight will continue with its maneuver with tempo (14. ♖b3 ♖e5). Black succeed in finding a tactical solution to the move in the text: 14... ♖g4! 15. hxg4 ♖xd4 ♞Zacurdajev – Yevseev, St. Petersburg 2006.

8. exd4 d5



Now, contrary to the variation with ♔g5, White cannot capture

on f6 and later on d5, therefore Black should not mind the loss of a tempo.

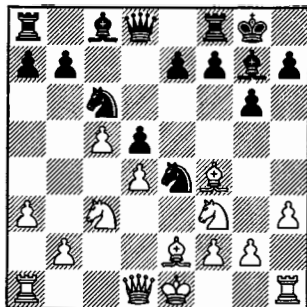
9. a3

White's attempt to occupy additional space on the queenside is not dangerous for Black, because White cannot stabilize his position in view of his lag in development: 9. c5 b6 10. b4, Horak – Hadraba, Decin 1997, 10... ♖e4 11. ♜c1 bxc5 12. bxc5 ♖c6 13. ♔b5 ♖xd4 14. ♖xd4 ♖a5 15. ♔c6 ♖xc3 16. ♖d2 ♔xd4 17. ♖xd4 ♖e4 18. ♖d1 ♔a6!↑

This is why White has played 9. a3 in the first place – in order to prepare c5 and b4.

In case of 9. ♔e2 ♖c6 10. 0-0 dxc4 11. ♔xc4, White's bishop comes to c4 in two moves and Black manages to mobilize his forces for a successful fight against his opponent's isolated pawn. For example: 11... ♖a5 12. ♔d3 ♔e6 13. ♜c1 ♜c8 14. ♔e5 ♖c4 15. ♖e2 ♖xe5 16. dxe5 ♖d5 17. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 18. b3 ♖a5= Gonzalez – Ortega, Linares 1998.

9... ♖c6 10. c5 ♖e4 11. ♔e2



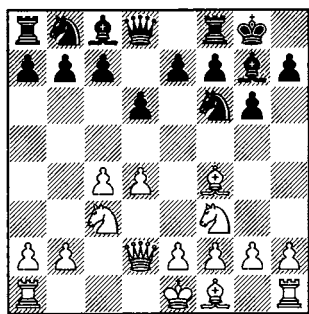
1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♘g7 4.♘f3 0-0 5.♘f4 d6

White has taken preventive measures against the undermining move b7-b6, but instead of this, now he is faced with a powerful counter strike in the centre.

11...♘xd4! 12.♘xd4 e5 13. ♘e3 exd4 14.♘xd4 ♘xc3 15. bxc3 ♖g5±

White can hardly complete his development without considerable material or positional concessions.

B) 6.♖d2



6...c5

The inclusion of the move 6...a6 looks a bit slow: 7.♘h6 c5 8.♘xg7 ♘xg7 9.g3 ♘c6 10.♘g2 ♘g4 11.dxc5 dxc5 12.♖e3 ♘d4 13.0-0-0 ♘xf3 14.♘xf3 ♖c7 15.g4 ♘g8 16.h4 ♖ad8 17.h5± Wu Wenjin – Li Shilong, China 2006.

7.♘h6

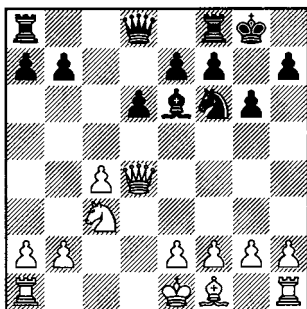
We can recommend to Black to counter 7.d5 with motives of the theme of the Benko Gambit: 7... b5 8.cxb5 a6 9.e4 axb5 10.♘xb5 ♖a5 11.♘e2 (Black was threaten-

ing 11...♘xe4.) 11...♘a6± Welling – Hebden, Caleta 2005.

7...♘xh6 8.♖xh6 cxd4 9.♘xd4 ♘c6

The position is of the semi-open type and Black is considerably ahead in development, since White has lost too much time exchanging the dark-squared bishops. He has no chances of creating real threats against the king on g8, so he should better think about maintaining the equality.

10.♖d2 ♘xd4 11.♖xd4 ♘e6



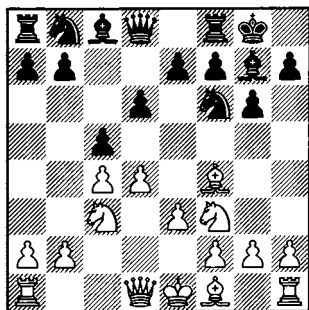
12.e3

White should not be eager to play 12.e4, when only the light-squared bishops are left on the board. Instead, he wishes to bring his bishop to the f3-square after a while and to exert positional pressure on the queenside. Black however succeeds in reducing the tension in the centre and he equalizes completely.

12...♖a5 13.♘e2 ♖fc8 14. 0-0, Wu Wenjin – Wang Pin, China 2006, 14...d5! 15.cxd5 ♘xd5=

C) 6.e3 c5

The chase after White's bishop – 6...♖h5 7.♗g5 h6 8.♗h4 g5 – would not lead to success in view of 9.♖d2 ♖f6 10.♗g3. Black weakened his kingside deliberately and he did not obtain any compensation for this and accordingly this had to be quite bad for his prospects in the subsequent fight. For example: 10...♖c6 (10...c5 11.d5 ♖bd7, Evdokimov – Khismatul-lin, Serpuhov 2003, 12.♗d3!?±) 11.h4 g4 12.h5 e5 13.d5 ♖e7 14.e4 ♖h7 15.♗h4 ♗f6 16.♗xf6 ♖xf6 17.♗e2 ♖h8 18.♖f1± Benjamin – Rao, Chicago 1986.



C1) 7.d5

C2) 7.♗e2

About 7.h3 – see variation A3.

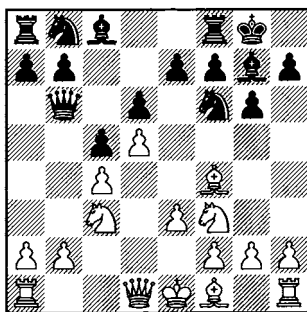
It would be harmless for Black if White plays 7.dxc5 dxc5 8.♗e2 ♖c6 9.0–0 ♖xd1 (Black is not forced to exchange queens and he should not have any problems in the endgame either. There are no weaknesses in his position

and his pieces are harmoniously deployed.) 10.♗fxd1 ♗f5 11.♖e5 ♖xe5 12.♗xe5 ♗ad8 13.♗f3 ♗d7= Finegold – Scholseth, Saint John 1988.

C1) 7.d5

White reduces the tension in the centre prematurely and Black obtains excellent counterplay thanks to his offensive on the flanks.

7...♖b6



8.♗b1

8.♖b3 ♖xb3 9.axb3 ♖a6 10.e4 ♖b4 11.0–0–0?! ♖g4 12.♗g3 f5 13.h3 fxe4 14.♖xe4 ♖h6 (14... ♖f6!?) 15.♗d3 ♖f5 16.♗h2 ♗d7 17.♗he1 b5± Anastasian – Kruppa, St. Petersburg 1993.

8...e5!

This is a spectacular move, but Black could have continued even simpler with 8...♖a5 9.♗d3 (9.♖d2 ♗g4 10.♗e2 ♖a6 11.0–0 ♗xf3 12.gxf3 ♖bd7=) 9...♖h5 10.0–0 ♖xf4 11.exf4 ♗g4=

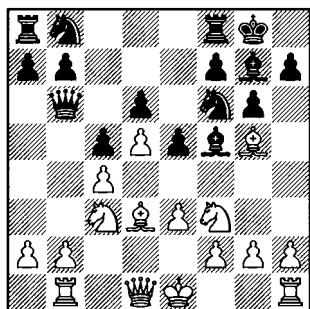
9.♗g5

It would be too risky for White

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.♘f3 0-0 5.♙f4 d6

to grab a pawn, because after 9.dxe6 ♙xe6 10.♖xd6 ♘c6 11.♖d1 ♙f5, Black would have a huge lead in development and a very powerful initiative.

9...♙f5 10.♙d3



10...e4!?

The straightforward exchange of the light-squared bishops does not guarantee complete equality for Black: 10...♙xd3 11.♖xd3 ♘bd7 12.♘d2 ♙ae8 13.a3 a6 14.f3 ♖c7 15.♙h4 ♘h5 16.g4 (16.0-0 f5) 16...e4!?, Ivanchuk – Radjabov, Sochi 2008, 17.♘xe4 f5 18.gxh5 fxe4 19.fxe4 ♘e5 20.♖e2 gxh5 21.♙g5 ♖f7 22.♙f4±

11.♙xf6 exf3 12.♙xg7 fxg2 13.♙g1 ♙xd3 14.♖xd3 ♘xg7 15.♙xg2 ♘d7

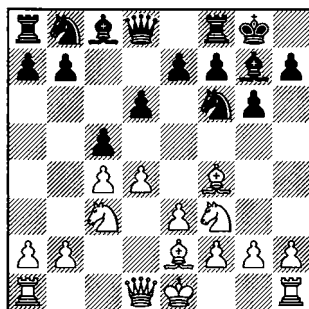
The forced play has ended and the position has been simplified considerably. White's king is visibly more endangered than its counterpart and in addition he must worry about the e5-square in the nearest future. Meanwhile, White has preserved a very powerful pawn-centre and he has

extra space, so these pluses and minuses are approximately balancing each other.

16.f4 f5=

Now, Black only needs to bring his knight to f6, having played before this ♘h8 (so that he does not blunder his f5-pawn, because of the pin) in order to be completely happy about his position.

C2) 7.♙e2



7...♘h5

We will see soon that following the inclusion of the moves 6...c5 7.♙e2, the chase after White's bishop should be crowned with success.

It is not so good for Black to play 7...♘c6, because after 8.d5, he will need to retreat with his knight to the edge of the board – 8...♘a5 and this will be exactly the case illustrating the correctness of the famous principle of Dr. Tarrasch concerning the knight at the edge of the board. For example: 9.♙c1 ♙d7 10.0-0 ♘h5 11.♙g5 h6 12.♙h4 f5 13.♘d2 ♘f6 14.a3

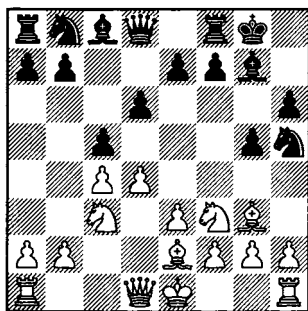
Chapter 3

b6 15.b4± Klauser – Zueger, Lenzheide 2006 and Black's knight will have to go to the pathetic b7-square.

In case of 7...cxd4 8.exd4 d5 9.c5, Black fails to break his opponent's position. For example: 9...dxe4 10.0-0 dxc6 11.h3 (After White has castled short, Black's possible strikes against his centre of the type dxd4 and e5 are not so dangerous for White any more.) 11...f5 12.♖a4, Milos – Lee, Sao Paulo 2007 (12.♞e1 ♞c8) 12...d7±

8.♠g5 h6 9.♠h4 g5 10.♠g3

In case White's knight retreats – 10.dg1, Black has the important intermediate move 10...cxd4! (attacking the knight on c3). If now 11.exd4, then Black plays another move with tempo 11...df4+ and this provides him with a powerful initiative, Nielsen – Burgess, Denmark 1992.



10...cxd4

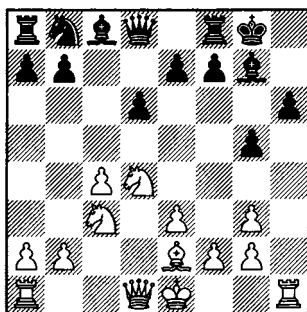
Black can play even more aggressively – 10...f5, but White can react quite calmly to this 11.dxc5 dxcg3 12.hxcg3 dxc5 13.♞c2 dxc6 14.♞d1 ♞e8 (14...♞a5) 15.a3 ♞f7 16.0-0 ♠e6 17.d5 ♞ad8= Golod – Bologan, Romania 1994.

11.dxd4

This move forces Black to exchange on g3.

In case of 11.exd4, Black has interesting additional possibilities like 11...f5, or 11...dxc6.

11...dxcg3 12.hxcg3



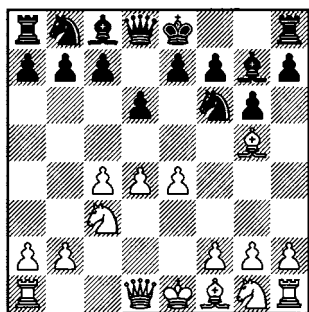
12...dxc6

It looks a bit dangerous for Black to have given his opponent an open file against his king indeed, but just because of this he must play actively in the centre. Meanwhile, his dark-squared bishop is a quite reliable defender of his king.

13.♞d2 ♞a5 14.♞d1 ♠d7 15. d5 ♞xd2 16.♞xd2 ♞ae8= Arduman – David, Leon 2001.

Chapter 4

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6
5.♗g5



This move looks rather simple and straightforward, but it requires from Black a good opening preparation and a precise play. The idea behind the move for White is to either provoke h6 and then to transpose into a favourable line from the Saemisch Attack, or to consolidate the bishop on g5 after ♖d2 and this would be in principle rather unpleasant for Black. You will soon notice in our book that Ivan Sokolov is one of its main exponents and he is famous for being a very aggressive White player.

A) 5...♘bd7?

B) 5...h6

C) 5...0-0

A) 5...♘bd7?!

This is not a good move for Black, because White can simply enter quite advantageously the Saemisch variation.

This is the most precise and principled move and it creates numerous problems for Black.

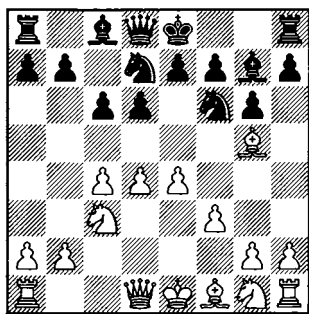
Meanwhile, I would like to warn the readers who would not agree with the evaluations of the author and would like to try 5...♘bd7 in practice anyway that even after the simple developing move 6.♘f3, Black's task would be very difficult as well. The main drawback of his set-up is that he has committed his queen's knight to the d7-square a bit too early. It is rather passively placed there and Black would be incapable of exerting any pressure against his opponent's pawn-centre.

6...c6

The other possible attempt to create counterplay on the queen-side would not be effective either: 6...c5 7.d5 0-0 8.♖d2 a6 (After 8...♙e8, White's centre is so powerful that he can begin an immediate offensive on the kingside

Chapter 4

with 9.♔h6 ♔h8 10.h4!? ♚h5 11.♖h3±. He has covered the g3-square and he can follow this with g2-g4 continuing with the pawn-onslaught.) 9.♚h3 (Black has demonstrated his wish to organize a queenside counterplay eventually sacrificing a pawn, therefore White should take care of his rapid development.) 9...b5 10.cxb5 ♖a5 11.♚f2 (This waiting can be quite typical sometimes – neither side wishes to waste a tempo capturing a pawn.) 11...♚b6 12.♚fd1 axb5 13.♚xb5±. White has regrouped his forces quite favourably and Black's compensation for the sacrificed pawn is insufficient.



7.♖d2

White plans to evacuate his king to the queenside and then to begin a massive kingside offensive.

It would be too slow for him to play 7.♚h3 a6 8.♚f2, enabling Black to create counterplay 8...0-0 9.♖d2 b5 (This is why Black has played a6 and c6 in the

first place – to avoid sacrificing a pawn.) 10.♖d1 ♖a5 11.a3 ♖b8 12.♙e2 bxc4 (It is much more favourable for Black to exchange here after White has played a2-a3: his b-pawn is vulnerable on this semi-open file both on b2 and b4. It would be best for White to place it on b3, under the protection of the a2-pawn, but this is already impossible.) 13.♙xc4 c5 14.♙e3 ♚b6 15.♙a2 ♙e6 16.d5 ♙d7 17.0-0 ♚a4= Ibragimov – Yurtaev, Calcutta 2000.

7...a6 8.0-0-0 ♖a5 9.♔h6 0-0

After 9...♙xh6 10.♖xh6 b5 11.♚b1 ♖b8 12.♖d2, White parries his opponent's threats quite easily and he maintains the advantages of his position. He dominates in the centre and on the kingside and he has plenty of space for piece maneuvering.

10.h4 b5 11.♚b1 b4?!

It would be a bit better for Black to play 11...♖b8; since it is not reasonable for him to block deliberately the queenside, because he is in fact stronger there.

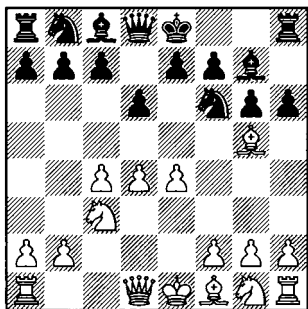
12.♚ce2 ♙xh6 13.♖xh6 c5 14.♚h3

White demonstrates his quite straightforward intention to checkmate the enemy king.

14...cxd4 15.♚g5 ♚c5 16.♚xd4± – Black's defence seems to be very difficult against White's simple but dangerous threats, Rajkovic – Dokimakis, Iraklion 1994.

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♙c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♙g5

B) 5...h6



It was considered for a while that Black could not only win a tempo with this move, but he could equalize easily. This is not quite true, however. White can gradually compensate for the lost time and his set-up turns out to be rather sound in the long run. Still, the original analysis of the author shows that Black can reach a quite playable position.

6.♙e3

It is not good for White to play 6.♙h4, because of 6...c5 7.d5 ♖a5 8.♙d3 ♘bd7 9.f4 b5!↑ and after the retreat of his bishop to the h4-square, it cannot come back any more to d2, or c1 in order to join in the protection of the queenside.

6...♘g4

It is only a transposition of moves after 6...e5 7.d5 ♘g4 8.♙c1.

7.♙c1

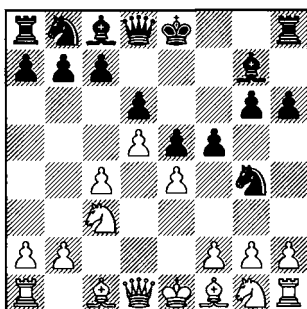
The escapade of White's bishop to g5 and back was not exactly a loss of time. Black has weakened his kingside and he will

suffer in the end because of this. Meanwhile, he will also need to retreat soon his knight from the g4-square, since it is vulnerable there.

B1) 7...e5

B2) 7...c5

B1) 7...e5 8.d5 f5



9.exf5

White pushed aggressively his g-pawn in the following game, but he failed to reap any great dividends out of this: 9.♙e2 ♘f6 10.exf5 ♙xf5 11.g4?! (We will show you later in our notes to the move 9...gxf5, that it is stronger for White to continue with 11.♘f3!, this position arises after the move-order 9.exf5 ♙xf5 10.♙e2! ♘f6 11.♘f3.) 11...♙d7 12.♖c2 e4 (Black wishes to trade his e-pawn for his opponent's g-pawn in order to open the diagonal for his dark-squares bishop.) 13.g5 (It would not be so attractive for White to opt for 13.♙xe4 ♘xg4, but still it deserved attention to try 13.h3,

preserving the control over the f5-square.) 13...hxg5 14.♔xg5 ♕f5 15.♖d2 ♖bd7 16.h4 ♗e5. It becomes obvious that Black has seized the initiative. There followed: 17.♗h3 ♖d7 18.♗f4 ♗h7 19.0-0-0 ♔xg5 20.hxg5 ♖e7 21.♙xh8 ♙xh8 22.♗b5 a6 23.♗d4 ♖xg5 24.♗fe6 ♖xd2 25.♗xd2 ♗f7 26.♙h1 ♙g8 27.♙h7 ♙g7 28.♗xc7 ♙h8 29.♙xh8 ♙xh8 I.Sokolov – Volokitin, Silivri 2003.

9...gxf5

In case of 9...♔xf5, White fails to use effectively the weakening of the e4-outpost: 10.♔d3 0-0 11.♔xf5 (After 11.♗f3?! e4 12.♗xe4 ♖e8 13.♗fd2 ♖h4! He has great problems to worry about.) 11...gxf5 12.h3 ♗f6 13.♗f3 ♗a6 14.0-0 ♗c5 15.♔e3 ♗fe4 16.♗xe4 ♗xe4 17.♖c2 a5 and White's edge is only symbolic.

He should try to act smarter instead: 10.♔e2! ♗f6 11.♗f3 (threatening 12.♗h4) 11...g5. Now, after White has provoked the move g6-g5, he should set about exploiting the e4-square: 12.♔d3 ♖d7 (12...e4?! 13.♗d4) 13.0-0 ♗a6 14.♖e1 0-0-0 15.♔xf5 ♖xf5 16.♗b5 ♗b8 17.♔e3 b6 18.a4± Opinca – Shcherbina, Ilyichevsk 2006.

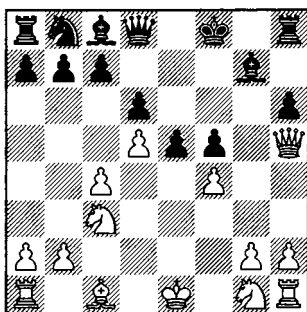
10.♔e2 ♗f6 11.♙h5

White's too academic play in order to weaken and then occupy the e4-outpost would not be successful: 11.h3 a5 12.g4 ♗a6 13.gxf5 ♔xf5 14.♙g4 ♖d7=. Here however, despite Black's impressive centre, his king is a bit unsafe.

11...♗xh5 12.♖xh5 ♗f8 13.f4

In one of his first games in this line, GM Ivan Sokolov tried to provoke the pawn-advance f5-f4, so that he could establish a firm control over the e4-square, but he failed to pose any serious problems to his opponent: 13.♗ge2 ♖e8 14.♗g3 ♗a6 15.0-0 ♔d7 16.h4 ♗g8 17.♖b1 ♗h7 18.♗b5 ♖f8 19.♖xe8 ♖axe8 20.♗xa7 ♔a4 21.♔d2 ♔c2 22.♖bc1 ♔d3 23.♖fe1 e4, draw, I.Sokolov – Ivanchuk, Linares 1995.

This move 13.f4 looks more up to the point, since White tries to reduce the scope of action of Black's bishop on c8.



13...♖e8

Black's main task now is to ensure the safety of his king. His prospects in the endgame seem quite promising thanks to his powerful bishops and excellent pawn centre, while in the middle game, he might come under a crushing attack.

His alternative is 13...e4 14.

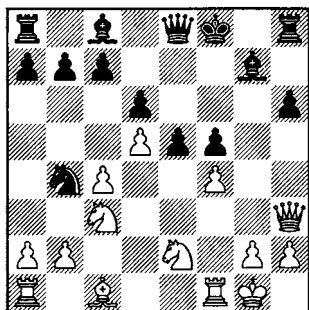
1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♙c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♙g5

♙ge2 ♖e8 15.♖xe8?! (White should better preserve the queens on the board with: 15.♖h3!±) 15...♙xe8 16.♙e3 ♗g8 17.0-0 ♘a6 18.♙d4 ♙d7 19.♗ad1 ♙c5 20.♗d2 ♙f7 21.♙xg7 ♗xg7 22.♙d4 a5 23.♙d1 a4±
Banikas – Fedorov, Dresden 2008.

14.♖h3

Naturally, White should avoid the trade of queens.

14...♘a6 15.♙ge2 ♘b4 16.0-0



16...e4

If Black plays something else, he should worry about the possible exchange sacrifice on f5 after fxe5. It might be equally unpleasant for him if White plays for a positional pressure with ♙g3. Generally speaking, Black should keep the f-file closed.

17.♙e3

The move 17.♗b1, which White played in the following game turned out to be just a loss of time: 17...♙d7 18.♙e3 ♗g8 19.♙d4 ♖g6 20.♙xg7 ♗xg7 21.a3 ♙d3 22.♙c1 ♙c5= Psakhis – Nijboer, Vlissingen 2000.

17...♖g6 18.♗ad1 ♙d3

Black's knight is doubtlessly placed beautifully here, but it does not have any bright prospects and White can always exchange it if he so wishes.

19.♗d2 ♗g8 20.♙d4

This is an excellent example on the theme of advantageous and disadvantageous exchanges. Black's bishop on g7 is very good, so White should better get rid of it, depriving his opponent of his two-bishop advantage in the process.

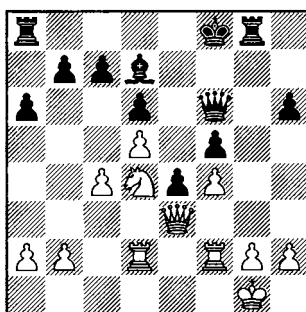
20...a6 21.♙d1 ♙xd4 22.♙xd4 ♖f6

White is threatening to play 23.♙e3, winning the f5-pawn, so Black must force his opponent to occupy the e3-square with his queen.

23.♖e3 ♙d7 24.♙f2

White's knight has found another quite useful square and again the forthcoming exchange is favourable for him.

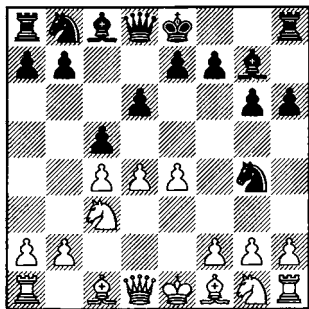
24...♙xf2 25.♗xf2±



White enjoys the typical advantage of a knight against a bishop.

op, so he has the edge, Nikolaidis – Netzer, France 2004.

B2) 7...c5



8.d5

The transfer into an endgame with the line: 8.dxc5 dxc5 9.♖xd8 ♜xd8, does not create any serious problems for Black, but he still needs to play accurately in order to obtain a good game, for example: 10.h3 (10.f4 ♘c6 11.h3 ♙xc3 12.bxc3 ♘f6=) 10...♙xc3 11.bxc3 ♘e5 12.f4 ♘ed7 13.♙e3 b6 14.0-0-0 ♙b7 15.♙d3 ♘c6 16.♘f3 ♘c7 17.f5 g5 18.♙f2 f6 19.♙g3 ♘ce5= Kovacevic – Mrva, Steinbrunn 2005.

8...♙d4 9.♘h3

Black has two active pieces at the moment, but they seem to have reached their maximal potential. White has a solid centre and a space advantage, so he must complete calmly his development and repel gradually his opponent's pieces. Black's task is to maintain by all means the position as sharp as possible.

B2a) 9...e5

B2b) 9...♘f6

B2a) 9...e5 10.dxe6

It is worse for White to play 10.♘b5, in view of 10...♘f6 (attacking the e4-pawn) 11.f3 ♙xh3 12.gxh3 ♘h5∞ and Black succeeds in establishing a blockade on the dark squares.

10...♙xe6 11.♙e2

White's hasty attempt to get rid of the bishop on d4 with 11.♘b5, turns out again to be wrong: 11...♘c6 12.♘d4 ♘xd4 13.♘f4 ♖h4 14.g3 ♖f6 15.♙e2 ♘e5∞

11...♖h4 12.0-0 ♘c6 13.♘d5 0-0-0

Black can try to continue the game with a "centralized" king, but this might be dangerous, for example: 13...♘d7 14.♙f4 ♘ge5 15. ♙g3 ♖d8 16.♖b3 ♖b8 17.♘hf4 h5 18.h3 h4 19.♙h2 etc. The situation in the centre is absolutely unpredictable, but still White is better, because of his safer king.

14.♙f4

It is worse for White to opt for 14.♘df4 ♘ge5 15.♘xe6 fxe6 16.♘h1 g5 17.f4 gxf4 18.♘xf4 ♖df8 19.♙d2. Black was dominant in the centre in the game I.Sokolov – Solleveld, Netherlands 2001. Here, he had better occupy simply the g-file, generating numerous threats with 19...♗hg8∞

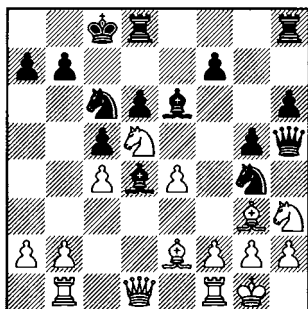
14...g5

In case of 14...♘f6, White has the powerful argument 15.♙g3 ♖xe4 16.♙f3 (It is only a repeti-

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♙c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6 5.♗g5

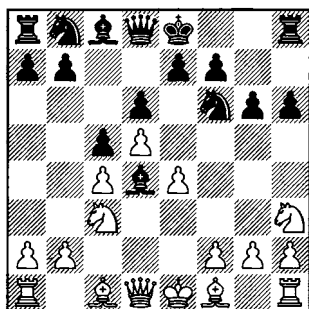
tion of moves after 16.♗d3 ♖g4 17.♗e2 ♖e4.) 16...♖f5 17.♘hf4 g5 18.♘e2 ♗e5 19.♘e3 ♖g6 20.♗xc6 bxc6 21.♖a4↑ and White's initiative for the sacrificed pawn is very dangerous.

15.♗g3 ♖h5 16.♗b1±



Black's counterplay has reached its dead end, while White can continue calmly with his queenside offensive.

B2b) 9...♘f6



Black follows his opponent's example and he retreats his pieces, creating two threats simulta-

neously in the process – against the e4-pawn and the knight on h3.

10.♖d3

In case of 10.f3 ♗xh3 11.gxh3 ♖b6, Black protects his bishop on d4 just in time and he succeeds in blockading the position. For example: 12.♘b5 a6 13.♘xd4 cxd4 14.b3 e5!±

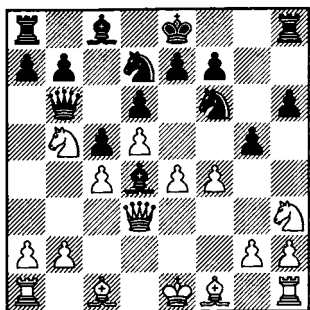
10...♘bd7!?

This move has not been tried in practice yet.

In one of the games, Black acted in the spirit of the Benoni Defence and he transferred his knight to c7 – 10...♘a6 11.a3 ♘c7. It remained idle on this square though and it also precluded the placement of his queen to b6: 12.♘e2 e5 13.♘xd4 cxd4 14.♗e2 a5 15.f4 ♗xh3 16.gxh3 ♘a6. Black's knight-maneuvers at the edge of the board are not impressive at all. Meanwhile, White has succeeded in the completion of his development and he is ready to open the position: 17.0-0 ♘c5 18.♖f3 ♘cxe4 19.♗d1 ♖b6 20.fxe5 dxe5 21.♗c2± Ibragimov – Kazhgaleyev, Nice 2000. We should also mention here that the discovered check 21...d3 is harmless, because of 22.♗e3.

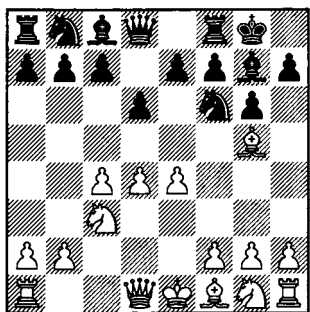
11.f4 ♖b6 12.♘b5 g5!∞
(diagram)

This original position is quite interesting and it deserves a thorough analysis, nevertheless the first impression is that Black should not be worse at all thanks



to his control over the dark squares in the centre.

C) 5...0-0



6.♞d2

About 6.♞e2 ♖a6, or 6...h6 – see Chapters 11-12.

About 6.f3 – see Chapter 14.

As for 6.♞f3 – see Chapter 20, 6.♞g5.

The overly ambitious move 6.f4 enables Black to begin immediate actions in the centre and on the queenside with 6...c5 7.d5 ♖a5 8.♞d2 b5 9.cxb5 a6 10.bxa6 ♙xa6 11.♙xa6 ♖xa6 12.♞f3 ♞fe8. As a result, he has obtained an excellent version of the Benko Gambit.

White's pieces are not well coordinated and his queenside needs additional protection. Black has defended his e7-pawn with his last move, since White's only reasonable plan is connected with the central break e4-e5. 13.0-0 ♞ab8 14.e5 ♞d7 15.♞ae1 ♞c7 16.♞e2 ♞b6 (Black has regrouped successfully his forces and he exerts pressure against the d5-pawn.) 17.b3 c4 18.♞d1, draw, Svetly – Pribyl, Czech Republic 2003.

Black's other standard plan includes the undermining move 8...e6, for example: 9.dxe6 fxe6 10.♙d3 ♞c6 11.♞ge2 ♞g4!? (This is the beginning of a quite original maneuver. Black could have played instead routinely 11...♙d7, followed by ♞d4.) 12.h3 ♞h6 13.0-0 ♞f7 14.♙h4 ♞d4 15.♞ad1 ♙d7 16.♙f2 ♞ac8 17.♙e3, Belozerov – Pokazanjev, Novokuznetsk 2008 and here, instead of the very bad exchange on e2, Black had better complete what he had begun, by playing 17...♞d8 with the idea to follow with ♞dc6. White should avoid being squeezed and he will have to sacrifice a pawn with the line: 18.f5 exf5 19.♞g3∞ with a double edged position.

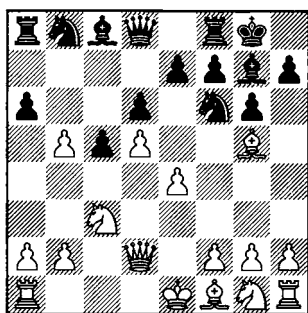
6...c5 7.d5 b5!

This classic resource exploits the fact that White's knight on c3 must protect the e4-pawn. He is forced to capture on b5 with his pawn and this enables Black to seize the initiative on the queenside.

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♙g5

8.cxb5 a6

White has a wide choice of possibilities here. We should be acquainted with them thoroughly, in order to understand better the plans of both sides in this typical pawn-structure for the King's Indian (pawns on d5 and e4 against Black pawns on c5 and d6).



C1) 9.bxa6

C2) 9.a4

C3) 9.♗f3

C4) 9.f3

C1) 9.bxa6

Now, the game develops in the spirit of the Benko Gambit.

9...♙a5

Before Black captures on a6, he should better wait for White's bishop on f1 to make a move and thanks to this win a tempo for the development of his queenside initiative.

After the immediate 9...♙xa6 10.♙xa6 ♘xa6, White enters a favourable version of the Benko Gambit. For example, 11.♗f3 (It is also interesting for him to choose

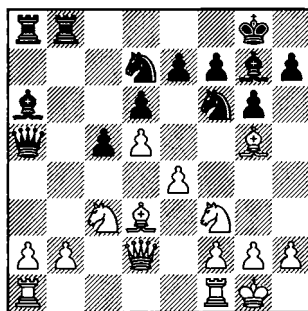
a development of his knight to the e2-square 11.♗ge2 ♙b6 12.0-0 ♗fb8 13.♗ab1±) 11...c4 12.0-0 ♗c5 13.♙e2 ♗d3 14.♗e1 ♙b6, I.Sokolov – Stellwagen, Hoogeveen 2004. In this position, White can take the pawn: 15.♗xd3 cxd3 16.♙xd3 ♙xb2 17.♗ab1 ♙a3 18.♗b3 ♙a5 19.♙xf6! ♙xf6 20.a3±

10.♙d3

After 10.♗f3, Black can make another useful move 10...♗bd7. In principle, he can also capture the pawn, because after 10...♙xa6 11.♙xa6 ♙xa6, White loses his castling rights, while the trade of the queens (12.♙e2) is in favour of Black, since he plays ♗bd7 and ♗fb8 and he exerts a powerful queenside pressure.

10...♗bd7 11.♗f3 ♙xa6 12.

0-0 ♗fb8



13.♙xa6

In case White refrains from castling and he plays for example 13.♗ab1, then Black can exploit the overburdening of the queen on d2, starting the hunt for his opponent's dark-squared bishop

Chapter 4

by playing 13...h6!? There might follow 14.♔h4 ♕xd3 15.♖xd3 g5 16.♕g3 ♖h5 and Black has a good counterplay.

13...♖xa6 14.♖c2

This move is quite purposeful. White frees the d2-square for his knight and in addition, his bishop may come back later to protect the queenside. White cannot create serious problems for his opponent with 14.♖ab1, because of 14...♖ab6 15.b3 h6! 16.♕xf6 ♕xf6 17.♖a4, Khanukov – Winter, Wiesbaden 2001, 17...♖b4= and Black's compensation for the sacrificed pawn is quite sufficient.

14...h6 15.♕d2 ♖g4

Black increases his control over the e5-square with this move and over the entire dark-squares complex as well. The juxtaposition of the bishop and the queen does not worry him, since the knight on c3 does not have any dangerous square to go to.

16.♖fe1

In case of 16.b3, Black can sacrifice temporarily a second pawn and he obtains an excellent position with the line: 16...c4! 17.bxc4 ♖c8 18.♖b3 ♖de5 19.♖xe5 ♖xe5=

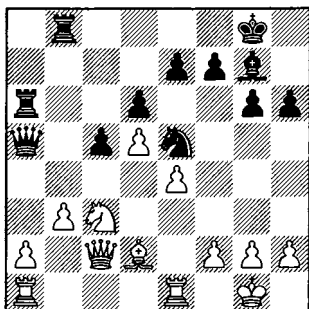
16...♖ge5 17.♖xe5 ♖xe5 18.b3
(diagram)

18...c4!

Black saves the day again with the same idea. It is essential for him not to allow his opponent to consolidate his queenside.

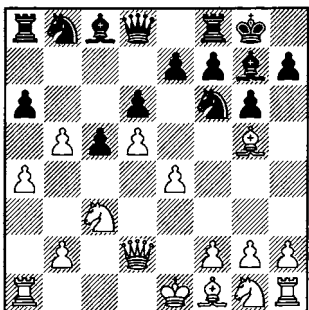
19.♖ab1

19.♖a4 ♖b5 20.♖ab1 ♖c8=



19...♖ba8 20.a4 cxb3 21. ♖xb3 ♖c4 – Black is a pawn down indeed, but he has an excellent position.

C2) 9.a4



White does not wish to lose a tempo for a move with his bishop on f1 just yet and he makes a useful defensive move instead. This plan can be regularly encountered in the Benko Gambit schemes.

9...♖a5 10.♕d3

After 10.f3 the game transposes to variation C4.

In case of 10.♖f3, Black follows with a typical combination:

1.d4 ♟f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♟g7 4.e4 d6 5.♟g5

10...axb5 11.♟xb5 ♟xe4! 12.♟xe4 ♟xb5 13.axb5 ♟xa1 14.♟e2 ♟xh1 15.♟xe7 ♟e8 16.♟g5 h6 17.♟f6 ♟xf6 18.♟xf6 ♟b1

After 10.♟a3 ♟b4, he regains his pawn by force: 11.♟d3 axb5 12.axb5 ♟xa3 13.bxa3 ♟xa3 14.♟ge2 ♟a1 (Black equalizes with 14...♟bd7, but he can already try to seize the initiative.) 15.♟d1 ♟bd7 16.0-0 ♟e5 17.♟ec3 h6 18.♟h4 ♟xd3 19.♟xd3 ♟a3∞ Milov – Lanka, Austria 2005.

10...axb5 11.♟xb5 ♟xd2

It is useless for Black to opt for 11...c4 12.♟c2.

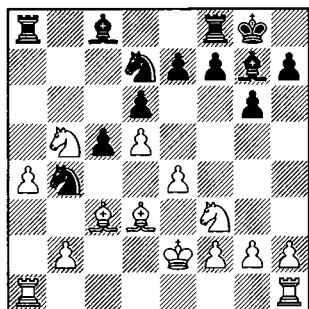
12.♟xd2 ♟a6 13.♟f3 ♟d7

This maneuver of the knight is just typical. Black prevents the pawn-break e4-e5 and he also opens the way for the march of his f-pawn.

14.♟c3 ♟b4

This move demonstrates the drawbacks of White's move nine, since Black's knight is perfectly placed on b4 eyeing the d5-pawn.

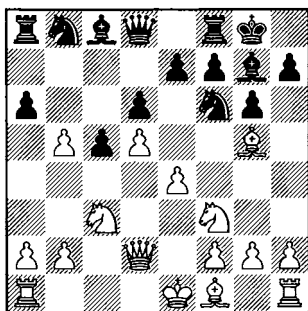
15.♟e2



15...f5!⇒

This is another typical resource for Black in the pawn-structure of the Benko Gambit. He undermines the support of his opponent's d5-pawn and he opens the f-file.

C3) 9.♟f3



9...♟a5 10.b6

In case of 10.bxa6 ♟xa6 11.♟xa6 ♟xa6 12.♟e2, Black organizes his counterplay according to the same scheme as in the variation we have just analyzed: 12...h6 13.♟f4 ♟fd7 14.♟d2 ♟xe2 15.♟xe2 f5! (You are familiar with this resource, aren't you?!) 16.h3 fxe4 17.♟e3 Holland – Hebden, London 1987 17...♟f6 18.♟c4 ♟a6 19.♟hd1 ♟c7 20.a3 ♟fb8 21.♟d2 ♟b5 – Black has obviously a powerful initiative.

White gives back his extra pawn with the move in the text, but he keeps the a-file closed.

10...♟bd7 11.♟d3

White achieves nothing much with 11.♟e2 ♟xb6 12.0-0 ♟a4=

11...♟xb6 12.0-0 ♟g4

White's pawn on a6 is still alive

Chapter 4

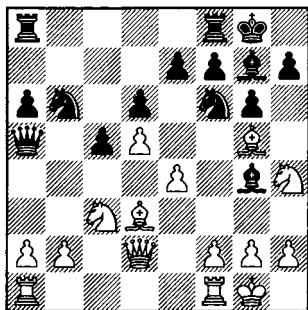
and Black cannot exchange the dark-squared bishops. He must find another task for his bishop.

13. ♖h4

Black's position is again preferable.

White creates no real problems for his opponent with the passive line: 13. ♖e1 ♕d7 14. ♖c2 ♖a4=

It is unfavourable for him to allow the exchange of Black's bishop on g4: 13. ♗f4 ♕xf3 14. ♗xf3 c4 15. ♕c2 (After 15. ♕e2 ♗b4 16. ♖ab1 ♖fc8, his position is again preferable.) 15... ♖ab8 16. ♖fd1 ♖bd7 17. ♖ab1 ♖e5 18. ♗e2 ♖b7 and Black exerts powerful pressure on the queenside.



13... ♖a4!

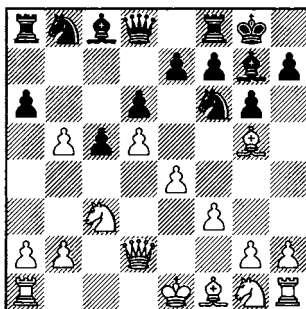
This is also a typical resource. Until a certain moment, the exchanges on the queenside are favourable for Black, since he enlarges the scope of action of his long-range pieces, including his queen, his rooks and his King's Indian bishop.

14. ♖xa4 ♗xa4 15. b3 ♗b4 16. ♗c2, Jussupow – Balashov,

Moscow 1983, 16... ♖fe8. Balashov retreated his bishop immediately to d7 (in order to try to trade it via the b5-square), but he could have postponed this for a while. White must retreat his knight in order to bring it back to action and therefore he must lose time to repel the enemy bishop from g4. 17. h3 ♕d7 18. ♕d2 (After 18. a4, Black has a strong reply – 18... e6 and he will create counterplay along the e-file. Now, he trades the light-squared bishops and he equalizes.) 18... ♗a3 19. ♖f3 ♕b5= – After the exchange of two couples of light pieces, White's slight material advantage becomes irrelevant.

C4) 9.f3

After this move, the game transposes definitely into the Sae-misch system.



9... ♗a5 10. a4

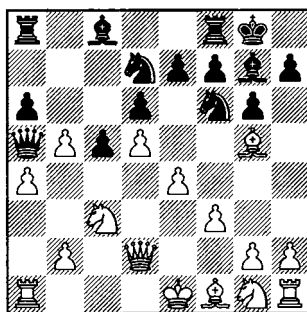
As a rule, White should not be in a hurry to capture 10. bxa6, for example: 10... ♖bd7 11. ♖b5 (This is a typical attempt to enter

an endgame with an extra pawn.) 11...♙xd2 12.♟xd2 ♙xa6 13.♞h3 (The most comfortable f3-square for White's knight has been occupied by a pawn, but he must develop his kingside somehow. The following exemplary variations show that after White's alternatives, Black obtains a good position in this complex endgame: 13.♟c3 ♜fb8 14.♟c2 c4 15.♞h3 ♟c5 16.♞f2 ♟d3!↑; 13.a4 ♞b6 14.♙e2 ♜ab8 15.b3 ♟fxd5 16.exd5 ♙xa1 17.♙xe7 ♟xd5 18.♙xd6 ♜bd8 19.♙xf8 ♟xf8 20.♞h3 ♙f6) 13... ♜fb8 14.a4 h6 15.♙xf6, Kelecevic – Mantovani, Switzerland 1996 (White should not be so greedy and he had better give back his extra pawn preserving the dark-squared bishop: 15.♙e3 ♞e8 16.♟c2 ♞e5 17.♞f2 ♙xb5 18.♙xb5 ♟c7=) 15...♙xf6 16.♜b1 ♞b6 17.b3 ♙c8 18.♞f2 c4!↑ – White was too busy keeping what he had acquired so laboriously, but Black seized firmly the initiative in the process.

We must also analyze the logical move 10.♙h6. The exchange of the powerful bishop on h6 is doubtlessly in favour of White, but he loses precious time and he is behind in development already. In answer to this, we can recommend to Black 10...♙xh6 (He should deflect White's strongest piece away from the queenside, which will soon need additional protection.) 11.♙xh6 ♞bd7. Black wishes to place his rook on b8 and

force his opponent to capture on a6 and then the knight goes to the important c4-square via e5, or b6. For example: 12.bxa6 (After 12.♞h3 ♜b8 13.♞g5 axb5 14.h4 ♜e8 15.h5 ♞f8 16.hxg6 fxg6 17.♙d3 c4 18.♙e2 b4 19.♞d1 c3, White's hasty attack reaches its dead end and Black increases the pressure effortlessly, Vasvari – Farkas, Hungary 2000.) 12...♞e5 13.♙d2 ♙xa6 14.f4 ♞c4 15.♙xc4 ♙xc4 16.♙d1 e6 17.dxe6 fxe6 18.♞ge2 d5 and Black has an excellent game for the sacrificed pawn, Bae – P.H.Nielsen, Gausdal 1999.

10...♞bd7



This is an important position, in which Black has a wide variety of plans for further actions.

C4a) 11.♞d1

C4b) 11.♞ge2

C4c) 11.♜a3

C4d) 11.♞h3

C4a) 11.♞d1 ♙d8!?

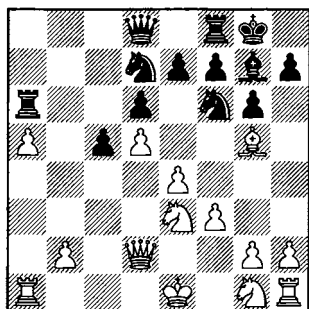
Black's queen was not so well placed on c7 and after the move

in the text, his pawn is protected after the knight on f6 moves. This trade of queens is bad for him now, since he cannot create any pressure along the a and b-files (White will support firmly his outpost on b5.) and the other plan – to bring the knight from d7 to b4 and to push e7-e6 is too difficult to accomplish.

12.a5

White is reluctant to give up the a-file: 12.♖c1 axb5 13.axb5 ♖b6 (Nimzowitsch understood long ago that the knight was an excellent blocker of passed pawns. Here it supports the attack against the d5-pawn.) 14.♙d3 e6 15.dxe6 (White must play this, otherwise his weak d5-pawn is bound to fall soon.) 15...♙xe6 16.♗e2 ♔d7 17.0–0 c4 (Black's game is easy and White should play accurately to maintain the balance.) 18.♙b1 ♜xb5 19.♗dc3 ♜a5 20.♙e3 ♜fd8 21.♗f4 ♗a4=

12...axb5 13.♙xb5 ♙a6 14.♙xa6 ♜xa6 15.♗e3



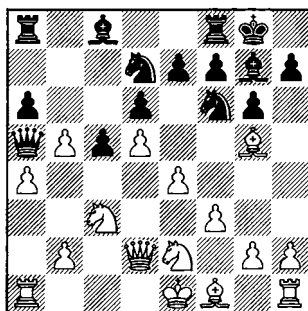
15...♙a8

Notice this manoeuvre. Black's queen increases the pressure against the a5-pawn and opens the way for the rook on f8.

16.♜a4 ♜b8 17.♗e2 ♗h5 18.♗c4 ♗e5=

After Black manages to trade the knight on c4, his queenside counterplay would be very dangerous.

C4b) 11.♗ge2



11...♗b6 12.♗c1

After 12.♗g3, White's knight is too far from the basic field of actions and this enables Black to provoke an immediate crisis. 12...axb5 13.♙xb5 ♙a6. This exchange is quite useful. Black needs to reduce the number of light pieces and to open files. 14.♜b1 ♙xb5 15.axb5, Rogers – Socko, Saint Vincent 2001, 15...♗fd7 16.0–0 ♗c4 17.♜e2 ♗xb2. This tactical strike has long become a simple technical resource. 18.♜xb2 ♙xc3 19.♜bb1 ♜fe8=

12.♜a2!?! looks attractive, leaving the rook on the a-file on a

protected square, so that White can capture later on b5 with his pawn. 12...♙c4 13.♙c2. He must play carefully, because of his considerable lag in development. (In case of 13.♙d3, Black follows with 13...♙b4 14.♙f2 axb5 15.♙xb5 ♙xa4+) 13...h6 14.♙c1 ♙d7 15.b3. White overlooks an elegant tactical strike. (After the routine line: 15.♙f4 ♙e5 16.♙d3, Black equalizes easily: 16...♙xd3 17.♙xd3 axb5 18.♙xb5 ♙xb5 19.axb5 ♙b4=) 15...♙xd5! This is a beautiful resource and if you see it, you must play it! (Meanwhile, it would be also good for Black to maintain the tension with 15...♙e5!?) 16.bxc4 (The least of evils for White seems to be 16.exd5 ♙f5 17.♙d1 ♙xc3 18.♙xc3 ♙xc3 19.♙f2 ♙e5 20.bxa6 ♙fb8=) 16...♙b4 17.♙d2 ♙xa2 18.♙xa2 ♙xa4 19.♙ec3. White had a hard task completing his development, but the knight on a2 is a sorry sight. 19...♙a5 20.♙b2 axb5 21.cxb5 ♙fb8 22.♙c4 ♙xb5+ Lutsko – Kornev, Kstovo 1994.

12...axb5

White must capture on b5 with a piece now.

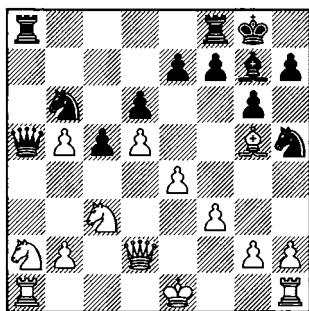
13.♙xb5 ♙a6 14.♙1a2

If White can refrain from capturing on a6, he should better do it: 14.♙xa6 ♙xa6 15.♙1e2 ♙c4 16.♙c2 h6 17.♙c1, Delaune – Kaufman, Washington 1997, 17...♙fb8=

14...♙xb5 15.axb5 ♙h5

Black must activate his King's Indian bishop.

He can follow the same idea in another fashion: 15...♙fe8 16.0–0 ♙fd7 (but not 16...e6 17.dxe6 ♙xe6 18.♙fb1 ♙fd7 19.♙d1± Dreev – I. Sokolov, Nussloch 1996) 17.b3 ♙d4 18.♙e3 ♙xc3 19.♙xc3 ♙xa1 20.♙xa1 ♙xa1 21.♙f2 ♙ea8=



16.♙b1

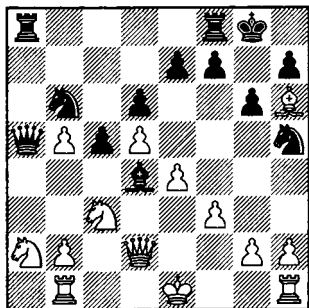
In case of 16.♙d1, Black has a typical combination, which we are already familiar with: 16...♙c4 17.♙e2 ♙xb2! 18.♙xb2 ♙xa2 19.♙xa2 ♙xc3 20.♙d2 ♙xd2 21.♙xd2 f6 22.♙h6 ♙a2 23.♙e3 ♙fa8+

Black can counter 16.0–0! with 16...♙d4 17.♙h1 ♙xc3 18.♙xc3 ♙xb5, with the idea ♙a2.

16...♙d4 17.♙h6

The following variations show that White has already lost his control over the position and he fails to consolidate. For example: 17.b3 f5 18.♙e3 (18.♙xe7 fxe4 19.fxe4 ♙f2 20.♙xf2 ♙xf2 21.♙xf2 c4 22.♙g5 ♙a7+) 18...fxe4 19.fxe4 (19.♙xd4 cxd4 20.♙xd4 exf3+) 19...♙e5+. White cannot castle and his queenside is in ruins. He

suffers all this just for a pathetic doubled extra pawn.



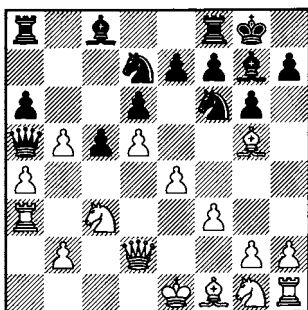
17...Rfd8!

This rook is perfectly placed here. Later it will be useful in the preparation of d5. The move 17...Rfe8 is not so good, for example: 18.b3 e6 19.dxe6 fxe6 (19...Rxe6?! 20.Rxe3 Rxe3 21.Qxe3 d5 22.b4± Ivanchuk – Kasparov, Linares 1997.) 20.Rxe3 e5 21.0-0 d5 22.exd5 Qxd5 (22...Rxd8 23.d6 Rxd6 24.Qh1 Qd5 25.b4 Qa3 26.Qxd4 cxd4 27.Qxd5 Rxd5 28.b6 Rb5 29.Qc1 Rxb6 30.Qd3 Qc3 31.Qe2±) 23.Qxd4 exd4 24.b4 Qd8 25.bxc5 dxc3 26.Qxc3 Qxc3 27.Qxc3 Qg5 28.Qc4 Qg7 29.f4±. White's pawns might turn out to be quite dangerous.

18.b3 e6 19.dxe6 fxe6 20.Rxe3 e5 21.0-0 d5± – Black has won a tempo in comparison to the previous line.

C4c) 11.Ra3

Gelfand tried this interesting idea, which is in fact typical for similar positions.



C4c1) 11...Rd5

C4c2) 11...Rb6

C4c1) 11...Rd5

Black prevents the development of White's knight on g1 and he provokes f3-f4, which will compromise his opponent's pawn-centre.

12.Rd2!

If White plays 12.f4?!, then he will need to give back the extra pawn: 12...Qd7 13.Qf3 Qb4 (We are familiar with this maneuver.) 14.Qd3 h6 15.Qh4 axb5 16.axb5 Rxa3 17.bxa3 Qxa3±

12...h6 13.Rd3

In case of 13.Qxf6 Qxf6 14.f4 Qd7 15.Qf3 Qb4 16.0-0 Qg7, Black's compensation for the pawn is sufficient, while after 13.Qxh6 Qxh6 14.Qxh6 Qb4 15.Qc1 c4 16.bxa6 Rxa6 17.Qd2 Qd7 18.Ra2 Rb8= White has considerable problems to develop his kingside

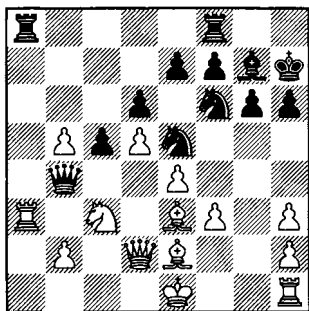
13...Qh7

Black fails to solve all his problems with 13...Qd7 14.bxa6 Rfb8 15.Qh3 Qb4 16.Qd1 Qc4 17.Qxb4

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♖c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♙g5

cx b4 18.♙a1±. White has closed one of the open files and now he has excellent prospects.

14.♖h3 ♙xh3 15.gxh3 axb5
16.axb5 ♖b4

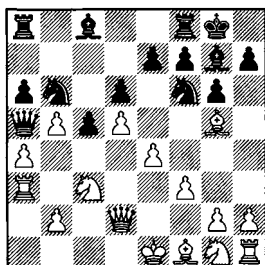


17.♖a2!

This is an important tactical nuance. The naïve move 17.♙a6, can be countered by Black with a standard plan for counterplay: 17...♖c4 18.♙xc4 ♖xc4 19.♖e2 ♖b4 20.0-0 ♖d7 21.♙fa1 ♙xa6 22.bxa6 ♙xc3 23.bxc3 ♖xc3 24.♙a2 ♙a8=

17...♖xb5 18.♙xb5 ♖xf3 19.♙e2 ♖xd2 20.♙xd2 ♖xe4 21.♙c2 ♙ab8 22.♙b3±

C4c2) 11...♖b6



12.♖c2

Now, Black can be positionally squeezed, so the value of every move increases considerably.

12...axb5

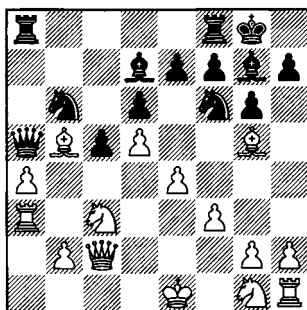
White is better after 12...e6 13.♙d2, or 12...♖bd7 13.♙d2.

13.♙xb5

White achieves nothing much after 13.axb5 ♖b4.

13...♙d7

Black's pieces should not hamper the movements of his queen, since after 13...♙a6 14.♙d2, he comes under a positional bind.



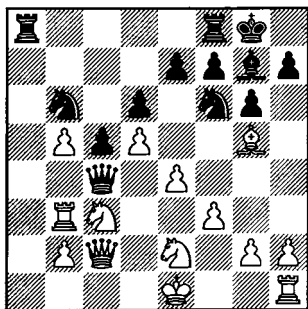
14.♖ge2!?

White has also played here 14.♙d2 ♖e8 15.♖ge2 ♖c7 (forcing White to clarify his intentions concerning the bishop on b5) 16.♙xd7 ♖xd7 17.♖b5 ♖xb5 18.♙xa5 ♖xa3, Gelfand – Ivanchuk, Monte Carlo 2007, 19.bxa3 ♙xa5 20.♙f2 ♙fa8 21.♖c3 ♙xc3 22.♖xc3 ♙xa4 23.♙a1 c4 and Black is not worse at all.

14...♙xb5 15.axb5 ♖b4 16.♙b3 ♖c4!

It is bad for Black to opt for 16...♖a5 17.0-0 ♖c4 18.♖d1 ♖e5

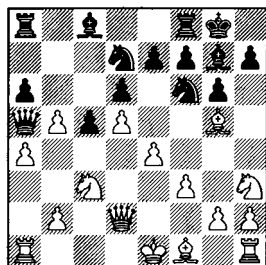
(18...♖b6 19.♖ec3 c4 20.♖a3 ♗b4 21.♖xa8 ♖xa8 22.♖e3 e6 23. ♔d1±) 19.♖e3 ♗b6 20.f4 ♖ed7 21.♖c4 ♗b7±, or 16...♖a1 17.♖f2 ♗xb3 18.♗xb3 ♖xh1 19.♖a4 ♖bd7 20.b6±



I will supply you here with a long exemplary variation, in which you will see Black's possible main ideas. 17.0-0 h6 18. ♔e3 ♖fd7 19.♔d1 ♖a7 20.♖g3. White's knight is headed for the d2-square in order to attack Black's queen. 20...♔d4! 21.♖f1 ♖e5 22.♖h1 g5 23.♖b1 (23.h3 f5 24.exf5 ♖xd5±) 23...♖fa8 24. ♖d2 ♗d3 25.♗xd3 ♖xd3 26. ♖e2 ♔xe3 27.♖xd3 ♔xd2 28. ♖xd2 ♖a4 29.♖g1 ♖b4 30.♖c3 ♖a5 31.♖f2 ♖a8± After Black regains his pawn, he has good winning chances.

C4d) 11.♖h3

The maneuver h3-f2 of White's king-knight is promising more than the straightforward move 11.♖e2.



11...♖b6

Black should not be in a hurry to exchange on b5: 11... axb5 12.♔xb5 ♔a6 13.0-0 ♖fb8 14.♗c2±

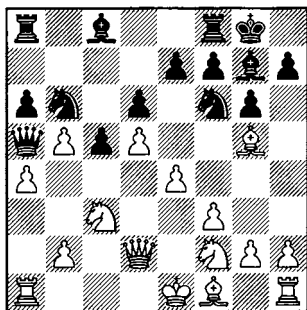
He can try here a spectacular line: 11...c4 12.♖f2 (12.♔xc4 ♖e5 13.♔e2 ♔xh3 14.gxh3 axb5 15.0-0 bxa4 16.♖xa4 ♗b6 17.♔e3 ♗b3 18.♖fa1 ♖xa4 19.♖xa4 ♖b8±; 12.♖a3 ♖c5 13.♔xc4 ♗b4 14.♔e2 ♖b3 15.♗d3 ♔xh3 16.gxh3 ♖d4 17.♖f2 ♖d7 18.bxa6 ♖e5 19.♗d2 ♖xe2 20.♗xe2 ♖c4±) 12...♗b4 13.♖a3 (In case of 13.b6, Black has the typical move for the Benko Gambit 13...a5.) 13...axb5 14.axb5 ♖xa3 15.bxa3 ♗xa3 16.♔xc4, Nikolaidis – Sofronie, Istanbul 2002. Black must continue here with 16...h6!? 17.♔e3 ♖g4! 18.♔d4 ♖ge5 19.♔e2 ♗b4 20.♔xe5 (this is forced) 20...♖xe5 21.♖a2 ♗b1. After this important intermediate move, White loses his b5-pawn and this leads to a drawish position: 22.♖d1 ♔d7 23.0-0 ♗b3 24.♖b4 ♖c4 25.♔xc4 ♗xc4 26.♖c6 ♗xb5 27.♖xe7 ♖h7=

12.♖f2

The capture 12.bxa6 cannot be good for White, as we have

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♙g5

already seen. For example: 12... ♙xa6 13.♟b5 ♙b7 14.♞xa5 ♞xa5 15.♟c3 ♞fa8 16.♙d2 c4 17.♞b1 ♟fd7 18.b4 cxb3 19.♞xb3, Drozdovskij – Urban, Dresden 2007, 19... ♙a6 20.♙xa6 ♞5xa6 21.♟e2 ♟c5 22.♞b4 ♟bxa4 23.♟xa4 ♞xa4 24.♞hb1 ♙e5±

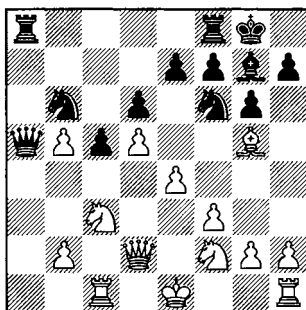


12...axb5

Black can always open a second front with 12...e6!?, but he must play very precisely, because he has already sacrificed a pawn. For example: 13.dxe6 ♙xe6 14.bxa6 (Black is quite OK after 14.♙h6 ♙xh6 15.♞xh6 ♞b4 16.a5 axb5 17.♟d3 ♞b3 18.♞a3 ♞c2 19.♟xb5 ♟c4 20.♞c3 ♞a4 21.♟c7, Lapcevic – Antic, Bar 2005, 21...♟xb2 22.♟xa8 ♟xd3 23.♞xd3 c4 24.♞xd6 ♞xa5 25.♞d2 c3 26.♞e3 ♞xa8) 14...♟c4 15.♙xc4 ♙xc4 16.♟b5! (This typical resource puts in doubt Black's move twelve.) 16...♞xd2 17.♟xd2 ♞xa6 18.♞hc1 ♙xb5 19.axb5 ♞b6 20.♞a6 ♞xb5 21.♞xd6 ♞xb2 22.♞c2 ♞xc2 23.♟xc2±

13.♙xb5 ♙a6 14.♞c1

White achieves little with 14. ♞a3 ♟c4 15.♙xc4 ♙xc4±
14...♙xb5 15.axb5



15...h6!?

This is the right time to question White's bishop about its intentions.

Black can also play the standard 15...♟a4 16.♟fd1 ♞fb8 17.h4 ♟xc3 18.♟xc3 ♞b4 and if White plays too actively 19.g4, as he did in the game Stefansson – Djurhuus, Reykjavik 1997, then Black sacrifices another pawn with 19... ♟d7 20.♙xe7 ♟e5 and he seizes the initiative for long.

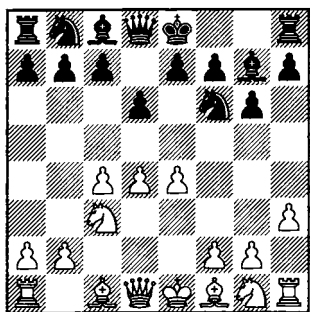
16.♙xh6

After the exchange of the knight 16.♙xf6 ♙xf6 17.♟g4, Black can sacrifice bravely one more pawn – 17...♙d4!±, creating numerous threats.

16...♟c4 17.♞g5 ♟h7 18.♞h4 ♙f6 19.♞h3 ♟xb2 20.f4 ♙xc3 21.♞xc3 ♞xc3 22.♞xc3 ♞fb8= – Black regains his b-pawn and he equalizes.

Chapter 5

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6
5.h3



This is a useful prophylactic move.

First, White takes the g4-square under control and Black would not have the possibility ♘g4 in answer to ♗e3, after ♘f3. The basic idea of the move is different, however. White usually advances g2-g4, following various set-ups of his pieces and begins a plan of squeezing the enemy on the kingside. These are the advantages of the move 5.h3, while its drawback is obvious too. White makes four pawn-moves out of his first five and the development of his pieces suffers because of this.

5...0-0 6.♗d3

White does not protect his pawn on d4 with a bishop on d3.

Meanwhile, he has lost a tempo for h3, therefore Black's plan is obvious – he must attack the d4-square.

It would be too straightforward for White to play 6.g4, he must develop his pieces after all. In answer to this, Black should better begin his standard queenside counterplay: 6...c5 7.d5 e6 8.♘ge2 exd5 9.exd5 (White lags considerably in development and an asymmetrical position is too risky for him: 9.cxd5 b5 10.♘g3 b4 11.♘ce2 ♖e8 12.♗g2 ♘fd7 13.a3 ♘a6 14.0-0 ♖b8 and Black had the initiative in the game Karolyi – V.Rajlich, Budapest 2001.) 9... ♘bd7 10.♘g3 ♖e8+ 11.♗e2 ♘f8 12.♗e3 a6 13.♙f1 b5 14.b3 b4 15. ♘a4 ♘e4 16.♘xe4 ♖xe4 17.♖b1 ♗d7 with excellent prospects for Black, Castillo – Estrada, Mar del Plata 1954.

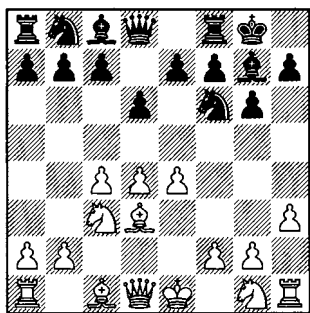
In fact, in response to 6.g4, Black has another attractive plan, connected with an offensive on the dark squares on the kingside: 6...e5 7.d5 ♘e8 8.♘ge2 ♗f6 9.♗h6 ♘g7 10.♙d2 ♗h4 11.♗g1 a5 12.♘g3 f6 13.♗e3 ♘a6 14.♗d3 ♗d7 15.

1.d4 ♖f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙d3

0-0-0 ♗c5 16.♙c2 a4? Tomic – Ilincic, Novi Sad 1995.

The move 6.♗ge2 is not flexible either, since White's plans became clear. He will have to play g4 and ♖g3 in order to complete the development of his kingside. Black can counter this with an interesting plan suggested by the famous German GM and theoretician Wolfgang Uhlmann: 6...e5 7.d5 a6!? We should mention that the knight on e2 has covered the diagonal of the bishop on f1 and Black can prepare quickly b7-b5. Naturally, he can continue with the more abstract plan – a5, ♖a6-c5 etc. avoiding for a while a direct confrontation.

8.g4 b5 9.g5 ♗h5 10.cxb5 axb5 11.♗xb5 f5 12.♗bc3 ♖a6 13.♙g1 ♗c5 14.f3 fxe4 15.♗xe4 ♗xe4 16.fxe4 ♖d7 17.a4 ♗f4 18.♙a3 c6! with an excellent compensation for the sacrificed pawn, Katalymov – Uhlmann, Bad Liebenzell 1996.



A) 6...e5

B) 6...♗c6

A) 6...e5

This straightforward move is quite possible.

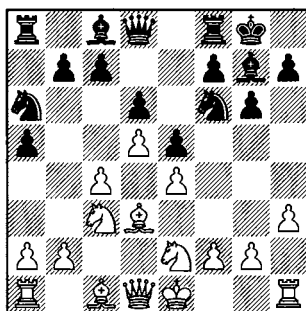
7.d5

7.♗ge2 ♗c6 – see variation **B** 6...♗c6.

7...a5 8.♗ge2

8.♙g5 ♖a6 9.♗ge2 c6 – see variation **A1**.

8...♖a6



A1) 9.♙g5

A2) 9.g4

A1) 9.♙g5

In case of 9.♙g5, Black should adhere to his basic plan with 9...c6 (After 9...♗d7 10.g4, there might arise a transposition to variation **A2**.) 10.0-0 cxd5 11.cxd5 ♗c5 12.♙c2 ♙d7 13.a3. In case of the prophylactic move 13.a4, Black's knight obtains an eternal outpost on b4. Now, he can enlarge the field of actions. 13...a4 14.♖d2 ♗e8 15.♙ae1 ♖a5 16.♗c1 f5. This is a standard situation. Black attacks his opponent's powerful centre from both sides and he obtains an excellent game. 17.exf5

Chapter 5

gxf5 18.f4 e4= Kovalenko – Kosti, Kaluga 2007.

9...c6

The set-up ♔d3 , ♕ge2 , h3 is aimed basically against Black's routine pawn-break f7-f5. He has great problems organizing it (White always has the resource g2-g4 up his sleeve.), therefore he should better play on the queen-side.

10.♖d2 ♔d7 11.0-0

11.dxc6 bxc6 12.♙c2 ♙e6 13.♙d1 h6 14.♙xh6 ♙xh6 15.♖xh6 ♙xc4 16.0-0, Nogueiras – Santa, Merida 2005, 16...♗e7∞ with a double-edged position.

11...♕c5 12.♙c2 cxd5

It is essential for Black to capture on d5, prior to the move ♖b6, in order to be able to play b7-b5 in answer to c4xd5.

13.exd5

After 13.cxd5, Black has already prepared 13...b5; it is not advisable for White to play 13.♕xd5? ♕fxe4±

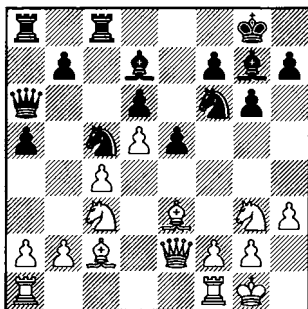
13...♖b6 14.♕g3

Black's plans are not impeded by the line: 14.♙e3 ♖a6 15.b3 b5, or 14.♙ab1, Soln – Ivanisevic, Ljubljana 2004, 14...♖a6 15.b3 b5 16.cxb5 ♙xb5 17.♕xb5 ♖xb5=

White's attempt to begin king-side actions with 14.♕h1 ♙ae8 15.f4 (It is better for him to opt for 15.♙e3 ♖a6 16.b3 b5 17.♙xc5 dxc5 18.cxb5 ♙xb5=) can be countered by Black with 15...e4 16.f5 ♙xf5 17.♙xf5 gxf5 18.♕d4 e3 19.♙xe3 ♕fe4±

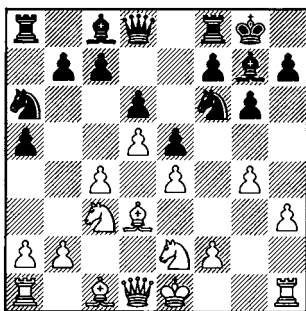
14...♙fc8 15.♙e3 ♖a6 16.♖e2

White increases his control over the b5-square. After 16.b3 b5= Black solves effortlessly all his opening problems.



16...♕e8 17.f4 f5 18.♕b5, Bareev – Gelfand, Linares 1994. Black must follow here with 18...e4 19.♕d4 ♕d3 20.b3 b5!±

A2) 9.g4



9...♕d7

He wishes to establish control over the dark squares on the king-side and this has become possi-

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♖c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙d3

ble due to the absence of White's knight on f3.

In case of 9...h5, White should better ignore this threat and continue his development with 10.♙g5 hxg4 11.hxg4 ♙xg4 12.♖d2 ♗e8 (After 12...♖c5 13.0-0-0 ♙h5 14.♗dg1, he creates a powerful kingside pressure.) 13.0-0-0 ♖c5 14.♗dg1 ♖d7 15.♖g3 ♙f3 16.♗h4. White's attack might become dangerous in the long run, for example: 16...♖g4 17.♙e2 ♙xe2 18.♖xe2 f6 19.♙d2 ♖xf2 20.♖h5!→ Gottsmann – Punzenberger, Austria 1999.

The gambit play 9...c6 10.♖g3 cxd5 (10...♖d7!?) 11.cxd5 ♖c5 12.♙e2 b5, can hardly be justifiable: 13.♙xb5 ♙a6 14.♙xa6 ♗xa6 15.♙e3± Anand – Borrás, Spain 2007.

Finally, White has only a slight advantage after 9...♖c5 10.♙c2 h5 11.♙g5 hxg4 12.hxg4 ♙xg4 13.♖d2 ♖c8 (or 13...a4 14.♗h4 ♖d7 15. 0-0-0 ♖h7 16.♙h6 ♙f6 17.♗h2) 14.♖e3 ♙xe2 15.♖xe2±

10.♙e3

After 10.♖g3 ♖dc5 11.♙b1, Korotkjevich – Oertel, Germany 2004, 11...♙f6, Black improves gradually his blockade on the flank: 12.♙h6 ♗e8 13.♖d2 ♙d7 14. 0-0 ♙h4 15.♗e1 f6!, followed by ♙g5 and equality.

10...♖dc5 11.♙c2

In answer to 11.♖g3, it is also good for Black to play 11...♖h4, with the idea to trade the dark-

squared bishops after for example: 12.♖d2 ♖xd3 13.♖xd3 ♙h6 with a comfortable game.

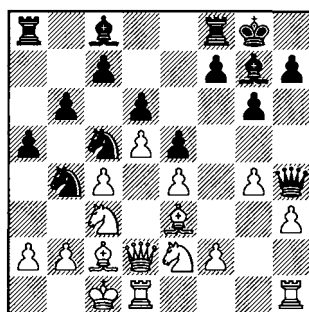
11...♖h4 12.♖d2 ♖b4

Naturally, it does not work for Black to play 12...♙xg4, in view of 13.♙g5 ♖h5 14.♖g3.

13.0-0-0

White cannot capture his opponent's queen after 13.♙g5 ♖xc2 14.♖f1 ♙h6 and Black's position is quite acceptable. The same happens in case of 13.♙b1 ♙f6.

13...b6



14.♖b1

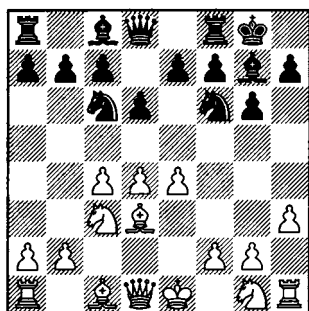
The all-powerful PC program "Rybka" asserts that after 14.♙g5 ♖xf2 15.♗df1 ♖g2, Black's queen is safe and White has nothing better than repeating moves with 16.♗fg1 ♖f3 17.♗f1.

14...♖xc2 15.♖xc2 f5

This undermining move is played just in time; otherwise, White would have established a positional bind on the kingside.

16.exf5 gxf5 17.♖g3 f4 18. ♙xc5 fxf3 19.fxf3 ♖xf3 20. ♖e4 ♖f4 21.♙f2 ♙d7=

B) 6...♖c6



This is the most precise move for Black. He provokes an immediate conflict in the centre.

7.♘ge2

It is only a transposition of moves after 7.♖f3 e5 8.d5 ♖d4 9.♖xd4. White can hardly afford leaving his opponent with a centralized knight. In case of 9.♗e3 ♖h5!?, or 9.♗g5 c5, Black has a comfortable game. It is again a transposition after 7.♗e3 e5 8.d5 (If 8.♖f3?! exd4 9.♖xd4 ♖e8, then the move h3 turns out to be not only useless, but harmful as well, since White will probably need to protect his e4-pawn with f3 and then his kingside will be in ruins. It is also not advisable for White to opt for 7.d5, since besides 7... ♖d4 8.♗e3 e5, transposing to a variation, which we will analyze later, Black has the additional attractive possibility – 8...c5!?

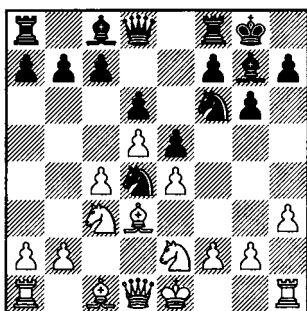
7...e5 8.d5

White must play this move. As I have already mentioned, the reduction of tension in the centre

after 8.♗e3 exd4 9.♖xd4 ♖e8 is advantageous to Black.

8...♖d4

After the passive line: 8...♖e7 9.g4 c6 10.♖g3 cxd5 11.cxd5 a6 12.♗e3 b5 13.b4±, White ends up with a slight, but stable edge, Perovic – Ivanovic, Belgrade 1999.



9.♗e3

White fails to win a pawn with the direct approach: 9.♖xd4 exd4 10.♖e2 ♖e8 11.♖c2, Guignonis – Degraeve Montpellier 1997, (but not 11.♗g5 h6) 11...♖d7 – Black's prospects are preferable in view of his control over the dark squares in the centre.

White must consider very carefully the possibility of leaving his opponent with a centralized knight in the centre on d4: 9. ♗g5?! c5 10.♖d2 a6 11.♖xd4 exd4 12.♖e2, Fuellgrabe – Happel, Ruhrgebiet 2000, and here Black had better think about seizing the initiative: 12...b5! 13.cxb5 axb5 14.♗xf6 (14.♗xb5? ♖xe4±) 14... ♖xf6 15.♗xb5 ♖e7 16.f3 ♖b8 17.a4

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙d3

f5 and his compensation for the pawn is more than sufficient.

9...♙h5 10.♙b1

White should not let his opponent consolidate on the d4-square with c5, for example: 10.♙d2 c5! 11.dxc6 bxc6 12.♙h6 ♙xh6 13.♙xh6 ♘e6 14.♙d1 ♙f6 Gerusel – Bilek, Bad Pyrmont 1970.

White might be checkmated in a beautiful fashion after 10.g4? ♙h4! 11.gxh5 ♘f3 12.♙f1 ♙xh3 13.♙xh3 ♙xh3#

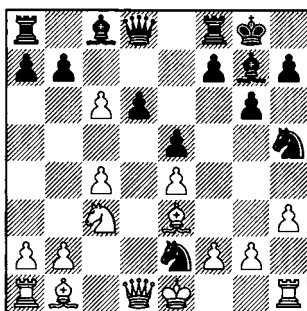
10...c5!?

This is exactly how Black should play! This move has become possible thanks to the intermediate capture on e2.

Black's alternative is 10...f5!? 11.♘d4 f4 (After the long semi-forced line: 11...exd4 12.♙xd4 ♙g5 13.♙xg7 ♙xg2 14.♙xf8 ♙xh1 15.♘d2 ♙xd1 16.♘d1 ♘xf8 17.exf5 ♙xf5 18.♙xf5 gxf5 19.♘e3, there arises an endgame with a minimal edge for White.) 12.♘e6 (White's knight cannot go back: 12.♘c2? ♙g5! 13.g4 fxe3 14.♘xe3 ♙h4 15.♙e2 ♘f4; it would be a disaster for him to continue with 13.♙c1 ♙xg2 14.♙f1 ♙xh3 15.♙d3 ♙h2! 16.♘d1 ♙xf1 17.♙xf1 ♘g3, or 14.♘d2 ♙xf2 15.♙e2 ♙xe2 16.♘xe2 f3+) 12...♙xe6 13.♙d2 ♙d7 followed by the prophylactic moves c6 and a5 on the queenside and preparing a pawn-onslaught on the kingside.

11.dxc6 ♘xe2!

Black does not have a full compensation for the pawn after 11... bxc6 12.♘d4 exd4 13.♙xd4 ♙xd4 14.♙xd4 ♘f4 15.g3 ♘e6 16.♙e3 ♙b8 17.b3±



12.♘xe2

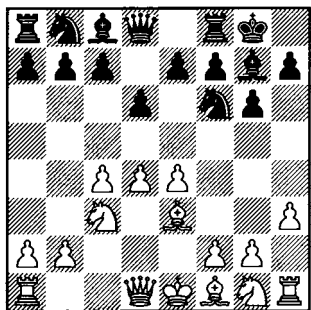
White must play prudently here. It is too risky for him to opt for 12.cxb7 ♘xc3 13.bxa8 ♙ ♘xd1 14.♘xd1 ♘g3! 15.fxg3 ♙g4 16.hxg4 ♙xa8, as well as 12.c7 ♙xc7 13.♘d5 ♙a5 14.♙d2 ♙c5 15.♙xe2 (White comes on the verge of losing after 15.♙e3 ♘d4 16.b4 ♙xc4 17.♙d3 ♘c2 18.♘d2 ♙xd5! 19.exd5 ♘xa1.) 15...♘f4!, and Black brings additional wood into the raging fire.

12...bxc6 13.0-0 ♙b8 14.♙d2 ♙e6 15.b3 ♙c7=

Black has a pawn majority in the centre, but he can hardly exploit this effectively, so the objective evaluation of the position is equality.

Chapter 6

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.h3 0–0 6.♙e3



This is a very reasonable set-up. It is a part of the opening repertoire of world champion number 12 – Anatolij Karpov.

A) 6...e5

B) 6...♘a6

C) 6...c5

A) 6...e5

This is what the order of moves with an early ♙e3 is aimed to cope with.

7.d5

White can exploit later the circumstance that he has not developed his knight on f3 yet. (The positions arising after 7.♘f3, will be analyzed in our chapter 8.).

Black is OK in the endgame

after 7.dxe5 dxe5 8.♙xd8 (He has no problems either with queens present on the board: 8.♙c2 ♘bd7 9.♘f3 c6 10.♙e2 ♙c7 11.0–0 ♖e8 12.♘d2 ♙f8 13.♙ac1 a5 14.g4 ♘c5 ♞ Russ – Moroder, Seefeld 2008.) 8...♙xd8, for example: 9.♘f3 ♘c6 10.♙e2 ♘d4 11.♙d1 c5 12.0–0 ♙e6 13.b3 ♙ac8, Heinatz – Pinter, Bern 2004.

7...♘a6

In case the game develops calmly like: 7...♘bd7 8.♘f3 ♘c5 9.♘d2 a5, White can realize his plan of establishing a positional bind on the queenside and he ends up with a stable advantage. 10.g4 c6 11.♙e2 ♘e8 12.♘b3 ♘d7 13.a4 f5 14.gxf5 gxf5 15.exf5 ♘df6 16.♙d3 ♘h8, Riazantsev – Svidler, Sochi 2008 and here White should take some measures against e4: 17.♘d2 cxd5 18.cxd5 e4 19.♘dx4 ♘xe4 20.♙xe4 ♙xf5 21.♙xf5 ♙xf5 22.♙d3. He has an extra pawn at the end of this line.

It is not advisable for Black to be in a hurry to play f7-f5, because of 7...♘fd7 8.g4 f5 9.exf5 gxf5 10.gxf5, Karpov – Hansch, Germany (simul) 2007, 10...♘c5

11.♙ge2 (You see now that White has kept his knight on g1 quite sensibly, because it will be very troublesome for the opponent of the g3-square.) 11...♙xf5 12.♘g3 ♙g6 13.h4±. White's initiative against Black's compromised kingside can turn soon into a dangerous attack.

In comparison to the variation we have just analyzed, Black cannot change much if he retreats his king's knight to another square – 7...♘e8 8.♙d2 (It is also good for White to try the straightforward line: 8.g4 f5 9.gxf5 gxf5 10.exf5 ♙xf5 11.♙ge2 ♙h4 12.♘g3 ♙g6 13.♙g4 ♙xg4 14.hxg4 ♘d7 15.0-0-0 ♘ef6 16.♙h4 ♘c5 17.g5± Zablotsky – Bogachkov, Kazan 2007.) 8...f5 9.f3 ♘d7 10.0-0-0 a6 (It is stronger for Black to play 10...f4, building up a fortress on the kingside, since if he sacrifices a pawn, he fails to create any real threats against the enemy king just yet.) 11.g4 fxe4 12.fxe4 b5 13.cxb5 axb5 14.♙xb5 ♙a6 15.♙xa6 ♙xa6 16.g5± Gorovets – Mokriy, Minsk 2006.

The line: 7...c6 8.♘f3 a5 9.♘d2 ♘a6, leads to positions, which we have analyzed in our Chapter 8. (after the move-order 6.♘f3 e5 7.d5 a5 8.♙e3 ♘a6 9.♘d2 c6).

In case of 7...a5, White has prepared 8.c5, with the idea of exploiting later the premature weakening of the b5-square. 8...♘a6 (The direct counter strike 8...c6 is interesting indeed, but White

can avoid complications and continue with his development in order to make use later of the positional weaknesses of his opponent on the queenside, for example: 9.dxc6 ♘xc6 10.♘f3. White avoids capturing on d6 and he develops simply his knight, controlling the central d4-square. 10...dxc5 11.♙xc5 ♙e8 12.♙b5 ♘d7 13.0-0 ♘d4. The position has not been stabilized yet and Black must try to find some tricks here. 14.♙xd7 ♘xd7 15.♘xd4 ♘xc5 16.♘db5 ♙f8 17.♘d5 ♙c8 18.♙f3 ♙c6 19.♙ad1 ♙h4 20.♙fe1± Izoria – Fedorov, Moscow 2006.) 9.cxd6 cxd6 (In the next game the Ukrainian GM Evgenij Miroshnichenko tried to play in a gambit style 9...♙xd6 10.♘f3 c6 11.dxc6 ♙e7. The ex-world champion avoided accepting the gift and soon he started exploiting his opponent's positional weaknesses: 12.♙c4! bxc6 13.0-0 ♘c5 14.♙c2 ♘fd7 15.♘a4± Karpov – Miroshnichenko, Sochi 2005.) 10.♘f3 ♘c5 (Black can go the c5-square with his other knight, but he fails to build up a impenetrable fortress on the queenside anyway: 10...♘d7 11.♙c1 ♘dc5 12.♙xa6 ♘xa6 13.♙b3 ♘b4 14.0-0 ♘d7 15.a3 ♘d3 16.♙c2 a4 17.♙c4 ♘f4 18.♙xf4 exf4 19.♙b4±) 11.♙xc5 dxc5 12.♙b5 a4, Khenkin – Manca, Reggio Emilia 2006, 13.0-0 a3 14.b3±

8.g4

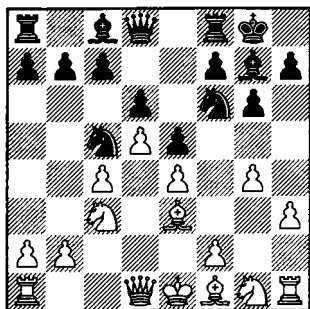
In case of 8.♙c2 (in order to counter 8...♘c5 with 9.b4) Black

Chapter 6

plays 8...♖h5, followed by f7-f5, while against 9.g4, he has the resource 9...♗f4.

About 8.♗d3 ♖c5, or 8.♗f3 ♖h5 – see variation **C3** (6...♗a6).

8...♗c5



9.♖c2

White should protect his e4-pawn with his queen, leaving his light-squared bishop aside for the time being. It can be developed later to e2 in order to protect the g4-pawn and it prevents the undermining move b7-b5 from the f1-square.

It is not advisable for White to opt for 9.♗g2 in view of 9...a5 (This prophylactic is necessary, otherwise White will repel the knight with the move b2-b4.) 10.♗ge2 h5 (It is also good for Black to continue with 10...c6 11.♗g3 cxd5 12.cxd5 a4 13.♖d2 ♖a5 14.0-0 b5. He has realized his plan and he has seized the initiative on the queenside. 15.♖ac1 ♗a6 16.♖fd1 ♖fc8 17.f3 ♗fd7 18.♗f1 b4 19.♗b1 ♗xf1 20.♗xf1 ♗f6 21.♖e2 ♗h4 22.♗h1 a3 23.bxa3 bxa3 ♞Za-

blotsky – Chuprov, Krasnoyarsk 2007.) 11.♖d2 (White is reluctant to play 11.f3, while his bishop is on g2 and after 11.g5 ♖h7 12.h4 f6, Black opens advantageously the f-file, therefore White decides to sacrifice a pawn) 11...hxg4 12.♗g3 c6 13.0-0-0 cxd5 14.cxd5 a4 15.hxg4 ♖xg4 16.♗xc5 dxc5 17.f3 ♗f6! (This is an important intermediate move after which Black seizes the initiative indefinitely.) 18.♗b1 ♗g5 19.♖e2 ♖e3 ♞Zablot-sky – Fedorov, Voronezh 2007.

9...a5 10.♗ge2 c6 11.♗g3 ♗d7

Black is preparing patiently the undermining pawn-break b7-b5, since after the transfer of White's knight to g3, Black's plan with f7-f5, would not work, so he has nothing else to do.

12.♗e2 cxd5 13.cxd5 a4

This is a typical resource, Black enlarges the field of actions on the queenside and he frees the a5-square for his queen.

14.♖d1

White's queen, runs away from the open file, on which the enemy rook will soon appear and it supports the g-pawn in case Black tries the counter strike h3-h4-h5.

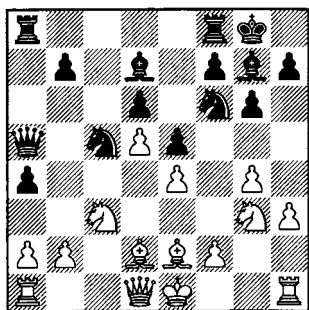
14...♖a5 15.♗d2

(diagram)

15...♖b6

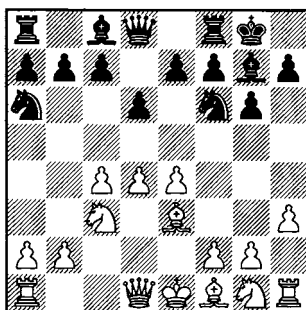
The following spectacular line for Black would not work: 15...a3 16.b3 ♗h6!?, in view of 17.♗xh6 ♖xc3 18.♗d2 ♖b2 (Black would not change much with 18...♖d4

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙e3



superior after this, mostly thanks to his space advantage.

B) 6...♘a6!?



19.f3 ♘d3 20.♙xd3 ♗xd3 21.♙g5) 19.f3 ♗fc8 20.0-0 ♘e8 21.♗f2±. White has coped with his opponent's ill-prepared assault and he has stabilized the position.

16.♗b1 ♗fc8 17.♙f1

It is sensible for White to evacuate his king away from the centre, while he should better leave his rook on the h-file, where it might be handy in the future. It will not work for him to play immediately 17.h4?, because of 17...♘xg4! 18.♙xg4 ♘d3 19.♙e2 (19.♙f1 ♗f2#) 19...♙xg4 etc.

17...♗d8 18.h4 ♗ab8 19.f3 b5

White has failed to occupy the b5-square and Black succeeds in creating counterplay.

20.♗c1 b4 21.♘b1 ♗b6 22.♙g2 ♙b5 23.♗f1 ♙xe2 24.♗xe2 ♘e8, Dinstuhl – Sieglen, Bad Godesberg 1991, **25.♙e3±**. White's knight on b1 will join the actions soon (via d2 to c4), after which Black's counterplay on the queenside will reach its dead end. White's prospects in the centre and on the kingside are evidently

After this move, Black exploits in principle the plan connected with e7-e5, but he preserves the possibility c7-c5 just in case.

B1) 7.g4

B2) 7.♘f3

B3) 7.♙d3

Black should better counter 7.♘ge2 with 7...c5. Here after 8.g4, there arises a transposition to line C1. In case White closes the centre with 8.d5, then Black continues with the standard pawn-break 8...e6 and he obtains a good counterplay, for example: 9.♘g3 h5 10.♙e2 exd5 11.exd5 ♗b6 12.♗d2 h4 13.♘ge4 ♘xe4 14.♘xe4 ♗xb2 15.♗xb2 ♙xb2 16.♗d1 ♙f5 17.♘xd6 ♙c2 18.♙d2 ♙xd1 19.♗xd1 b6± Raičević – Lentze, Cattolica 1989.

B1) 7.g4!? c5

This is a typical case. It is usually reasonable for Black to open

Chapter 6

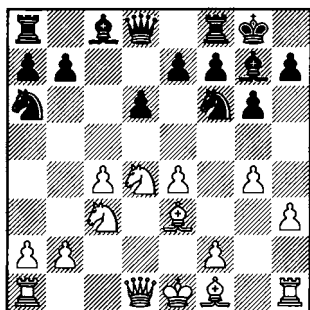
the queenside in answer to the compromising of White's kingside.

8. ♖ge2

White fails to block the position effectively: 8.d5 e6 9.♗g2 exd5 10.cxd5, Mateo – Moreno, Madrid 2007 and here the move 10...b5!↑ would lead to complications favourable for Black.

8...cxd4 9. ♖xd4

In case of 9.♗xd4 ♖a5 10.♖g3, Sulava – Cebalo, Asti 1998, Black transfers with tempo his knight on a6 to its perfect square – c6 and he establishes control of the dark squares in centre: 10...♖b8! 11.♖d2 ♖c6 12.♗e3 ♖d7



9...♖d7!?

This is a new idea.

After 9...♗d7 10.♗g2 ♖c8 11.b3 ♖c5 12.0–0 a6 13.♖c1 e5?! Black has his weaknesses just like his opponent. Still, the vulnerability on d6 creates certain problems for him. For example: 14.♖de2 (This is more reasonable for White than 14.♖c2 ♗c6 15.f3 ♖e6 16.♖d2 ♖e8 17.♖d5 ♗xd5 18.♖xd5 ♖e7

19.♖d2 ♗f6 20.♖b4 ♖8c7 21.♖cd1 ♖fd8= Romero Holmes – Illescas, Pamplona 2003.) 14...♗c6 15.♖g3 ♖e6 16.♖d2 ♖a5 (Black would not change anything with 16...♖f4 17.♖fd1.) 17.♖fd1 ♖fe8 18.b4!±

10. ♗g2 ♖e5 11. ♖e2 ♗e6

It is sensible for Black to provoke the weakening move b2-b3. His not afraid of the exchange of the e6, since White cannot attack the e6-pawn effectively and the d5 square will be reliably covered.

12.b3 ♖c5 13.0–0 ♖c6

Black should strive for exchanging pieces in order to neutralize his opponent's space advantage.

14.♖ad1 ♖a5 15.♖d5 ♗xd5 16.exd5 ♖xd4 17.♗xd4 ♗xd4 18.♖xd4 ♖fe8

Black's king only looks helpless, while in fact his queen and knight can quickly offer a helping hand. White can hardly attack effectively the e7-pawn and the assault with the f2-pawn is too risky. In that case, Black's knight can occupy the e5-outpost. He also can employ a plan connected with b5. We can evaluate the prospects of both sides as approximately equal.

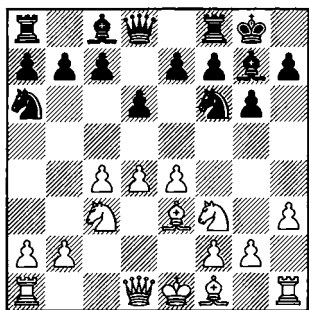
B2) 7. ♖f3

(diagram)

7...e5

The preparatory move 7...♖e8 includes a loss of time and that would be very important even in

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙e3



a closed position: 8.♙e2 e5 9.dxe5 dxe5 10.c5 (White occupies additional space and he emphasises the awkward placement of the knight on a6. 10...♘h5 11.0-0 ♘f4 12.♙xa6 (Black's bishop-pair cannot compensate fully his numerous pawn weaknesses.) 12...bxa6 13.♙e1 ♖b8 14.b3 ♘e6 15.♙d5 ♙b7 16.♙c4 ♘h8, Krush – Efimenko, Montreal 2005, 17.♙ad1±

B2a) 8.d5

B2b) 8.dxe5

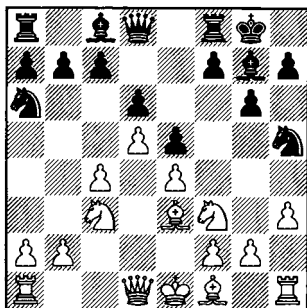
In case White allows the exchange on d4, then Black equalizes easily, since he leads in development anyway and he has open files for his pieces.

8.♙d3 exd4 9.♙xd4 ♘b4 10.0-0 ♙e8 11.♙e1 c5 12.♙e3 ♙b6 13.♙e2 ♙e6 14.♙c1 ♙ad8 15.b3 ♘xd3 16.♙xd3 a6± Kantsler – Yurtaev, Frunze 1985.

8.♙e2 exd4 9.♘xd4 ♙e8 10.f3 c6 11.♙d2 ♘c7 12.0-0-0 d5 13.♙g5 dxe4 14.fxe4 ♘e6 15.♘xe6 ♙xd2+ 16.♙xd2 ♙xe6± Schmitz – van Der Veen, Dieren 2003.

B2a) 8.d5 ♘h5

Black wishes to prepare f7-f5.



9.♘h2

White is eyeing the knight of h5 preventing the accomplishment of Black's plan for the time being.

In general, it is essential for White to choose the right square for the retreat of his knight. Statistically speaking, he plays more often ♘h2, maybe in order to justify the move h2-h3. Meanwhile, even after the more natural retreat 9.♘d2, Black builds up his counterplay according to the same scheme with 9...♙e8.

1) After 10.♙e2, Black's knight runs away from the attack: 10...♘f4 11.♙h2 f5 12.f3 ♙e7 13.♙f2 ♘c5± Kursova – Kochyev, St. Petersburg 1997.

2) 10.♘b3 f5 11.exf5 gxf5 12.♙e2 ♘f6 13.f4 exf4 14.♙xf4 ♘h5 15.♙h2 f4 16.0-0 ♙e3 17.♙f2 ♘g3± Izeta – Milos, Pamplona 1991.

3) 10.g3 f5 11.exf5 gxf5 12.♙e2 ♘f6 13.♙g1 (13.♙g5, Krogius –

Salo, Jyvaskyla 1991, 13...♖g6!? 14.h4 h6 15.h5!? ♖f7 – after 15... ♖xg5?! 16.♟f3 ♖g4 17.♞h4, Black's compensation for the queen is insufficient – 16.♟e3∞) 13...♟h8 14.♟b3 ♖g6 15.f4 ♟e4≠ Akesson – Hellers, Naestved 1988.

It is too slow for White to play 9.♟g1, for example: 9...♖e8 10.♟e2 ♟f4 11.♟f3 f5 12.g3 fxe4 13.♟xe4 ♟f5 14.♞h2 ♟b4 15.f3 ♟h5 16.a3 ♟a6 17.g4 ♟xe4 18.♟xe4 ♟f6 and Black's chances are at least equal, Andonov – Korobov, Sautron 2003.

Finally, White can leave his knight of f3, but Black can still continue with the same plan. 9.a3 ♖e8 10.b4 f5 11.♞c1 f4 12.♟d2 c5 13.dxc6 bxc6 14.♟d3 ♟h8 15.♖e2 ♟c7 16.b5 c5 17.♟d5 ♟e6 18.a4 ♟f6 19.a5 ♟d8 20.a6 g5 21.♟d1 ♟f6≠ Bewersdorff – Timoshenko, Mainz 1995.

9...♖e8 10.♟e2 f5 11.exf5

Black is better after 11.♟xh5 gxh5 12.♟f3 fxe4 13.♟d2 ♖g6 14.♖e2 ♟f5 15.0–0–0 ♟b4 16.♞dg1 c6, Anastasian – Neverov, Minsk 1990.

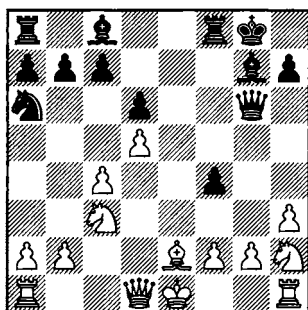
11.0–0 ♟f6 12.exf5 gxf5 13.f4 exf4 14.♟xf4 ♟c5 15.♟b5 ♖e7 16.♟d4 ♟fe4 17.♟hf3 ♟d7 18.♞e1 a5≠ Grunberg – Nevednichy, Romania 1994.

11...♟f4 12.♟xf4

White wins a pawn, but Black seizes the initiative 12.0–0. For example: 12...♟xf5 13.♞e1 ♖f7 14.♟f1 ♟xh3 15.gxh3 ♟xh3 16.♟g2 ♟xf2 17.♖b1, C.Hansen –

Kasparov, Svendborg 1990 and here if we trust the PC programme “Rybka”, Black can force a perpetual with 17...♟h6 18.♟xh6 ♖d7 19.♟xf8 ♞xf8 20.♟f3 ♖h3 21.♟xf2 ♖xf3. Kasparov chose something else 17...e4, but the game ended in a draw anyway after a sharp play not devoid of mistakes.

12...exf4 13.fxg6 ♖xg6↑



Black has two wonderful bishops, an active queen and White has great problems castling. In the game Akopian – Hernandez, Linares 1996, the opponent's agreed to a draw.

14.♟f1 ♟f5 15.♟f3 ♟f6 16.♟d4 ♟xd4 17.♖xd4 ♟b4 18.♞c1 ♞ae8 19.♟g4 ♟c2 20.♟xf5 ♖xf5 21.♖d2 ♟e3 22.♟g1 ♟xc4 23.♖c2 ♖h5. Possibly, Black's play can be improved and in the final position he could have tried to play on for a win.

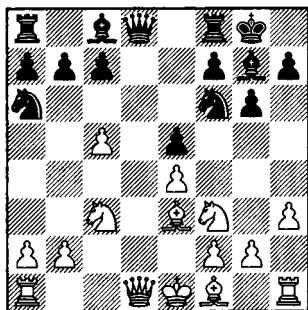
B2b) 8.dxe5

This attempt to occupy space on the queenside is not dangerous for Black.

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙e3

8...dxe5 9.c5

The next line seems harmless for Black: 9.♙xd8 ♙xd8 10.a3 b6 11.b4 ♙b7 12.c5 bxc5 13.bxc5 ♘b8 14.♘d2 ♘c6 15.♙b1 ♙ab8 16.♘b5 ♘d4+ Nikolic – Ilincic, Yugoslavia 1993, or 9.a3 c6 10.♙e2 ♘h5 11.♙c2 ♘f4=



B2b1) 9...♘b4

B2b2) 9...b6

B2b3) 9...♙xd1

B2b1) 9...♘b4

This is the sharpest line for Black with queens present on the board. White's prospects look somewhat preferable, since he can cope with his lag in development, preserving his pressure on the centre and on the queenside.

10.♙a4 a5 11.♙d1 ♙e7

In response to 11...♙e8, White has the powerful resource 12.♙b5! c6 13.♙e2 ♘h5 14.a3 ♘a6 15.♙xa5 ♘f4 (Black's compensation for the pawn is insufficient, but he can still create problems for White's king.) 16.0-0 ♘xe2 17.♘xe2 f5 18.

♙d6 f4 19.♙d2 g5 20.♙c3! (20.♙c1 g4 21.hxg4 ♙xg4 22.♙c3 ♘h8 23.♙cd3 ♙f7 24.♙c3 ♙h5 25.a4 ♙g8 26.♘f1 ♘c7= Karpov – Istratescu, Bucharest 2005.) 20...g4 21.hxg4 ♙xg4 22.♙d1±

Black provoked interesting complications with 11...♙d7 12.♙b3 ♙e8 13.♙c4 ♘xe4?! Still after 14.♙xd7! ♘xc3 15.♙xf7 ♘d3 16.♙xd3 ♙xf7 17.bxc3 a4 18.♙c4 ♘h8 19.♙e4 c6 20.h4± the evaluation of the position has become perfectly clear. White had a great advantage in the game Karpov – Golubev, Odessa 2008.

12.a3 ♘c6 13.♙e2 ♙d7 14.♙c2 ♙fd8 15.0-0 ♙e6 16.♙b5 ♘a7

White's game is simple and natural. He succeeds gradually in squeezing his opponent.

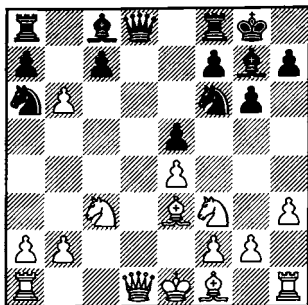
17.♙a4 ♙c4 18.♙fe1 c6 19.♙b3 ♙e6 20.♙xe6 ♙xe6 21.♙xd8 ♙xd8 22.♙a4± Radjabov – Milov, Warsaw 2005.

B2b2) 9...b6!?

Black's enemy number one is White's c5-pawn and he wishes to get rid of it outright.

10.cxb6

After 10.♙a4 ♘xc5 11.♙xc5 bxc5 12.♙d1 ♙e7, Black's game is quite acceptable, Kukov – Spasov, Plovdiv 2008. His queenside pawn-structure has been compromised, but he has an extra pawn and open files and diagonals for his rooks and bishops.



10...Qxd1 11.Exd1 axb6 12. Qc4 Qb7 13.Qd3 Rfe8 14.a3 Qf8 15.Qb5 c6 16.Qe2 Qc5=
Karpov – Kasimdzhanov, Spain 2007. Black has realised his plan with precision and he has equalized. There are just a few games with the move 9...b6 and only further tournament practice will show its defects if at all.

B2b3) 9...Qxd1

Black has a more straightforward way to equality, connected with a trade of queens and then knights.

10.Exd1 Qb4 11.Ed2

11.Qc4? Qc2+ 12.Qe2 Qxe3 13.fxe3 Qd7 14.b4 c6 15.Rhf1 Qf6 16.Qd2 Qe7 17.Qd3 a5 18.a3 b6+ Crouch – Tkachiev, London 1994.

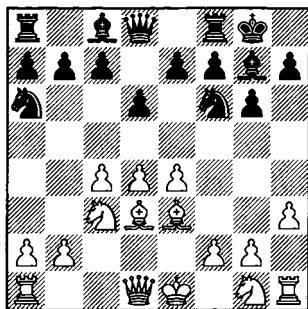
11...Qe6 12.a3 Qa2

Black exploits the fact that his opponent's e4-pawn needs protection and he provokes a favourable exchange.

13.Qxa2 Qxa2 14.Qd3 Rfd8 15.0-0 Exd3 16.Exd3 Qc4 17. Qxe5 Qxd3 18.Qxd3 Qxe4=

Markus – Kotronias, Vrnjacka Banja 2006.

B3) 7.Qd3



7...e5

The following game shows that is still sensible for Black to wait a bit with determining the pawn-structure in the centre: 7...Qe8 8.Qge2 (8.Qf3!?) 8...e5 (Here, when White's king's knight cannot go along the route f3-g5-e6, the plan with e7-e5, followed by f7-f5 is quite sensible.) 9.d5 Qh5 10.Qd2 f5 11.exf5 gxf5 12.Qg5 e4 13.Qc2 Qb4 14.g3 f4+ Lutsko – Golubev, Odessa 2008.

8.d5 Qc5

In case of 8...Qd7, White must prevent f7-f5 with 9.g4 (Black should not be afraid of 9.a3 f5 10.b4 Qf6 11.Qf3 c5 12.Qb1, draw, Khenkin – Efimenko, Subotica 2008.) 9...Qdc5 10.Qc2 f5 11.a3 (White exploits the fact that Black's knight on a6 is misplaced at the moment and he cannot play a7-a5.) 11...fxe4 12.Qxe4 Qb8 (After 12...Qxe4 13.Qxe4 b6 14.b4,

1.d4 ♟f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♟g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♟e3

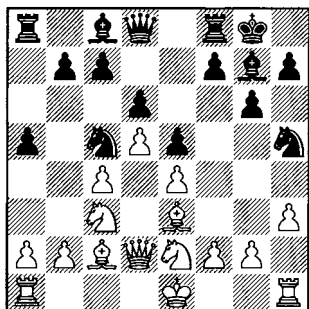
Black will have great problems to bring his knight into the actions, for example: 14...♟b7 15.♟e2 c6 16.dxc6 ♟xc6 17.♟2c3 ♟c7 18.0-0 d5 19.cxd5 ♟xd5 20.♟xd5 ♟xd5 21.♟c1±) 13.b4 ♟xe4 14.♟xe4 b5 (This looks smart, but it is still insufficient for equality.) 15.cxb5 ♟xb5 16.♟e2 ♟b8 17.♟2c3 ♟b7 18.0-0 ♟h4 19.♟g2 ♟h6 20.♟d2± Miroshnichenko – Lutsko, Minsk 2007.

9.♟c2 a5 10.♟d2

10.g4 ♟d7 11.♟ge2 ♟e8 12.♟d2 f5 13.gxf5 gxf5 14.exf5 ♟h4 15.b3 ♟xf5 16.♟xf5 ♟xf5 17.♟g3 ♟f7 18.0-0-0 ♟h8± Potapov – Schepetkova, Vladimir 2008.

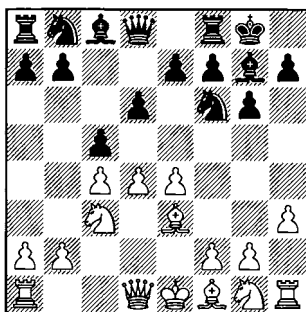
This is a precise move aimed at 10...c6, which now White can counter with 11.dxc6 bxc6 12.0-0-0 and Black can hardly protect his d-pawn. The fight would be very interesting after 10.♟ge2 c6 11.a3 cxd5 12.cxd5 ♟d7 13.b4 axb4 14.axb4 ♟a6 15.♟b1 ♟h5 16.♟d2 ♟c8 17.g3 ♟c4 18.♟d1 f5 19.♟d3 ♟c8∞ Gerusel – Beckemeier, Germany 1983.

10...♟h5 11.♟ge2



11...f5 12.exf5 ♟xf5, Bets – Fedoseev, Peterhof 2007, **13.♟xf5 gxf5 14.g4** (White establishes control over the e4-square after this important resource.) **14...fxg4 15.hxg4 ♟f4 16.♟xc5 dxc5 17.♟g3±**. Black cannot threaten seriously the enemy king, while his bishop might be endangered after one of White's knights occupies the e4-square. Black should possibly play here 17...e4, giving back a pawn deliberately, with the idea to place the bishop of d4. White can however, deprive his opponent of this resource starting with 17.♟e4.

C) 6...c5!?



Black plays analogously to the Averbakh system, which we will deal with in the second part of our book. The difference is that here White has a pawn on h3, instead of a bishop on e2, while Black's pawn is not on h6.

C1) 7.♟f3

C2) 7.dxc5

But not 7.e5, in view of 7...♗e8 8.dxc5 ♗xe5±

In case of 7.d5, Black can sacrifice a pawn: 7...b5 (7...e6!?) 8.cxb5 a6 9.bxa6 ♖bd7 10.♖d2 ♖a5. The following game shows that the Benko Gambit is quite applicable here for Black (White has played some not so useful moves like h3 and ♗e3.) 11.♞c1 ♗xa6 12.♗xa6 ♖xa6 13.b3 ♗e5 14.♞d1 c4 15.♗ge2 ♖d3 16.♙f1 ♖b4± Zablotsky – Kryakvin, Krasnoyarsk 2007.

C1) 7.♗f3

White plans to transfer the game to the Maroczy system of the Sicilian defence.

7...cxd4

Black has also tried in practice 7...♖a5, but I do not think this is reasonable. For example: 8.♗d3 (In case of 8.♖d2 ♖c6 9.d5, Black's knight is deployed in the centre in a typical fashion – 9...♖d4! It is not good now for White to play 10.♖xd4 cxd4 11.♗xd4 ♖xe4! 12.♖xe4 ♖xd2 13.♖xd2 ♗xd4, or 11.♖xd4? ♖xe4! 12.♖xe4 ♗xc3, while after 10.♗xd4 cxd4 11.♖b5 ♖xd2 12.♖xd2 ♖d7 13.♖b3 ♖c5 14.♖xc5 dxc5 15.♗d3 a6 16.♖a3 e5± Meynard – Nataf, France 2006, Black ended up with an advantage.) 8...♖fd7 (8...cxd4 9.♖xd4 ♖c6 10.0–0 ♗d7±) 9.0–0 ♖c6 10.♗e2 cxd4 11.♖xd4 ♖xd4 12.♗xd4 ♗xd4 13.♖xd4 ♖b6, Karpov – Efimenko, Sochi 2008. White should have pre-

served queens here with 14.♖d2, maintaining the typical for the Maroczy system slight edge.

8.♖xd4 b6!

This is the right move for Black with the idea of developing the bishop to the long diagonal, emphasizing that the move h3 has been premature. In case he chooses something else, then White obtains an excellent version of the Maroczy system for example: 8...♖c6 9.♗e2 ♖xd4 10.♗xd4 ♗d7 11.0–0 ♗c6 12.♖d3 a5 13.♞ad1 ♖d7 14.♗xg7 ♖xg7 15.♖d4 ♖g8 16.f4 ♖b6 17.♖xb6 ♖xb6 (The exchanges have facilitated Black's defence, but White maintains his space advantage and he is better in the endgame.) 18.b3 ♞fd8 19.♙f2 ♖d7 20.♙e3 ♖c5 21.g4± Lysyj – Kokarev, Novokuznetsk 2008.

9.♗d3

9.g3 ♗b7 10.♗g2 ♖bd7 11.0–0 ♞b8 12.♖c2 a6 13.b3 e6 14.♞ad1 ♖e7 15.♗c1 ♞fc8 16.a4 ♖c5± Khairullin – Shomoev, Zvenigorod 2008.

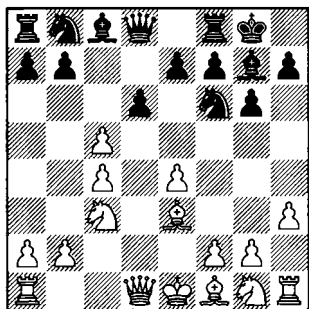
9...♗b7 10.0–0 ♖bd7 11.f3

Black was threatening ♖c5, with a double attack against d3 and e4.

11...♞c8 12.♗e2 ♖h5 13.♖e1, Skembris – Nikolaidis, Glyfada 1995, 13...♗e5. White fails to protect all his dark-squared weaknesses and his move h2-h3 has contributed to this, for example 14.f4? ♖xf4 15.♞xf4 ♗xf4 16.♗xf4 e5±

1.d4 ♟f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙e3

C2) 7.dxc5



7...♟a5 8.♙d3

Black organizes a very dangerous attack, which more than compensates his sacrificed exchange after 8.cxd6 ♟xe4 9.dxe7 ♙xc3 10.bxc3 ♟xc3 11.♙d2 ♟xd2 12.exf8♟ ♟xf8 13.♟c1 ♟a5!±

8...dxc5

It deserves attention for Black to play the gambit move 8...♙d8!? In the game Cramling – Forster, Horgen 1995, White decided not to accept the sacrifice and this enabled Black to develop his forces comfortably: 9.♙d2 ♟c7 10.♟e2 dxc5 11.e5 ♟fd7 12.f4 ♟b6 13.♟f3 ♟c6 14.0-0 ♙e6=

9.e5

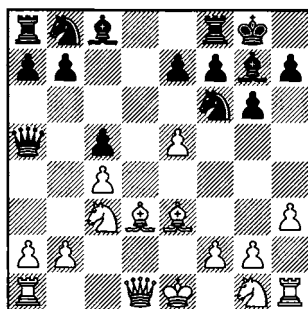
Black has here three possible retreats of this knight and two of them are quite acceptable – ♟fd7 and ♟h5.

(diagram)

C2a) 9...♟h5

C2b) 9...♟fd7

The passive line: 9...♟e8 10.f4 ♟c6 is not good for Black. (It is



not so easy for him to get rid of the pawn-wedge on e5, for example: 10...f6 11.♟f3 ♟c6 12.0-0 fxe5 13.fxe5 ♟c7 14.♟d5 ♟xd5 15.cxd5 ♟xe5 16.♟xe5 ♟xf1 17.♟xf1 ♙xe5 18.d6, with a powerful initiative for White, Miroshnichenko – Grigore, Romania 2007.) 11.♟f3 ♙e6 12.♟e2 ♙d8 13.0-0 ♟c7. This knight is not well placed here and the bishop on g7 is also out of actions. 14.a3 ♟d4 15.♙xd4 cxd4 16.b4 ♟b6 17.c5. White continues to build up a positional bind. (The hasty line: 17.♟a4 ♟c6 18.b5 ♟e8 19.♙e4, enabled Black to accomplish the undermining pawn-break 19...a6 and after 20.♟ab1 axb5 21.cxb5 ♟d5± his pieces were so active that he seized the initiative, Akopian – Khalifman, Linares 1995; it was also imprecise for White to play 17.♟e4 f6.) 17...♟c6 18.♟b5±

C2a) 9...♟h5 10.g4

The first impression is that Black is losing his knight of h5. Still, he has a tactical trick justifying this play.

10...♖d8!

Is it bad for him to opt for 10...♙e5?! 11.gxh5 ♙xc3 12.bxc3 ♖xc3 13.♙e2 ♖d8 14.♖c1 ♗f6 15.♗b3 ♙d7 16.♙e4 ♘c6 17.♙f3 ♘d4 18.♙xd4 cxd4 19.♙f1± – White has parried his opponent's attack, maintaining his material advantage.

11.♙f3

After 11.gxh5 ♙f5, Black regains his piece thanks to the pin.

11...♙c6 12.0–0! ♙e5 13.♙xe5

GM Fressinet recommended here 13.♙d5!?, but then the line: 13...♙xd3 14.♖xd3 ♙f6 15.♙d2 ♖xd5! 16.cxd5 ♗d8∞ would lead to a position with a mutual chances.

13...♙xe5 14.♙d5 ♙g7

Black's knight is headed for the d4-square along this somewhat unusual route. The more routine retreat 14...♙f6, would enable White to obtain an advantage: 15.♙xe7 ♙h8!? (but not 15...♙g7 16.♖e2 ♖c7 17.f4!↑ Fressinet – Golod, Biel 2006) 16.♙g5 (16.♖e2 ♖c7 17.♙xc8 ♖axc8=) 16...♙e6 17.♖f3 ♙g8 18.♙xg8 ♖xg8 19.♖ae1 ♙g7 20.b3 ♖ae8 21.♖e2±

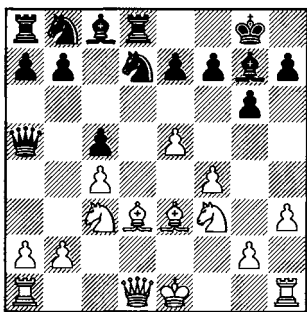
15.♙xe7 ♙h8 16.♗b3 ♙e6 17.♙e4 ♙d4 18.♙xd4 ♙xd4∞

Black can look to the future optimistically, because of his centralized bishop and White's compromised king's fortress.

C2b) 9...♙fd7 10.f4 ♖d8 11.♙f3

In case of 11.♖e2 ♙c6 12.♙f3,

Black has a combination at his disposal: 12...♙d4! (After 12...♙f8 13.0–0 ♙e6 14.♙d5± White maintains some positional pressure.) 13.♙xd4 (Just like always, it is too risky for White to leave his opponent's knight on d4 – 13.♖f1?! ♙b6 14.0–0 ♙f5 15.♙xf5 ♙xf5 16.♖xd8+ ♖xd8 17.♙f2 ♗b4 18.g4 and Black was soon victorious after a series of simple, but beautiful tactical strikes: ♙xc4 19.♖e2 ♙xb2 20.♖xb2 ♖xf4+ 21.♙d2 ♖xf2 22.gxf5 ♙xe5; White resigned, Burkhalter – Boger, corr. 1994.) 13...♙xe5 14.fxe5 cxd4 15.♙d2 dxc3. In the game, Miroshnichenko – Markos, Plovdiv 2008, the adversaries agreed to a draw at this moment, but after 16.♙xc3 ♗b6± Black's prospects would have been somewhat better.



11...♙c6

Here, Black can try to solve his problems in a tactical fashion: 11...♙xe5!? 12.♙xe5 ♙xe5 13.fxe5 ♙f5 14.0–0 (After 14.♖f3 ♙xd3 15.♖xb7 ♙xc4 16.♖xa8? ♙d5–+)

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙e3

White's queen is trapped.) 14... ♙xd3 (White wishes to deploy his knight on the d5-outpost in the next few moves, therefore it deserves attention for Black to try the exchange-sacrifice: 14... ♙xd3 15.♗e2 ♙xc3 16.bxc3 ♙e6. Still after 17.♙ab1 ♗c7 18.♙f4 ♘d7 19.♗f3 ♙b8 20.♙h4± he fails to equalize completely, Romero Holmes – Guseinov, Calvia 2004.) 15.e6 (This is a useful intermediate move, thanks to which White compromises the position of the enemy king.) 15...f5 (It is too risky for Black to capture the pawn, because there would be too many open files in the vicinity of his king on g8.) 16.♘d5 ♙xd5 17.cxd5 ♙xf1 18.♗xf1 ♘a6 19.g4 (Naturally, White has some other active possibilities, because the situation of the enemy king seems perilous. It is not easy to checkmate it however.) 19...♘c7 20.♙d1 ♗xa2 21.♙xc5∞. The first impression is that Black should be able to hold this position.

12.0-0

The line: 12.♗e2 ♘d4! transposes to what he have just analyzed (in our notes to White's move eleven.) as in the game Mi-

roshnichenko – Markos, Plovdiv 2008.

12...♘b4

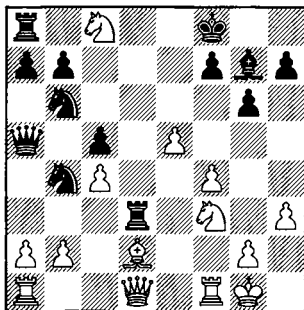
Black begin his fight for the d5-square.

13.♘d5 ♘b6 14.♘xe7

The pin along the d-file is doubtlessly very dangerous, but White has an attractive tactical trick up his sleeve.

14...♙f8 15.♘xc8 ♙xd3 16.♙d2

This is the essence of White's idea, since now he can counter 16...♙xc8 with 17.♙xb4, regaining his piece.

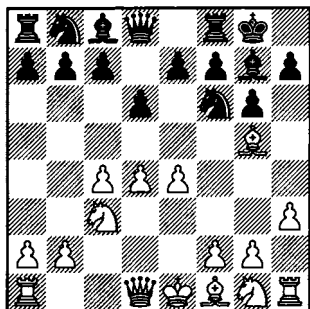


16...♙xd3! 17.♘xd2 ♙xc8±

Black has a slight material advantage and it is even more important that White has no objects to attack.

Chapter 7

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6
5.h3 0-0 6.♗g5



There were times when this line was considered to be problematic for Black. Contrary to the Saemisch Attack, White preserves the possibility to develop his knight to the f3-square. The only drawback of this setup, is that the e4-pawn is not protected sufficiently.

- A) 6...♗a6
- B) 6...♗bd7
- C) 6...c5

A) 6...♗a6

- A1) 7.♗d3
- A2) 7.♗f3

The following game shows

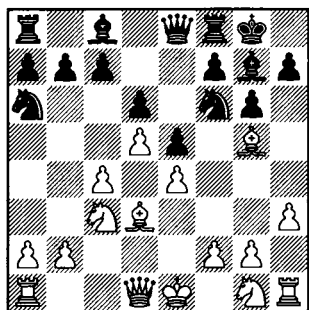
that the plan with 7.♗e2 (with the idea g4 and ♗g3) is too slow, since Black manages to create a powerful queenside counterplay: 7...e5 8.d5 c6 9.g4 cxd5 10.cxd5 ♗d7 11.♗g3 ♖b6 12.♖d2 ♗c5 13.♗e2 a5 14.♗e3 ♜fc8 15.♜c1 a4 16.f3 ♖a5 17.♞f2 b5 (It is evident that Black is much ahead of his opponent, without too much of an effort. His initiative is developing effortlessly.) 18.♞g2 b4 19.♗d1 a3 20.b3 ♗xb3! (White's rooks are not coordinated and therefore, this combination on the theme of a pawn-break becomes possible.) 21.axb3 ♜xc1 22.♖xc1 a2 23.♖a1 ♗xd5 (This is the point.) 24.exd5 e4 25.♗b2, Gyimesi – J.Ivanov, Andorra 2001 and here the quickest way for Black to victory would be 25...♖xd5 26.♗xe4 ♖xb3 27.♗c1 ♖c2 28.♗d2 ♗c3-- and White is completely stalemated and even his two extra pieces are not enough to save the day.

A1) 7.♗d3 e5 8.d5

- A1a) 8...♖e8
- A1b) 8...c6

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙g5

A1a) 8...♞e8



The plan with f7-f5 is not effective in this pawn-structure. Black should seek his chances on the queenside, opening the c-file after c7-c6, but in this case, his queen is placed better on the d8-square. It can go from there to a5, or b6.

Meanwhile, the move in the text has its advantages as well: Black has freed his knight on f6 and also his queen on e8 can support the pawn-advance b7-b5.

9.g4

This is a prophylactic move against ♘h5-f4 and f7-f5.

White plays here quite often 9.♘ge2 – he develops his knight taking control once again over the f4-square. Then Black should play flexibly maneuvering his king's knight back, instead of forward: 9...♘d7 10.a3 f5 11.b4 (11.f3 ♘ac5 12.♙c2 fxe4 13.fxe4 a5 14.b4 axb4 15.axb4 ♙xa1 16.♞xa1 ♘a6± Kazhgaleyev – Sande, Lisbon 2000.) 11...f4 12.f3 ♙f6 13.♙xf6 ♙xf6 14.♞a4 (14.♞b3 ♘h8 15.♘d2 c5 16.b5 ♘c7 17.♘a4 ♙d8 18.b6

♘xb6 19.♘xb6 axb6 20.♞xb6 ♙a6 21.♞b2 ♘e8± Sergienko – Efimenko, St. Petersburg 2004) 14... ♞e7 15.♘d1 ♘ab8 16.♘f2 ♙f7 and in the next game White was too greedy to win the exchange and he ended up in a very unpleasant position: 17.c5 dxc5 18.d6 cxd6 19.♙c4 ♘b6 20.♙xf7+ ♘xf7 21.♞c2 ♙e6± Janssen – Reinderman, Hilversum 2008.

9...c6

Black can hardly avoid this move.

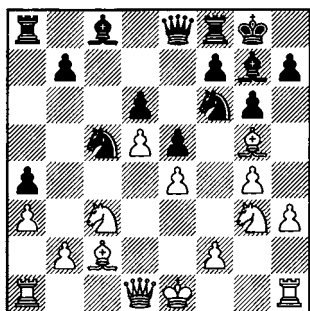
Naturally, he can organize the undermining move b7-b5, leaving the c-pawn on its square, but after 9...♙d7 10.♘ge2 ♘c5 11.♙c2 a5 12.♙e3 b5 13.cxb5 ♙xb5 14.0-0 ♙b8 15.♙b1 ♙a6 16.a3 ♞e7 17.b4 axb4 18.axb4 ♘cd7 19.♙d3± the backward c7-pawn will be a long term weakness in Black's position, Ungureanu – Balla, Romania 2007.

10.♘ge2 cxd5

This move is considered the best for Black. He wishes to see what pawn White will recapture with and only after that, he will decide what to do with his queen's knight. After the symmetrical capture (11.cxd5) the knight will go to c5 and Black will continue with his pawn-offensive a7-a5-a4 and b7-b5. If White play's 11.exd5, then Black will leave his knight on a6 and he will be threatening ♘b4 followed by the exchange of the important white light-squared bishop.

In the next game Black tried to put this evaluation to the test by playing it first 10...♖c5 and only after 11.♙c2 – 11...cxd5 12.exd5 e4!? This is a very interesting idea, since both White's flanks have been compromised and it will be very dangerous for him to try to win his enemy's e4-pawn, while his king remains in the centre. Still, White succeeded in obtaining the advantage: 13.♘b5 ♜e7 14.♞d2 ♙d7 15.♘bc3 ♜fe8 16.♙f1 a6 17.a4 ♜ac8 18.♘g3 ♞d8 19.♙g2 ♞b6 20.a5 ♞b4± Romanov – Khalifman, Moscow 2008, but in case of 20...♞c7!? the situation would have remained double-edged.

11.cxd5 ♘c5 12.♙c2 a5 13.a3 a4 14.♘g3



14...b5

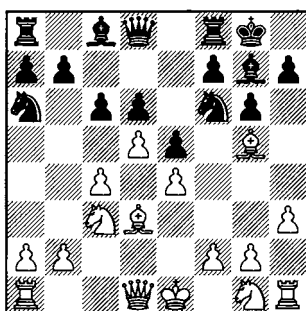
This is why Black needed his queen on the e8-square. Still, this is not quite exact, since the pawn-move would have been possible with the queen on d8 as well. White can hardly afford to open the b-file and the diagonal a6-f1 with his knight still on e1.

15.♞f3 ♞d8 16.♘ge2 ♙d7 17.♘a2

White's actions are not impressive at all. Small wonder that Black position is excellent.

17...♜c8 18.♘ec3 h6 19.♙h4 g5 20.♙g3 ♘b3 21.♙xb3 axb3 22.♘b4 h5± Beliavsky – Kozul, Portoroz 1997.

A1b) 8...c6



This looks like a more logical move. Black can always play ♞e8 after all!

9.♘ge2 cxd5 10.cxd5

10.♘xd5 ♘c5 11.0-0 ♘e6 12.♘xf6+ ♙xf6 13.♙e3 ♙g5 14.♞d2 ♙xe3 15.♞xe3 ♙d7 16.♜ad1 ♙c6 17.♙c2 ♞e7 18.♜d2 a5 19.♜fd1 ♜fd8 20.♘c3 ♘d4 21.♙a4 ♞e6, draw, Stoczek – Smirin, Goteborg 2005.

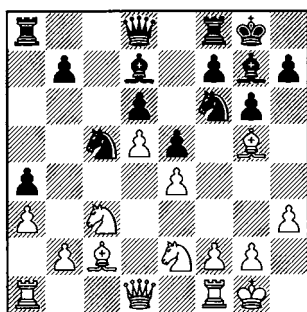
10.exd5 h6 11.♙e3 ♘d7 12.0-0 f5 13.f4 e4 14.♙b1 ♘b6 15.b3 ♘c5 16.♙c2 ♙d7 17.♙d4 a5 18.♙xg7 ♙xg7 19.♞d4+ ♞f6± Kazhgaleyev – Zhou Jianchao, Hyderabad 2005.

10...♘c5 11.♙c2 a5 12.0-0

1.d4 ♟f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙g5

About 12.a3 a4 13.0-0 ♙d7 – ♙e8, draw, Kasparov – Kramnik, Las Palmas 1996.

12...♙d7 13.a3 a4



In this position, White has tried in practice numerous moves, but he has failed to create any serious problems for his opponent:

14.♟c1?! h6 15.♙e3 ♜a5 16.♞b1 ♞fc8∞ Yermolinsky – Manion, Chicago 1995;

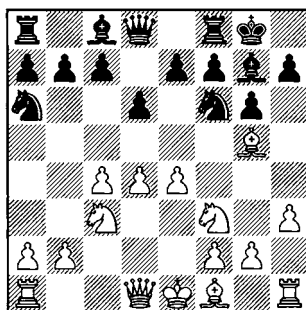
14.g4 ♜b6 15.♙e3 ♞fc8 16.♟g2 ♜a6± Bates – Hebden, Swansea 1995;

14.♟h1 ♜b6 15.♞b1 ♟h8 16.g4 ♟g8 17.♟g3 ♜a6= Dreev – Fedorov, Maikop 1998;

14.♞b1 ♜e7 15.f3 ♞fc8 16.g4 ♙e8 17.♞f2 b5 18.♟a2 ♜b7 19.♟b4 h6 20.♙d2 ♟fd7 21.♟c3 ♟b6 22.♟ca2 ♟c4 and in the game Baciu – Fedorov, Bucharest 2008, Black seized the initiative;

14.♜d2 ♜b6 15.♞ab1 ♞fc8 16.♟g3 (16.♟h1 ♙e8 17.♙h6 ♟fd7 18.♟g3 ♜d8 19.♙xg7 ♟xg7 20.♟d1 ♜h4 21.♟e3 ♟g8 22.♟g4 h5 23.♜h6 ♜e7 24.♟e3 ♜f8= Mititelu – Planinec, Bath 1973) 16...♜d8 17.♙h6 ♙xh6 18.♜xh6 ♜f8 19.♜e3

A2) 7.♟f3



7...e5 8.d5

The transfer into an endgame with 8.dxe5 dxe5 9.♜xd8 ♞xd8 – see Chapter 8, line **A2b**.

8...♜e8 9.g4

This move is played to counter Black's plan with ♟h5 and f7-f5, prepared with the move 8...♜e8.

In case of 9.♙e2, Black realizes his idea 9...♟h5 10.g3 f6 (It is reasonable to repel the bishop to less active square, although Black can also try the immediate 10...f5, for example: 11.exf5 gxf5 12.♟h4 ♟f6 13.♜c2 ♟c5 14.0-0-0 ♟ce4 15.♟xe4 ♟xe4 16.♙e3 c6± Ivanišević – Hausrath, Biel 2008.) 11.g4 (White had better retreat with his bishop to d2. Black is much better prepared for the conflict on the kingside and in addition, he will have the two-bishop advantage.) 11...fxg5 12.gxh5 gxh5 13.♟xg5 ♜e7 14.♙g1 ♜f6 15.♙g2

♠h8 16.♙xh5 ♙h6 17.h4 ♘c5 18. b4 ♟f4 19.♙e2 ♟xh4 20.♙f7 ♟xf7 21.♙xf7 ♙h3+ Gyimesi – Shirov, Moscow 2001.

It also interesting for White to opt for 9.♙d2, keeping the pawn-structure on the side flexible with the idea to counter 9...♙h5 with the move 10.♙e2. Therefore, it is sensible for Black to send his knight via another route: 9...h6 10.♙e3 ♘h7 11.g4 c6 (This is a typical situation. Whenever it is not advantageous to open files on the kingside – look for your chances to the queenside!) 12.♟g1 ♙d7 13.h4 cxd5 14.cxd5 b5 15.♙b3 b4 16.♙b1 ♙b5 17.♙1d2 ♟c8 18.♙xa7 ♙xf1 19.♙xf1 ♟e7 20.♙e3 ♟xh4+ Schuurman – Krush, Beijing 2008

9...♙d7

Black's knight cannot go to h5 and it is not advisable for him to play 9...h6 10.♙e3 ♘h7? 11.♟d2.

There is another route for the knight however.

10.♟g1

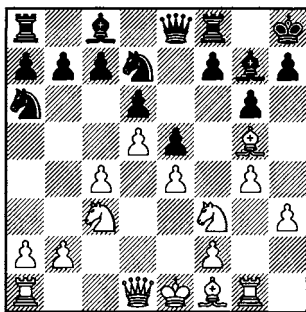
White's king has been stranded in the centre, so he would like to avoid the premature opening of the game. The complications after 10.♙d2 f5 11.gxf5 gxf5 12.♟g1 ♠h8 13.exf5 ♙dc5, lead to a double-edged position: 14.f6 ♙xf6 15.♙h6 ♟g8 16.♟xg8 ♟xg8 17.♟h5 ♙d7 18.0–0–0 ♙e8 19.♟f5 ♙g7 20.♙e3 ♙g6 21.♟g4 ♟f7+ San Segundo – Shirov, Madrid 1994.

10...♠h8

This is a useful prophylactic

– Black has always the counter strike f7–f5 up his sleeve.

In case Black plays only on the queenside, his might come under a positional bind: 10...♙dc5 11.a3 ♙d7 12.b4 ♙a4 13.♙b5 (Naturally White should avoid exchanges.) 13...♙b6 14.♟d3 ♠h8 15.♙e2 f6 16.♙d2 f5 (This undermining move is a bit too slow, since White manages to find a safe square for his king on c1.) 17.gxf5 gxf5 18. 0–0–0 ♟e7 19.♙g5 fxe4 20.♙xe4 ♙f5 21.♙bc3± Krasenkow – Smirin, Belgrade 1999.



11.♟d2

It is harmless for Black if White plays 11.♙e2 f6 12.♙e3 f5 (Black's pawn has come to f5 in two moves, having repelled the enemy bishop to e3 in the process.) 13.gxf5 gxf5 14.exf5 ♙dc5 15.♙h4 ♙xf5 16.♙xf5 ♟xf5 17.♟d2 ♟f8 18.0–0–0 ♟f6! 19.♟g4 ♙h6 (Black brings his king to safety, exchanging the dark-squared bishops.) 20.♟dg1 ♙xe3 21.♟xe3 ♟h6 22.♙d1 ♟af8+ J.Ivanov – Akopian, Ubeda 2001.

In case of 11.♗d2, Black succeeds in inflicting a powerful strike against the enemy centre, employing both his knights in the process: 11...f5 12.gxf5 gxf5 13.a3 ♖f6 14.♗c2 ♗c5 15.♙e3 ♗fxe4 16.♗dxe4 fxe4 17.0-0-0 ♗d3+ 18.♙xd3 exd3 19.♗xd3 ♙f5 20.♗d2 ♗h5⇒ Trapl – van Oost-erom, corr. 1998.

It is also very reasonable for White to play 11.a3 with the idea to follow with b4, depriving his opponent of the c5-square, since he can use it for both of his knights. Therefore, Black must play very energetically in order to avoid coming under a positional bind: 11...f5 12.gxf5 gxf5 13.b4 ♖f6 14.♙d3 ♗xe4 15.♗xe4 fxe4 16.♙xe4 ♙f5 17.♗d2 ♗g6 18.♙g4, Krasenkov – Andonovski, Panor-mo 2001, 18...♙h6! 19.♙xf5 ♗xf5 20.♙h4 (20.♙xh6? ♗xf2#) 20...♙xd2 21.♗xd2 ♙g8=

11...♗dc5 12.♗h4

In reply to 12.♙e2, Black can try to exchange advantageously the knights (In fact, he has an “extra” knight, since both of them are aiming at one and the same square – c5.) – 12...♗a4 and White has problems avoiding this exchange, because Black can counter 13.♗b5 with 13...♗4c5! and if 14.♗c2, then 14...♙d7. In some games, the adversaries chose this variation as a short and reliable way of drawing the game (after 14.♗c3 ♗a4 15.♗b5 ♗4c5 etc.). If White allows the trade of

knights, then Black’s game is simple and comfortable: 13.♙e3 13...♗xc3 14.♗xc3 ♗c5 15.♙xc5 dxc5 16.0-0-0 ♗e7 17.♗b1 a6 18.♗e3 h6, with a double-edged position, Weber – Bruckel, corr. 2002.

In case of the quite sensible move 12.0-0-0, Black builds up his game according to a standard scheme: 12...♙d7 13.♗b1 f6 14.♙e3 ♙g8 15.♗e1 f5 16.gxf5 gxf5 17.f3 ♗e7 18.♗c2 f4 19.♙f2 ♙f6∞ Joen-gensen – Kurylo, corr. 2002.

12...♗a4 13.♗b5

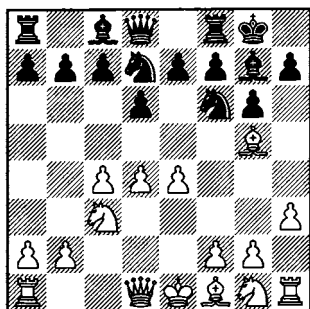
After 13.♙d3 ♗xc3 14.♗xc3, White maintains a slight edge, thanks to his space advantage. Still, the exchange of a couple of knights, facilitates Black’s defence and he should manage gradually to solve his problems, for example: 14...c6 15.♗a3 h6 16.♙e3 c5 17.♙d2 ♗e7 18.♗g2 ♗c7 19.b4 ♗a6 20.b5 ♗b8 21.♗c1 ♗h7 22.a4 f5 Dziuba – Skalski, Lubniewice 2002.

13...♗4c5

In the game Ostenstad – Maki, Haifa 1989, White was evidently not reluctant to draw and he opted for 14.♗c3 (White could have still tried to obtain some advantage with the move 14.f3.) In his stead, Black could have tried to play for a win with the line: 14...♙d7 15.♙b1 ♗a4 16.♗xa4 ♙xa4 17.f3±

White’s prospects are still superior, because of his space advantage and a very powerful centre.

B) 6...♟bd7



This is a very flexible move, because later Black can use both the standard plan with e5, but in some cases, he can also play c5. Meanwhile, White is dominant in the centre and he can try to obtain some advantage.

7.♞d3

I believe White's strongest move here is 7.♟f3! and after 7...e5 (the best) 8.d5, there arises a position, with we analyze in variation **B** in the next chapter (after the move order 6.♟f3 e5 7.d5 ♟bd7 8.♞g5). There, White obtains some advantage after all.

After 7.♞d2 c5 8.d5 a6, Black enters favourably a position from the Benko gambit. This is because White's set-up with ♞g5, ♞d2 and h3 is good against the plan with e7-e5, while he is practically not well prepared to counter Black's queenside counterplay. White has lost a tempo for the move h3 and his important defender of the queenside – the dark- squared

bishop is away. (Meanwhile, Black can play immediately 8...b5, since it will not work for White to continue with 9.♟xb5? ♟xe4.) 9.♟f3 b5 10.cxb5 ♞a5 11.bxa6 ♞xa6 12. ♞xa6 ♞xa6 13.♞e2 ♞fb8 14.♞b1 ♟b6= Hautaniemi – Kiltti, Finland 1995.

After 7.♞d3, Black can try both c5 and e5.

B1) 7...e5

B2) 7...c5

B1) 7...e5 8.d5 c6 9.♞ge2 ♟c5 10.♞c2 a5

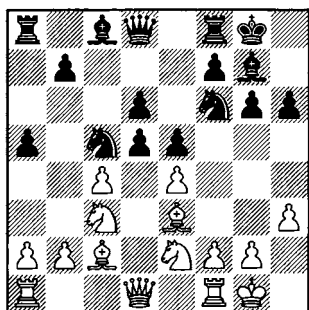
Black can reduce the tension in the centre outright if he so wishes: 10...cxd5 11.exd5 a5 12.0–0 ♞d7 13.♞b1 ♞e8 14.♞g3 h5 15.♞e3 b6 16.f4 h4 17.♞ge2 exf4 18.♞xf4 ♟fe4 19.♞e1 ♞f5= Kazhgaleyev – Ju. Polgar, Spain 2007.

11.0–0

Following 11.♞d2, Black cannot play h6, but he should not worry about that. He should use the same plan for counterplay on the queenside as in the main line. 11...cxd5 12.exd5 (12.cxd5 a4 13.0–0 ♞d7 14.♞g3 ♞b6 15.♞ab1 ♞fc8 16.a3 ♟b3 17.♞xb3 ♞xb3= Cousigne – Relange, France 2003) 12...♞d7 13.0–0 ♞b6 14.♟h1 (14. ♞g3 ♞fc8 15.♞e3 ♞a6 16.♞e2 ♟e8 17.f4 f5 18.♟b5 ♟c7 19.a4 ♟xb5 20.axb5 ♞b6= Bareev – Gelfand, Linares 1994) 14...♟h5 15.♞e3 ♞a6 16.b3 f5 17.f3 ♞ac8 18.a4 b6= Bazhin – Fedorov, Kstovo 1994.

11...h6 12.♞e3 cxd5

1.d4 ♟f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♖g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙g5



13.cxd5

White has another sensible plan with the move 13.exd5, because then both his bishops exert a powerful pressure against Black's kingside, for example: 13...♙d7 14.♟d2 ♟h7 15.f4 ♟c8 16.♟g3 a4 17.♟ac1 ♟a6 18.♟h2 exf4 19.♙xf4 ♟e8 20.♟h5! (This is when the bishop on c2 turns out to be excellently placed!) 20...♙e5 21.♟ce1 and White had a powerful positional bind in the game Avrukh – Soln, Szeged 1994. Still, Black's play can be improved: 15...exf4!? 16.♟xf4 ♟e8, or 16.♙xf4 ♟b6 with a double-edged position.

13...♙d7 14.a3 a4 15.♟h1 ♟e8 16.♟d2 ♟h7 17.f4

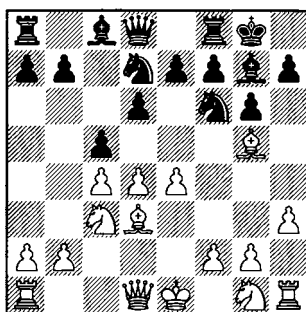
This move is usually good in case Black cannot place his knight immediately on the e5-outpost, after the exchange on f4. Here Black's light-squared bishop occupies the important d7-square for his maneuvers and also after 17...exf4 18.♟xf4, White exerts powerful pressure along the f-file.

17...♟b6 18.♟g3 ♟ec8 19.♟ab1 ♙e8 20.fxe5 dxe5 21.d6

White cuts off Black's queen away from the kingside and he frees the d5 square for his knight making the position even sharper. Still, Black has enough resources to maintain the dynamic balance.

21...♟d8 22.♟bd1 ♙d7 23.♟f3 ♟b3 24.♟f2 ♟a6 25.♙xb3 axb3 26.♙c5 ♙e6∞ Dziuba – Areshchenko, Dresden 2007.

B2) 7...c5



8.d5

After 8.dxc5 ♟xc5 9.♙c2, Urtel – Kunze, Heimbach Weis 1997, 9...♟b6! 10.♟b1 ♟b4, Black wins a pawn without any sufficient compensation for White.

8...♙e5 9.♟f3

As a rule, the exchanges are advantageous for the side, which has less space. In addition, White should not present his opponent with the two-bishop advantage deliberately. Therefore, he plays much more often here 9.♙e2. Common sense of course is quite applicable here, but tournament

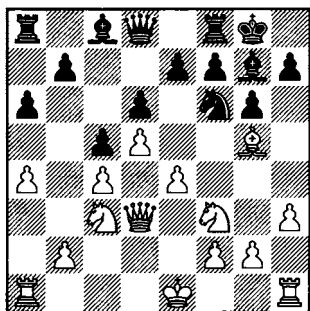
practice has shown that even after the simple move 9.♖f3 Black's task is still complex. White can simply complete his development and get rid later of Black's powerful centralized knight.

In reply to 9.♗e2, Black should better play in a Benko gambit style: 9...b5 10.cxb5 a6 11.a4 (After the straightforward line: 11.bxa6 ♖a5 12.♗d2 ♗xa6, Black can quickly seize the initiative 13.♖c2 ♖fb8 14.♖b1 ♖fd7 15.f4 ♖c4 16.♗xc4 ♗xc4 17.b3 ♗xc3 18.♗xc3 ♖xa2 Pinter – Tkachiev, Porec 1998.) 11...♖a5 12.♗d2 axb5 13.♖xb5 ♖b6 14.♖c2 c4 15.♗a3 ♗a6 16.♗e3 (16.♖f3 ♖xf3 17.gxf3 ♖fc8 18.0–0 ♗xb5 19.axb5 ♖xa3 20.bxa3 ♖xb5=) 16...♖b7 17.♖f3 ♖xf3 18.♗xf3, Sandstrom – Stefansson, Copenhagen 1991, 18...♗xb5 19.axb5 ♖xb5 20.0–0 ♖d7=

9...♖xd3

It also interesting for Black to opt for 9...♖fd7!?, preserving for the time being his outpost on e5.

10.♖xd3 a6 11.a4



11...♖d7

Black has not played that move in practice yet.

In answer to 11...e6, it good for White to try both 12.dxe6 ♗xe6 13.0–0 ♖c7 14.♖fd1 ♖ad8 15.a5±, as well as 12.0–0 h6 13.♗e3 e5 14.a5 ♖h5 15.♖d2 ♖h7 16.g4 ♖f6 17.♖e1± ♖xe4?! (The attempt to provoke crisis brings Black only additional problems.) 18.♖xe4 f5 19.♖c3 f4 20.♗xc5 dxc5 21.♖e4± Avrukh – Krakops, Groningen 1995.

It looks like Black can also play sharper 11...♖h5 12.0–0 h6 13.♗d2 (White cannot change much with his other possible retreat: 13.♗e3 f5 14.exf5 ♗xf5 15.♖e2. White's queen should protect the knight on f3 and it is not good for him to choose 15.♖d2? ♗xh3 – 15...♗d7 16.♖fel ♖f4 17.♗xf4 ♖xf4 18.♖xe7 ♗xh3 19.gxh3 ♖xf3= Beliavsky – Smirin, Belgrade 1998.) 13...e6 (It is premature for Black to play 13...f5, in view of 14.exf5 ♗xf5 15.♖e2 ♗d7 16.♖h4 ♖e8 17.♖e4 ♖h7 18.g4 ♖f6 19.♖c2 ♖g8 20.♖e4± – White's prospects are superior, thanks to his excellent control over the e4-outpost.) 14.dxe6 ♗xe6 15.♖d5 (15.♖ab1 ♖f6 16.♗f4 ♖e8 17.♗xd6 ♖b6±) 15...♖e8 16.♖ad1 ♗xd5 17.exd5 ♖d7 18.b3 b5= Mikhalevski – Smirin, Rishon Le Zion 1998.

12.♗f4

In case of 12.0–0, Black would also follow with 12...f5!

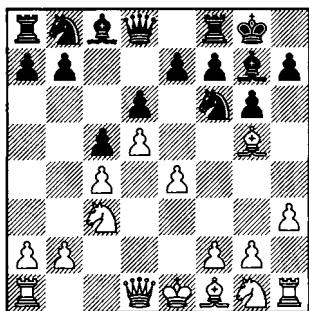
12...f5 13.0–0 ♖b6 14.♖fb1 fxe4 15.♖xe4 ♖b4 16.♖c1

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙g5

Black is quite OK after 16.a5 b5 17.♘g5 ♘e5.

16...♙xb2 17.♙e6 ♜f7 18. ♜ab1 ♙a3 19.♙e3 b5!?

C) 6...c5 7.d5



Black is on crossroads, whether to continue in a Benko gambit style, (C1) or to follow the scheme of the Benoni system (C2).

C1) 7...b5

C2) 7...e6

C1) 7...b5!? 8.cxb5 a6 9.a4

Black reaches a favourable set-up of the Benko Gambit in case of 9.bxa6 ♙a5, for example: 10.♙d2 (10.♙d2 ♙b4 11.♙c2 ♙xa6 12.♙xa6 ♘xa6 13.a3 ♙c4 14.♜b1 ♘b4! 15.axb4 cxb4 16.♘ge2 bxc3 17.♘xc3 ♜fc8= Rashkovsky – Geller, Sochi 1977) 10...♘bd7 11.♘f3 ♙xa6 12.♙xa6 ♙xa6 13.♙h6 ♙hx6 14.♙hx6 ♜fb8 15.♜b1 ♘b6 16.b3 ♘bd7 17.♙e3 ♜b4 18.♜b2 ♜ab8 19.♜e2 c4 20.0-0 cxb3 21.axb3 ♙b6 22.♙xb6 ♜8xb6, draw, Suba – Schmidt, Polanica Zdroj 1976.

9...♙a5 10.♙d2

The bishop is necessary for the protection of the flank, therefore, in this line the move ♙g5 turned out to be just a lost of time.

10...♙b4

Human players understood mostly because of the computers that queens sometimes would go back home only after having entered the inferno...

11.♙d3 c4

Black could have postponed this move for a while, for example: 11...♘fd7 12.♘f3 c4 13.♙e2 ♙xb2 14.♜b1 ♙a3 15.♙c2 axb5 16.axb5 ♘b6 17.0-0 ♘d7 18.♘d1 ♙a2 19.♜c1 ♘c5= Katalymov – Foygel, Krasnoyarsk 1980.

12.♘a2

Black has plenty of problems to solve in cause of 12.♙c2!?. He should better take care of his safety immediately with 12...axb5 13.♘xb5 ♙c5 and after 14.♘f3 ♙a6 15.♘c3 ♘bd7 16.0-0 ♜fb8, he has a standard Benko gambit type of position. There might follow 17.♜b1 ♙c7 18.♜e1 ♘c5 19.e5 ♘fd7 20.e6 fxe6 21.♘g5, J.Eriksson – Reid, Goteborg 2005 and here Black could have played 21...e5, without being afraid of 22.♘hx7 ♘hx7 23.♙h5+ ♘g8 24.♙xg6 (Black is better after 24.♙xg6 ♘f6.) 24...♘f8 25.♙g4 e6, with a double-edged position

12...♙xb2

Black must capture this pawn, since the tentative move 12... ♙c5 is insufficient for equality:

13.♙e3 ♖c7 14.b6 ♗b7 15.♙xc4
 ♜xe4 16.♜e2 (16.♙d4 e5! 17.♙e3
 a5 18.b4∞, or 18.♜c3∞) 16...a5
 17.0–0 ♜c5 18.♜ec3 (It is also
 good for White to opt for 18.♜ac3
 ♗xb6 19.♙b5±) 18...♗xb6 19.♙e1±

13.♙c3 ♗a3 14.♙c2

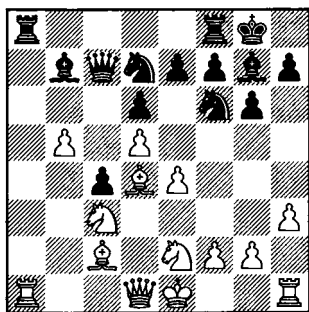
After 14.♙xc4 ♜xe4, the knight
 and the bishop come to the rescue
 of the queen: 15.♙xg7 ♜xg7 16.♜e2
 (It is even worse for White to play
 16.♗d4 ♜f6 17.♜e2 ♗xa4†) 16...
 ♗c5 17.♗d4 ♗xd4 18.♜xd4 ♜d7
 19.bxa6 ♜b6 20.♙b3 ♙xa6†

14...axb5 15.♜e2

White can force here a draw
 by repetition: 15.♙b4 ♗b2 16.♙c3
 ♗a3= Disconzi da Silva – Sorin,
 Buenos Aires 2005.

The position would have re-
 mained unclear otherwise.

**15...♗c5 16.♙d4 ♗c7 17.axb5
 ♙b7 18.♜ac3 ♜bd7**



White has a slight space ad-
 vantage, but all his pieces, with
 the exception of the bishop of d4,
 are deployed on very passive de-
 fensive positions. Both sides have
 passed pawns, which have crossed

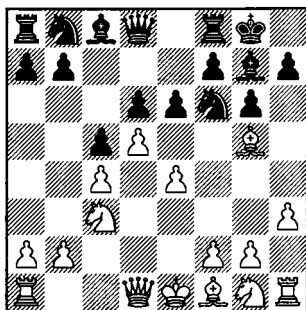
the demarcation line, but they are
 all reliably blocked for the time
 being. Black plans to push e7-
 e5, after which the bishop on b7
 would become very active and he
 will be dominant in the centre.
 Meanwhile, he will have great
 problems advancing his pawns.
 In general, there exists a typical
 dynamic balance on the board.

**19.0–0 ♖xa1 20.♗xa1 ♖a8
 21.♗b2 ♗a5 22.♜a4**

White prevents the penetra-
 tion of the enemy to the a3-square,
 which would have enabled Black
 to activate his forces a bit.

22...e6 23.dxe6 fxe6∞

C2) 7...e6



8.♙d3

After 8.♜f3 exd5 9.cxd5, there
 arises the Benoni system with the
 move ♙g5. This variation is con-
 sidered to be harmless for Black,
 for example: 9...h6 10.♙e3 ♖e8
 11.♙d3 (It is smarter for White to
 play 11.♜d2, not overburdening
 the bishop with the protection of
 the e4-pawn, but then Black will

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♙g5

have an extra tempo for his counterplay: 11...a6 12.a4 ♘bd7 13.♙e2 ♙b8 14.a5, Aleksandrov – Loginov, Minsk 2008, 14...b5!? 15.axb6 ♙xb6 16.♘c4 ♙c7 17.♙f4 ♙f8 18.♙c2 ♙b4±) 11...a6 12.a4 ♘bd7 (Black should strive for b7-b5 and here half-measures are useless: 12...b6 13.0-0 ♙a7 14.♙d2 ♘h7 15.♙fe1 ♘bd7 16.♙ab1 c4 17.♙c2 ♘c5 18.a5 ♙b7 19.♙d4± Avrukh – B.Socko, Szeged 1994.) 13.0-0 g5 14.♙c2 ♙b8 15.a5 b5 16.axb6 ♙xb6 17.♘d2 ♘e5 18.b3 ♙b4= Sakaev – Andreikin, Dresden 2007.

8...exd5

C2a) 9.cxd5

C2b) 9.exd5

C2a) 9.cxd5

There arises now an asymmetrical pawn-structure and as a rule, it implies more aggression.

9...♙d7!?

It is quite understandable where Black must seek his chances. The point is how to do this in the right fashion. The move in the text seems to be too direct, but its reliability has been proved time and again.

Veselin Topalov has treated this position in another fashion and he is considered to be a super-expert of the Benoni system: 9...♙e8 10.♘ge2 ♘bd7 11.0-0 h6 12.♙e3 ♘e5 13.a4 (in case of 13.♙c2, Black can play 13...♘c4 14.♙c1 b5!?) 13...♘xd3 14.♙xd3 b6 15.♘g3 ♘h7 16.f4 h5 17.f5 h4

18.fxg6 fxg6 19.♘ge2 g5 (Black set-up looks rather risky, but his two bishops are covering reliably his king and his pawns on c5, g5 and h4 restrict White's knights considerably.) 20.♙f2 a6 21.♙af1 ♙a7 22.♘b1 g4 23.hxg4 ♙xg4 24.♘d2 ♙xb2 25.♘c3 ♙g7 26.♘c4 ♙xc3 27.♙xc3 ♙h5± Ponomarev – Topalov, Wijk aan Zee 2007.

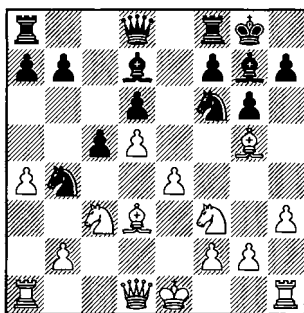
10.a4

It is dangerous for White to give his opponent a free hand on the queenside: 10.♘f3 b5 11.0-0 c4 12.♙c2 ♙e8 13.a3 a5 14.♘d4 ♙b6 15.♙e3 ♙b7 16.♙f4 (16.a4!? b4 17.♘cb5 ♙xb5 18.♘xb5 ♙a6∞) 16... ♘a6 17.♙f3 (17.♙xd6 b4) 17...b4 18.axb4 axb4 19.♘ce2 b3 20.♙b1 ♘c5 21.♙xa8 ♙xa8± Sakaev – Mueller, Germany 2007.

10...♘a6

Black's knight is headed for a wonderful square – b4.

11.♘f3 ♘b4



12.♙b1

The retreat 12.♙e2 has its drawbacks as well, since after 12...h6 13.♙f4 ♙e7 14.♘d2 ♙fe8

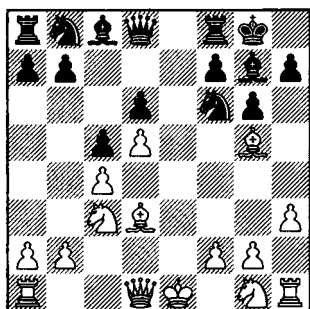
15.0–0, Black has a very promising piece-sacrifice: 15...♖fxd5!? 16.exd5 ♗xc3 17.bxc3 ♘xd5 18.♗e3 ♘xc3 19.♖e1 d5 20.♗f3 d4+ Akesson – Jobava, Antalya 2004. Now, Black can open the b-file.

12...b5 13.axb5

13.0–0 bxa4 14.♖d2 ♗e8 15.♗e1 ♖b6 16.♘xa4 ♗xa4 17.♗xa4 ♘d7=

13...♖b6 14.0–0 ♗xb5 15.♗e1 ♘d7 16.♗f4, Prusikin – Loeffler, Warszawa 2005, **16...a6 17.♖d2 ♗fe8=**

C2b) 9.exd5



The symmetrical pawn-structure enables White to continue playing without any risk, but he can hardly rely on achieving anything much.

9...♗bd7

9...a6 10.a4 ♘bd7 11.♗f3 ♗e8 12.♖f1 h6 13.♗e3 b6 14.♖d2 h5 15.g3 a5 16.♖g2 ♗e5 17.♗xe5 dxe5, Potapov – Nataf, Dresden 2007, 18.f3±

10.f4

This move seems risky, but White has nothing else to do. Black can counter 10.♗f3 with 10...♗e8+ 11.♗e3 (The evacuation of White's king ended tragically: 11.♖f1 h6 12.♗f4 ♗e5 13.♗xe5 dxe5 14.♗e3 b6 15.a4 a5 16.♖d2 h5 18.♗e2 ♘d7 19.♖d1 ♗e5 20.♖c2 ♗f5 21.♖b3 ♖d7 22.♗h6 ♗h8 23.♗af1 h4 24.♗e1 ♗ad8 25.♖f4 b5! and Black won the game with a direct attack, Suba – Cheparinov, Dos Hermanas 2002.) 11...♗h5!? 12.0–0 ♗e5 13.♗xe5 ♗xe5 14.♖d2 a6 15.♗fe1 ♗d7 16.♗e2 f5 17.♗g5 ♖a5 18.♗ae1 b5 and Black had excellent counterplay in the game Ignatescu – Nevednichy, Romania 2002.

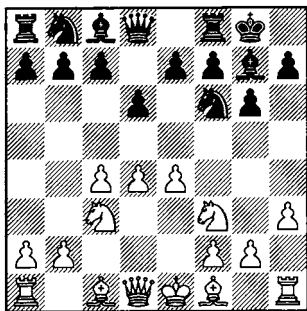
10...♖a5 11.♖d2

11.♖f2 h6 12.♗h4 a6 13.a4 ♗h5 14.♗ge2 f5 15.♖c2 g5 16.fxg5 ♖d8 17.♖g1 hxg5 18.♗f2 ♗e5+ Suba – Yrjola, Manila 1992.

11...a6 12.♗ge2 b5 13.cxb5 axb5 14.♗xb5, Suba – Sznepik, Dortmund 1981, **14...h6 15.♗xf6** (In order to ensure the safety of his d5-pawn, White will have to part with his dark-squared bishop anyway: 15.♗h4 ♗b6 16.♗xf6 ♗xf6 17.0–0 ♗f5 18.g4 ♗d7=) **15...♗xf6 16.0–0 ♗e4 17.♗xe4** (After 17.♖d3?! ♗f5, Black seizes the initiative.) **17...♖xb5 18.♗xd6** (Black's position is quite acceptable after 18.♗c3 ♖b6 19.♗fe1 ♗d4 20.♖h2 ♖b8=) **18...♖xb2 19.♖xb2 ♗xb2 20.♗xc8 ♗fxc8 21.♗ad1 ♗xa2=**

Chapter 8

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.h3 0-0 6.♘f3



You can play chess in numerous ways and this natural developing move with the knight to its lawful place the f3-square cannot be bad at all. The point is that it does not combine too well with h3, because as we have already seen, White often postpones the deployment of his knight on g1, so that he can develop it to e2 and g3, or maybe even to f3. On the other hand, it is useful to restrict the bishop on c8 and the knight on f6, establishing control over the g4-square.

In general, Black must play energetically in the centre in order to emphasize the drawbacks of White's tentative plan.

6...e5

A) 7.dxe5

B) 7.d5

In amateur games, people often play here 7.♙e3, which I believe does not fit the plan h2-h3. Black should better exchange immediately on d4 and begin attacking the e4-pawn: 7...exd4 8.♘xd4 (8.♙xd4 ♘c6 9.♙e3 ♖e8 10.♙d3 ♘b4 11.0-0, Caminero – Radomskyj, Parsippany 2001, 11...b6! 12.♖e1 ♙b7) 8...♖e8 9.♗c2 ♗e7 10.♙d3 (10.f3!?, Szilagyi – Szabo, Budapest 1950, 10...♘c6 11.0-0-0 ♘xd4 12.♙xd4 ♙e6=) 10...♘a6 11.a3 ♘c5 12.f3 c6. Black has increased maximally the pressure against the e4-pawn and he has provoked the move f3, weakening his opponent's set-up along the e-file, (the position of the bishop on e3 has become unstable) and here he is preparing the standard counter strike d7-d5. White must start defending now. 13.♘b3 ♘xd3 14.♗xd3 d5 15.cxd5 cxd5 16.♘xd5 ♘xd5 17.♗xd5 ♙e6 18.♗b5, Donner – Ligterink, Nijmegen 1977 and now the greedy approach 18...♙xb2 19.♖b1 ♗xa3+ would have

Chapter 8

provided Black with an obvious advantage.

In response to 7.♟g5?! Black must eye the e-pawn as well: 7...exd4 (After 7...♞a6, there arises a position, which we analyze in Chapter 7, variation A2.) 8.♞xd4 ♜e8. Now, in case of 9.♟d3? Black has an attractive typical combination: 9...♞xe4! 10.♞xe4 ♜xg5 11.0-0 ♜d8 and he ends up with a solid extra pawn, Maiko – Lahno, Kramatorsk 2001. Naturally, White is not obliged to overlook this tactical strike, but even after 9.♜c2 h6 10.♟e3 ♜e7 11.f3 c6 12.0-0-0 d5 13.cxd5 ♞xd5 14.♞xd5 cxd5 15.♟b5 ♟d7 16.♟xd7 ♞xd7, Fuentes – Giustolisi, Madrid 1951, Black has an excellent game.

7.dxe5

White forces a transition into an endgame in the hope of exploiting the vulnerability of the e5-pawn, the wonderful d5-outpost for his knight and his lead in development. In addition, Black's pieces are not harmoniously placed.

7...dxe5 8.♜xd8

In case of 8.♟g5, Max Euwe demonstrated a sensible plan for Black when he was young: 8...♞bd7 9.♜c2 h6 10.♟xf6 (White had better preserve this bishop admitting the senselessness of the move ♟g5.) 10...♜xf6 11.♞d5 ♜d8 12.0-0-0 c6 13.♞e3 ♜a5 14.♞b1 ♞c5 15.g4 ♞e6 16.♜c3 ♜xc3 17.bxc3 ♞c5 18.♟d3 f5! 19.gxf5 gxf5

20.♟c2 fxe4 21.♞h4 ♟e6 ♞ Von Hartingsvelt – Euwe, Amsterdam 1923.

The Bulgarian IM Bogomil Andonov came out with an interesting idea to play immediately 8.♟e3!? White presents his opponent with a choice whether to have queens on the board, or not (in case of the exchange on d1, since White's rook will enter the actions immediately) and he wishes to advance quickly c4-c5, occupying additional space on the queenside and obtaining a stable advantage. White's d4-square is potentially weak however and Black can reach an acceptable position: 8...♞bd7 9.c5 (9.♜c2 c6 10.♟e2 ♜e7 11.0-0 b6 12.a3 ♜d8 13.♜fd1 ♟b7 14.b4 ♞e8 15.♜d2 ♞f8 16.♜ad1 ♜xd2 17.♜xd2 ♞e6 18.♜d1 ♜d8 19.♜xd8, draw, Ermenkov – Tratar, Zadar 2006) 9...c6 10.a3 (10.♟e2 b6 11.cxb6 axb6 12.0-0 ♜e7 13.♜c2 ♞h5 14.♜fd1 ♞f4 15.♟f1 ♞e6 16.♜d2 b5 17.a3 ♟f6 18.♞a2 ♞dc5 19.♜c2 ♟b7 20.♞b4 ♜fc8, Kukov – Ermenkov, Sunny Beach 2007) 10...♜e7 11.b4 ♜d8 12.♜b3 ♞f8 13.♟c4 ♟e6 14.0-0 ♟xc4 15.♜xc4 ♞e8 16.♜fd1 ♞e6 17.♜xd8 ♜xd8 18.♜d1 ♜xd1 19.♞xd1 ♞8c7, draw, Andonov – Damljanovic, Struga 2005.

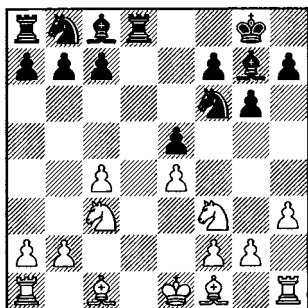
8...♜xd8

(diagram)

A1) 9.♞d5

A2) 9.♟g5

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♘f3 e5



It is bad for White to play 9.♘xe5?, because of 9...♘xe4 10.♘xe4 (White loses after 10.♘xf7? ♙xc3+) 10...♙xe5 and Black is evidently better thanks to his lead in development in this open position, for example: 11.♙g5, Rodriguez Codes – Romero Cantos, Spain 1998 (11.♙e2, De Biasi – Carno, France 2008, 11...♙f5 12.♘g3 ♙c2♣) 11...♙xb2 12.♙xd8 (12.♙b1 ♙e8) 12...♙xa1 13.♙xc7 ♙f5 14.♘d6 ♙c3+ 15.♙e2 ♘a6♣

A1) 9.♘d5 ♘xd5

Black exchanges the knights and then he begins undermining his opponent's d5-pawn, which hampers the natural development of his queenside:

10.cxd5 c6 11.♙c4

White wishes to place his bishop in the centre, instead of his pawn, but Black is not ready to comply with this.

11...b5 12.♙b3

If White begins with 12.♙g5, Polajzer – Nickl, St. Ingbert 1988, in order to force his opponent's rook to retreat to e8 (it goes to d7

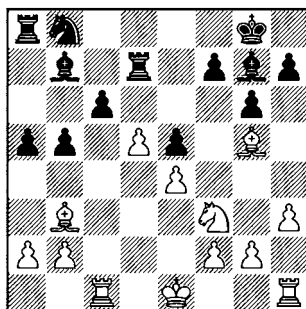
in the main line), then Black has the resource 12...f6, without being afraid of the discovered check, for example: 13.♙b3 (Black is even better after 13.dxc6 bxc4 14.c7 ♙d3 15.cxb8=♙ ♙xb8 16.♙c1 ♙b7.) 13...cxd5 14.♙e3 (but not 14.♙xd5? ♙xd5 15.exd5 e4) 14...♙e6 15.exd5 ♙f7 16.0-0 ♘d7 and Black's prospects are at least equal.

12...♙b7 13.♙g5

There begins a sharp fight for the central outpost.

In case of the indifferent line: 13.dxc6 ♙xc6 14.♙e3 h6 15.♘d2 a5♣ only White might have problems – he will soon need to begin defending, Pedersen – Lanka, Linz 1995.

13...♙d7 14.♙c1 a5



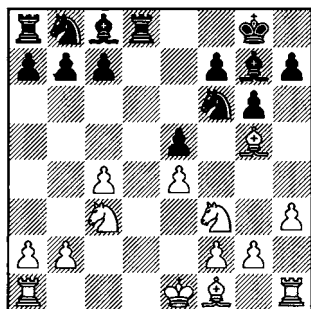
It is not advisable for Black to exchange on d5, because of the vulnerability of his last rank. Still, he must develop somehow his queenside. He leaves therefore his knight on b8 at its place and he tries to bring his rook on a8 into the actions.

15.0-0

15.♔e2 a4 16.dxc6 ♖xc6 17.♙d5 ♖a5 18.♙xb7 ♖xb7 19.♖hd1 f6 20.♙e3 ♖c4 21.♖c2 ♙f8 22.♖d5 ♖c8 23.♖d2 ♔f7, draw, King – Kindermann, Germany 1996.

15...a4 16.dxc6 ♖xc6 17.♙d5 ♖b4 18.♙xb7 ♖xb7 19.♙d2. It is understandable that Black cannot capture on a2, because he will lose his knight. Formally, White has a “good” bishop against a “bad” knight, but Black maintains the dynamic balance thanks to his actively deployed pieces and pawns on the queenside. **19...♖d3 20.♖c2 ♙f8 21.♖d1 f6 22.♖e1 ♖c5 23.f3 ♖d7=** Huebner – S.Kindermann, Nussloch 1996.

A2) 9.♙g5



A2a) 9...♖e8

A2b) 9...♖a6

A2c) 9...c6

A2a) 9...♖e8

This used to be considered as the best move for Black for a long time. Now I am no so sure about that...

A2a1) 10.♖d5

A2a2) 10.0–0–0

A2a1) 10.♖d5

White simplifies the position prematurely and this facilitates Black's defence.

10...♖xd5 11.cxd5 c6

He succeeds in exchanging White's pride ♖d5 for his miserable ♖c7 and he equalizes completely.

12.♙c4 cxd5

Black's rook is on e8 and not on d7, so it is not good for him to play aggressively on the queenside with 12...b5 13.♙b3 ♙b7 14.♖c1 ♖c8 (Black defends in advance against the possible penetration of the enemy rook to the 7th rank.) 15.♙e3 h6 16.♔e2 ♖d7 17.dxc6 ♙xc6 18.♖hd1 ♖b6 19.♙xb6 axb6 20.♙d5 ♙xd5 21.♖xc8 ♖xc8 22.♖xd5. White is clearly better in this endgame. His knight is superior to Black's bishop, his king is much more active than its counterpart is and Black has weak doubled pawns. If White manages to exchange rooks, then Black will be in a great trouble. 22...♖c2 23.♖d2 ♖c4 24.♖d8 ♔h7 25.♖d3 ♖a4 26.♖d5 f5 27.♖d2 b4 28.♖b5± Roeder – Gelashvili, Balaguer 2007.

13.♙xd5 ♖d7 14.♖d2

It is obvious that White's knight is headed for the e4-square and if possible even to d6. Black must either prevent this idea, or look for counterplay immediately.

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♘f3 e5

14...♘c5

The defensive play would not be a remedy for Black: 14...♘b6 15.♙b3 ♙e6 16.♗e2! (It is also good for White to play 16.♙e3! with an exemplary variation illustrating his opponent's problems: 16...♙f8 17.♗e2 ♙d7 18.a4 ♖ac8 19.a5 ♙b5 20.♗f3 ♘c4 21.♘xc4 ♙xc4 22.♙a4 ♖e6 23.♖hc1±) 16...♙xb3 17.axb3 a6 18.♙e3 ♘d7, Keitlinghaus – Panzer, Brilon 1986, 19.♘c4. Black has too many weaknesses on the queenside and in the centre and his dark-squared bishop has no good prospects at all. 19...♙f8 20.♖hd1 ♘c5 21.♙xc5 ♙xc5 22.♙d7 b6 23.b4±. White's knight will occupy soon the d5-outpost and Black's position will become pathetic.

15.♙e3

15.♘c4 ♙f8. Black must protect the d6-square. 16.0-0 ♙e6 17.♙xe6 ♘xe6 18.♙f6 (18.♙e3 ♘c5 19.f3 ♖ac8=) 18...♘c5 19.f3, Cvetkovic – Zontakh, Arandjelovac 1993, 19...♖e6 20.♙g5 b5 21.♘e3 h6 22.♙h4 ♘d3 23.♘d5 ♖c8 and he is even slightly better thanks to his active pieces.

15...♘d3 16.♗e2 ♘f4

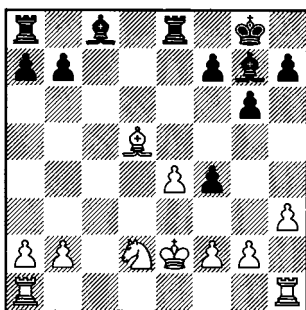
Naturally, Black ignores the b2-pawn and he forces the exchange of his knight for one of White's bishops with good prospects for the future.

17.♙xf4 exf4

(diagram)

18.♘c4

White's active attempt 18.♖ac1



♙xb2 19.♖c7, would only lead to an additional simplification: 19...♙e6 20.♙xe6 ♖xe6 21.♖xb7 ♙c3 22.♙d1 ♖a6 23.♖b3 ♙f6=

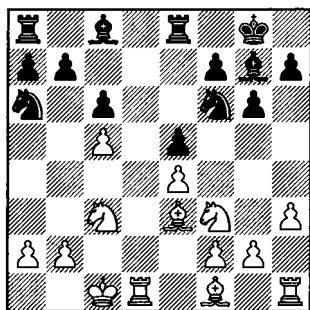
Black can counter the mysterious rook-move 18.♖ab1 simply with 18...♙e6 19.♙xb7 ♖ab8 20.♙c6 ♖e7 21.b3 ♖c8 (He penetrates on the 2nd rank and he obtains an excellent compensation for the pawn, because of his active pieces.) 22.♙b5 ♖c2 23.a4 ♖ec7±; and for the players who enjoy tactical complications, we can suggest the following idea 23...f3!? 24.gxf3 ♙h6 25.♖hd1 ♖ec7 26.♙d3 ♖a2±

18...♙e6 19.♗f3 ♙xd5 20. exd5 ♖ed8= Andreikin – Fedorov, Minsk 2006.

A2a2) 10.0-0-0 ♘a6 11. ♙e3

11.♙d3 c6 12.♙c2 h6 13.♙e3 ♘h5 14.g4 ♘f4 15.♗b1 ♙e6 16.b3 ♘b4 17.♙c5 ♘xc2 18.♗xc2 f5 and Black has seized the initiative for long, Wewers – Lichman, Germany 2006.

11...c6 12.c5



White has now attractive targets to attack, while Black has weak pawns and problems activating his bishops.

12...f8

12...c7 13.d2, White's knight is headed for a familiar route – to d6 via c4.

13.xa6 bxa6 14.d2

White should not try to find something better than a plan, which works quite well, sending his knight in the wrong direction: 14.e1 a5 15.b3 a6 16.d3 (now, what...?) 16...d7 17.a4 f5 18.exf5 gxf5 19.f4 exf4 20.xf4, Aloma – Gurbanzade, Calvia 2007, 20...e2

14.b3 b8 15.e1 a5=

14...e6 15.b3

15.b3 b8 16.b2 b4 17.c1 a5 18.hd1 h6 19.f3 eb8 20.a1 h5 21.ddb1 f4, with an approximate equality, Kotic – Marjanovic, Yugoslavia 2000.

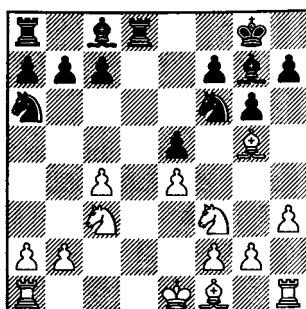
15...ab8

It is premature for Black to play 15...xb3 16.axb3 eb8 17.c2 b7 18.a1 d7 19.a5 ab8 20.d1±

The same applies to the line: 15...d7 16.a4 f5 17.f3 ab8 18.a5.

16.a5 ec8 17.a3 d7 18. b4 e7 19.f4↑ – White has squeezed his opponent on one of the flanks and he begins active actions on the other side.

A2b) 9...a6



This move looks modest, but it is possibly the most reliable.

10.d5 d6 11.xf6

11.d2 c6 12.xf6 xf6 13. xf6 xf6 Bruch – Pokrupa, Germany 2001.

11...xf6

White's knight on d5 seems to be perfectly placed, but this is all that he can brag about, because his other pieces cannot support it. His light-squared bishop has no good prospects and his knight on f3 is going nowhere. He can only try to exploit his minimal lead in development by fighting for the d-file.

12.0–0–0

12.c1 c6 (12...d8 13.c5 e6

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♟f3 e5

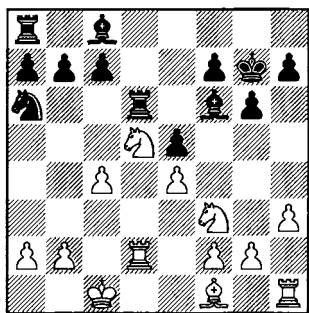
14.a3 c6 15.♙xa6 cxd5 16.♙d3 ♖e7 17.0-0, Kapnisis – Kotronias, Athens 2004, 17...♙d7 18.♙fd1 ♖c8=) 13.♟xf6 ♙xf6 14.c5 b6 15.cxb6 axb6 16.♟xe5 ♟c5 17.♙c4 ♙e6 18.0-0 ♟xe4 19.♙xe6 ♙xe6= Goritsas – V.Kotronias, Salonika 2006

12.b4 c6 13.♟xf6 ♙xf6 14.a3 c5 15.b5 ♟c7 16.♙e2 ♖e6= Larsen – Hellers, Esbjerg 1988. Black will gradually make use of the superiority of his bishop over its counterpart and his potential control over the d4-square.

12...♟g7 13.♙d2

13.b4 c6 14.♟xf6 ♙xd1 15.♟xd1 ♟xf6 16.a3 c5 17.b5 ♟c7= Feofanov – Levin, Peterhof 2007.

13.♙e2 ♙e6 14.♟xf6 ♙xd1 15.♙xd1 ♟xf6 16.♟d2 ♟c5 17.♟c2 a5 18.f3 ♟e7 19.♟b1 c6= Santos Luis – Garrido, Evora 2006.



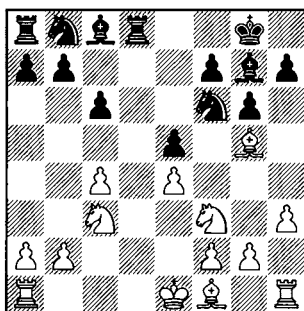
13...♙d7

This dancing of the rooks on the open file is just amusing. White's rook has made a step forward and Black's rook a step backward. The idea is quite un-

derstandable, however. Black wishes to repel the enemy knight with the move c7-c6, White will counter this with ♟xf6 and then it will become clear whether Black will manage to hold the d-file, or not.

14.g4 c6 15.♟xf6 ♟xf6. As a consequence of the move ♙d2, Black has failed to trade the rook with a check, but thanks to the move ♙d7, his rook is protected now and he can calmly centralize his king. **16.g5 ♟e6 17.h4 ♙xd2 18.♟xd2 ♟d6=** Ljubojevic – Ree, Amsterdam 1981.

A2c) 9...c6



This move is reliable. It is reasonable for Black to cover the d5-square, which is like a magnet for White's knight.

10.♟xe5

After 10.♙d1 ♙xd1 11.♟xd1 ♟a6 12.♟xe5, Bayram – Inarkiev, Istanbul 2003 (12.♙e3 ♟h5 13.♟c1 ♟f4 14.b3 b6 15.g3 ♟e6 16.♙g2 ♙b7 17.♙d1 ♙d8 18.♙xd8 ♟xd8 19.♟a4 ♟e6= Hoenig – Schlecht,

Germany 1994) 12...♖e4 13. ♖xe4 ♙xe5 14.♙f6 ♙xf6 15.♖xf6 ♗g7 16.♖g4 (16.♖e8!? ♗f8 17.♖f6 h5) 16...♖c5 17.♖e3 ♙e6 – Black ends up with a slight edge in the endgame and this is because of his well deployed light pieces and the possibility of quick activation of his king.

He would not have any serious problems after 10.♙e2 ♖a6 11.♖d2 (11.0–0 ♙e8 12.♙e3 ♙f8 13.♖d2 ♖c5 14.♙f1 ♖e6 15.♖b3 a5 16.a4 ♙b4 17.f3 ♖d7 18.♙ac1 ♖dc5 19.♖xc5 ♖xc5 20.♙a1 ♙e6 ♢ Borsuk – Kaminski, Warsaw 1992) 11...♖c5 12.0–0–0 ♖e6 13. ♙e3 ♖d4 14.♙he1 ♙e6 15.b3 ♙f8 16.♗b2 ♙b4 17.♙f1 ♗g7 18.a3 ♙e7 19.g3 ♖d7 ♢ Schiraldi – Vocaturo, Verona 2005.

10...h6

Black should strive to regain his sacrificed pawn as quickly as possible. For example, White can counter 10...♙e8 with a perfect response 11.0–0–0, protecting indirectly his knight on e5 in the process: 11...♖a6 (11...♙xe5 12.♙d8 ♙e8 13.♙xf6±) 12.♖f3 ♖c5 13.e5 (13.♖d2 h6 14.♙xf6 ♙xf6 15.f3 ♙e5±) 13...♖f7 14.♙e3 ♖e6 15.♖e4 ♖xe5 16.♖d6 ♙e7 17.♖xe5 ♙xe5 18.g3 c5 19.♙g2 ♖d4 20.♖e4 ♙c7 21.♙he1±

11.♙f4

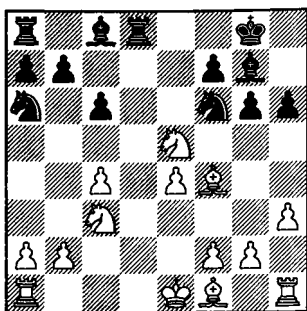
This is the best square for White's bishop, supporting the knight.

11.♙e3 ♖xe4 12.♖xe4 ♙xe5 13. ♙d1 ♙xd1 14.♗xd1 ♙xb2 15.♙xh6

♖a6 16.♙g5 ♙e6= Stoisavljevic – Todorovic, Yugoslavia 1994.

11.♙xf6 ♙xf6 12.♖g4 ♙xg4 13. hxc4 ♖a6! 14.f4 ♙xc3 15.bxc3 ♖c5± – Black's compensation for the pawn is sufficient, Cvetkovic – Kozul, Novi Becej 1986. He has an excellent blocking knight and it, together with the pawns on b7 and c6, restricts considerably White's light-squared bishop.

11...♖a6



12.♙e2

White can protect his e4-pawn with 12.f3, but Black can use this tempo in order to create unpleasant threats 12...♖b4 13.♙c1 ♖h5 14.♙h2 ♙f6 15.f4 (15.a3 ♙g5) 15...g5! (15...♙h4 16.♗e2 g5 17.f5 ♖g3 18.♙xg3 ♙xg3 19.♖g4±) 16.g3, Gagarin – Shchekachev, Moscow 1991 (After 16.fxg5 ♙xg5 17.♙d1 ♙e6, Black has the initiative.) 16...♙e6 17.♖g4 ♖d3 18.♙xd3 ♙xd3 19.♖xh6 ♗g7 20.♖g4 ♙xg4 21.hxc4 ♖xg3 22.♙xg3 ♙xg3 23.e5 ♙e7=

12...♖c5 13.f3

In case 13.♙f3, Keitlinghaus –

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♟f3 e5

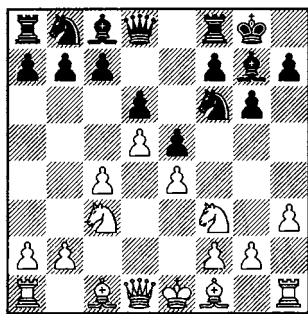
Skembris, Dortmund 1990, Black has a powerful argument 13...♟h5 14.♙xh5 gxh5 15.0-0 ♖e8 16.♟f3 ♟d3 17.♙c1 ♙e6, with a good compensation for the pawn.

13...g5

This is a new idea, because in the game Lopez Colon – Shchekachev, Las Palmas 1993, Black tested 13...♟h5.

14.♙e3 (14.♙h2 ♙e6, followed by ♟f6-h5-f4, or ♟d7) 14...♟e6 15.♟d3 (15.♟g4 ♟f4 16.♙xf4 gxf4) 15...♟h5 16.0-0-0 ♟d4 17.♖he1 ♙e6! (Black is now attacking the weak c4-pawn.) 18.♟c5 ♟xe2 19.♟xe2 ♖xd1 20.♟xd1 ♙xc4 21.b3 ♖d8 22.♟c2 ♙xe2 23.♖xe2 b6=

B) 7.d5



7...a5

7...♟bd7 – This move presents White with a great choice of alternatives. 8.♙g5 h6 (About 8...a5 9.g4 ♟c5 10.♟d2 c6 – see 8.♙g5.) 9.♙e3 ♟c5 10.♟d2 a5. The recent tournament practice shows that White has at least two plans to

maintain an advantage in this position:

1) 11.g4 c6 12.♙e2 ♙d7 13.♟f1 a4 14.b4 axb3 15.axb3 ♖b6 16.♟g2 ♖b4 17.♖c2 cxd5 18.cxd5 ♖xa1 19.♖xa1 ♖c8 20.♖c1 b5 21.f3 h5 22.g5 ♟h7 23.♖b2± Conquest – Hennigan, England 2007.

2) 11.♙e2 ♟e8 (11...♟h8 12.g4 c6 13.h4 cxd5 14.cxd5 b5 15.g5 ♟h5 16.♙xc5 dxc5 17.♙xh5 gxh5 18.♟xb5 ♙g4 19.f3 ♙d7 20.♟c3± Romanov – A.Spielmann, Paris 2008; 11...c6 12.a3 a4 13.♙xc5 dxc5 14.♟xa4 ♟d7 15.0-0 ♖e7 16.♖b1 h5 17.b4 ♙h6 18.♟f3 f5 19.d6 ♖g7 20.exf5 gxf5 21.♟xc5 ♟xc5 22.bxc5 e4 23.♟h2 ♖xa3 24.♖b3 ♖xb3 25.♖xb3± Akesson – Pedersen, Pardubice 2008) 12.g4 (12.h4 h5 13.♟b3 b6 14.♖d2 a4 15.♟xc5 dxc5 16.f3 ♟d6 17.♖c2 f5 18.♙d3 ♙f6 19.♙f2 ♙d7± Todorovic – M.Nikolic, Belgrade 2008) 12...f5 13.exf5 gxf5 14.♖g1± – White has won the fight for the e4-outpost, meanwhile the safety of Black's king is rather questionable.

B1) 8.♙g5

B2) 8.♙e3

8.g4 ♟a6 9.♙g5 – see variation. B1; 9.♙e3 – see variation B2.

It is not so reasonable for White to continue with 8.♙d3, since his bishop will soon come under attack on this square, for example: 8...♟a6 9.♙e3 h6 10.♖d2 ♟h7 11.g4 ♟g8 12.0-0-0 b6 13.g5?

(White should not try to block the kingside, It will be better for him to play 13.♖dg1 with the idea h3-h4 and then after 13...♗c5 14.♕c2 ♕a6 15.♖e2 ♖e7 16.h4 ♖h8, there would arise a complicated position with mutual chances.) 13...h5 14.♖e2 ♗c5 15.♗g3 ♗xd3 16.♖xd3 ♖e7 17.♖e2 ♖e8 18.♗b1 ♕a6 19.♖c1, Tarrasch – Euwe, Amsterdam 1923 and here Black should start an offensive with 19...c5! (threatening b6-b5) 20.dxc6 d5!

After 8.♕e2 ♗a6, White will have to make up his mind where to develop his queen's bishop – to g5 (**B1**), or to e3 (**B2**).

B1) 8.♕g5 ♗a6

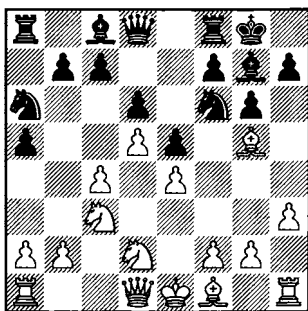
This development of the knight is much more flexible than on the d7-square. At first, from a6 it has two squares to go to – c5 and b4, and secondly the d7-square remains free for the other knight, or for his bishop.

9.♗d2

Despite the fact that the pawn-chain on c4-d5-e4 is on light squares, the bishop on f1 is a very important piece, therefore the move 9.♕d3, will be connected with a loss of a tempo, as we have already mentioned, (It is not advantageous for White to allow its exchange for Black's knight after ♗a6-c5.) for example: 9...♖e8 10.g4 ♗d7 11.♖g1 ♗h8 12.a3 ♗dc5 13.♕c2 ♕d7 14.♖e2 f5 15.gxf5 gxf5 16.♗d2 f4 17.♖f3 a4 18.♖g2 h6 19.♕h4 ♖f7 20.0-0-0 ♕f6 21.

♕xf6 ♖xf6 22.♖dg1 ♖g8= Gulko – Becerra, Stillwater 2007.

The move 9.♕e2 leads to positions, which have been analyzed in Chapter 22, variation **B**.



B1a) 9...c6

B1b) 9...♖e8

B1a) 9...c6 10.♕e2!

This is the right way for White to complete his development and he has adequate responses against all Black's possibilities.

10.g4 ♕d7 11.♕e2 – see 10.♕e2.

10.a3 ♕d7 11.♖b1 ♖b8 12.g4, van Wely – Lanka, Germany 1998 (with the idea ♖f3) 12...h6 13.♕e3 ♖c8. Black has tried to postpone the exchange on d5 as long as possible, so that his opponent cannot occupy the b5-square, impeding his counterplay on the queenside. Now however, he is quite well prepared to fulfil his plans.

10...♕d7 11.0-0

In case White plays something else, Black solves all his problems.

11.h4 ♟c5 12.h5 a4. Black intends to build up the classic set-up in this variation – ♖a5, ♜c8 and then capture cd, advance later b5 and then if necessary f5, having played before ♟e8. (Black tried relatively recently another idea: 12...cxd5 13.♟xd5 ♟e6 14.♟xf6 ♙xf6 15.♙xf6 ♖xf6 16.♙g4 b5 17. 0-0 bxc4 18.♟xc4 ♙b5= Berry – Hebden, England 2008. It worked quite well indeed, however the entire plan seems a bit risky.) 13.h6 (It is harmless for Black, if White plays 13.hxg6?! fxg6 14.b4 axb3 15.♟xb3 ♟a4 16.♟xa4 ♜xa4 17.dxc6 ♙xc6 18.f3 ♖c7= Dobosh – Lanka, Germany 1996.) 13... ♙h8 14.b4 axb3 15.♟xb3 ♖b6 (White has already compromised his pawn-structure on the queenside; therefore, Black has numerous promising alternatives. For example, it looks very good for him to opt for 15...♟a4 16.♟xa4 ♜xa4 17.0-0, Siebrecht – Lanka, Hamburg 2006, 17...cxd5 18.exd5 ♖c7=) 16.♟xc5 ♖xc5 17.♙e3 ♖a3= Krasenkow – Lanka, Germany 1999;

11.♖b1 a4!? (11...h6 12.♙e3 ♟h7 13.0-0 h5 14.♟a4 c5 15.♖b3 b6 16.a3 ♖e7 17.♖d1 ♜ab8 18.b3 ♟g5 19.♟b2 ♜bd8 20.♟d3 f5= Morchishvili – Inarkiev, Izmir 2004) 12.0-0 ♟c5 13.b4 (13.♖c2 ♖c7 14.b4 axb3 15.axb3 cxd5 16.♙xf6 ♙xf6 17.♟xd5 ♖d8=) 13...axb3 14.axb3 cxd5 15.cxd5 ♟xd5!? Black has obtained a rook, a bishop and a pawn for his queen, so it was not

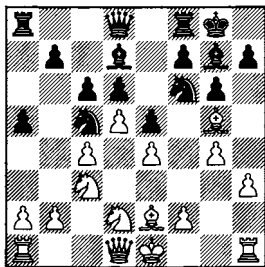
exactly a sacrifice, but just an exchange of pieces of different value. 16.♙xd8 ♟xc3 17.♖e1 ♟xb1 18.♙e7 ♟xd2 19.♖xd2 ♟xe4 20.♖b4 ♜fe8 21.♖xe4 ♜xe7 22.♖xb7 ♜a2=;

11.a3 ♖b8. Black would like to enlarge the field of actions on the queenside by pushing b7-b5-b4. (He would hardly equalize with 11...♖b6 12.♖b1 ♜fc8 13.0-0±, or 11...♟c5 12.b4 axb4 13.axb4 ♟a6 14.♖b3 c5 15.bxc5 ♟xc5 16.♖b2±) 12.♖b1 (This is the correct reaction for White preparing b2-b4.) 12... h6 (12...cxd5 13.cxd5 b5 14.b4±; 12...♜c8 13.b4 axb4 14.axb4 cxd5 15.exd5 b5 16.0-0±) 13.♙e3 ♟c5 14.g4 (Black has not played b5 yet and it would be too dangerous for White to play 14.b4, in view of 14... axb4 15.axb4 cxd5 16.cxd5 ♟a4, while in case of 17.♟xa4, Black has the resource 17...♙xa4, this is why it was essential that the b-pawn had remained on its place. 18.♖c1 ♜c8 with a double-edged position. Therefore, White makes a useful prophylactic move on the other side of the board.) 14...♜c8 (In case of 14...cxd5 15.cxd5 b5, White has the powerful argument 16.b4 axb4 17.axb4 ♟a4 18.♟xa4 bxa4 19.b5± – Black has prepared this maneuver and he places his rook on the c-file in advance, so that White's knight on c3 might be hanging in some variations.) 15.a4, Potapov – Inarkiev, Pardubice 2003 (After 15.h4 cxd5 16.cxd5 b5 17.g5 hxg5 18.hxg5 ♟e8 19.♟b3 ♟xb3 20.♖xb3 ♟c7

Chapter 8

21.♔f1, White maintains only a symbolic edge.) 15...♖c7 16.h4 (In case of 16.♔f1, Black has an excellent response: 16...♗b6 17.♔g2 ♗b4 18.♗c2 cxd5) 16...♕e8 17.h5 g5 18.♕b3 ♕a6;

It is too slow for White to opt for 11.g4 ♕c5.



He has tried in practice numerous other moves here, but he has never achieved anything much:

12.♕e3 a4 13.b4 axb3 14.axb3 ♕a6 15.♔f1 ♕e8 16.♔g2 ♕ec7 17.♕f1 cxd5 18.cxd5 ♕c5 19.♗xa8 ♗xa8 – Varga – Bologan, France 2004;

12.♗c2 a4 13.♗d1 ♗a5 14.0–0 h6 15.♕h4 ♗fc8 16.f3 cxd5 17.exd5 ♗e8 – Kunin – Gaule, Austria 2004;

12.♕b3 ♕xb3 13.♗xb3 ♗c7 14.0–0–0 a4 15.♗a3 c5 16.♗dg1 ♗a5 17.f3 ♗fc8 18.h4 ♗b4= Larsen – Gligoric, San Antonio 1972;

12.0–0 ♔h8 13.♗b1 ♗c8 14.♕e3 ♗d8 15.f3 ♕g8 16.♔g2 f5 17.♕b3 ♕xb3 18.♗xb3 c5 19.♗d1 ♕h6 20.♕f2 ♕f4 – Arbakov – Inarkiev, Alushta 2002;

12.♔f1 ♗e8 13.♕e3 cxd5 14.exd5 ♗c8 15.g5 ♕e8 16.♕g4 f5

17.gxf6 ♕xf6 18.♕xd7 ♗xd7 19.♕xc5 dxc5 20.♕de4 ♕xe4 21.♕xe4 ♗f4 – Schlosser – Arbakov, Passau 1996;

12.h4 ♗b6 13.♗g1 (13.♗h3 h5 – Kacheishvili – Bologan, Rethymnon 2003) 13...♗xb2 14.♗g3 ♗b6 15.h5 h6 16.♕e3 cxd5 17.cxd5 a4

11...h6

11...♔h8 12.♗c1 (As a rule, it is not advantageous for White to capture on c6 – 12.dxc6 bxc6, with an unclear position. It looks however, quite reasonable for White to continue with a plan of preparation of a pawn-offensive on the queenside. 12.a3 ♗b8 13.♗b1 ♕g8 14.b4 axb4 15.axb4 c5 16.bxc5 ♕xc5 17.♕e3 ♗c8 18.♕b3 ♕a4 19.♕xa4 ♕xa4 20.♗d3 – Meissner – Lanka, Austria 2002.) 12...♗c7 13.a3 ♕g8 (13...♗ae8?! 14.c5!) 14.♕e3 c5 15.♕b5 ♗b6 16.f4 ♕h6, Gelashvili – Inarkiev, Athens 2005 and here White should have played 17.♗b3 with a clear edge because he would have an ample space advantage on both flanks.

12.♕e3 ♕c5

Black would not equalize with 12...♕e8 13.♗b3 ♕c5 14.♕xc5 dxc5 15.♕a4

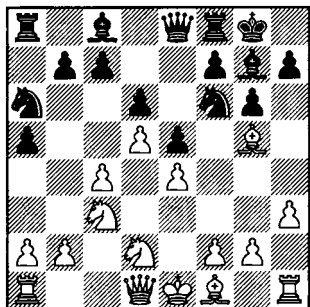
13.a3 cxd5 14.cxd5 a4 15.♕xc5 dxc5, Zakhartsov – Y.Vovk, Lviv 2006, 16.♗c2 ♕e8 17.♗ad1 ♕d6 18.♕c4 ♕e8 19.d6

B1b) 9...♗e8

This is much better than the traditional plan with c6, which

1.d4 ♟f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♟g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♟f3 e5

Zigurds Lanka had taught me back in the year 1991.



10.♟e2

The move 10.g4, leads usually to positions, which he have analyzed after 10.♟e2, with the exception of 11.a3. 10...♟d7 11.a3 (11.♟e2 – see 10.♟e2; 11.♟g1 ♟dc5 12.♟e2 – see 10.♟e2) 11...♟b6 (Black should not be in a hurry to play the thematic 11...f5!?, since White manages to continue with his plan quite effectively: 12.gxf5 gxf5 13.♟g1 ♟h8 14.exf5 e4 15.♟e3 ♟e5 16.♟dxe4 ♟xf5 17.♟e2± P. Nielsen – Mortensen, Denmark 2003) 12.h4. This is a very unpleasant plan for Black and its idea is evident. White wishes to checkmate his opponent along the b-file, therefore Black must play very energetically. (In case of 12.♟d3 ♟c5 13.♟c2 ♟d7 14.b4 – 14.♟f3!? – 14...axb4 15.axb4 ♟xa1 16.♟xa1 ♟ca4 17.♟e2± White obtains a stable advantage, but Black can play better – 13...a4!?, blocking the queenside and planning to continue with his opera-

tions there. 12.♟g1 ♟h8 13.♟d3 f5 14.♟e3 ♟xd5 15.exd5 f4 (15...e4 16.♟dxe4 fxe4 17.♟xe4 ♟xb2 18.♟a2 ♟g7 19.♟e2 ♟d7, Haimovich – Fedorov, Kemer 2007, 20.♟f1±) 16.♟de4 fxe3 17.fxe3 ♟e7=) 12...f5! It is essential for Black to play this before h5. (It is weaker for him to opt for 12...♟c5 13.h5 ♟ba4 14.♟b5 ♟d7 15.b3 ♟b6 16.♟f3 c6=; 14.♟xa4 ♟xa4 15.b3 ♟d7. Black must impede the transfer of his opponent's queen to the h-file. 16.♟e2 h6 17.♟e3 and we have to admit that White's chances are superior. Black would have to play eventually g5, but then there will be only one question left to answer, whether he will manage to sustain White's pressure on the queenside.) 13.gxf5 gxf5 14.♟g1 ♟h8 15.h5 ♟c5 16.♟e3 ♟ba4 17.♟b5 ♟e7±

10...♟d7

10...♟h8 11.h4 h6 (11...♟g8 12.g4 f6 13.♟e3 f5 14.gxf5 gxf5 15.exf5 ♟xf5 16.♟de4 ♟f6 17.♟g3 ♟d7 18.h5 ♟f7 19.h6 ♟f8, Polak – S.Novikov, Pardubice 2007, 20.♟xf5 ♟xf5 21.♟d2 ♟c5 22.0-0-0±) 12.♟e3 h5 13.f3 ♟g8 14.g4! f5 (14...♟h6 15.♟f1!; 14...hxc4 15.fxc4 f5 16.g5±) 15.gxf5 gxf5 16.♟c2±

11.g4

Black continues with his standard counterplay after 11.h4 ♟dc5 12.h5 f5.

It would be insufficient for White to try 11.♟b3 f6 12.♟e3 b6 13.g4 ♟ac5 14.♟xc5 ♟xc5 15.f3 f5

16.♖d2 ♖d7 17.0-0-0 a4 18.♙xc5 bxc5 Mchedlishvili – Movszizsian, La Laguna 2007.

He obtains no advantage after 11.a3 f6 (11...♖b6!? 12.0-0 a4 13.b4 axb3 14.♖xb3 ♖d7 15.c5 ♖a4 16.♖xa4 ♙xa4 17.cxd6 cxd6 18.♖b1 ♖d7= Poluljahov – Ki.Georgiev, Tivat 1995) 12.♙e3 (12.♙h4 ♖b6 13.b3 ♙h6 14.♖b1 ♖c5 15.b4 axb4 16.axb4 ♖ca4 17.♖b5 ♖d8 18.♖b3 ♖g7 19.♖d1 c6 20.♖a3 c5 21.b5 ♖d7 22.♖ab1 ♖a5 23.♖c1 ♖b4 24.♖c2 ♖xb3 25.♖xb3 ♙g5= Legky – Shirov, France 1995) 12...f5 13.f3 f4 (13...♖f6 14.g4 ♖d7 15.♖c2 c6 16.♙d3 cxd5 17.cxd5 b5 18.exf5 gxf5 19.gxf5 e4 20.♖dx4 b4, Vulfson – Iskusnyh, Moscow 1994, 21.♖xf6 ♙xf6 22.♖e4±) 14.♙f2 ♖f6 15.b4 ♖h5 16.c5 ♖g3 17.♙xg3 fxg3 18.cxd6 axb4 19.axb4 cxd6±

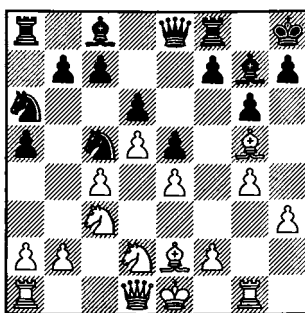
11...♖dc5 12.♖g1

It would be too slow for White to play 12.♖f1 – Black will at first repel the bishop from g5 and then he will organize a counter offensive on the kingside: 12...f6 13.♙e3 f5 14.gxf5 gxf5 15.exf5 ♙xf5 16.♖g3 ♙g6! The bishop will support from this square the knights on c5 and b4 and it will create dangerous threats. Meanwhile, the following analysis shows that Black is not supposed to hold on to his bishop by all means: 16...♖g6!? 17.h4!? (17.♖xf5 ♖xf5 18.♙g4 ♖g6 19.♖g1 ♖h8 20.♖b1 e4± Galkin – Ibragimov, Sochi 1997) 17...♙h6 (17...♖b4 18.h5±) 18.h5 ♖g7 19.♖xf5

♙xf5 20.♖d2 ♙xe3 21.♖xe3 ♖h8 22.0-0-0 ♖g8=

If Black succeeds in exchanging queens, he will be simply better in the endgame.) 17.h4 ♖b4 18.h5 ♖c2! (but not 18...♖cd3?!, because of 19.♖d2 ♖xf2 20.♙xf2 ♙xf2 21.hxg6 ♖xg6 22.♖ce4± Miroshnichenko – N.Mamedov, Cappelle la Grande 2007) 19.♖d2 ♙xf2! 20.hxg6 ♖xe3 21.♖xe3 ♖f8±

12...♖h8



13.a3

Black can counter 13.♖f1 in a standard fashion – 13...f5! 14.gxf5 gxf5 15.♖g3 fxe4! (15...♖g6 16.h4 fxe4 17.♙h5 ♖d3 18.♖d2 ♖xb2 19.♖e2 ♙xf2 20.♖xf2 e3 21.♖xe3 ♖xc4 22.♖c1 ♖xe3 23.♙xg6± Klimov – Sandstrom, Stockholm 1999.) 16.♖h5 (16.♖cxe4 ♙xh3!? 17.♖d2 ♖xe4 18.♖xe4 ♙f5 19.f3 ♙xe4 20.fxe4 ♖c5±) 16...♖g6 17.♖xg7 (17.♖g3 ♙g4! 18.♙e7 ♖xh5 19.♙xg4 ♖h6 20.♙xf8 ♙xf8±; it is even worse for White to play 18.♖xg7 ♖d3-+) 17...♖xg7 18.♖d2 (18.♖g3 ♖f7 19.♙e3 ♖g8±) 18...

1.d4 ♟f6 2.c4 g6 3.♟c3 ♟g7 4.e4 d6 5.h3 0-0 6.♟f3 e5

♟b4 (18...h6!? 19.0-0-0 hxg5 20.♟xg5 ♟f6 – with the idea ♟f5 – 21.♟h5 ♟g8 22.♟g1 ♟f7 23.♟h7 ♟e8–+) 19.0-0-0 ♟xa2! 20.♟b1 ♟xc3 21.bxc3 ♟f5–+ Jovanic – Kozul, Ljubljana 2004.

13...♟d7 14.h4

14.♟c2 f5 15.exf5 gxf5 16.♟h4 ♟a4↗

14...f5 15.gxf5 gxf5 16.h5 ♟f6 17.♟xf6 ♟xf6 18.♟c2 ♟f8 19.0-0-0 fxe4 20.♟cxe4

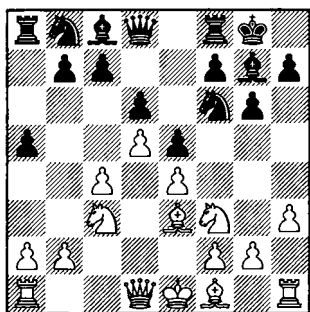
After 20.♟dxe4, Black will follow with a same response – 20...♟f4.

20...♟f4 21.f3 ♟f5 22.♟g2 ♟h6 23.♟b1 ♟xh5

White will not have sufficient forces to organize an effective kingside attack, so Black can gobble up a pawn.

24.♟dg1 ♟g6 M.Ivanov – Cvitan, Cappelle la Grande 1995.

B2) 8.♟e3



8...♟a6 9.♟d2

9.g4 ♟d7 10.a3 ♟ac5 11.♟d2 ♟f6 12.♟f3 a4 13.g5 ♟g7 14.♟d2 f5 15.h4 c6 16.f3 ♟b6 17.♟e2

♟d7 18.♟c2 ♟c8 19.0-0-0 cxd5 20.cxd5 fxe4 21.fxe4 ♟f4!↗ Riazantsev – Inarkiev, Novokuznetsk 2008. If White accepts the exchange-sacrifice, then the King's Indian bishop on g7 would not be weaker than a rook at all. Naturally, White can refrain from capturing, but in that case, Black's rook on f4 will be acting on his nerves and squeeze his forces on the kingside.

9...♟d7!

I have collected numerous points in tournaments with this move, particularly in rapid chess. My opponents felt rather uncomfortable in every case and quite deservedly at that! The object of the attack – my knight on f6 was soon becoming the hunter and where White was planning to attack, he was soon facing a powerful counter strike f7-f5.

I have already mentioned above that the move 9...c6 is gradually coming out of fashion. 10.g4 (10.♟e2 ♟d7 11.0-0 ♟b8 12.b3 ♟h8 13.a3 ♟g8 14.♟b1 f5 15.exf5 gxf5 16.♟c2 ♟f6∞; 11.a3 ♟e8 12.g4 ♟c5 13.b4 axb4 14.axb4 ♟a6 15.♟b1 c5 16.bxc5 ♟xc5 17.♟b3, all this happened in the game Breutigam – Lanka, Germany 1997 and here the guru of the variation had better simply fortify his knight of c5, by playing 17...b6=, with the idea to continue on the next move with f5.) 10...♟c5 11.♟e2 ♟d7 12.b3. We are still following the ancient game Kalantarian – Niki-

tin, Lugansk 1989. (The position would be double-edged after 12.g5 ♖e8 13.h4 cxd5 14.cxd5 f5 15.f3 a4±) 12...♟b8 13.a3 cxd5 14.cxd5 ♜c8 (14...b5 15.b4! axb4 16.axb4 ♜xa1 17.♟xa1 ♖a4 18.0-0 ♖xc3 19.♟xc3 ♜c8 20.♟b2±) 15.a4 ♟c7! (15...♖d3? 16.♙xd3 ♜xc3 17.♖b1! ♜c8 18.♖a3± Todorovic – Murey, London 1987) 16.♜c1 ♟d8 17.♙c4! ♖e8 18.♟f3±

The piece sacrifice is interesting, but insufficient after 9... ♖xe4 10.♖dxe4 f5 11.♙g5 (11.g4 fxe4 12.♖xe4 b6 13.♙d3 ♖c5 14.b3 ♖xd3 15.♟xd3 ♙d7= Kavalik – Torre, Skopje 1972) 11...♟e8 12.♖d2 h6 13.♙h4 g5 14.♙g3 e4 15.♙h2 a4 16.♜c1 ♖c5 17.♙e2 e3 18.♖db1 exf2 19.♖xf2 ♖e4 20.♖f1 ♙d7 21.♟d3± – Black's position looks beautiful indeed, but White still has the edge.

10.g4

10.a3 f5 11.f3 ♙h6! 12.♙f2, Ramesa – Zufic, Hvar 1998, 12... ♖ac5±

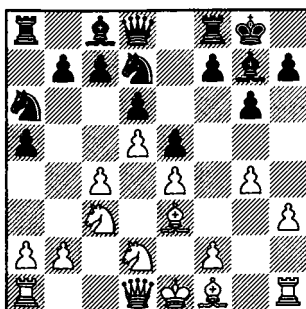
10.♖b3 ♖ac5 11.♖xc5 ♖xc5 12.♙d3 f5, draw, Magerramov – El Taher, Dubai 1999.

10.h4 f5!? 11.♙g5 ♟e8 12.h5 h6 13.hxg6 ♟xg6 14.♙e7 ♟f7 15.exf5 ♟xf5 16.♙h4 ♖dc5±

(diagram)

10...♖dc5

Black has a promising alternative – 10...f5 11.gxf5 (11.f3 ♙h6!; 11.♖b3 b6 12.♟g1 f4 13.♙d2 ♙f6± Rahman – Hossain, Dhaka 2006) 11...gxf5 12.exf5 ♖dc5 13.♖de4 ♙xf5 14.♙g2 (14.♖xc5



♖xc5 15.♟d2 ♟h4 16.♟g1 ♖h8 17.0-0-0 ♙f6 18.♙e2 ♟g8 19.f4 ♟xg1 20.♟xg1 ♟g8 21.♟xg8 ♖xg8 22.fxe5 ♙xe5 23.♙f1 ♙g6± Roeder – Ortiz, Balaguer 2006) 14...♟e8 15.♖xc5 (15.♙f3 ♟g6 16.♙h5 ♟g2 17.♙f3=) 15...♖xc5 (15...♟g6!±) 16.♙xc5 dxc5 17.♙e4 ♟g6 18.♟f3 ♙xe4 19.♟xe4 ♟f4 20.♟xg6 hxg6 21.♟g1 ♖f7 22.0-0-0 ♟xc4 23.d6 c6 24.♟g4 ♙d4± Muse – Bologan, Germany 1998.

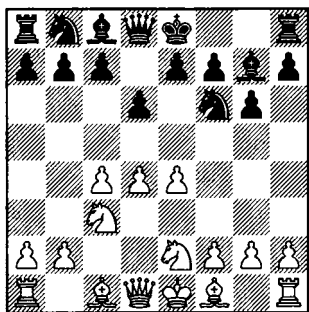
11.♖b3

11.h4 f5 12.g5 (12.gxf5 gxf5 13.♟e2 f4 14.♙xc5 f3 15.♟e3 ♖xc5 16.♖xf3 ♟f4± Borisenko – Zakharovich, Novgorod 1995) 12...♙d7 (It deserves attention for Black to try 12...f4 13.♙xc5 ♖xc5) 13.h5 ♟f7 14.♟h4 c6 15.hxg6 hxg6 16.exf5 ♙xf5 17.♖de4 ♖xe4 18.♖xe4 cxd5 19.♟xd5 ♖b4 20.♟d2 d5 21.a3 ♙xe4 22.axb4 axb4 23.♟xa8 ♟xa8 24.cxd5 ♟a1 25.♟d1 ♟xd1 26.♖xd1 ♙xd5 27.♟xb4= Andreikin – Cabezas, Kallithea 2008.

11...♖xb3 12.♟xb3 ♟h4 13.♟g1 ♙h6 14.g5 ♙g7 15.0-0-0 f5 16.gxf6 ♙h6!± San Segundo – Shirov, Madrid 1997.

Chapter 9

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.♘ge2



White wishes to develop quickly his knight to g3 and then to act depending on Black's reaction. I do not like this plan so much for White, because the knight on g3 is restricted by the pawn on g6. It has its venom, though... For example, if Black goes for c5, then White enters a favourable version of the Saemisch Attack without the superfluous move f3. The Russian GM Tregubov plays like this regularly and quite successfully.

5...0-0

Black must castle at some moment and his king will feel safer on g8, while his pieces can go anywhere.

He can also wait a bit and choose instead 5...♘bd7, but in

this case after 6.f3 White will enter advantageously the Saemisch Attack, for example: 6.f3!? c5 7.♙e3 0-0 8.♖d2 a6 9.♞d1 ♖a5 10.♘c1 cxd4 11.♙xd4 ♘e5 12.♘b3 ♗c7 13.♞c1 e6 14.♙e2±. This is not a bed of roses for Black when his knight is already on d7. He can try something else – 6...a6 (instead of 6...c5) 7.♙e3 c5 8.♖d2 ♖a5, but he cannot equalize, for example: 9.♘c1 cxd4 10.♙xd4 ♘c5 11.a3 ♘e6 12.♙e3 0-0 13.♙e2 ♙d7 14.0-0 ♗c7 15.♘b3±

6.♘g3

In answer to 6.♙g5, Black can attack his opponent's bishop immediately with 6...h6. White has tested different retreats, but Black obtains an excellent position in all the lines. For example: 7.♙f4 (In the ancient game Larsen – Gliгорic, Leningrad 1973, White preferred 7.♙e3, which the Yugoslavian grandmaster countered with his favourite maneuver – 7...♘g4, then he attacked the enemy centre and after 8.♙c1 c5 9.d5 e6 10.h3 ♘e5 11.♘f4 exd5 12.exd5 ♞e8, he seized the initiative. In case of 7.♙h4 g5 8.♙g3, White's dark-

squared bishop is isolated from the main field of actions – the queenside: 8...c5 9.d5 b5 10.cxb5 ♖a5 11.f3 a6 12.bxa6 ♙xa6 13.♖c2 ♖bd7 14.♗c1 ♙xf1 15.♗xf1 ♗h5 16.♙e1 ♗e5 and Black has a powerful pressure in the centre, Reicher – Schulz, Hamburg 1980.) 7...♗c6 8.♖d2 – White prepares castling long with this ambitious move with the idea to begin quick kingside actions. (It is more reliable for him to play 8.d5, Kohlweyer – Scalcione, Lido Estensi 2003, but even then after 8...♗e5 9.♗d4 c6 10.♖d2 ♖b6, Black has good counter chances.) 8...e5! 9.♙xh6 ♙xh6 10.♖xh6 ♗xd4 11.♖d2 c5 12.♗g3 a6 13.♙d3 b5 14.h4 ♙e6 and Black's position is preferable, Jussupow – Shaked, Linares 1997.

The move 6.g3 was used by Saemisch, Euwe and Botvinnik and during the 50ies and the 60ies of the past century the Spanish GM Arturo Salamanka Pomar was playing it regularly. This set-up is flexible enough, (The knight on e2 will not cover the diagonal for the fianchettoed bishop on g2 and the e4-pawn can be additionally protected if necessary with f2-f3 etc.) but it is not so aggressive. The knight is more active on f3 in the fight for the centre. Black can answer with two possible counter strikes 6...c5 and 6...e5. Indeed after 6...c5 7.♙g2 cxd4 8.♗xd4, we would go too far into the Sicilian Defence, so we

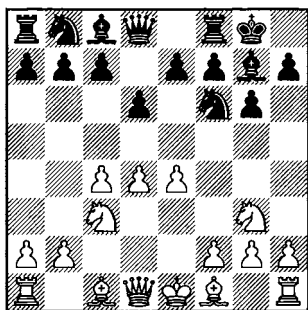
should better adhere to the King's Indian line: 6...e5 7.♙g2 (White achieves nothing much with 7.dxe5 dxe5 8.♖xd8 ♙xd8 9.♗d5 ♗xd5 10.cxd5 c6 11.♗c3 h6 12.h4 cxd5 13.♗xd5 ♗c6= Schuckar – Gropp, Szolnok 1997. In case of 7.d5 c6 8.♙g2 cxd5 9.cxd5 ♗bd7 10.0–0 a5 11.h3 ♗c5 12.♙e3 b6 13.a3, Gibbs – Kottbauer, Whitby 1962, 13...a4!? 14.♙xc5 bxc5 15.♗xa4 ♙a6 – the PC programme “Rybka” prefers the move 15...♗d7!? – 16.♗ac3 ♖b6 and Black has a good compensation for the sacrificed pawn.) 7...exd4 8.♗xd4 ♗c6 9.♗xc6 (Botvinnik failed to obtain an edge after 9.♗c2 ♙e6 10.b3 ♖d7 11.0–0 ♙h3 12.f3 ♙xg2 13.♗xg2 ♗h5 14.♙b2 f5 15.exf5 ♖xf5 16.♗e3 ♖f7 17.♖d5 ♙ae8 18.♙ae1 ♗f6 19.♖d2 a6, Botvinnik – Yudovich, Leningrad 1939 and the opponents agreed soon to a draw.) 9...bxc6 10.0–0 ♗d7 11.♖c2 a5 12.♙d2 ♙a6 13.♗d1 ♗b6 14.♗e3 ♙d4 15.♙fd1 a4 16.e5 a3 17.exd6 axb2 18.♙ab1, Pomar – Unzicker, Lugano 1959 and here, after the simple capturing 18...cxd6, Black's chances are about equal.

The position after 6.h3 has been analyzed in Chapter 5 and after 6.f3 in Chapter 13 of the third part of the book, devoted to the Saemisch Attack.

(diagram)

Black must choose here between 7-8 alternatives, but we will analyze two of them – the most

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♖ge2 0-0 6.♖g3



popular and reliable **6...e5 (B2)**
and the sharper **6...a6 (B1)**.

B1) 6...a6

If you need to play for a win with Black, then we can recommend to you this modestly looking move on the flank with which Black wishes to obtain positions in the spirit of the Benko Gambit.

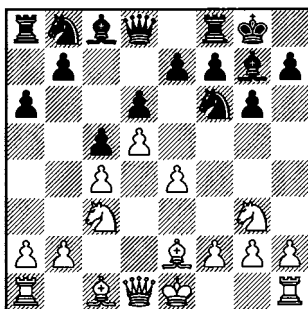
7.♙e2

The move 7.a4, prevents Black's counterplay connected with b7-b5, but it weakens the b4-square. There might follow: 7...♗c6 8.d5 ♖b4 9.a5 h5 10.♙e2 h4 11.♗f1 e6 12.♗e3 exd5 13.exd5 c5 14.0-0 ♙e8 15.♙d2 ♗d7 16.♙a3 ♗e5 and Black had a good position in the game Serper – Finegold, San Diego 2006.

7...c5 8.d5

It is not logical for White to play 8.♙e3, because in the positions of the Sicilian type, arising after 8...cxd4 9.♙xd4 ♗c6, White's knight is misplaced on g3. In the game Serper – Krush, Internet 2008, Black followed another path and he equalized as well: 8...

♗g4 9.♙xg4 ♙xg4 10.f3 ♙e6 11.d5 ♙c8 12.♙d2 ♙e8 13.♙h6 ♙h8 14.a4 ♗d7 15.b3 ♙a5 16.♙c1 ♙b4 17.♙c2 b5 18.cxb5 axb5 19.axb5 ♙a3±

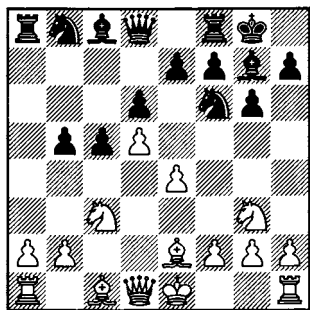


8...b5

Zigurds Lanka used to explain that the Benko Gambit ideas did not work well when White's knight was on f3. In almost all other cases, Black's prospects are excellent.

White is better after 8...e6 9.a4 exd5 10.cxd5 ♖bd7 11.0-0 ♙b8 (11...♙e8 12.♙e3 ♙b8 13.♙d2 h5 14.♙g5 ♗f8 15.f3 ♗h7 16.♙h6 h4 17.♗h1 ♙d7 18.♙xg7 ♗xg7 19.a5 ♙e7 20.♗f2 ♙e5 21.♙c4 ♗h5 22.♗e2 f5± Zubov – Boroday, Poltava 2008) 12.♙g5 h6 (12...♙c7 13.♙d2 ♙e8 14.♗h1 c4 15.f3 h5 16.♙fcl ♗h7 17.♙h6 ♙h8 18.a5 b5 19.axb6 ♖xb6 20.♙e3 h4 21.♗f1 h3 22.gxh3 ♗f6 23.♗g3± Hillarp Persson – De Firmian, Copenhagen 2002) 13.♙e3 ♗e8 14.♙d2 ♗h7 15.f4 ♗c7 16.e5 dxe5 17.f5± Bosch – Janssen, Leeuwarden 2002.

9.cxb5 axb5



10.♙xb5

10.♙xb5 h5 (10...♙a6 11.0-0 ♗bd7 12.a4!? ♗e8 13.♙b1 ♗c7 14.♙d2±) 11.♗c3 ♙b6 12.♗f1 ♙a6 13.♗e3 ♗bd7. Lanka used to say that the real dangers for Black were when White was attacking in the centre and on the kingside in the Benko Gambit type games, so the exchange of queens was in favour of Black. Here however, in the endgame, White's development is simpler. (It deserves attention for Black to try 13...♙xe2!? 14.♙xe2 ♙a6 15.♙xa6 ♙xa6 16.♗c4 ♗bd7 17.♗e2 ♗b6.) 14.0-0 (14.♗c4? ♙xc4 15.♙xc4 ♙b4+ threatening ♗e4) 14...♙fb8 (14...♙xe2!? 15.♙xe2 ♙a6 16.♙c2! ♗e5 17.♙d1 c4!?) 15.♙e1 (15.♗c4 ♙b4 – 15...♙c7!? with the idea to play ♗b6, ♙b4 – 16.a3 ♙b3 17.♙xb3 ♙xb3 18.♗a5? ♙xc3!-+) 15...♙a7 16.h3 ♙xe2 17.♙xe2 ♙a6±, planning ♗e5 attacking the d3-square, Dreev – Inarkiev, Toms 2006.

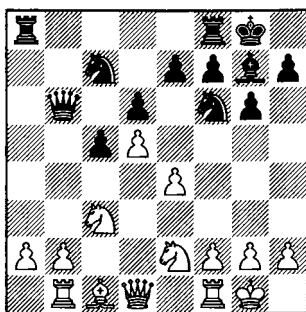
10...♙a6 11.♙xa6

White should not be so much in a hurry to exchange here, because it is advisable for him to create

some obstacles on the queenside against Black's offensive along the a and b-files: 11.0-0 ♙xb5 12.♙xb5 ♗e8!? (Black wishes to open the lines and diagonals for his long-range pieces.) 13.♙c2 ♗a6 14.♗e2 ♗ec7 15.♙bc3 ♙d7 16.b3 ♗b4 17.♙b1, Serper – Smirin, Philadelphia 1996, 17...♙b5 18.♙b2 ♗a3 19.♙d1 (Black can counter 19.♙c1 with 19...♗d3.) 19...f5 with a good compensation for the pawn.

11...♙xa6 12.0-0 ♙b6 13.♙b1, Mertanen – Goossens, Chalkidiki 2002.

13...♗c7 14.♗ge2



14...♗b5

There is something strange about the Benko Gambit – Black is a pawn down and he wishes to trade pieces! In this case, however the point of argument is the knight on c3, which restricts the scope of action of the bishop on g7. Black wishes to have on the board only his long-range pieces left.

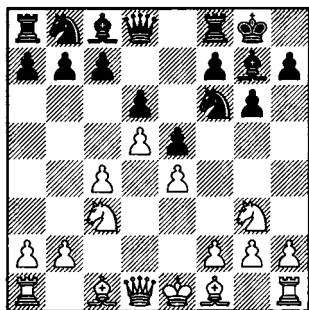
15.♙xb5 ♙xb5 16.♗c3 ♙c4± – he has organized a powerful

1.d4 ♖f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♗ge2 0-0 6.♗g3

pressure on the queenside, having wonderful prospects.

B2) 6...e5 7.d5

The exchange on e5, in this particular case, with an idle white knight on g3, is harmless for Black: 7.dxe5 dxe5 8.♖xd8 ♖xd8 9.♗d5 (9.♙g5 ♖e8 10.♗d5 ♗xd5 11.cxd5 c6 12.dxc6 ♗xc6 13.♙b5 ♙e6 14.♙xc6 bxc6 15.♙e3 f5 16.♙c5 ♖eb8 – Koelewijn – Pruijssers, Hilversum 2008.) 9... ♗xd5 10.cxd5 c6 11.♙c4 cxd5 12.♙xd5 ♗c6 13.♙g5 ♖d7 14.0-0-0 ♗b4 15.♙b3 ♗d3 16.♙b1, Ftacnik – Vokac, Prague 1986, 16...b6=



Black has numerous possibilities in this position and we will analyse only two of them – the most popular and reliable:

B2a) 7...a5

B2b) 7...c6

B2a) 7...a5

It is reasonable for him to ensure the c5-square for the knight.

White has a space advantage however and if he succeeds in completing his development his prospects will be preferable.

8.♙e2

The hasty attack with the h-pawn will not bring White any advantages 8.h4 ♗a6 9.h5 ♗c5 10.♙g5 c6 11.h6 ♙h8 12.♖f3?! ♙g4 13.♖xg4 ♗xg4 14.♙xd8 ♖fxd8 15.♙e2 ♗f6= Tregubov – Volokitin, Germany 2007.

8...♗a6

In principle, this is a very solid line for Black. Still, he must be prepared to defend patiently a somewhat cramped position.

9.h4

This move is justified now with a knight on g3. White leaves his king in the centre and he is threatening to open the h-file. He has tried some other plans, but they do not create any serious problems for Black, for example:

9.♙e3 ♗c5 10.♖b1 ♙d7 11.b3 h5 12.♙g5 ♖e8 13.h4 ♗h7 14.♙e3 ♖e7 15.♗f1 f5 16.exf5 ♙xf5 17.♖c1 ♙f6 and Black seized the initiative in the game Bern – Bologan, Stavanger 1992;

9.♙g5 h6 10.♙e3 ♗h7 11.♖d2 h5 12.0-0-0 ♙d7 13.♙b1 ♗c5 14.♗f1 ♗a4 15.♗b5 f5 16.♖c2 ♗c5 17.♗d2 b6 18.f3 ♙f6, with a double-edged position, Ponomarev – Kasimdzhanov, Tomsk 2006;

9.0-0 ♗c5 10.♙e3 h5 11.♙g5 ♖d7 12.♖d2 ♗h7 13.♙h6 h4 14.♙xg7 ♙xg7 15.♗h1 ♖e7 16.f4 exf4 17.♖xf4 f5 18.exf5 ♙xf5, with an

approximate equality, Ghaem – Kozul, Dresden 2008.

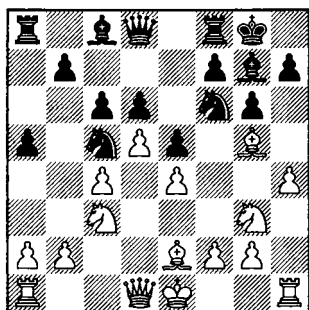
9...c6

9...h5 10.♔g5 ♖e8 11.♞d2 ♘h7 12.♙h6 ♗e7 13.0-0-0 ♙xh6 14.♞xh6 ♞f6 15.f3 ♙d7 16.♘f1± Ader – Bolbochan, Mar del Plata 1952.

10.♙g5

10.h5 cxd5 11.cxd5 (It deserves attention for White to try the rarely played move 11.exd5!? “Rybka” recommends 11...♘d7, in order for Black to form a mobile pawn-tandem in the centre.) 11...♘c5 12.♙e3 (12.♙g5 – see 10.♙g5; the position remains sharp with mutual chances after 12.h6!? ♙h8 13.♙g5 ♞b6 14.♞d2 ♙d7 15.0-0 ♖fc8 16.♖ac1 a4, Kaposztas – Bohati, Hungary 2008.) 12...♞b6 13.♖b1 ♙d7 14.♘f1 a4 15.♘d2 ♞a5± Lutz – Gelfand, Horgen 1994. It is evident that Black has obtained a very comfortable position, in which the attack with the h-pawn has created problems only for his opponent.

10...♘c5



11.h5

In case of 11.♞d2, Black should exchange immediately on d5 – 11...cxd5 (It is worse for him to play 11...a4 12.h5 ♞a5, in view of 13.0-0 ♞c7 14.♖ad1 ♘e8, Christiansen – Lanka, Eupen 2000, 15.♙e3±) and as the analysis shows, Black has a comfortable game, no matter how he recaptures. For example:

12.cxd5 ♙d7 13.f3, Dive – Abou el Zein, Thessaloniki 1988, 13...a4 14.0-0 b5;

12.♘d5 ♘e6 13.♘xf6 ♙xf6 14.♙xf6 ♞xf6 15.♞xd6 ♙d8 16.♞a3 ♘f4± Ruf – Schmaltz, Gstaad 1993;

12.exd5 h5 13.0-0-0 (13.♙xh5 gxh5 14.♘xh5 ♙h8) 13...♙d7 14.♞e3 (14.♙xh5 gxh5 15.♘xh5 ♙f5 16.♘g7 ♘xg7 17.♙h6 ♘h7 18.♙xf8 ♞xf8 19.♞g5 ♞h6 20.f3 ♘e8) 14...♞c7 (14...♞e8 15.♙xf6 ♙xf6 16.♘ge4 ♘xe4 17.♘xe4 ♞e7 18.g4 hxg4 19.h5 ♙f5 20.hxg6 fxg6 21.♙dg1) 15.♙xf6 (15.♘b1 ♘h7 16.♙h6 f5) 15...♙xf6 16.♘ge4 ♘xe4 17.♘xe4 ♙g7.

11...cxd5 12.exd5!

White should not open the f-file, because Black's rook joins in the actions then: 12.hxg6 fxg6 13.exd5 ♞b6, Rekkedal – Gabrielsen, Bergen 2002, 14.♖b1 (14.♞c2 ♘g4) 14...♘g4 15.♙xg4 ♘d3!±

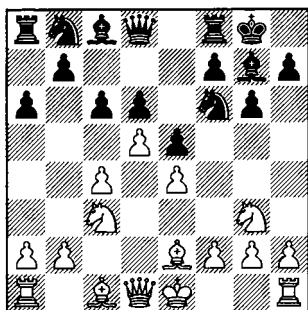
The position remains doubled-edged after 12.h6 ♙h8 13.exd5 (13.♘d5 ♘e6 14.♙h4 g5) 13...♞b6 14.♖b1 ♙d7 15.0-0 ♖fe8 (15...♖fc8

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6 5.♗ge2 0-0 6.♗g3

16.♗e3 ♖d8 17.♗xc5 ♗xc5 18.♗ge4
♗xe4 19.♗xe4 ♖c7 20.♗xd6 ♖f8
21.♗e4 ♗f5 22.f3 ♖xh6) 16.b3 e4
17.♖d2 ♗g4 18.♗xg4 ♗xg4 19.♗e3
f5 20.♗b5 ♗ac8 21.♗d4 ♗e5 22.
♗be1 ♖d8.

12...♖b6 13.♗b1 ♗d7 14.
♖d2±

B2b) 7...c6 8.♗e2 a6



Black creates the possibility to inflict a counter strike with b7-b5 if White goes too far with his active actions on the kingside. It only seldom comes to this however, since he usually evacuates prudently his king away from the centre.

9.0-0

9.h4 h5 10.♗g5 cxd5 11.exd5
♗bd7 12.♖d2 ♖c7 13.0-0 ♗h7
14.♗h6 f5 15.♗xg7 ♗xg7 16.f4
♗hf6 17.♗h1 exf4 18.♗xf4 ♗e5±
Frohberg – Bekker-Jensen, Germany 1998.

9.♗g5 h6 10.♗e3 cxd5 11.cxd5
h5 12.♗g5 ♖e8 13.♖d2 ♗bd7
14.a4 ♗h7 15.♗h6 ♗xh6 16.♖xh6

♖d8 17.h4 ♗df6= Comas – Xie Jun, Pamplona 1999.

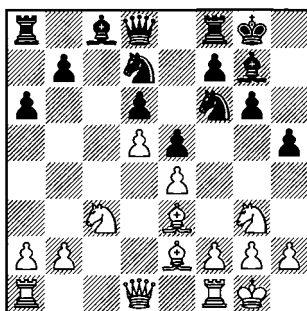
9.a4 a5 10.h4 h5 11.♗g5 ♖b6
12.♗a3 ♗bd7 13.♖c2 ♗c5 14.♗e3
♗d7 15.♗f1 ♗ac8 16.♗d2 ♖b4=
Ionov – Bologan, Moscow 1991.

9...cxd5 10.cxd5 ♗bd7 11.
♗e3

11.a4 h5 12.♗g5 ♖e8 13.♖d2
♗h7 14.♗e3 h4 15.♗h1, Johans-
son – Gaponenko, Varna 2002,
15...h3 16.g3 ♗c5±

11.♗g5 h6 12.♗e3 h5 13.♗g5
♖e8 14.♖d2 ♗h7 15.♗h6 h4 16.
♗h1 ♖e7 17.♗xg7 ♗xg7 18.♗ac1
♗g5 19.♖e3 ♖d8 20.b4 f5± She-
meakin – Stefanishin, Alushta 1999.

11...h5



12.♗g5

12.♖c1 h4 (The following game proves that Black must play very energetically, since if he slows down this might end up badly for him: 12...♗h7 13.♖d2 h4 14.♗h1 f5 15.exf5 gxf5 16.f4 exf4 17.♗xf4 ♗e5 18.♗f2 ♗d7 19.♗h1 ♖c8 20.♗h3 b5 21.a3 ♖f6 22.♗e3 ♗g6 23.♗h5 ♗e5 24.♗e2 ♗g6 25.♗f4

♖xf4 26.♙xf4 ♖g6 27.♙d3± Ponomarev – Bologan, Tomsk 2006)
 13.♘h1 b5!? 14.f3 (14.♙g5 h3 15.g3 ♖a5 16.f3 ♘c5 17.a3 b4 18.♘a2 ♖b6 19.♙e3 a5 20.♖d2 ♙d7 21.♘f2 ♖fb8) 14...♘h5 15.a4 (15.♖d2 f5 16.a4 f4!? 17.♙f2 bxa4 18.♘xa4 h3) 15...b4 16.♘a2 a5 17.♙b5 f5 18.♙c6 ♖a6 19.♖d2 f4 20.♙f2 h3 and Black has a powerful attack, since he has managed to open the shelter of White's king.

12...♖e8 13.♖d2 ♘h7 14.♙e3

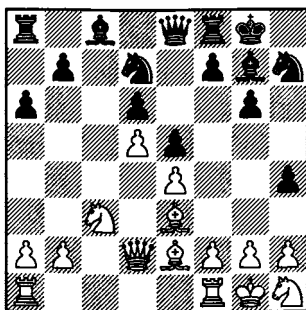
The alternative for White is to trade the dark-squared bishops with 14.♙h6 h4 15.♙xg7 ♘xg7, but then his knight must remain in the corner for a while – 16.♘h1 and Black obtains effortlessly an excellent position: 16...f5 17.exf5 gxf5 18.f4 ♖g6 19.♘f2 ♘h8 20.♘h1 ♘hf6 21.♙g1 b5 22.g4 ♙b7, Shemeakin – Gaponenko, Alushta 1998.

14...h4 15.♘h1

(diagram)

15...♘df6!?

It is premature for Black to



play 15...f5, because of 16.exf5 gxf5 17.f4!± and all his pieces must look for a new field of action, since his plan proved not to be working well, Berta – Brglez, corr. 1975.

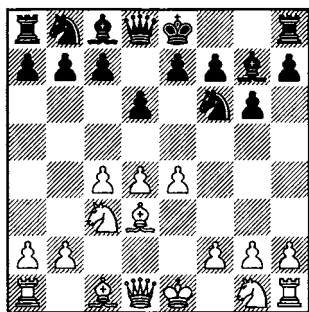
16.h3

16.f3 ♘h5 17.♘f2 ♙d7 18.♖fc1 ♖e7 19.♘cd1 ♖fc8 with an approximate equality.

16...♙d7 17.♖fc1 ♖e7 18.♖c2 ♖fc8 19.♖ac1 b5 20.b4 ♖e8. White must play **21.f3**, in order to bring his knight on h1 into the actions and this presents Black's knight with the possibility ♘h5-f4. **21...♘h5 22.♘f2 ♖d8 23.♘g4 ♘f4±**

Chapter 10

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♙d3



According to Chebanenko, it is not advisable for White to develop his bishops to d3 and e3, since they might turn into objects for an attack by Black's knights. In this case, White's bishop is safe behind the pawn-shelter c4, d4, e4, so Black must find a way to reach it. One of the obvious drawbacks of White's last move is that his d4-pawn has been weakened.

5...0-0

A plan with the immediate move e7-e5 came into fashion in the year 2008. I believe that it is not so logical, because White should not worry any more about his d4-pawn. The following games show that he has good chances of obtaining a small edge: 5...e5 6.d5

0-0 (6...♘a6 7.♘ge2 ♘c5 8.♙c2 a5 9.f3 c6 10.♙e3 cxd5 11.cxd5 ♙d7 12.0-0 b5 13.a3 b4 14.♘a4 ♘xa4 15.♙xa4 0-0 16.♙e1 ♙b8 Prohaszka – Ilincic, Budapest 2008) 7.♘ge2 ♘a6 (7...c5 8.h3 ♘e8 9.g4 ♘a6 10.♙e3 ♙d7 11.♘g3 ♙f6 12.♙d2 ♙h4 13.♙g1 f6 14.0-0-0 ♙b8 15.f4 exf4 16.♙xf4 ♘ac7 17.♘f5 gxf5 18.gxf5 ♙h8 19.♙g4 ♙g5 20.♙d1, with a powerful attack for White, which brought a full point to him in the game Gonzalez Zamora – Zapata, Merida 2008.) 8.♙c2 ♘h5 9.0-0 c5 10.♙e3 ♙d7 11.a3 ♙e7 12.♙d2 b6 13.♘g3 ♘xg3 14.fxg3 ♙fb8 15.♙ab1 ♙b7 16.♙f2 f6 17.♙d3 ♙ab8 18.b4 ♙c8 19.h3 h5 20.♙e2 ♙h7 21.b5 ♘c7 22.♙bf1± Fodor – Ilincic, Budapest 2008.

6.♘ge2

The indifferent development 6.♙e3 can be countered effectively by Black with 6...e5 7.d5 ♘g4 and White must either lose a tempo for the retreat of his bishop (after which Black pushes f7-f5 with an excellent game), or he should comply with its exchange: 8.♙d2 ♘xe3 9.♙xe3 ♘a6 10.♘ge2 f5 11.

f3 ♖c5, Aleksic – Cetkovic, Belgrade 2009 and Black's prospects are not worse at all.

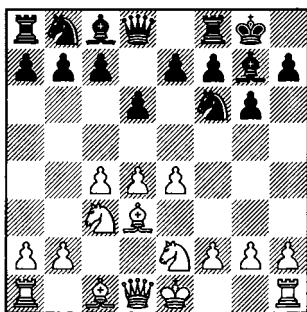
White's bishop is not so well placed on g5 after 6.♗g5 h6 7.♗h4 ♖c6 8.d5 ♖e5 9.♗e2 g5 10.♗g3 ♖g6 11.♖f3 ♖h5 12.♖d4 ♖hf4 13.0–0 e6 14.♗e1 h5 15.f3 ♗e5 and Black had the initiative in the game Vistaneckis – Gufeld, Vilnius 1960.

In case of the overly aggressive move 6.f4, Black obtains a good game by attacking the d4-square, since it is not protected by the queen on d1 after he has developed his bishop to d3: 6... ♖c6 7.♖f3 (Black is quite OK after 7.♖ge2 e5 8.d5 ♖b4 9.fxe5 ♖g4 10.♖f4 dxe5 11.♖h3 ♗h4 12.♖f1 f5, Ljubisavljevic – Atalik, Kastoria 1996, or 7.d5 ♖b4 8.♖f3 ♖xd3 9.♗xd3 c5 10.h3 ♗d7 11.g4 ♗b8 12.♗f1 ♖e8 13.f5 ♖c7 14.a4 ♖a6 15.g5 ♖b4 16.♗b1 ♗e8, Khanna – Femic, Herceg Novi 2005) 7...♗g4 8.♗e3 e5 9.d5 exf4 10.♗xf4 ♖d4 11.h3 ♗xf3 12.gxf3 ♖h5 13.♗e3 c5† A.Arafat – Petrosian, Nice 1974.

Black can counter the tentative move 6.h3, with another equally mysterious reply 6...a6, for example: 7.♖ge2 (7.♖f3 c5 8.d5 b5 9.0–0 b4 10.♖e2 e5 11.♖h2 ♖h5 12.g4 ♖f4 13.♖xf4 exf4 14.♗xf4 ♗xb2 15.♗b1 ♗g7 16.♗g3, draw, Tyomkin – Mikhalevski, Beer-Sheva 1997) 7...c5 8.dxc5 dxc5 9.e5 ♖e8 10.f4 f6 11.exf6 ♖xf6 12.♗e3 ♖c6 13.0–0 ♗d6 14.♖a4 ♗d8 15.♗c2 ♗c7 16.♗c1 ♖d4 17.♖xd4

cxd4 18.♗f2 ♗f5‡ Romanov – Ponkratov, St. Petersburg 2008.

Finally, after 6.♖f3, it is again sensible for Black to attack the d4-pawn 6...♖c6 7.0–0 (7.d5 ♖b4 8.♗b1 c6 9.♗a4 ♖a6 10.dxc6 ♖c5 11.♗c2 bxc6 12.0–0 ♗a6 13.♗d1 ♗xc4‡ Stamatovic – Vujacic, Podgorica 2008) 7...♗g4 8.♗e3 e5 9.d5 ♖e7 10.h3 ♗d7 11.♗d2 ♖e8 12.♖h2 f5 13.f4 ♖f6 14.♗ae1 ♖h5 15.fxe5 dxe5 16.g4 fxg4 17.♗xf8 ♗xf8 18.hxg4 ♖f6, with a good position for Black, Nikolov – Dragiev, Sofia 2009.



In this situation, Black has two possibilities to attack White's d4-pawn. We will analyze them both, leaving the alternatives (6...a6, 6...c6) aside, because I believe they are obviously insufficient for equality.

A) 6...c5

B) 6...♖c6

A) 6...c5 7.d5

In case of 7.0–0, Black can play 7...♖c6, after which White

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♙c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♙d3 0-0 6.♙ge2

will have to block the centre anyway, but under less favourable circumstances, for example: 8.d5 ♘e5 9.♙g3 ♘xd3 10.♙xd3 a6 11.f3 b5 12.♙e3 bxc4 13.♙xc4 a5 14.♙f2 ♙a6 15.♙a4 ♘d7 16.♙c2 ♘e5 Chang – Dembo, Calvia 2004.

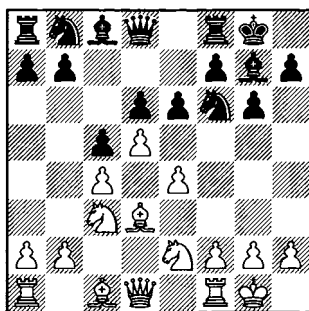
7...e6 8.0-0

Black has no problems after 8.dxe6 ♙xe6, for example: 9.f4 ♘c6 10.0-0 ♙g4 11.h3 ♙xe2 12.♙xe2 ♙e8 13.g4 a6 14.♙d2 ♙b8 15.♙ae1 h6 16.b3 b5 17.cxb5 ♘d4 18.♙f2 axb5↑ Radev – Ki.Georgiev, Sofia 1981.

On the contrary, the plan with 8.♙g5 is very unpleasant for him and it has been used by the Ukrainian GMs Pavel Eljanov and Alexander Moiseenko, for example: 8...h6 9.♙f4 (9.♙h4 exd5 10.cxd5 a6 11.a4 ♘bd7 12.0-0 ♘e5 13.f4 ♙eg4?! 14.♙c1 c4 15.♙xc4 ♙b6 16.♙h1 ♘e3 17.♙f2 ♘fg4 18.♙g1 ♙b4 19.♙xe3 ♙xc4 20.h3 ♘xe3 21.♙xe3 ♙b4 22.f5± Moiseenko – Gajewski, Polanica Zdroj 2008; it deserved attention for Black to continue simply with 13...♘xd3 14.♙xd3 ♙e8 with mutual chances.) 9...♙g4 10.♙d2 ♘a6 11.a3 ♘c7 12.f3 ♘e5 13.0-0 exd5 14.cxd5 ♘xd3 15.♙xd3 b6 16.♙d2 ♙h7 17.♙g3 ♙a6 18.♙fe1 ♙e8± Eljanov – Radjabov, Wijk aan Zee 2008.

Black equalized effortlessly after 8.h3 exd5 9.exd5 ♘fd7 10.0-0 ♘e5 11.b3 ♘xd3 12.♙xd3 ♘d7 13.♙g3 ♘f6 14.♙g5 h6 15.♙d2 ♙f5 16.♙f3 ♘d7 17.g4 ♘e5 18.♙g3 ♙d3

19.♙ae1 ♙h4 20.♙xh4 ♘f3 21.♙g2 ♘xh4 22.♙g3 g5= Y.Vovk – Golubev, Mukachevo 2009.



8...♙g4

After 8...exd5 9.cxd5, there arises a position from the Benoni defence with a bishop on d3 and a knight on e2: 9...a6 10.a4 ♘bd7 11.h3 ♙e8 12.♙g3 ♙c7 13.f4 ♙b8, followed by c4, ♘c5. If you wish to be better acquainted with it, look at some opening books devoted to the Benoni.

It would be interesting to discuss the pawn-structure, arising after 9.exd5. For example: 9...♙g4 10.f4 (10.♙c2 ♙e8 11.h3 ♘e5 12.b3, Dreev – Ivanchuk, Stepanakert 2005 and here Black played 12...b5, overlooking the spectacular combination 12...♘f3 13.gxf3 ♙xe2 14.♙xe2 ♙xc3 15.♙b1 ♙xh3 16.♙d1 ♘d7 with a good compensation for the exchange.) 10...♙e8 11.h3 ♘e3 12.♙xe3 ♙xe3 13.♙d2 ♙e8 14.♙ae1 (14.♙h2 ♘a6 15.♙ae1 ♘c7 16.♙g1 ♙xe1 17.♙xe1 ♙d7 18.♘f3 a6 19.♘e4 ♘e8 20.b4 b6 21.♙b1 ♙c7 22.g3 ♘f6 23.♘f2

b5 Seirawan – Wojtkiewicz, Tilburg 1992; Black should not worry about 14.f5 ♖d7 15.♗e4 ♖f6, since he preserves his control over the f6-square.) 14...♖d7 15.♗g3 ♙xe1 16.♙xe1 a6=

9.♗c2

9.h3 ♗e5 10.f4 ♖xd3 11.♙xd3 exd5 12.♖xd5 f5 13.♗g3, Vido-
niak – Ionita, Romania 1992, fxe4
14.♖xe4 ♖c6=

9.♖f4!? ♗e5 10.♗e2 ♙e7 11.g3,
Knaak – Dinstuhl, Germany 1994,
11...♗a6 12.♗g2 exd5 13.♖xd5
♙d8=

9.f4 exd5 10.♖xd5 ♖c6 11.h3
♖f6 12.♖dc3 (12.f5 ♖xd5 13.cxd5
♗e5 14.g4 b5 15.♗g2 b4 16.♙b1
a5 Dumitrache – Nevednichy, La
Fere 2002) 12...♙e8 13.♗e3 ♖b4
14.♗f2 b6 15.♗h4 ♗b7 Shomoev
– Iskusnyh, Novokuznetsk 2008.

9...♗e5

9...♗a6 10.a3 ♖c7 11.♙b1 b6
12.b3 exd5 13.♖xd5 ♖xd5 14.
♙xd5 ♙b8 15.♗f4 ♗e5 16.♙d2
♗xf4 17.♙xf4 ♙e7 18.♙bd1± Dreev
– Ivanchuk, Merida 2005.

10.b3 exd5 11.cxd5

This capturing is in principle
better than 11.exd5. For exam-
ple: 11...♙e8 12.♗f4 ♗a6 13.a3 f5
14.♙d2 ♗d7 15.♙ael ♖f7 16.♙c1
♖c7 17.a4 ♗a6 I.Sokolov – To-
palov, Wijk aan Zee 2005.

11...b5 12.f4

12.♙b1 b4 13.♗a4 ♗a6 14.h3
♖ed7 15.a3 bxa3 16.♗xa3 ♖b6
17.♖b2 ♙e8 18.♙e1 ♖8d7 Bru-
zon – Nataf, Calvia 2004.

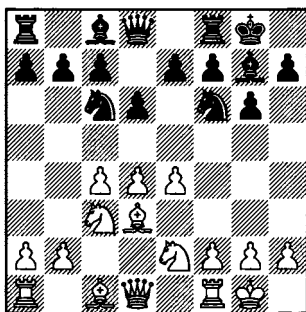
12...b4 13.fxe5 ♗xe5 14.♗f4

♗xf4 15.♖xf4 bxc3 16.♙e1 ♗a6
17.♗d3 ♗xd3 18.♖xd3 ♖d7 19.
♙xc3 ♙g5= Grigore – Marin, Bu-
charest 1994.

B) 6...♖c6 7.0–0

7.f3 ♖d7 8.♗e3 e5 9.d5 ♖b4
10.♗b1 a5 11.a3 ♗a6 12.♗a4 ♗h6
13.♙d2 ♗xe3 14.♙xe3 ♖dc5 15.
♖xc5 ♖xc5 16.♗c2 f5 17.exf5 ♙h4
18.g3 ♙h5 19.0–0–0 gxf5 20.h4
a4± Akhmedov – Fedorov, Baku
2008.

7.d5 ♗e5 8.0–0 c6 9.b3 cxd5
10.cxd5 ♖xd3 11.♙xd3 ♗d7 12.♗e3
♙a5 13.h3 ♙ac8 14.a3 a6 15.♙fc1
♙fe8 16.b4 ♙d8 17.♖d4 e6 18.dxe6
fxe6± Likavsky – Yurtaev, Bratis-
lava 1991.



7...♖h5!?

The Greek GM Vasilios Kotro-
nias defends successfully the vari-
ation with 7...e5, for example: 8.
d5 ♖d4 9.♖xd4 (9.♗g5 h6 10.♗h4
c5 11.♙b1 ♗d7 12.f3 g5 13.♗f2 ♖h5
14.b4 b6 15.bxc5 dxc5 16.a4 a5 17.
♗xd4 exd4 18.♖b5 ♖f4 19.♗c2
♖g6± Graf – V.Kotronias, Mos-
cow 2004) 9...exd4 and here:

1.d4 ♢f6 2.c4 g6 3.♠c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♙d3 0-0 6.♢ge2

10.♢e2 ♢d7 (10...♙e8 11.f3 c5 12.♙g5 ♖c7 13.♗d2 ♢d7 14.f4 b5 15.b3 bxc4 16.bxc4 ♖b8 17.♢g3 ♖b4 18.e5 dxe5 19.f5 ♖b6 20.♢e4 f6 21.♙h6 ♖b2 22.♗c1 ♙e7∞ Chatalbashev – Timoshenko, Vienna 2008) 11.b3 ♢c5 12.♙b2 ♙e8 13.f3 ♖g5 14.f4 ♖e7 15.♙xd4 ♢xe4 16.♙xg7 ♢xg7 17.♙xe4 ♖xe4 18.♗d4 ♖xd4 19.♢xd4 a6= Skembris – V.Kotronias, Greece 1995;

10.♢b5 ♙e8 11.♙e1 ♙g4 (11...♙d7 12.h3 a6 13.♢a3 ♙c8 14.♙g5 h6 15.♙h4 g5 16.♙g3 ♢d7 17.♢c2 ♖f6 18.b4 a5 19.c5 axb4 20.c6 bxc6 21.dxc6 ♢c5⌘ Brenninkmeijer – V.Kotronias, Wijk aan Zee 1995; 12.♙g5 h6 13.♙h4 g5 14.♙g3 ♢g4 15.h3 ♢e5 16.♙f1 d3 17.♙xe5 ♙xe5 18.♢c3 ♖f6∞ Arduman – V.Kotronias, Zouberi 1993) 12.f3 (12.♖c2 a6 13.♢xd4 ♢xe4 14.♢b3 ♢c5= Olafsson – V.Kotronias, Reykjavik 1992) 12...♙d7 13.♙f1 ♙xb5 14.cxb5 ♢d7 15.♙d2 h5 16.♙c1 ♢e5 17.♙f4 h4 18.h3 g5 19.♙h2 ♢g6= Chekhov – V.Kotronias, Gausdal 1991.

B1) 8.♙e3

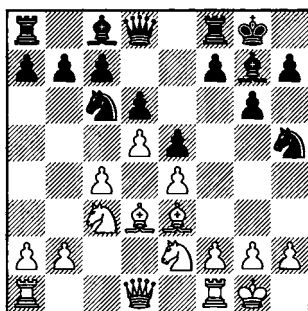
B2) 8.♙c2

Black is quite happy after 8.d5 ♢e5 9.f4 ♢xd3 10.♖xd3 f5 11.♢d4 c5 12.dxc6 bxc6 13.♙e3 ♙d7 14.exf5 gxf5 15.c5 e5⌘ van Der Werf – Gallagher, Cannes 1997.

B1) 8.♙e3 e5 9.d5

9.♙c2 exd4 10.♢xd4 ♢e5 11.♙b3 (Black has a good position

in case of 11.b3 ♢g4 12.♙c1 ♖f6 13.♢de2 ♖e5 14.g3 f5 15.h3 ♢gf6 16.exf5 ♙xf5 17.g4 ♢xg4 18.hxg4 ♙xg4 19.♙d2 ♙f3) 11...c5 12.♢f5 gxf5 13.♖xh5 fxe4 14.♢xe4 ♙g4 15.♖g5 f5⌘ Tupy – Gladishev, Ceske Budejovice 1997.



9...♢d4

Black is ready to sacrifice a pawn in order to open files for his pieces. In principle, this line is sufficient for equality, but there is an attractive alternative for the players who prefer complicated positions: 9...♢e7 10.♖d2 f5 11.exf5 and now:

11...♢xf5!? 12.♙g5 ♙f6 13.♙xf6 ♖xf6 14.♢e4 ♖g7 (14...♖e7!?=) 15.c5 ♢f6 16.♙ac1 (16.cxd6 ♢xe4 17.♙xe4 cxd6=) 16...♖e7 17.cxd6 cxd6 18.♙c3 ♢xe4 19.♙xe4 b6 20.♙fc1 ♙d7= Piket – Ju.Polgar, Amsterdam 1995;

11...gxf5 12.f4 (12.♙g5 f4 13.f3 ♖d7 14.♙xe7 ♖xe7= Christiansen – Gallagher, Bern 1996; 12.f3 ♢h8 13.c5 f4 14.♙f2 ♢f5 15.cxd6 cxd6 16.♢e4 ♙g8 17.♖b4 ♙f6 18.♢h1 ♙g6, with a good counterplay for

Black, Videki – Shaked, Budapest 1997) 12...♟g6 13.g3 (13.fxe5?! dxe5 14.♙g5 ♖d6 15.♜b5 ♖d7 16.♜g3 ♜xg3 17.hxg3 a6 18.♜c3 ♖d6) 13...♜h8 14.♜h1 ♙d7 15.♙f2 ♜f6 16.fxe5 ♜xe5 17.♙ff1 ♖e8 18.♙d4 ♖h5 19.♜f4 ♖h6∞ Tunik – Shulman, Minsk 1995.

10.♙c2

We must have a look at the other possibilities for White:

10.♖d2 c5 11.dxc6 bxc6 12.b4 ♙e6 13.b5 f5 14.♙g5 ♖d7 15.bxc6 ♜xc6 16.♜d5 f4 17.f3 ♜h8 18.♜h1 h6 19.♙h4 g5 20.♙f2 g4 ♞ Seirawan – Kasimdzhanov, Bled 2002;

10.♙c1 c5 (10...a6 11.b4 ♖e8 12.♙b1 ♜xe2 13.♜xe2 f5 14.exf5 gxf5 15.f3 f4 16.♙f2 ♙f5 17.♙xf5 ♙xf5 18.♜c3 ♖g6 19.♜e4 ♜h8 20.♙h4 ♙g8 21.♙c2 ♙h6 22.c5 ♙f7 23.cxd6 cxd6 24.♜h1 ♜g7 25.♙g1 ♜f5 ♞ Tunik – Fedorov, Minsk 1995) 11.dxc6 bxc6 12.c5 ♙e6 (12...d5 13.exd5 cxd5 14.♙xd4 exd4 15.♜b5) 13.b3 (13.cxd6 ♖xd6 14.♖d2 c5) 13...d5 (13...♙f6 14.♖d2 ♖d7 15.cxd6 ♖xd6 16.♜a4 ♙fd8 17.♙xd4 exd4 18.♜c5±) 14.exd5 ♜xe2 15.♙xe2 cxd5 16.♙hx5 gxh5 17.♜b5 d4 18.♙d2 h4 19.h3 a5 ♞;

10.♜b5 ♜xe2 (White is better after 10...♜xb5 11.cxb5 f5 12.f3.) 11.♙xe2 ♜f4 12.♙f3 (Black's counterplay is quite sufficient after 12.♜xa7 ♙xa7 13.♙xa7 b6 14.♙f3 ♙d7 15.g3 ♜h3 16.♜g2 ♜g5 17.♙g4 ♜xe4 or 14.a4 c5 15.dxc6 ♖c7 16.♙f3 ♖xa7) 12...f5 13.♜c3 (13.♜xa7 fxe4 14.♙xe4 ♙xa7 15.♙xa7 b6 16.a4 ♖g5 17.♜h1 ♙f5 18.♖f3

♙a8) 13...♙d7 (13...b6!?) 14.exf5 gxf5 15.♙xf4 (15.♖b3 b6 16.♖c2 ♜g6) 15...exf4 16.♖d2 ♖h4 ♞ Kiselev – I.Zaitsev, Moscow 1992;

10.♙xd4 exd4 11.♜b5 c5 12.dxc6 bxc6 13.♜bxd4, Mendelson – Collins, Bunratty 2005, 13... ♖b6 14.♙c2 ♙a6∞

10...♜xc2

10...♜xe2 11.♖xe2 ♜f4 (11...f5 12.exf5 ♙xf5 13.♙xf5 ♙xf5 14.♜e4 ♜f4 15.♖d2 ♖e7 16.f3± Ionescu – Navrotescu, Romania 2000) 12.♖d2 f5 13.exf5 ♙xf5 14.♙xf5 ♙xf5 15.♜e4 ♖h4 16.f3 ♙h5 17.g3±

11.♖xc2 f5 12.exf5 gxf5 13.f4 ♙d7

13...b6 14.♙ae1 a5 15.a3 ♙d7 16.b4 axb4 17.axb4 ♖e7 18.♖d2 ♙a3 ♞

14.♙ae1

Black has nothing to complain about after 14.c5 exf4 15.♙d4 ♙xd4 16.♜xd4 dxc5.

14...exf4

It is not good for him to opt for 14...♖e8?! in view of 15.c5 ♖g6 16.♖b3 exf4 17.♙xf4 and White exerts a powerful pressure, but it deserves attention for Black to continue with 14...b6.

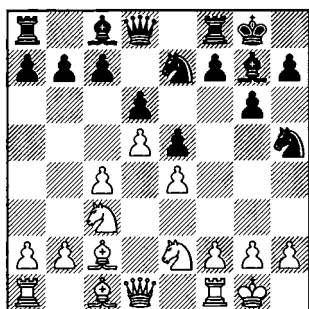
15.♜xf4 ♜xf4 16.♙xf4 ♖f6 17.♜h1 ♙ae8= Christiansen – Nunn, San Francisco 1995.

B2) 8.♙c2 e5 9.d5!

About the move 9.♙e3, look at the previous comments; 9.dxe5 dxe5= (9...♜xe5?! 10.b3 ♖h4 11.♙d2±).

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6 5.♙d3 0-0 6.♗ge2

9...♗e7



10.a4

White is ready to bring his rook into the actions along the third rank. He is not afraid to weaken (after Black's response a7-a5) chronically the dark c5 and b4-squares, because the kingside will focus the future battle.

Black has nothing to be afraid of after 10.♖b1 ♗h8 11.♙d2 a6 12.♗c1 f5 13.exf5 gxf5 14.f4 ♗g6 15.♗h1 exf4 16.♗xf4 ♗gxf4 17.♙xf4 ♗xf4 18.♗xf4 ♙e5 19.♗h6 ♖f6 20.♗h3 ♗f8 Borne – Shchekachev, France 2000.

In case of 10.♗h1 f5 11.exf5 gxf5 12.♗g3 ♗f4, Black obtains again a very good position, for example: 13.♗h5 ♗xh5 14.♗xh5 ♙d7 15.f4 ♗e8 16.♗h3 ♗g6 17.♙d2 exf4 18.♖ae1 ♗e5, Gonda – Hendriks, Austria 2008.

It would be premature for White to choose 10.f4 ♗xf4 11.♗xf4 exf4 12.♙xf4 h6 13.♙e3, Eggleston – Arakhamia-Grant, Swansea 2006, since here Black had better play immediately

13...g5 14.h4 gxh4 15.♗h5 ♗g6 16.♙xh6 ♗e7=

10.♙e3 f5 11.exf5 gxf5 12.f4 ♗g6 13.♗d2 ♗hxf4 14.♗xf4 exf4 15.♙xf4 ♗xf4 16.♗xf4 ♙e5 and Black is not worse at all.

10...f5!?

He should not lose a tempo for the move 10...a5, since it would provide his opponent with another resource – ♗b5.

The immediate move 11.♗b5 is premature for White, because this knight can be attacked later with tempo after c6, for example: 11...f5 12.exf5 ♙xf5, threatening ♙c2 and c6. (If 12...♗xf5, then 13.♖a3! – Black is quite OK after 13.g4 ♗h4 14.gxh5 ♗f3 15.♗g2 ♗h4 – 13...♗h4 14.♙e4 ♙g4 15.f3; 14...h6 15.♗c2 ♗f4 16.♖e1 ♙g4 17.♙xf4 exf4 18.♗ed4 f3 19.g3 ♙e5 20.♖ee3 ♗f6 21.♗xf3 ♙xf3 22.♙xf3 ♗f5 23.♖e2± I.Sokolov – Smirin, Bled 2002) 13.♙xf5 gxf5 14.♗g3 ♗xg3 15.hxg3 ♗c8 16.♗h5 (16.g4!? f4) 16...c6 17.♙g5 ♗d7 18.♗c3 ♗b6 19.♗e2 cxd5 20.♗xd5 ♗xd5 21.cxd5 f4 22.gxf4 h6 23.♙h4 ♖xf4=

It would be considerably stronger for White to continue with 11.♖a3 ♗h8 (or 11...f5 12.exf5 ♗xf5 13.♗e4 ♗f6 14.♙g5 ♗e8 15.♗2c3 ♗xe4 16.♙xe4 ♗f6 17.♙c1 ♗e7 18.♗b5 ♖a6 19.♖e1 ♗f7 20.g3 ♗h8 21.♖f3 ♗g7 22.♖d3± Bareev – Dolmatov, Elista 1997) and only now 12.♗b5! (12.♗h1 ♗g8 13.♗b5 ♗e7 14.♙e3 ♗h6 15.f3 f5 16.exf5 gxf5 17.f4 ♗g4 18.♙g1

♠xf4 19.♠xf4 exf4 20.♠xf4 ♕e5 21.♠af3 ♕xf4 22.♠xf4 ♠f7 23.h3, draw, Moiseenko – van Wely, Cala Mayor 2008) 12...♠g8 13.f4 exf4 (but not 13...f5 14.exf5 ♕xf5 15.♕xf5 gxf5 16.♠h3±) 14.♠xf4 ♠xf4 15.♕xf4 b6 (15...♕xb2 16.♠b3) 16.♠e3 ♠e7 17.♠fe1±

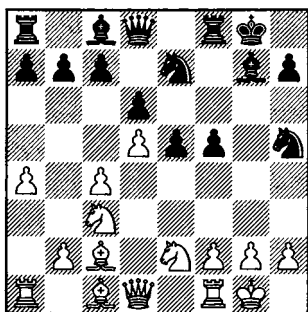
It is also insufficient for Black to opt for 10...♠h8?! 11.a5 ♠g8 (11...f5 12.exf5 gxf5 13.♠g3 ♠f4 14.♠h5 ♠xh5 15.♠xh5 a6 16.♕g5± Piket – Fedorov, Wijk aan Zee 2001) 12.b4 f5 13.exf5 gxf5 14.f3±

11.exf5

11.♠g3 ♠f4 12.♠a3 fxe4 13.♠cxe4 a5 14.♠c3 ♠h8 15.♠b5 ♠g8 16.♠e4 ♠f6 17.♠xf6 ♕xf6 18.♕e3 b6= Malakhov – Dyachkov, Dagomys 2006.

11...gxf5

11...♠xf5 12.♠e4 ♠f6 13.♕g5 ♠e8 14.♠2c3 ♠xe4 15.♕xe4 ♠d4±



12.♠g3

White has tested some other plans as well:

12.f4 ♠g6 13.fxe5 ♠xe5 (13...dxe5) 14.♠f4 (14.a5!? ♠h4 15.

♠f4 ♠xf4 16.♠xf4 ♠e7) 14...♠xf4 15.♠xf4 ♠g6= Drozdovskij – Efimenko, Ukraine 2006.

12.♕g5 ♠d7 (12...f4 13.♠g3 ♠f6 14.♠h5± Gormally – Gourlay, England 2006) 13.♠g3 ♠f4 14.♕xf4 (14.♠h5!? ♠xh5 15.♠xh5 ♠g6 16.♠ae1 ♠f7 17.♕c1 ♠d7 and White has an enjoyable position indeed, but Black has nothing to worry about.) 14...exf4 15.♠h5 ♕e5 16.g3 ♠g6 17.♠d2 f3 18.♠h1 f4↑ Bruzon – M. Martinez, Spain 2006.

12...♠f4 13.♠a3

13.♠h5!? ♠xh5 14.♠xh5, Korchnoi – Radjabov, Buenos Aires 2001, 14...a6 15.♕g5 ♠e8 16.♠e2 f4 17.♕xe7 ♠xe7 18.♠h5 ♕f6= and ♠f7 next.

13...♠eg6 14.♠ce2

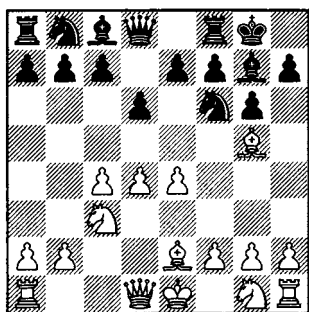
The following game showed that White could not afford to ignore his opponent's powerful knight on f4: 14.♠h1 ♠h4 15.♠g1 e4! 16.f3 (According to GM M.Golubev, in case of 16.♠f1, he was planning 16...♠d3 17.♕xd3 exd3 18.♠b5 ♠e5!, or 18.f4 ♠g4!) 16...♠d7 17.♠f1 ♠d3 18.♕xd3 exd3 19.♠xd3? (White had better take the e5-square under control with 19.f4.) 19...♠e5 20.♠d1 ♠xc4 with an advantage for Black, I.Sokolov – Golubev, Germany 2003.

14...♠g5 15.♠xf4 ♠xf4 16.♠f3 ♠d7 17.♠h1 ♕e8 18.♠g1 ♠h8 19.♕xf4 exf4 20.♠d2 ♕e5∞ Borne – Relange, France 2007.

Part 2

The Averbakh Variation

1.d4 ♖f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6 5.♗e2 0-0 6.♗g5



My computer base asserts that the move 6.♗g5 has been played for the first time back in the year 1930 in a game between two amateurs. It began to be considered seriously only after the famous Soviet GM and theoretician Yuri Averbakh started analyzing it at the beginning of the past century. Naturally, the system was named after him.

White's idea is inherent to the other variations with a bishop on g5 and it is aimed at preventing Black's standard plan including e7-e5 and f7-f5 (after a move with the knight on f6, usually to h5). The absence of the knight on f3 (usually after closing of the centre) enables White to play imme-

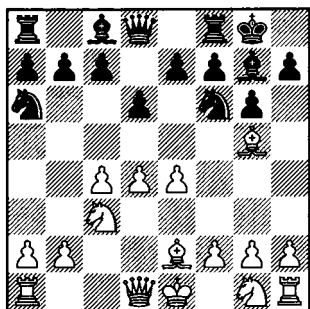
diately the prophylactic move g2-g4, not losing time for h2-h3 and then to play h2-h4 in one move (Averbakh used the same plan in his games.).

I was taught to develop my knights first and only then my bishops in my adolescent years. Yuri Lvovich Averbakh considered that White could postpone the development of the knight on g1 in this situation. White has a wide choice of possibilities and therefore we will see that the Averbakh Variation provides him with opportunities of transposing advantageously to other systems, like the Saemisch Attack, the Four Pawns Attack and the Petrosian system.

In the Averbakh Variation, White takes care mostly of preventing his opponent's counterplay and not so much of his own creative endeavours. Black's main task is to wait patiently for his chances in the middle game without doing anything too committing, despite having to comply usually with a somewhat passive position.

Chapter 11

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.♙e2 0-0 6.♙g5 ♘a6



Black's knight is already eying the c5-square, although sometimes it needs to occupy the modest c7-square. I will have to quote here GM Mikhail Golubev, who is the author of the interesting book *Understanding the King's Indian*. "For a long time 6...c5 was considered to be Black's most principled answer, until in 1988 Glek introduced an absolutely new idea: the flexible (in comparison with ♘bd7) 6...♘a6!?, which quickly proved to be fully playable. It was really too much for White, whose successes after 6...c5 were also rather mixed. Thus, many players started to look for other systems."

- A) 7.♞c2
- B) 7.f4
- C) 7.♘f3
- D) 7.♞d2
- E) 7.h4

About 7.f3 c6 8.♞d2 e5 9.d5 – see 7.♞d2.

- A) 7.♞c2

This seemingly unpretentious move requires pinpoint precision from Black.

- 7...h6

White's position is slightly better after 7...c5 8.d5 h6 9.♙f4.

- 8.♙e3

Or 8.♙f4 c5 9.d5 e5 10.dxe6 ♙xe6 11.♙d1 ♘b4 12.♞b1 (12.♞d2!? ♙e8 13.♙xh6 ♙xh6 14.♞xh6 ♘c2 15.♙f1 ♘d4=; 12.♞b3 ♘e8 13.♘f3 f5=) 12...♙e8 13.♙xd6?! ♙a5 14.a3 ♘c6 15.♘f3 ♘xe4 16.♞xe4 ♙h3 17.♞d3 ♙xg2 18.♙g1 ♙xf3 19.♞xf3 ♘d4 and Black seized the initiative in the game Boensch – Gallagher, Germany 2003.

- 8...e5 9.dxe5

9.d5 ♘g4 10.♙d2 f5 11.♙xg4 fxg4=

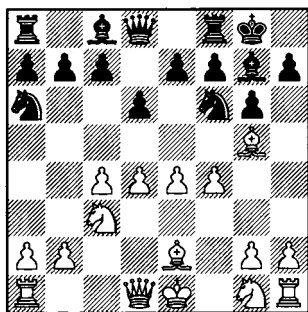
9...dxe5 10. ♙d1 ♙e8 11. ♖d5 ♖g4

Black's alternative is the positional approach 11... ♖d7!? 12. ♙d2 c6 13. ♖c3 ♖h7 14. g4 ♙e7 15. h4 ♖dc5 16. h5 g5 17. ♖f3 ♖e6= Uhlmann – Popovic, Austria 1995.

12. ♙xg4 ♙xg4 13. f3 ♙e6 14. ♙xh6 ♙xd5 15. ♙xg7 ♙xe4 16. ♙xe4 ♖xg7 17. ♙xb7 ♙a4 18. ♙b5 ♙xa2 19. ♖e2 ♙ab8 20. ♙xe5 ♖g8= Black regains his material and equalizes.

B) 7.f4

This is White's most aggressive line.



7...c6

Black takes the d5-square under control, freeing the c7-square for maneuvers in the process. It is worse for him to opt for 7... ♙e8 8.e5 (8. ♙h4 e5 9.fxe5 dxe5 10.d5, Korchnoi – Ju.Polgar, Zurich 2006, 10... ♖c5!? 11. ♙c2 a5 12.h3 – otherwise Black would play ♖g4 – 12... ♖fxe4! 13. ♖xe4 ♙f5 14. ♙f3 ♙xe4 15. ♙xe4 f5 16. ♙f3 e4 17. ♙d1 ♖d3 18. ♖f1 ♖xb2 19. ♙b1 ♙e5=)

8... ♖d7 9. ♖f3 c5 (9...f6 10.exf6 exf6 11. ♙h4±) 10. 0-0 cxd4 11. ♖d5 f6 (11...e6 12. ♖e7 ♖h8 13. ♙xd4 dxe5 14.fxe5 f6 15.exf6 ♖xf6 16. ♖xc8 ♙xc8 17. ♖e5±) 12.exf6 ♖xf6 13. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 14. ♖xf6 ♙xf6 15. ♖xd4 ♖c5 16. ♙f3± Yakovich – Trygstad, Bergen 2000.

8. ♖f3

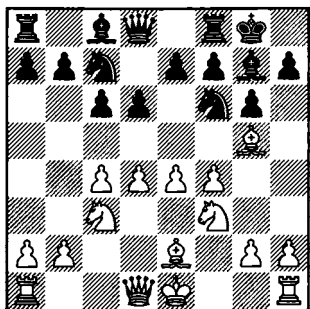
White's direct attack does not deserve attention, because in answer to 8.e5, Black has a powerful resource, which has not been tested in practice yet – 8... ♖h5! (I do not like so much the line: 8... ♖e8 9. ♖f3 ♖ac7 10. ♙h4 ♖e6 11.g3 f6 12.exf6 ♖xf6 13. 0-0 ♙b6 14. ♙d2; 10...b5 11. 0-0 bxc4 12. ♙xc4 ♖e6, Del Rio – Cuenca, Evora 2007, 13. ♙d2 ♙h6 14.g3±) 9. ♙xh5 gxh5 10. ♖f3 f6 and Black seizes gradually the initiative.

8. ♙d2 ♖c7! (It is interesting for him, but probably insufficient to sacrifice a pawn with 8...b5!? 9.cxb5 cxb5 10. ♙xb5 ♙b6 11. ♙e2 ♙b7; 11. ♖ge2 ♙b7 12. ♙xf6 ♙xf6=; 9.e5 b4 10.exf6 bxc3 11. bxc3 exf6 12. ♙h4 ♙a5 13. ♖f3 ♙f5 14. 0-0 ♙fe8= Moskalkenko – Nadyrhanov, Alushta 1994.) 9.e5 ♖g4 10.h3 ♖h6 11.g4 f6 12.exf6 exf6 13. ♙h4 ♖f7 14. 0-0-0 d5 15. ♖f3 ♖d6=

8... ♖c7

Black can hardly equalize with 8...d5, for example: 9. ♙xf6 exf6 10.exd5 cxd5 11. ♖xd5 ♖c7 12. ♖c3 ♙g4 13. ♙d2 ♙xf3 14. ♙xf3 ♙e8 15. ♖e2 f5 16. 0-0 ♖e6 17. ♙ad1± Korotylev – Chuprov, Krasnoyarsk 2007, but it would be interesting

for him to try 8...♖h5 9.f5!? gxf5 10.exf5 ♙h4 ♙g6 12.♙xh5 ♖a5 13.d5 ♙xc3 14.bxc3 ♖xc3 15. ♙d2 ♖xc4 16.♖xg6 f6 17.♖g4 ♖xd5 18.♙xg6=



9.♙h4

This is a prophylactic move against the threat 9...♖e6.

White can achieve much neither with 9.0-0 ♖e6=, nor with 9.d5 ♖a6! 10.♖c2 (10.0-0 cxd5 11.cxd5 ♖b6 12.♖h1 ♖xb2; 10. e5 ♖g4 11.♖d2 f6 12.exf6 exf6 13.♙h4 ♖e8 with approximately equal chances.) 10...cxd5 11.cxd5 ♖b6!? 12.♙h4 ♙d7 13.♙f2 ♖a5 14.0-0 ♖g4

After 9.♖d2 d5! 10.♙xf6 (10. cxd5 cxd5 11.e5 ♖e4 12.♖e3 ♙f5 13.0-0 ♖xc3 14.bxc3 ♖e6 15.♙h4 ♖d7 16.♖ac1 ♖ac8 17.c4 f6) 10...exf6! 11.exd5 (11.cxd5 cxd5 12.e5=; 11.0-0 dxe4 12.♖xe4 ♙g4 13.♖ad1 ♖e7 14.♖f2 ♙xf3 15.♙xf3 f5 16.d5 cxd5 17.cxd5 ♖d6 ♖a5 11...cxd5 12.c5. There arises a typical position for this variation,

in which Black must attack energetically the d4-square: 12...♙f5! 13.0-0 ♙e4 14.b4 ♖e6 15.♖ad1 f5 and Black equalized completely, Meins – Smirin, Groningen 1996.

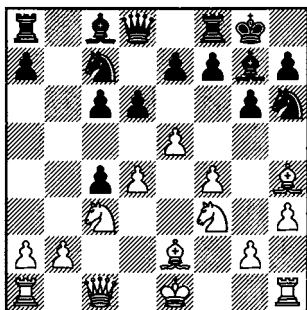
9...b5 10.e5 ♖g4 11.♖c1

It is worse for White to play 11.♖d2 dxe5 12.♖xe5 (12.dxe5 ♖e6) 12...♖xe5 13.fxe5 (13.dxe5 ♖xd2 14.♖xd2, R.Bagirov – Khismatullin, Moscow 2008, 14...b4 15.♖e4 f6 16.♙d3 ♙f5) 13...bxc4 14.♙xc4, Maksimenko – Gross, Imperia 2003, 14...♖b8 15.b3 (15. 0-0? ♙xe5 and Black ends up with an extra pawn) 15...♖b5 16.♖d1 ♙g4 17.♖e2 ♖b7 with an initiative for Black.

11...bxc4 12.h3

About 12.♙xc4 ♙e6 13.♙xe6 ♖xe6 14.h3 ♖h6 – see below.

12...♖h6

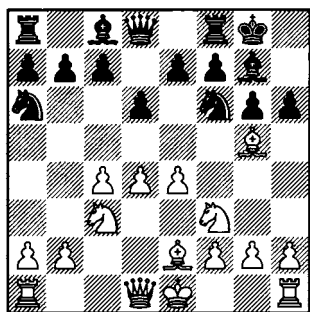


13.♙xc4 (13.g4 c5 14.exd6 ♖xd6 15.♖e4 ♖c6 16.♖xc5 ♙xd4) 13...♙e6 14.♙xe6 (14.♙e2 f6 15.exd6 exd6!? 16.0-0 ♖d7=) 14...♖xe6 15.0-0 ♖f5 16.♙f2 h5 with an unclear position.

3. ♖c3 ♙g7 4. e4 d6 5. ♙e2 0-0 6. ♙g5 ♖a6

C) 7. ♖f3 h6

Black should test the intentions of White's bishop.



C1) 8. ♙f4

C2) 8. ♙h4

Black is quite OK after 8. ♙e3 e5 9. dxe5 (9.0-0 ♖g4 10. ♙c1 c6 11. h3 exd4 12. ♖xd4 ♖f6= and in comparison to the usual position, Black has won a tempo and in addition to all this, it is quite unclear whether it is useful for White to have the moves h3 and h6 included.) 9...dxe5 10. ♙xd8 ♙xd8 11. ♖xe5 ♖xe4= Jarszyk – Weber, Germany 1996.

C1) 8. ♙f4 e5 9. dxe5 ♖h5 10. ♙e3

10.g3 ♖xf4 11.gxf4, Milov – Geenen, Brussels 1995, 11...♙g4 12.exd6 cxd6 13. ♖d4 ♙xe2 14. ♖dxe2 ♙c8! 15. ♙d2 ♙xc4

10...dxe5 11. ♙c1

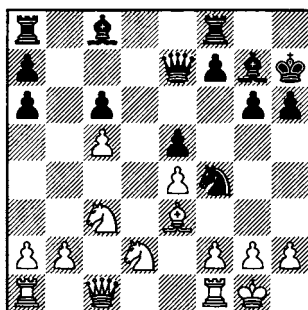
11.g3 ♙e7 12. ♖d5 ♙d6 13. ♖d2 c6 14. c5 ♙d8 15. ♖c3 ♖f6= Ivkov – Ju. Polgar, Aruba 1992.

11...♖h7 12. 0-0 c6 13. c5

13. ♖d2 ♖f4=

13. ♙d1 ♙e7 14. ♖e1 ♖f6 15. f3 ♖c5 16. ♖c2 ♖e6 17. ♙d2 ♙d8 18. ♙e1 ♖d4 19. ♖xd4 exd4 20. ♙xd4 ♙xd4 21. ♙xd4 ♖g4!= Uhlmann – Schaefer, Bad Neuenahr 1991.

13...♙e7 14. ♖d2 ♖f4 15. ♙xa6 bxa6



I have never really liked this pawn-structure, but it should be admitted that Black can make use of some dynamic elements.

16. ♖c4 ♙e6 17. ♙xf4 exf4 18. ♖d6, Uhlmann – Nunn, Dortmund 1991, 18...f3!?

C2) 8. ♙h4 c6!?

Black has numerous alternatives here and they are all based on the attacking scope of his bishop:

8...e5 9.0-0 (9.dxe5 dxe5 10. ♙xd8 ♙xd8 11. ♖xe5 ♙e8 12. f4 g5 13. fxg5 hxg5 14. ♙g3 ♖c5+) 9...g5 10.dxe5 ♖h5 11. ♙g3 ♖xg3 12. hxg3 dxe5 13. ♙b1 c6 14. ♙d1 ♙e7 15. ♖h2 f5 16. exf5 ♙xf5 17. ♙d3 ♙e6= Aleksandrov – Khalifman, Moscow 2007;

8...g5 9.♔g3 ♖h5 10.h4 ♖xg3
11.fxg3 g4 12.♖h2 h5 13.0-0 c6
14.♗d2 ♗b6 15.♙ad1 e5 ♣ Ghorbani
– Al-Modiahki, Singapore 1995.

9.♗d2

9.0-0 g5 10.♔g3 ♖h5 11.♗d2
♖xg3 12.hxg3 ♔d7= Niebergall –
Kummerow, St Ingbert 1998.

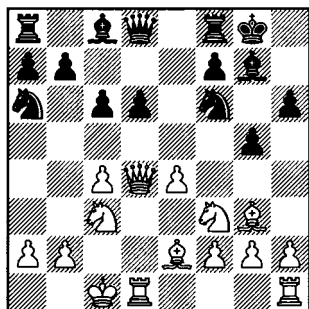
9...e5 10.0-0-0

10.0-0 exd4 11.♗xd4 ♙e8;
11.♖xd4 ♖xe4.

10...exd4 11.♗xd4

11.♖xd4 ♖xe4! 12.♔xd8 ♖xd2.

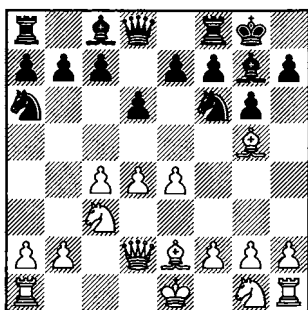
11...g5 12.♔g3



12...♖xe4! (Black combines
two typical ideas of the King's In-
dian Defence. He starts a chase
after White's pieces and it will be
also possible for him to continue
with 12...♖d5!? 13.e5 ♖xc3 14.
♗xc3 g4 15.♖d2 dxe5 16.♖e4 ♗e7
17.f3 ♔f5 ♣) **13.♗xe4 f5 14.♗d3**
f4 15. ♗xd6 ♗xd6 16.♙xd6
fxg3 17.hxg3 ♖c5 ♣ Aleksandrov
– Bologan, Kstovo 1998.

D) 7.♗d2

This is the most popular move
for White.



7...e5

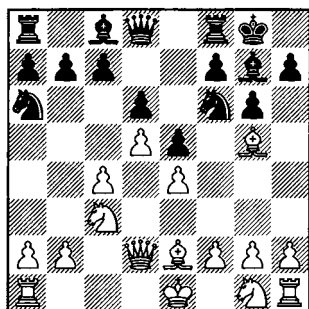
This is again the most often
played move for Black and possi-
bly the strongest as well. He has
an alternative though, but it is not
so effective: 7...c5 8.d5 e6 9.♖f3
exd5 10.exd5 ♙e8 (It is worse
for him to opt for 10...♖c7, since
it will be difficult to push b7-b5,
while his knight on c7 is practi-
cally idle. It is doing nothing there
and it precludes the access of his
queen to the queenside, for exam-
ple: 11.0-0 ♔f5 12.h3 ♗c8 13.♗f4
♖ce8 14.♗fe1 a6 15.♔f1 ♔d7 16.a4±
Gelfand – Ju.Polgar, Alma-Ata
2008.) 11.0-0 ♗b6 12.♙ae1 ♔d7
13.h3 ♖e4. The essence of Black's
plan is to complete his develop-
ment and to provoke simplifica-
tions, after which White's mini-
mal space advantage (in a sym-
metrical pawn- structure) will be
irrelevant. 14.♖xe4 ♙xe4 15.♔d3
♙xe1 16.♙xe1 ♗xb2 17.♗xb2 ♔xb2
18.♙e7 ♖b8 19.♔f4 ♔g7 20.♙e3
♖a6 21.♔xd6± and the endgame
is somewhat preferable for White,
Moor – Golod, Fuegen 2006.

8.d5

3. ♖c3 ♖g7 4.e4 d6 5. ♕e2 0-0 6. ♕g5 ♖a6

White achieves nothing much if he tries to capture a pawn: 8. dxe5 dxe5 9. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 10. ♖d5 ♖d6 11. ♖xf6 ♕xf6 12. ♕xf6 ♖xf6= Paetz – Bode, Germany 1993.

In case of 8. ♖f3, Black's queen finds a comfortable square – 8... ♖e8 and it not only unpins the knight on f6, but it creates a threat against the pawn on e4. White will have to make up his mind. 9. d5 (The direct approach for him fails again 9. dxe5 dxe5 10. 0-0 ♖c5 11. ♕xf6 ♕xf6 12. ♖d5 ♕d8 13. ♖e3 ♖d7; Black has defended reliably all his critical squares and he is ready to seize the initiative: 14. c5 a5 15. ♖d2 c6 16. ♖c3 b5! ♖ Uhlmann – Podzielný, Germany 1992.) 9... ♖c5 10. ♖c2 h6 11. ♕e3 ♖g4 12. ♕xc5 dxc5 13. h3 ♖f6 14. 0-0-0 ♖e7 15. g4 ♖e8 16. ♖dg1 ♖d6= Boensch – Poldauf, Munich 1993.



D1) 8...c6

D2) 8...♖e8

D1) 8...c6

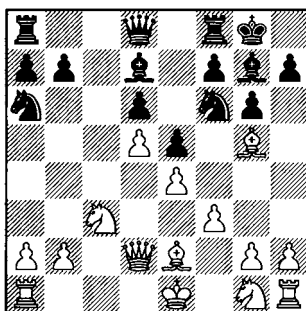
Now, White can transpose to

a version of the Saemisch Attack and his pieces would be very harmoniously placed in that case.

9.f3

It is not so reasonable for White to try here 9. ♕d3 cxd5 10. cxd5 ♖c5 11. ♕c2 a5 12. ♖ge2 ♕d7 13. 0-0 (13. a4 ♖b6!?) 13... b5 14. f3 b4 15. ♖d1 ♕b5! Szeberenyi – Toth, Hungary 1996, or 9. h4 cxd5 10. cxd5 ♖a5! 11. f3 ♖h5 12. g4 ♖g3 13. ♖h3 ♖xe2 14. ♖gxe2 b5= Serper – Ye Jiangchuan, Jakarta 1994.

9...cxd5 10.cxd5 ♕d7



11. ♕d1!

This is essence of White's idea. He completes his development and his space advantage guarantees a slight opening edge.

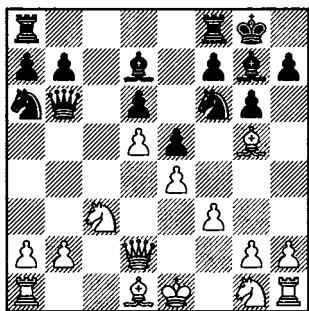
The attempts to organize a kingside attack would be fruitless. 11. g4 h6! (11... ♖a5 12. ♖h3 ♖fc8 13. ♖f2 h6 14. ♕e3 h5 15. h3 ♖c5 16. ♖b1 ♖d8 17. 0-0 ♖h7 18. b4 ♖a6 19. ♖fc1 ♖c7 20. a4! De Souza – Milos, Santos 2008) 12. ♕e3 h5 13. h3 (13. g5 ♖e8 14. ♕xa6 bxa6 15. ♖ge2 ♖c7 16. 0-0-0 ♖b5 17.

♟b1 ♖b8 18.♟a1 ♜c8 ♞ Krush – Kacheishvili, Berkeley 2008) 13... ♖c5 14.0–0–0 ♖b8! 15.♟b1 b5, with an initiative for Black.

11.h4 ♗e8 (11...♟a5 12.g4 ♜f8 – 12...h5!? – 13.♖h3 ♖c5 14.♞b1 ♖a4 15.♖b5 ♖xd2 16.♟xd2 ♖e8 17.♖f2 f5!↑) 12.g4 h5! Naturally, Black should not go berserk and open the g-file for his opponent's heavy pieces. He is ready to sacrifice a pawn in order to gain access to the f-file. 13.♙xf6 ♙xf6 14.gxh5 ♟g7 15.hxg6 fxg6 16.0–0–0 ♞h8 17.h5, Gaprindashvili – Makropoulou, Kuala Lumpur 1990 (17.♙xa6 bxa6 18.♖ge2 ♞xh4 19.♟b1 ♗e7 20.♞xh4 ♙xh4) 17...♞xh5! 18.♞xh5 gxh5 19.♙xa6 bxa6 ♞

11...♖b6

In case of 11...♟a5 12.a3 b5 13.♖ge2 ♜fb8 14.♙e3 b4 15.♖a2 ♖b5 16.axb4 ♖xb4 17.♖xb4 ♖xb4 18.♖xb4 ♞xb4 19.b3, White maintains a slight edge.



12.a3!

12.♖ge2 ♖c5 13.♙e3 ♖xb2!

12...♖h5

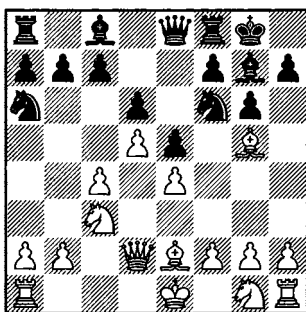
12...♖c5 13.b4; 12...♟d4 13.♙c2

♜fc8 14.♖ge2 ♖xd2 15.♙xd2 b5 16.b4±

13.♖ge2 f5 14.♙e3 ♖d8, Sapi – Gonzalez Garcia, Budapest 1995, 15.exf5 gxf5 16.0–0 ♙e8!? (16...f4 17.♙f2 ♙f5 18.♙c2 ♙xc2 19.♖xc2 ♙f6 20.♖e4 ♟h8 21.g4!±) 17.f4 ♙g6 18.♜c1±

D2) 8...♖e8

This waiting move enables Black to vary his reaction to his opponent's next move.



9.♙d1

Black's task would be much easier against White's other possibilities.

9.f3 ♖h5 10.♙d1! f5 11.♖ge2 ♙d7 12.♙c2 ♖b4 13.♙b1 a5 14.a3 ♖a6 15.♙c2 f4 16.♙h4 g5! (Thanks to the weakness of the g2-pawn, Black succeeds in advancing g5–g4, dominating on the kingside.) 17.♙f2 g4 ♞ Farago – Tratar, Maribor 1994.

9.h4 ♖c5 10.♙f3 (10.♖c2 a5 11.h5 ♖xh5 ♞; 10.f3 ♖h5 11.g4 ♖f4! 12.h5 h6 13.♙xf4 exf4 14.hxg6 fxg6 15.♖h3 ♖e5 ♞ Guichard

– Apicella, France 2008) 10... a5 11. ♖ge2 (11.h5 ♖xh5) 11...h5 12.0-0 ♗d7 13.b3 b6 and Black ends up in a good version on the Petrosian variation.

9.0-0-0 ♖c5 10.f3 ♖h5! 11. b4 (11.♖b5 ♗d7 12.b4 a6 13.bxc5 axb5 14.cxb5 dxc5 15.♗c4 ♗d6 ♞ Aleksandrov – Fedorov, Minsk 1993) 11...♖a6 12.a3 ♖f4 13.♗f1 f6 14.♗h4 ♗h6 15.♖b2 f5 16.♗c2 fxe4 17.♖xe4 ♗f5 18.♗f2 ♖b8 19.♗e3 a5 20.b5 (20.g3? axb4! 21.axb4 ♖xd5! 22.♗xh6 ♗a2 23.♖xa2 ♖xb4, Golubev) 20...♗g7 21.g3 ♖h5 22.♗d3 ♖d7=

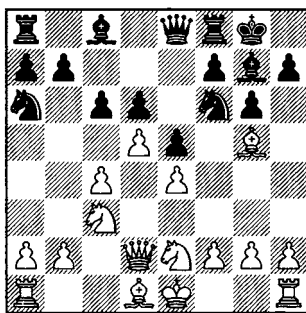
9.♗d3 ♖h5 (It deserves attention for Black to transfer his second knight to the queenside: 9... ♖d7 10.♖ge2 ♖dc5 11.♗c2 ♖b4 12.♖b5 ♖xc2 13.♗xc2 ♗d7 14.♗e3 f5 15.f3 fxe4 16.fxe4 a6 17.♖bc3 ♗g4 18.♖g3, Santa Torres – Matamoros, Turin 2006 and here Black could have played simply b6 followed by a5, consolidating a slight edge.) 10.♖ge2 f5 11.f3 ♗d7 (11... f4 12.♗h4 ♗f6 13.♗f2 ♗e7 14.h4 c5 15.dxc6 bxc6 16.♖a4 ♖c7 17. 0-0-0 ♗e6 18.♖b1 ♗f7 19.♗c1 ♗g7 20.♗hd1 ♗fd8 21.♗a5 ♖f6 22.♗c2 ♖e6 23.♗a6 d5 ♞ Bekker-Jensen – Fedorov, Aars 1999) 12.0-0-0 ♖c5 13.♗c2 a5 14.h3 f4 15.♗h4 a4 16.♗f2 b6 17.♖b1 ♗f6 18.♖c1 ♗e7 19.♖d3 ♖xd3 20.♗xd3 ♗h4 ♞ – Black has obtained his perfect position and after the trade of the dark-squared bishops he can calmly prepare a pawn-offensive in front of his king. Korotylev –

Fedorov, Kstovo 1994.

9...c6 10. ♖ge2

It is not advisable for White to play 10.dxc6, since it presents his opponent with several tempi: 10...♗xc6 11.♗e2 ♖c5 12.♗c2 ♗b6 13.0-0-0 ♗e6 14.♖b1 ♗b4†

10.f3 cxd5 11.cxd5, Valdes – Cabrera, Isla Guitart 1994, 11... ♖h5 12.♗a4 (12.♖ge2 f5 13.exf5 gxf5 14.0-0 ♗d7 15.a3 ♖c7 16.♗c1 ♗c8 17.♗c2 b6=) 12...♗d7 13.♗xd7 ♗xd7 14.♖ge2 f5 15.0-0 f4 16. ♗h4 ♗f6 17.♗f2 ♗d8! ♞ – after the unavoidable exchange on b6, Black will solve the problem with his “bad” bishop.

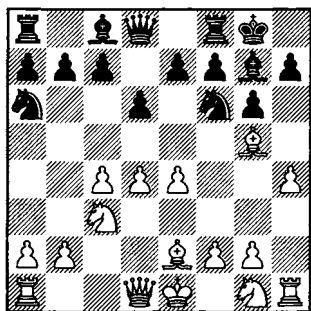


10...cxd5 11.cxd5 ♖c5, Baragar – Langner, Manitoba 1996, 12.f3 a5 13.a4 ♗d7 14.0-0 ♗c8 15.♗e3 ♗d8 16.♖c1 ♖h5 17.♖b3 b6 18.♖xc5 bxc5 19. ♗e2 f5 – White’s position is slightly preferable, but Black has his chances as well.

E) 7.h4

This attack on the flank is one of White’s resources, which is an

integral part of the Averbakh Variation. It is an illustration of another plus of the move ♔e2 in the absence of the knight on f3. He can open the h-file in order to create direct threats just in case. It is a dangerous plan and it requires from Black precise and energetic actions. There is something however, which is not exactly in the spirit of the system, because it is aimed at prevention and building a positional bind and not so much at attacking directly.



7...c5

Black can rise up to the challenge and push pawns in front of his king: 7...h6 8.♔e3 e5 9.d5 ♖c5 10.♟c2 c6 11.h5 (Now, Black has no more counterplay on the kingside.) 11...g5 12.f3 a5 13.g4 (13.♞d1 cxd5 14.cxd5 ♔d7 15.♙xc5 dxc5 16.a4 c4 17.♙xc4 ♞c8 18.♙b5 ♙xb5 19.axb5 ♚e8, followed by ♚d6 with some compensation for Black.) 13...♔d7 14.♚h3 a4 15.♟d2 (15.♚f2 ♟a5 16.♟d2 ♞fc8 17.♞c1 a3 18.b3 cxd5 19.♚xd5 ♚xd5 20.♟xa5 ♞xa5 21.exd5 ♚xb3,

draw, Lugovoi – van Wely, Antwerpen 1995) 15...cxd5 16.cxd5 ♟a5. There arose objectively an equal position. (16...♙xg4 17.fxg4 ♚fxe4 18.♚xe4 ♚xe4 19.♟b4±) 17.♚b1 ♟xd2 (17...♚fxe4 18.fxe4 ♚xe4 19.♟xa5 ♞xa5 20.♚c3! ♚g3 21.♞g1± Bareev – Kasparov, Linares 1992) 18.♚xd2 b5 19.♚f2 ♞fc8 20.a3 (20.♚d3?! ♚xd3 21.♙xd3 a3 22.b4 ♚xg4! 23.fxg4 ♞c3 24.♚e2 ♙xg4 25.♚f3 ♞xd3 26.♚xd3 ♙xf3) 20...♙f8=

8.d5 ♚c7 9.♟d2

Black can counter 9.h5 with a counter attack in the centre: 9...e6 10.a4 (10.♟d2 – see 9.♟d2) 10...exd5 11.cxd5 a6 12.♟d2 ♔d7 13.♟f4 ♟e7 14.h6 ♔h8 15.♚f3 b5 (Black succeeds in attacking White's centre prior to his castling.) 16.e5 ♚fxd5 17.♙xe7 ♚xf4 18.♙xf8 ♞xf8 19.exd6 b4! 20.♚d1 ♚e8 21.♙xa6 ♚xd6= with a good compensation for the exchange.

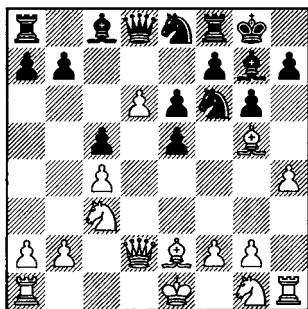
9...e6 10.e5

10.h5 exd5 11.exd5 (11.cxd5 b5 12.f3 ♔d7 13.♟f4 ♟e7 14.hxg6 fxg6 15.♟h2, Hager – Karner, Austria 1999, 15...♞f7=) 11...a6 (11...b5?! 12.cxb5 ♙b7 13.♙f3 ♟d7 14.♚ge2 ♚xb5 15.♚xb5 ♟xb5 16.♚c3 ♟d7 17.♟f4, Onischuk – Wegener, Berlin 1993, 17...♞ae8! 18.♚f1 ♞e5 19.♙xf6 ♞f5=; 13.0–0–0 ♟d7 14.♙h6. Black is a pawn down and White also has an attack, Alterman – Kindermann, Bad Homburg 1997.) 12.♟f4 (12.0–0–0 b5 13.♟f4 bxc4 14.g4, Kachiani-Gershinska – Kieffhaber, Germany

3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4. e4 d6 5. ♕e2 0-0 6. ♗g5 ♖a6

2003, 14... ♖b8+ 12... ♖ce8 13. ♗d3 b5 14. cxb5 axb5 15. ♗xb5 ♖a5 16. hxc6 fxc6+ Kekki – Yrjola, Finland 1994.

10... dxe5 11. d6 ♖ce8



12. ♖d1

In response to 12. 0-0-0, Black has additional possibilities of organizing a queenside offensive: 12... ♖d7 (12... h6? 13. ♗xh6 ♖xd6 14. ♖e3→) 13. h5 (13. ♖f3 ♖g4! 14. ♖e4 ♖c6!; 13. ♖e3 b6 14. h5 ♗b7 – 14... ♖xd6? 15. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 16. ♖e4 – 15. hxc6 fxc6 16. ♖h3 h5∞) 13... b5! 14. cxb5 ♗b7 15. hxc6 (15. ♗h6 ♖xd6 16. ♖g5 ♗xh6 17. ♖xh6 ♖e7 18. ♖g5 ♖g7 19. ♗f3 e4 20. ♖xe4 ♗xe4 21. ♗xe4 h6 22. ♖e3 ♖xe4 23. ♖xe4 g5 24. ♖e2 a6 25. bxa6 ♖xa6+ Bareev – Ju. Polgar, Hastings 1993; 15. ♖f3 ♖d5 16. ♗h6 ♖xc3 17. bxc3 e4 18. hxc6 exf3 19. gxf3 ♖h8 20. gxf3 f6 21. ♖hg1 ♖f7 22. ♖g4 ♖d8∞) 15... fxc6 16. ♖e3 (16. ♖f3 ♖d5; 16. f3, Antreasyan – Andersen, Copenhagen 1994, 16... ♗d5 17. ♖e3 ♖xd6 18. ♖e4 ♖c7+ 16... ♗g2 17. ♖h2 ♗d5 18. ♖h3

♖xd6+ – Black has managed to parry his opponent's assault, while White has even failed to regain his pawn.

12... ♖d7!? 13. ♖f3

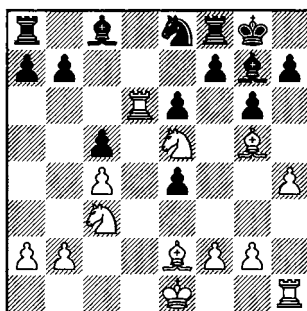
13. ♖e3 b6 14. ♖f3 ♖h5 15. ♗e7 f6 16. ♗xf8 ♗xf8∞ Bareev – Nunn, Hastings 1993.

13. h5 b5 14. cxb5 ♗b7 15. ♗h6 (15. hxc6 fxc6) 15... ♗xg2 16. ♖h2 ♗d5 17. ♗xg7 ♖xg7 18. ♖f3 ♖xd6 19. hxc6 fxc6 20. ♖g5, Zakharevich – Dolmatov, Kazan 1995, 20... e4+

13... e4 14. ♖e5 ♖xd6!

This is the tactical motive this variation is based on.

15. ♖xd6 ♖xd6 16. ♖xd6 ♖e8



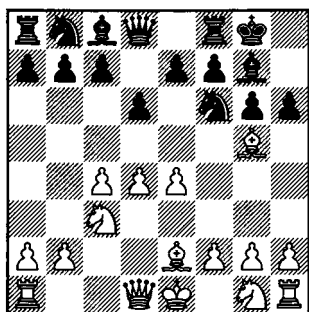
17. ♖xf7

17. ♖d2 ♗xe5 18. ♖xe4 b6 19. ♗e7 ♗b7 20. ♗f3 f5 21. ♖g5 ♗xf3 22. gxf3 ♗f4 23. ♖e2 ♗xg5 24. ♗xf8 (24. hxc6 ♖f7 25. ♖xe6 ♖c7 26. ♖e3 ♖e8 27. ♗d6 f4+ 24... ♗f4 25. ♗e7 h6+)

17... ♖xf7 18. ♖d2 ♗xc3 19. bxc3 ♖f6=

Chapter 12

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.♙e2 0-0 6.♙g5 h6



In the variation with 6...♘a6, Black presents his opponent with a free choice in developing pieces and choosing a plan, while now he is trying to force the issue.

7.♙e3

In reply to 7.♙f4, White's bishop might come under attack after e7-e5, for example: 7...♘c6 8.d5 (8.♙d2 ♘xd4 9.♙xd4 e5 10.♙xe5 dxe5 11.♙xe5 ♙e8 12.♙f4, Dualibe – Hadas, Warsaw 1991, 12...c6 13.♙d1 ♙e7 and Black has more than sufficient compensation for the pawn. 8.♘f3 e5 9.dxe5 ♘h5 10.♙e3 dxe5 11.♙xd8 ♘xd8 12.♘d5 ♘e6 13.♘e7 ♘h7 14.0-0-0 ♘ef4 15.♙f1 ♙g4= Krush – Reinderman, Wijk aan Zee 2008) 8...e5! 9.♙e3 (9.dxe6 ♙xe6 10.♘f3 ♙e8=) 9...

♘d4 10.♙xd4 exd4 11.♙xd4 ♙e8 12.♙d3 ♘d7 – Black has not only regained his pawn, but he seizes the initiative, Brinck-Claussen – B.Andersen, Aarhus 1966.

After 7.♙h4, White's bishop cannot come back anymore to protect the queenside and naturally this is very favourable for Black: 7...c5 8.d5 (8.dxc5 ♙a5 9.f3 ♙xc5 10.♙f2 ♙a5 11.♙a4 ♙d8 12.♙d1 ♙d7 13.♙b3, Stanek – Tikovsky, Brno 2008, 13...♘c6!? with initiative for him) 8...♙a5 9.♙d2 a6 10.f3 ♘bd7 11.♘h3, Boutteville – Benoit, Dieppe 1967, 11...♘b6 12.♘f2 g5 13.♙g3 ♘h5↑

7...c5

This is the most principled move for Black

White has three main lines here:

A) 8.d5

B) 8.dxc5

C) 8.e5

A) 8.d5 e6

Black can also try now the gambit idea 8...b5 9.cxb5 a6 10.a4 ♙a5, but White completes his de-

velopment comfortably 11. ♗d2 axb5 12. ♗xb5 ♗a6 13. ♖ge2, Tabatadze – E. Ragozin, Riga 1988, 13... ♖bd7 14. 0-0 and he can rely on obtaining an edge.

9. ♖d2

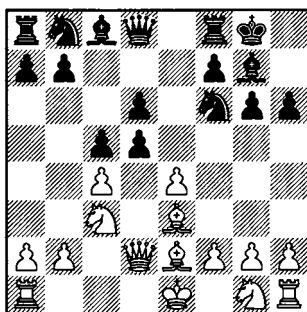
White will not achieve much by a deliberate exchange of his key d5-pawn, which restricts Black's possibilities considerably: 9. dxe6 ♗xe6 10. ♖d2 ♖h7 11. h3 (It looks too risky for White to castle long: 11. 0-0-0 ♖a5 12. ♖b1 ♖c6 13. f3 ♖ab8 14. ♖h3 b5 15. cxb5 a6 16. ♖f4 axb5 17. ♖xe6 fxe6 18. ♖xd6 ♖fc8 19. e5 b4 → Bukhman – Lukin, USSR 1973.) 11... ♖c6 12. ♖f3 ♖e7 (12... ♖a5 13. 0-0 ♖ad8 14. ♖fd1 a6 15. ♖c2 ♖e8 16. ♖d5 ♖b4 17. ♖xb4 ♖xb4 18. e5 ♖a5 19. ♖d2 ♖c7, Portisch – Sax, Budapest 1984, 20. ♗f4 dxe5 21. ♖xd8 exf4 22. ♖ab1±; 20... d5 21. cxd5 ♗xd5 22. ♖e3±) 13. 0-0 ♖ad8 14. ♖ad1 ♖fe8 15. ♖fe1 ♖f8 16. ♖c2 ♖d7 17. ♖d5 ♖de5= Black takes under control the important d4-square, Crouch – Lane, Brighton 1984.

It is usually reasonable for White, in pawn-structures of the Benoni type, to have the g4-square covered, restricting in the process his opponent's bishop on c8 and knight on f6. Still, playing 9. h3 in this situation is a bit too slow and Black manages to organize a powerful counterplay, although he needs some time to begin it effectively with a typical pawn-sacrifice: 9... exd5 10. exd5 (10. cxd5 ♖e8) 10... ♖e8 11. ♖f3 (11.

♗d3 b5 12. cxb5 ♖bd7 13. ♖ge2 ♖b6 14. ♖d2 ♖fxd5 15. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 16. ♗xh6 ♗xh6 17. ♖xh6 ♖f6= Kamenets – Efimenko, Alushta 2000; 11. ♖d2 ♖h7 12. ♗d3 b5 13. ♖xb5 ♖e4 14. ♗xe4 ♖xe4 15. ♖c1 a6 16. ♖a3 f5 17. ♖e2 g5 18. f3 ♖e8 19. ♖f2 ♖a7= Frog – Bagaturov, Moscow 1991) 11... ♗f5 12. g4 (12. 0-0 ♖e4 13. ♖xe4 ♗xe4 14. ♗d3 ♗xf3 15. ♖xf3 ♖d7 16. ♖ab1 ♖e5 17. ♖d1 ♖h4 18. b3 ♖xd3 19. ♖xd3 ♖e4 20. ♖be1 ♖ae8 21. ♗d2 f5, draw, Beliavsky – Tal, Sochi 1986) 12... ♗e4 13. ♖d2 (13. 0-0 ♗xf3 14. ♗xf3 ♖bd7 15. ♗f4 ♖b6 16. ♖d3 ♖fd7 17. ♖ae1 ♖e5 18. ♗xe5 ♗xe5 19. b3 ♖f6= Averbakh – Geller, USSR 1974) 13... ♖bd7 14. 0-0-0, Snajdr – Nitsche, corr. 1987, 14... ♖b6 15. b3 ♗xf3 16. ♗xf3 ♖fd7=

Black has an excellent position after 9. ♖f3 ♖g4 10. ♗d2 exd5, Dybowski – Hawelko, Naleczow 1985, 11. cxd5 (11. ♖xd5 ♖c6, with the idea ♖ge5; 11. exd5 f5!?) 11... f5 12. exf5 ♗xf5 13. h3 ♖f6 14. ♖h4 ♗e4 15. 0-0 g5=

9... exd5



10.cxd5

White has chosen a symmetrical pawn-structure and he hopes to restrict in the future his opponent's light-squared bishop with h2-h3, or even h2-h3 and g2-g4, obtaining a slight but stable edge, thanks to his space advantage.

The ambitious move 10.cxd5 presents Black with more chances of creating counterplay and this was proved in an old game played by Garry Kasparov 10...♞e8 11.f3 h5 12.a4 (12.♙d1 ♜bd7 13.♜ge2 a6 14.a4 ♞a5 15.♞a2 ♞b8 16.0-0 ♞c7 17.a5 b5 18.axb6 ♜xb6 19.b3 ♜bd7 20.♙c2 ♜e5 21.♞d1 h4 22.h3, draw, Gheorghiu – Gavrikov, Suhr 1991; 12.♙g5 a6 13.a4 ♞a5 14.♞a3 ♜h7 15.♙f4 ♞c7 – 15... ♞d8!? – 16.a5, Fedorowicz – van Wely, Wijk aan Zee 1990, 16...b5 17.axb6 ♞xb6 18.♜b5 axb5 19. ♞xa8 ♙a6 20.♜h3 ♞b7 21.♞xb8 ♞xb8 22.0-0 ♞b6=) 12...a6 13.a5 ♜h7 14.♙d1 ♜d7 15.♜ge2 ♜e5 16. b3 ♞h4 17.♙f2 ♞f6 18.♞e3 h4 19. h3 g5 20.0-0 ♙d7 21.♜h1 ♜f8 22.♙g1 ♜fg6 23.♙h2 c4 24.♞b1 ♞ac8∞ Seirawan – Kasparov, Skelleftea 1989.

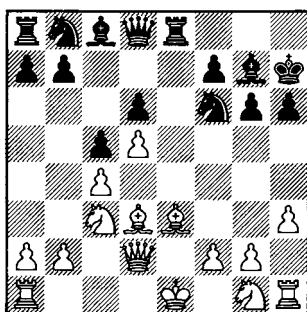
10...♜h7 11.h3

White must waste a tempo on prophylactic, because in case of 11.♜f3 ♜g4 12.♙f4 f5, Dalin – Gustavsson, corr. 1991, 13.♜b5 a6 14.♜xd6 g5 15.♙g3 f4♞ Black will not have any problems at all.

11...♞e8 12.♙d3

White loses another tempo in

order to prevent the appearance of the enemy bishop on f5. The indifferent move 12.♜f3, would enable Black to equalize equally: 12...♙f5 13.0-0 (13.♙d3 ♜e4 14. ♜xe4 ♙xe4 15.♙xe4 ♞xe4 16.♞d3 ♞a5 17.♜d2 ♞e7 18.0-0 ♜d7 19. ♜e4 ♞a6 20.♙f4 ♜e5♞ L.Bronstein – Quinteros, Argentina 1985) 13...♜e4 14.♜xe4 ♙xe4= Belkadi – Kavalek, Skopje 1972.



12...b5!

White lags considerably in development, so this is the right moment for Black to inflict a powerful strike against the enemy centre.

13.cxb5

In case of 13.♜xb5, White's control over the vital e4-square is diminished and Black can exploit this immediately: 13...♜e4 14.♙xe4 ♞xe4 15.♞c1 a6 16.♜a3 (White must send his knight into oblivion in order not to lose his c4-pawn.) 16...♞h8!∞ Meins – Schebler, Duisburg 2003.

13...♜bd7 14.♜ge2

After 14.♜f3 ♜b6, Black cap-

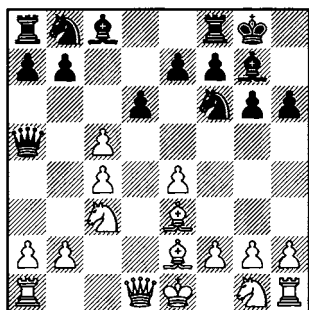
tures the d5-pawn with an excellent game, for example: 15. 0-0 ♗b7 16. ♖ad1 ♖d7 17. a4 ♖bxd5 18. ♖xd5 ♗xd5 19. ♕e2 ♖ad8± Hradeczky – Adorjan, Budapest 1972.

14... ♖e5 15. ♖d1

15. ♖g3? ♖xd3!? 16. ♖xd3 a6 17. 0-0 axb5 18. ♖xb5 ♗b7± Garcia Gonzales – Schmidt, Camaguey 1974.

15... a6 16. a4 ♖xd3 17. ♖xd3 axb5 18. axb5 ♗f5 19. ♖d2 ♗d7 20. 0-0 ♖b8 21. ♖d3 ♖a5= Tisdall – Hellers, Sweden 1992.

B) 8. dxc5 ♖a5



9. ♗d2

9. cxd6 ♖xe4 10. dxe7 ♖e8, Irle – Tilch, corr. 1984, 11. ♗d4 ♖xc3 12. bxc3 ♖c6±

9. ♖d2 dxc5 10. ♗xh6 ♖d8 (This is an important intermediate move.) 11. ♖e3 ♗xh6 12. ♖xh6 ♖xe4 13. ♖c1 ♖c6 and Black should not be afraid of the direct attack against his king after 14. h4 (14. ♖f3 ♖d4 15. 0-0 ♖xe2

16. ♖xe2 ♗g4±) 14... ♖d4, since his centralized knights control practically the entire board, for example: 15. ♖f3 (15. h5 g5) 15... ♖b4 16. h5 g5 17. ♖xg5 ♖f6 18. ♖xf7 (18. ♖f3 ♖xe2 19. ♖g5 ♖h7 20. a3 ♖xb2 21. ♖xe2 ♗g4 22. h6 ♖g8; 18. ♗d3 ♗f5) 18... ♖xf7 19. ♖g6 ♖e6 20. 0-0 ♖g8 21. ♖d3 ♖f7 22. ♖fe1 ♗f5 23. ♖e3 e6± Avrukh – Kaminiski, Warsaw 1991.

9... ♖xc5 10. ♖f3

10. h3 ♖c6 11. ♖f3, C. Horvath – Kotronias, Peer Gynt 1994, 11... ♖e5! 12. ♖xe5 ♖xe5±, with the idea to follow with 13. ♖c2 ♗e6 and later ♖fc8.

10. ♗e3 ♖a5 11. ♖d2 ♖c6 12. h3 ♖h7 13. ♖f3 ♗e6 14. 0-0 ♖d7 15. ♖fd1 ♖ac8 16. ♖ac1 ♖de5 17. b3 ♖xf3 18. ♗xf3 f5 19. exf5 ♗xf5= Dokhoian – Balashov, Sverdlovsk 1987.

10... ♗g4 11. ♗e3

11. 0-0 ♗xf3 12. ♗xf3 ♖c6 13. ♗e2 ♖e5 (13... ♖a5 14. ♖h1 ♖ac8 15. ♖b1 ♖d8 16. b3 ♖d7 17. ♖c1 ♖c5 18. f3 ♖h7 19. ♗e3 b6 20. ♖d2± Petursson – Markzon, Linares 1994) 14. f3 g5 15. ♗e3 ♖h5 16. ♖d2 ♖f4 17. ♗d1 ♖e6 18. ♖c1 ♖h8 19. ♖h1 ♖a5= Yakovich – Inarkiev, Novokuznetsk 2008. White maintains some symbolic advantage, but Black's game is quite comfortable.

11... ♖a5

11... ♖c8 12. ♖c1 ♖c6 13. b3 h5 14. h3 ♗xf3 15. ♗xf3 ♖d7 16. 0-0 ♖c5 17. ♖d5 ♖d8 18. b4 ♖e6, Quinn – Kovalev, Istanbul 2000,

19. ♖e2±

12. ♖d2

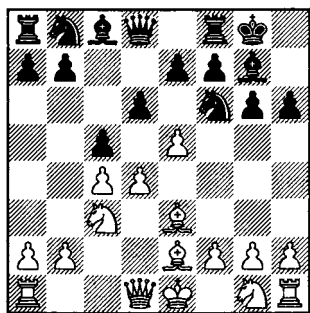
12.0-0 ♖c6 13.h3 (13. ♖d2 ♗xe2 14. ♖xe2 – see 12. ♖d2) 13... ♗xf3 14. ♗xf3 ♖b4 15. ♖b3 a5 16. ♗e2 a4 17. ♖c2 ♗fc8 18. a3 ♖b3 19. ♖xb3 axb3 20. f4 ♖d7 and in the oncoming endgame Black's knights are at least comparable to White's bishops. Kalashian – Nalbandian, Yerevan 2006.

12... ♗xe2 13. ♖xe2 ♖c6 14. 0-0 ♗fc8

14... ♖h5 15. f3 ♖d7 16. ♗fc1 ♗ac8=

15. ♗ac1 ♖d7 16. ♗fd1, Gulko – Ivanchuk, Biel 1993, **16... ♗h7 17. a3 ♖a6** followed by ♖ce5 with equality for Black.

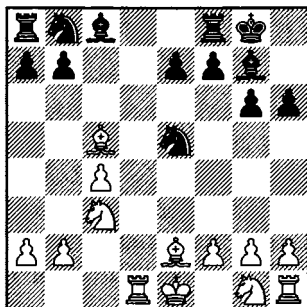
C) 8.e5



8... dxe5 9. dxe5 ♖xd1 10. ♗xd1 ♖g4

The Kirgizian GM Leonid Yurtaev is the inventor of this variation and he has played some memorable games in it. His pupil Ernesto Inarkiev has contributed to his endeavours later.

11. ♗xc5 ♖xe5



This is a forced line and common sense is nearly irrelevant here. The variation must be thoroughly analyzed and it requires an excellent memory.

12. ♖d5

12. ♗xe7 ♗e8 13. ♖d5 ♗e6 14. ♗a3 (14. ♖c7 ♗xe7 15. ♖xa8 ♖ec6 – White's knight is stranded now on the a8-square and he has also problems castling.) 14... ♗xd5 15. cxd5 ♖c4, Ryskin – Mochalov, Minsk 1993, 16. ♗f1 ♖xa3 17. bxa3 ♖d7=

12. ♖f3 ♖bc6 13. 0-0 ♗f5 14. ♖h4 ♗e6 15. ♖d5 ♗ac8 16. ♗xe7 ♗fe8 17. ♖f6 ♗xf6 18. ♗xf6 ♖xc4= Borisenko – Yurtaev, Tashkent 1988.

12... ♖bc6 13. f4

13. ♗xe7 ♖xe7 14. ♖xe7 ♗h7 15. ♖xc8 ♗axc8 16. b3 ♗fe8 17. ♗f1 ♗cd8 18. ♗xd8 ♗xd8 19. f4 ♖c6 20. ♖f3 ♖b4= Roeder – Arizmen-di, Ubeda 2000.

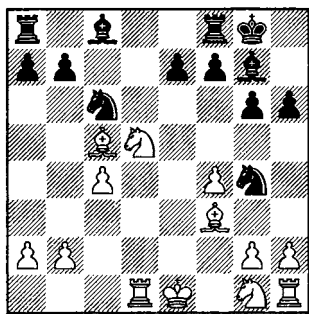
13. b3 ♗f5 14. ♖f3 (14. ♗xe7 ♗fe8 15. ♗f6 ♗e4 16. ♗f1 ♗xd5 17. ♗xg7 ♗xg7 18. cxd5 ♖b4 19. a3 ♖c2 20. a4 ♗ad8) 14... ♗fd8 15. ♖xe5

3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4. e4 d6 5. ♕e2 0-0 6. ♗g5 h6 7. ♕e3 c5

♗e5 16. 0-0 (16. f4 ♗g7 17. ♖xe7 ♖xe7 18. ♕xe7 ♗e8 19. ♗b4 a5 20. ♗d6 ♗g4 21. ♗d2 ♕c3) 16... ♖f8 17. ♗f3, Seifert – Feige, Germany 2002, 17... ♗d6=

13... ♗g4 14. ♗f3

White provoked amusing complications in a recent game, played in the super-final of the Russian Championships: 14. h3 ♖f6 15. ♗f3 ♗f5 16. g4!? (16. ♖e2 – see 14. ♗f3 ♗f5 15. ♖e2 ♗fd8 16. h3) 16... ♗c2 17. ♗d2 ♖e4 18. ♕xe7 ♖xd2 19. ♖xd2 ♗b1 20. ♗xf8 ♖xf8 21. ♖c3 ♗d8 22. ♗d5, Maslak – Inarkiev, Moscow 2008 and here Black could have exploited the defencelessness of his opponent's king-side by playing 22... ♗xc3 23. ♖xc3 ♖e7 24. ♗xb7 ♗d3 25. ♖b4 ♗xa2 26. ♖c5 ♗d7!? 27. ♗a6 ♗d1=



14... ♗f5

It would be insufficient for Black to continue with the attractive line: 14... ♗xb2 15. ♖e2 (15. ♗b1 ♗g7 16. h3 ♖f6 17. ♖c7 ♗f5 18. ♗xb7 ♖a5 19. ♗b5 ♗ac8 20. ♗xa5 ♗xc7 Tsemekhman – P.H.Nielsen, Buenos Aires 1993) 15... ♖h7 (15... ♗g7

16. h3 ♖f6 17. ♖c7 ♗b8 18. ♗xc6 bxc6; 16. ♗xe7 ♗e8 17. ♗c5) 16. h3 ♖f6 17. ♗d2 ♖d7 18. ♗xe7 ♖xe7 19. ♗xb2 ♖f5 20. ♖f2 ♖c5 21. ♗d1±

15. ♖e2

15. b4 ♗fd8 16. b5 ♖a5 17. ♖xe7 ♖h7 18. ♖xf5 gxf5 19. ♗xd8 (19. ♗c1 ♗ac8 20. ♗xa7 ♗xc4 21. ♖e2 ♗xc1 22. ♖xc1 ♗c3 23. ♖f1 ♖c4 24. h3 ♖f6 25. g4 b6∞) 19... ♗xd8 20. ♖e2 b6 21. ♗e7 ♗d7 22. ♗b4 ♖xc4=

15... ♗fd8 16. h3

16. 0-0, Kalygin – Svirjov, Alushta 2003, 16... e6!=

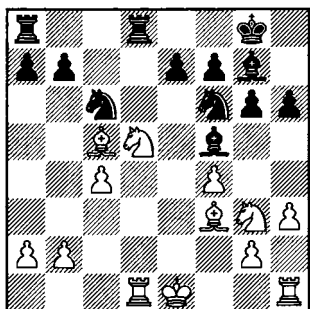
16. ♖g3 ♗xb2 (I have already told you that a brilliant memory is required in this line, but my own memory left me when I needed it most. I lost all my time during a game, I failed to remember the correct move and I lost: 16... e6 17. h3 ♖f6 18. ♖e7 ♖xe7 19. ♗xe7 ♗xd1 20. ♖xd1 ♗b1 21. b3 ♗e8 22. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 23. ♖c1 ♗xa2 24. ♖c2 b5 25. ♖e4± Bareev – Bologan, Poikovsky 2006.) 17. ♖xf5 gxf5 18. ♗b1 ♗d4 19. ♗xd4 ♖xd4 20. ♗xb7 e6! 21. ♗xg4 exd5 22. ♗h5 dxc4 23. ♖d2 ♖b5 24. ♖c2 ♖d6 25. ♗c7 ♗dc8 26. ♗d7 ♗d8= Alexandrov – Inarkiev, Sochi 2006.

16... ♖f6 17. ♖g3

17. g4 ♗c2 18. ♗c1 ♗d3±

17. 0-0 ♗c2 18. ♗d2 ♖e4 19. ♗xe4 ♗xe4 20. ♗fd1 ♗xd5 (20... ♗f8 21. ♖ec3 ♗xd5 22. ♖xd5 ♖g7 23. ♖b4 ♗xd2 24. ♗xd2 ♗c8, Norri – V.Kotronias, Moscow 1994, 25. ♖xc6 ♗xc6 26. ♗d4 ♖g8 27. b3 ♗d6 28. ♖f2±; White is better after 20... b6 21. ♖xe7 ♖h7 22. ♖xc6) 21. cxd5

♠a5 22.b3 ♠d7 23.♙b4 b6=



17...♙c2!

Black's bishop sets up on a critical long journey, which it might never come back from.

18.♠d2

18.♠c1 ♠d3 19.♙b4 ♙xb4 20. ♙xb4 h5 21.♙c3 ♙h6 Zakharevich – Yurtaev, Samara 2002.

18.♙xe7 ♙xe7 19.♠xd8 ♠xd8 20.♙xe7 ♠d7 21.♙c5 b6 22.♙f2 ♙h7, draw, Alexandrova – Kovalyev, Alushta 2003.

18...♙b1 19.b3

After 19.♙xe7 ♙xe7 20.♙xe7 ♠xd2 21.♙xd2 ♙xa2, White fails to capture the enemy bishop.

19...♙xd5 20.cxd5 ♙c3 21. ♙e2

21.0-0 ♙b4; 21.dxc6 ♠xd2 22.0-0 b6 Yurtaev.

21...♙xd2

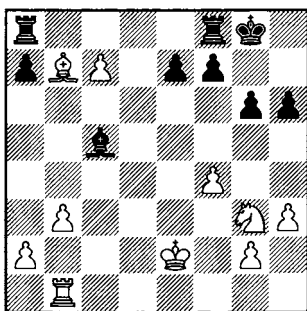
It is less advisable for Black to

play 21...b6 22.♙f2 ♙xd2 23.♠xb1.

22.♠xb1

In case of 22.dxc6 ♙xa2 23. cxb7 ♠ab8 24.♙xa7 ♙xf4 25.♙xb8 ♠xb8 26.♙e4 ♠xb7 27.♙f6 exf6 28.♙xb7 ♙xb3= Black is not worse at all.

22...♙b4 23.dxc6 ♙xc5 24. c7 ♠f8 25.♙xb7



25...♙d6 26.♙xa8 ♠xa8 27.♠c1

Following 27.♙f3 ♙xc7 28.b4 ♠d8 29.♠b3 ♠d1, it is only Black who can be better, since a rook and a bishop coordinate much better in similar positions with asymmetrical pawn-structure, than a rook and a knight.

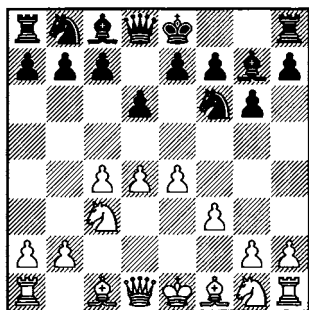
Therefore, the exchange of the rooks should be the right decision.

27...♠c8 28.♙f3 ♠xc7 29. ♠xc7 ♙xc7 and this endgame is approximately equal, Bareev – Yurtaev, Moscow 1990.

Part 3

The Saemisch Attack

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6 5.f3

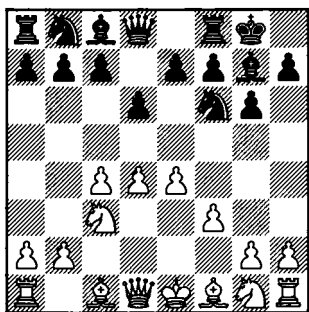


The Saemisch Attack is one of White's most aggressive reactions to the King's Indian Defence. He

protects reliably his e4-pawn and he plans his development according to the scheme ♗e3, ♖d2, 0–0–0 and follows this later with an offensive on the kingside with pieces and pawns. It is because of this dangerous attacking system that some King's Indian players choose their favourite opening only after White has already developed his knight to f3. Still, the vampire is not so bloodthirsty and Black has reliable ways of obtaining a comfortable position.

Chapter 13

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.f3 0-0



6.♗ge2

This seemingly unpretentious move is full of venom. As a recommendation, we will tell you that it is an integral part of the opening repertoire of an outstanding GM and theoretician like Alexey Dreev.

White can hardly achieve anything much if he pushes too many pawns: 6.g4?! ♘c6 7.♗ge2 e5 8.d5 ♘d4 9.♗xd4 exd4 10.♗e2 ♘d7 11.h4 ♗f6 12.♙g2 ♗e5 13.♗b3 d3 14.♗g1 ♗e7 15.♙g5 f6 16.♙d2 a6 ♗ Mostovic – Shultz, Yerevan 1968.

In case of 6.♙d3, Black's reaction is standard – 6...♘c6, attacking the d4-pawn, which is not protected by the queen on d1 after his previous move. There

might follow: 7.♗ge2 (Black obtains a good counterplay after 7.d5 ♗e5 8.♗ge2 ♗fd7 9.b3 ♗xd3 10.♗xd3 c6 11.♙g5 h6 12.♙e3 cxd5 13.cxd5 b5!? This pawn-sacrifice is not forced, but it is interesting – 14.♗xb5 ♗b8 15.♗d3 ♗a5 16.♗f2 ♙a6 ♗ Umstead – Fishbein, New York 1997. Black has an excellent position after 7.♙e3 e5 8.♗ge2?! ♗g4 9.♙g1 exd4 10.♗d5 ♗e3 11.♗xe3 dxe3 12.♙xe3 ♙xb2 13.♗b1 ♙g7 ♗ Gerczuk – Schmaltz, Baden-Baden 1990; 8.d5 ♗d4 9.♙xd4 exd4 10.♗b5 a6 11.♗a3 c5 12.♗e2 ♙d7 Janvari – Slugin, Kobanya 1996) 7...e5 8.d5 ♗d4 9.♙e3 (White lags in development, so he must avoid complications: 9.♗xd4 exd4 10.♗b5 a6 11.♗xd4 ♗xd5 12.♗e2 ♗b4 13.0-0 b5, with an initiative for Black, Shevelev – Ippolito, Paris 1994.) 9...♗h5 10.♗d2 c5 11.dxc6 (11.0-0-0 a6 12.♙h6 ♙d7 13.♙xg7 ♗xg7 14.♗df1 b5 15.g4 ♗f6 16.h4 h5 17.♗g5 bxc4 18.♙xc4 ♙b5, Seigerschmidt – Reichmann, Guben 2002) 11...bxc6 12.0-0 (12.b4 ♙e6 13.♗d2 f5 14.♗h1 f4 15.♙f2 g5 16.♗a4 g4 17.♗xd4 exd4 18.fxg4

♗xg4? Kolbus – Kasimdzhanov, Groningen 1999) 12...a5 13.b3 c5 14.♖ab1 ♗e6 15.♖d5 ♗xd5 16.cxd5 ♖b6? Lokvenc – Boleslavsky, Debrecen 1961.

6...c5 7.d5

In case of 7.♗e3, Black increases his pressure against his opponent's central pawn with the move 7...♖c6. There might follow:

8.dxc5 dxc5 9.♖xd8 (9.♗xc5 ♖a5 10.♗e3 ♗d8 11.♖c1 ♖h5 12.♖g3 ♖xg3 13.hxg3 ♗e6 14.♖f2 ♗ac8 15.♖d5 ♗xd5 16.exd5 ♖e5 17.♖h4 b5? Polugaevsky – Dzindzichashvili, USSR 1974) 9...♗xd8 10.♗xc5 ♖d7 11.♗e3 ♖de5 12.♖c1 ♖b4 13.♖f2 ♖c2 14.♖b1 ♖xe3 15.♖xe3 ♗h6 16.f4 ♖c6? Privman – Nakamura, New York 2003;

8.♖d2 a6 9.d5 (Black should not be afraid of the line: 9.dxc5 dxc5 10.♗d1 ♖d7 11.♗h6 ♗xh6 12.♖xh6 e6 13.h4 ♖e7 14.h5 g5 15.f4 f6 16.♖h3 ♖de5 17.fxe5 ♖xe5 18.♖f4 gxf4 19.♖xf4 ♗d7 Moreira – Stellwagen, Morelia 2007. It looks too optimistic for White to try 9.0-0-0 ♖a5 10.♖b1 e5! 11.dxc5 dxc5 12.♖d5 ♖xd2 13.♗xd2 ♖xd5 14.cxd5 ♖d4?; 13.♖xf6= Glek; 13.♗xd2 ♖xd5 14.cxd5 ♖d4 15.♖xd4 – 15.♖c3 b5?; 15.b4 b6! Glek – 15...exd4!? 16.♗g5 16...b5! and Black seized the initiative in the game Hoi – Glek, Copenhagen 1995.) 9...♖e5 10.♖c1 (10.♖g3 h5 11.♗e2 h4 12.♖f1 h3 13.g4 b5 14.cxb5 axb5 15.♖xb5 ♗a6 16.♖f2? ♖exg4! 17.♖g1 ♖xe3 18.♖xe3 ♖h5 Al-Khaja – A.Kuzmin, Oberwart

2002) 10...e6 11.a4 exd5 12.cxd5 ♖h5 13.♗e2 f5 14.exf5 gxf5 15.0-0 ♗d7 16.♖1a2 ♖f6 17.♗ac1 b5 18.b4 c4, with mutual chances, Ferreira – Matamoros, Evora 2006;

No doubt, White's most principled move here is 8.d5 and Black should reply to this in the majority of cases with centralizing his knight 8...♖e5. The drawback of this move is that it has been criticized by theory and quite deservedly at that. We recommend another retreat of the knight to the edge of the board – 8...♖a5!? It has been tested in practice just a few times, but it is not bad at all. There begins some rather original play right now and we will show you some games to illustrate the fine points: 9.♖g3 (9.♖c1 a6 10.♖d2 b5 11.cxb5 axb5 12.♗xb5 ♗d7 13.♗e2 ♖b6 14.0-0 ♖fb8 15.♖b1 ♖c7? Deegens – Wemmers, Netherlands 1993) 9...a6 10.♖d2 (10.♗e2 ♖d7 11.♖c2 ♖e5 12.b3 ♖e8 13.0-0 f5 14.f4 ♖g4 15.♗xg4 fxg4 16.♗ac1 b5 17.♖d3 ♖b8? Skacelik – Mrva, Pardubice 1998) 10...b5 11.♗h6 e6 12.0-0-0 b4 13.♖b1 exd5 14.♗xg7 ♖xg7 15.exd5 ♗e8 16.h4 h5 17.♖f4 ♗a7 18.♖d2 ♗ae7 19.♖ge4 ♖xe4 20.fxe4 ♗g4 21.♗e1, draw, Zueger – Wojtkiewicz, Bern 1992.

7...e6

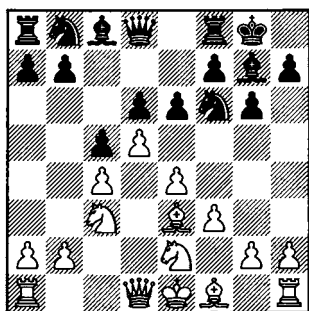
A) 8.♗e3

B) 8.♗g3

Black can counter 8.♗g5 with

8...h6 9.♙e3 (9.♙f4 exd5 10.exd5 ♖h5 11.♙e3 ♜d7 12.♙d2 ♜e5 13. ♜f4 ♜xf4 14.♙xf4 ♙h4 15.♙g3 ♙e7 16.0-0-0 a6 17.f4 ♜g4 18.♙e1 ♙d8 19.h3 ♜f6 20.♙h4 b5) Shamkovich – Gligoric, Sarajevo 1963) 9...exd5 10.cxd5 h5, transposing to variation A.

A) 8.♙e3



8...exd5 9.cxd5 h5

Black prevents the appearance of the enemy knight on g3. If he slows down, then White will complete the development of his king-side and he will obtain a stable edge: 9...♜bd7 10.♜g3 h5 11.♙e2 h4 12.♜f1±

10.♜c1

It is senseless for this knight to go to g3: 10.♜g3 ♜bd7 and if he continues with his development with 11.♙d3, then 11...h4 12.♜ge2 h3 13.g3 ♜e5 and Black seizes the initiative. Therefore, he maneuvers his knight to the other side of the board, but it does not have a good square there either and it impedes the movement of the

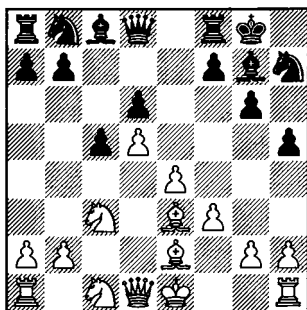
other pieces.

It deserves attention for White to try ♜f4 immediately, or a bit later:

10.♜f4 ♜bd7 11.♙e2 a6 12.a4 ♜e5 13.0-0 ♙d7 14.♙d2 ♙b8 15.a5 ♜e8 16.♜a4 ♙xa4 17.♙xa4 ♜c7 18. ♜d3 ♜d7 19.♙c4 b5 20.axb6 ♜xb6 21.♙cc1 ♜b5) I.Sokolov – Smirin, Burgas 1993;

10.♙d2 ♜h7 (Black prepares the same pawn-break, as in the main line.) 11.♜f4 ♜d7 12.♙e2 (12. ♜h3 ♜e5 13.♜f2 ♙d7 14.♙c1 b5 15.♙e2 ♙b8 16.b3 ♙e8 17.0-0 a6= Costa – Gheorghiu, Lugano 1989) 12...♜e5 13.0-0 ♙d7 14.♙ab1 ♙c8 15.♙fcl a6 16.a4 ♙a5 17.b3 ♙fe8 18.♜h1 f5 19.♜e6 ♙xe6 20.dxe6 fxe4 21.f4 ♜g4 22.♜xe4 ♙xd2 23. ♙xd2 d5 24.♙xg4 dxe4 25.♙h3 ♜f6) Sadler – Fedorowicz, London 1988.

10...♜h7 11.♙e2



11...f5

This thematic pawn-advance provides Black with a good counterplay, but he can postpone it a bit 11...♜d7 12.0-0 ♙e7 13.♜d3

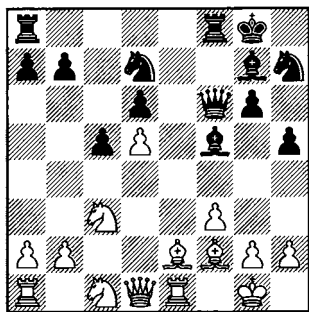
3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4. e4 d6 5. f3 0-0 6. ♖ge2 c5 7. d5 e6

♗e5 14. ♖f2 f5 15. ♖d2 a6 16. a4 g5 17. exf5 ♗xf5∞ Dolmatov – Khalifman, Kiev 1986.

12. exf5

After 12. ♖d3 fxe4 (12...g5!?) 13. ♖xe4, White has two centralized knights, but this is not much of an achievement 13...♖f6 14. 0-0. After an exchange on f6, White has nothing special to brag about. By castling, he wishes to make use of the fact that the d5-pawn seems “poisoned”, but Black can put this assumption to the test with: 14... ♖xd5 15. ♖b3 ♗e6 16. ♖g5 ♖e7 17. ♖xe6 ♖xe6 18. ♖f2 ♖d7. White fails to exploit the vulnerability of the a2-g8 diagonal, while Black is a pawn up after all.

12... ♗xf5 13. 0-0 ♖e7 14. ♗f2 ♖d7 15. ♗e1 ♖f6

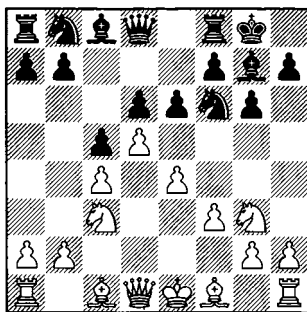


16. ♖b3

The knight is even better placed here than on d3. Naturally, the e4-square will be the best for it. Black can develop easily his pieces, he has the e5-outpost and he exerts powerful pressure on the long dark-squared diagonal.

16...a6 17. a4 ♖e5 18. ♖a5 g5 19. ♗f1 ♖g6= Black's active piece-play compensates White's minimal space advantage, Akopov – Glek, corr. 1988.

B) 8. ♖g3



At first, White must take care of the deployment of his king's bishop, since this may turn into a real problem for him. The development of the other bishop on c1 can be delayed for a while.

8...exd5 9. cxd5

B1) 9... ♖h5

B2) 9...a6

B3) 9...h5

B1) 9... ♖h5

There were times when I even liked this move. Black pushes quickly f5, removing the superfluous piece in the process. The appearance of doubled pawns is the only thing he must worry about.

10. ♖xh5 gxh5 11. ♖d3

White remains flexible concerning the problems of develop-

ment. It is essential for him now, to bring his king to safety after which the pawn-weaknesses of his opponent will be a permanent factor for the future.

He can try to prepare castling long, but this is a long and unsafe process: 11.♔e3 f5 12.♖d2 ♜f6 13.♙g5 ♜g6 14.♙d3 ♘a6 15.0-0-0 ♙d7 16.g4 hxg4 17.fxg4 fxg4 ♠ Ha-rakis – Buckley, London 2000.

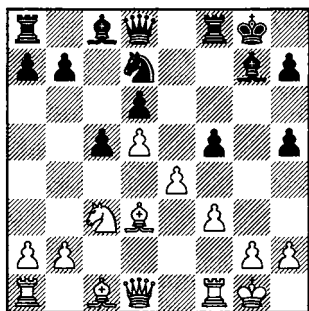
11.♙f4 f5 12.♖d2 a6 13.a4 ♜f6 14.♙g5 ♜e5 15.♙f4 ♜f6 16.♙g5 ♜e5 17.♙f4, draw, Dearing – Jones, England 2008.

11...f5 12.0-0

12.exf5 ♙xf5 13.0-0 ♘a6 14.♙xa6 bxa6 15.♔e3 ♜b8 16.♖d2 ♜f6 17.♙ac1 ♜g6 18.b3 h4 ♠ Ward – Mortensen, Copenhagen 1999.

12...♙d7

This is an attempt by Black to ensure having the e5-outpost for a permanent use during the game. In case of 12...f4!? White will attack immediately this pawn: 13.♙e2 ♔e5 14.g3 and Black would be happy to have a pawn on g5.



13.exf5

In case White tries to prevent the appearance on of the enemy knight on e5, by playing 13.f4, then Black can go for the e4 and g4-squares: 13...♙f6, Agrest – Kazhgaleyev, Nice 2000, 14.e5 (14.exf5 ♙g4) 14...♙g4 15.h3 (15.e6 ♙d4 16.♙h1 ♜h4 17.h3 ♜g3-+) 15...dxe5 16.d6 e4 17.♙c4 ♙h8 ♠

It is interesting for White to try the prophylactic move 13.♙c2, but Black will have to play anyway 13...♙e5 14.♙e2 ♙g6 (14...♜h4 15.f4 ♙c4 16.♙g3 ♙xb2 17.♜e2 ♜g4 18.♜f3 h4 19.e5 dxe5 20.h3 ♜g6 21.fxe5 ♙c4 22.♜xc4 ♙xe5 23.♜b1 ♙xg3 24.♙f4 ♠ Dreev – Peng, Beijing 2000) 15.exf5 (15.♙g3 fxe4 16.♙xe4 h4 17.♙e2 ♜f6 ♠) 15...♙xf5 16.♙xf5 ♜xf5 17.♙g3 ♜f7 18.♙xh5 ♙d4 19.♙h1 ♜h4 20.f4 (The move 20.g4 compromises White's position considerably and this creates for him additional problems with his development: 20...♜h3 21.♜e2 ♜e7 22.♜g2 ♜xg2 23.♙xg2 ♜e2 ♠, or 21.♙g5 ♜af8 22.♙h6 ♙h4 23.♜e2 ♜e7 24.♜c2 ♜xf3; 22.f4 ♙e5 23.♜b3 ♙e3! ♠) 20...♜af8! (threatening ♙e5) 21.♙d2, Iljin – Sjogirov, St. Petersburg 2005 and here Black will have to play 21...♙e5 22.♙g3 ♙g4 23.h3 ♙f2 24.♜xf2 ♙xf2 25.♙e4 ♙d4 26.♙xd6 ♜e7 ♠

Following 13.♙e2!? Black can sacrifice a pawn for initiative: 13...c4 14.♙xc4 (14.♙c2, draw, Dreev – Bologan, Beijing 2000, 14...♜b6 15.♙h1 fxe4 16.♙xe4 ♙c5 17.♜c2 ♙xe4 18.♜xe4 ♙d7 19.♙c3 ♜ac8 ♠)

14... ♖b6 15. ♖h1 fxe4 16.fxe4 ♖xf1
17. ♖xf1 ♖f6. Indeed, even if White
plays the best moves, the maxi-
mum that he can rely on is equal-
ity: 18. ♖c3 (18. ♖f3 ♖g4) 18... ♖g4
19. ♖d1 ♗d7 20.h3 (20. ♗f4 ♖f8
21.h3 ♖e5) 20... ♖f8 21. ♖e2 ♖f2
(21... ♖e5 22. ♗e3) 22. ♖xf2 ♖xf2
23. ♖e1 ♖c2 24. ♗d3 ♖f2=

13... ♖e5 14.f6 ♖xf6

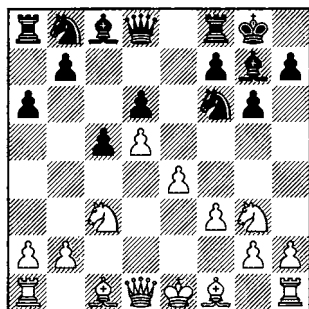
14... ♗xf6 15. ♗e4±

15. ♗e4

15. ♖e4 ♖g6 16. ♗c2 ♗f5 17. ♖h1
b5 18. ♖b1 h4 19.h3, I.Novikov –
Langer, Lindsborg 2002, 19...
♖ae8=

15...h4 followed by ♗f5 and
Black's position is quite acceptable.

B2) 9...a6



10.a4 ♖bd7

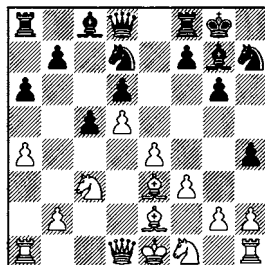
It is also good for him to play
here 10... ♖h5, since the inclusion
of the moves a6 and a4 would not
change the character of the fight,
because White does not have the
possibility to play ♖b5.

11. ♖h5 gxh5 12. ♗d3 (12. ♗f4
♖f6 13. ♖d2 ♖d7 14. ♗e2 ♖g6 15.

0-0 ♖e5 16. ♗e3 f5 17.f4 ♖g4 18.
♗xg4 hxg4 19.e5± Campos –
Saldano, Sevilla 2004; 12... ♖e7
13. ♖d2 ♖d7 14. ♗g5 f6 15. ♗h4 ♖e5
16. ♗e2 ♖g6 17. ♗f2 f5± Grischuk
– Bologan, Internet 2004) 12...f5
13.0-0 (13. ♗d2 ♖d7 14. ♖e2 ♖e5
15. ♗c2 f4 16.a5 ♗d7 17.0-0 h4 18.
♖h1 ♖h8 19. ♗a4 ♗c8 20. ♖d1 h3
21. ♖g1, Hoeksema – Glek, Neth-
erlands, 1998 21...hxg2 22. ♖xg2
♖g6 and Black has the e5-outpost
under control and this provides
him with an advantage.) 13... ♖d7
(13...f4 14. ♖e2 ♗e5 15.g3 fxg3 16.
hxg3 ♗h3 17. ♖f2 c4 18. ♗xc4 h4
19.f4 ♗g7 20. ♖a3!± – the possibil-
ity of this rook-maneuver is the
positive side of the inclusion of
the moves a6 and a4, Iljin – Er-
dogdu, Moscow 2005.) 14. ♖e2 c4
(14... ♖e5 15. ♗c2 fxe4 16. ♗xe4±)
15. ♗xc4 ♖e5 16. ♗d3 ♖b6 17. ♖h1
♖xd3 18. ♖xd3 fxe4 19. ♖xe4 ♗f5
20. ♖h4 ♖ae8 21. ♖g3 ♖d4±

11. ♗e2

We will now analyze in short
the position arising after 11. ♗e2
h5 12. ♗e2 h4 (It is also possible
for Black to play 12... ♖h7 – see
variation B3a) 13. ♖f1 ♖h7



14.♔f2 f5 15.exf5 gxf5 16.f4 ♖e8
17.♞e3 ♙d4 18.♞xf5 ♙xf2 19.♞xf2
♖f8 20.g4! (20.♞d3 c4 21.♞e4
♖xf5 22.♞xf5 ♞b6 23.♞f1 ♞xb2+;
20.♞xd6 ♖xf4 21.♞e1 ♞g5 22.♖g1
♞e7 23.♞xc8 ♖xc8 24.♖f1 ♖cf8
25.♖xf4 ♖xf4 26.♞d3 ♞g5 27.♞h3
♞hf6 28.♙d1±) 20...hxcg3 21.hxcg3
♖xf5 22.♖xh7 ♞xh7 23.♙d3 ♞f6
24.g4 c4 25.♙xf5 ♙xf5 26.gxf5
♞b6 27.♞f3 ♞xb2 28.♞e1, Dreev
– Gallagher, Catalan Bay 2004,
28...♞h2 29.♞h1 ♞xh1 30.♖xh1
♞g7=;

14.g4 f5 15.gxf5 gxf5 16.exf5
♖xf5 17.♖g1 ♞h8 18.♞c2 ♞f8 19.f4
♞df6 20.♙d3 ♞h5± I.Sokolov –
Ki.Georgiev, Burgas 1993;

14.♞d2 f5 15.f4 (15.exf5 gxf5
16.f4 ♞df6 17.h3 ♞e7 18.♞f2 ♖e8±
Korchnoi – Xie Jun, Roquebrune
1998) 15...h3 16.g3 ♖e8 17.0–0
♞hf6 18.g4 ♞xe4 19.♞dxe4 fxe4
20.g5 ♞b6± Jussupow – van
Wely, Wolvega 2008.

11...h5

Black wishes to repel the
knight away from c g3 and he pre-
pares f5 in the process with Kh7
to follow.

12.♙g5

12.0–0 ♞h7 13.♙e3 – see vari-
ation B3a.

12...♞c7 13.♞d2 ♖e8 14.0–0
♞h7 15.♙h6

15.♙e3 ♞a5 16.♖ae1 ♞b4 17.f4
♞hf6 18.e5 dxe5 19.f5 h4+ Hoch-
strasser – Suetin, Biel 1995.

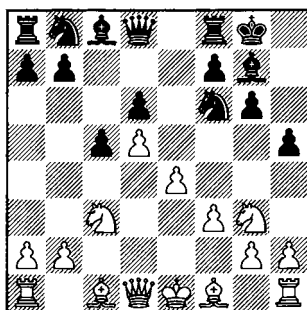
15...♙h8 16.♖ac1

16.♙e3 f5 17.♖ad1 h4 18.♞h1
♙xc3 19.bxc3 fxe4 20.f4 ♞df6

21.h3± Svetushkin – Dochev,
Kavala 2002.

16...♞a5 17.♞h1, Dreev – Ko-
tronias, Las Vegas 1999, 17...♞e5
18.h3 ♞b4±

B3) 9...h5



This is the contemporary
approach to the problem. Black
does not wish to wait until his
opponent completes his develop-
ment and begins a kingside at-
tack and instead, he starts active
operations on the same side of
the board. The move h5 is pro-
phylactic, because Black wishes
to impede his opponent to deploy
calmly his forces before the
beginning of the decisive as-
sault.

B3a) 10.♙e2

B3b) 10.♙g5

B3a) 10.♙e2!?

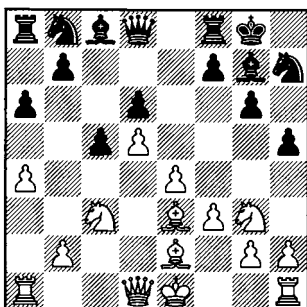
White ignores his opponent's
threats. He considers that after
h5-h4, Black's rook-pawn would

turn into a tasty target for attack, while his knight on g3 will be comfortably redeployed to the wonderful e3-square.

10...♟h7

It deserves attention for Black to repel the enemy knight immediately: 10...h4 11.♟f1 ♟h7 (preparing the thematic f5) 12.♟e3 (12.h3!? a6! 13.♟e3 b5±) 12...f5 13.exf5 ♟xf5 14.♟f2 (14.h3 ♟a6 15.♟f2 ♟g5! with a powerful initiative for Black; 14.g4 ♟d7 15.♟c2 ♟e8±) 14...b5! This pawn is advanced to a square attacked twice. Black is perfectly prepared for actions all over the board. 15.♟xb5 (In case of 15.a3, he can simply consolidate his achievements on the queenside with 15...a6, or he can seek an immediate confrontation with – 15...♟a5!?) 16.♟e3 ♟d7 17.g4 hxg3 18.hxg3, Dreev – Tkachiev, Shanghai 2001, 18...♟g5 19.♟xf5 ♟xf5 20.f4 ♟a5 21.0-0 ♟h3 22.♟g2 ♟xf2 23.♟xf2 ♟xc3 24.bxc3 ♟xc3 25.♟g4 ♟f6±) 15...♟a5 16.♟e2 ♟xc3 (16...h3 17.g4) 17.bxc3 ♟xc3 18.♟d2. Now, Black must play precisely: 18...h3 19.g4 ♟d3 20.0-0 ♟d7 21.♟c1 ♟a3 22.♟b1 ♟xb1 23.♟xb1 ♟e5. White cannot exploit here his two-bishop advantage, because Black creates new threats all the time. 24.♟c2 ♟xf3 25.♟xf3 ♟xf3 26.♟g3 ♟xg4 27.♟h1 ♟f8 28.♟xf8 ♟xf8 29.♟xe5 ♟f3 30.♟g1 ♟e3 31.♟f2 ♟xe5=

11.♟e3 a6 12.a4



12...♟d7

It would be too hazardous for Black to opt for 12...h4 13.♟f1 f5 14.exf5 gxf5 15.♟f4! This is an excellent multi-purpose move. The bishop blocks the f5-pawn (restricting the bishop on c8 in the process), it attacks the d6-pawn (impeding the development of the knight on b8) and it frees the e3-square for the knight. It is hardly possible to require more than that from a single move! 15...♟d7. Black sacrifices a pawn, but he is practically forced to do that. He obtains some initiative for that however. White can parry that relatively easily, remaining with extra material. 16.♟xd6 ♟e8 17.♟d2 ♟e5 18.♟xc5 h3 19.♟f2 hxg2 20.♟xg2 f4 21.♟xf4 ♟g6 22.♟g3± Dreev – Topalov, New Delhi 2000.

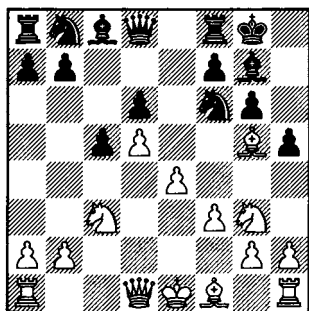
13.0-0 h4 14.♟h1 f5 15.♟d2 ♟f6 16.exf5

16.f4 fxe4 17.♟f2 ♟e7 18.♟cxe4 (18.♟fxe4 ♟df6 19.♟xf6 ♟xf6 20.h3 ♟f5= Murali – Deepan, Kolkata 2007) 18...♟df6 19.♟xf6

♖xf6, Dreev – Karpov, Reykjavik 2004, 20. ♖e4!? ♖e7 21. ♖c3 ♖f6 22. ♖f3=

16...gxf5 17. ♖f2 (17. f4 ♖g6 18. ♖f2 ♖df6 19. ♖h1, Tugui – Sofronie, Targoviste 2001, 19... ♖g4 20. ♖ae1 ♖xe3 21. ♖xe3 ♖e8 22. ♖h3 ♖h6 with an equal game) **17...f4 18. ♖g4 ♖g5 19. ♖f2 ♖e5** (19...h3!?) **20. ♖e4 ♖e7 21. ♖xe5 ♖xe5 22. ♖ae1 ♖f5 23. ♖d3 b5 24. ♖e2 h3↑** Dreev – Radjabov, Warsaw 2005.

B3b) 10. ♖g5



This is a logical move – White develops his bishop and he prevents the advance of his enemy's h-pawn.

10...♖b6

Black unpins his knight on f6 with tempo and he is ready to play ♖h7 (again with tempo) and to follow this with the thematic h4 and f5.

11. ♖b3

11. ♖d2 ♖h7 12. ♖h4 (12. ♖e3 ♖d7 13. ♖b1 ♖e5 14. ♖e2 h4 15. ♖f1

♖d8 16. ♖h6 f5 17. ♖xg7 ♖xg7 18. f4 ♖f7 19. ♖e3 fxe4 20. g4 hxg3 21. hxg3 ♖e7= Glotov – Gladyshev, Dagomys 2009) 12... ♖d7 13. f4 (13. ♖e2 ♖e8 14. 0–0 ♖f6 15. ♖xf6 ♖hxf6 16. ♖f2 a6 17. ♖e1 ♖b4 18. a3 ♖d4 19. ♖f4 ♖e5 20. ♖c1 h4 21. ♖f1 b5= Ward – Efimenko, Gibraltar 2007) 13... ♖e8 14. ♖c4 (After 14. ♖e2, Black exchanges again the dark-squared bishops. – 14... ♖f6 15. ♖xf6 ♖dxf6 16. ♖b5 ♖d7 17. ♖xd7 ♖xd7 18. 0–0 ♖hf6 19. ♖ae1 c4 20. ♖h1 h4 and he wins his opponent's central pawn.) 14... ♖f6 15. ♖xf6, Dreev – McShane, Hastings 2000, 15... ♖dxf6! 16. e5 dxe5 17. 0–0 h4 18. ♖ge2 ♖f5+

11...♖c7

Naturally, it is not advantageous for Black to trade queens, because he would have serious problems protecting his d6-pawn in this endgame. Still, the maneuver ♖b6-c7 cannot be termed as a loss of time, because the enemy queen is not placed so well on b3 and Black plans to exploit this later.

12. ♖e2 a6 13. 0–0

13. a4 ♖h7 14. ♖e3 ♖e7 15. 0–0 ♖d7 16. f4 ♖d4 17. ♖f2 h4 18. ♖h1 g5 19. ♖d1 ♖f6 20. fxe5, draw, Dreev – Topalov, Elista 1998.

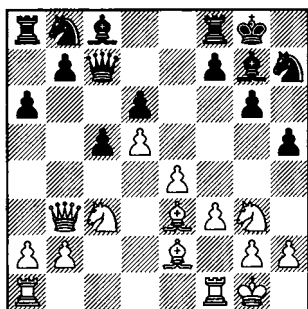
13...♖h7 14. ♖e3

(diagram)

14...h4!?

14... ♖e7 15. f4 h4 16. ♖h1 b5 17. ♖f2 ♖d7 18. ♖fe1!? (18. ♖f3 g5 19. ♖e2 f5 20. h3 gxf4 21. ♖xf4 ♖e5= Dreev – Tkachiev, Cap D'Agde

3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6 5.f3 0-0 6. ♖ge2 c5 7.d5 e6



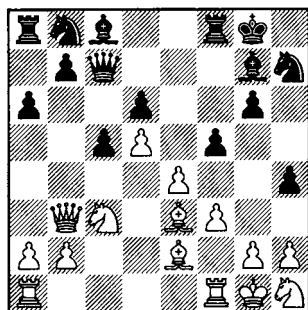
2000) 18...f5 (18...b4 19. ♖b1 g5 20. ♖d2 gxf4 21. ♗xf4 ♖e5 22. ♖c4 ♖xc4 23. ♗xc4±; 18...♖hf6 19. ♗f3 ♗b8 20.a4±) 19. ♗f3±

15. ♖h1

Naturally, the knight will be removed soon from this pathetic square; however, it will take plenty of time for this knight to join the actions.

15...f5

This is played according to the classic examples. White is too busy to develop his pieces harmoniously and Black attacks energetically his opponent's monumental pawn-centre on both sides of the board.



16.f4!?

In case of the careless exchange 16.exf5?! Black's initiative might become very dangerous: 16...♗xf5 17. ♗f2 (It is more prudent for White to play here 17. ♖f2 ♖d7 18. ♖ce4 ♗ae8 19. ♗fe1 ♖df6 20. ♗d3 b5 21. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 22. ♗xf5 gxf5± T.Vasilevich – Arakhamia-Grant, Chisinau 2005.) 17...g5 18.f4 gxf4 19. ♗xh4 ♗d4 20. ♖f2 (It is no doubt rather unpleasant for White to deploy his knight under a pin, but otherwise it might remain stranded on the h1-square for long and this could be even worse. 20. ♗f2 ♗g7, Black fortifies his powerful bishop, while in case of 20...♖d7 21. ♗ad1, White will repel the bishop from the d4-square obtaining an edge: 21...♗e5 22. ♗h4 ♖df6 23. ♖f2± – 21. ♗xd4 cxd4 22. ♖d1 ♖g5 23.h4; 22...♗e4 23. ♗f3 ♗xf3 24. ♗xf3 ♖d7↑ and the difference in the activity of the pieces (particularly the knights) is quite obvious even to the naked eye and White is faced with a difficult defence.) 20...♖d7 21. ♖h1 ♖e5± Dreev – Bologan, Shanghai 2001.

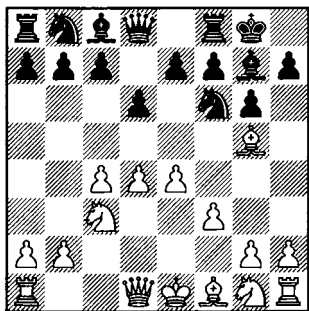
16...fxe4

It is also promising for Black to choose 16...♗d4 17. ♗f2 b5 18. ♗f3 g5 19. ♗ae1 h3 20. ♖g3 gxf4 21. ♖xf5 ♗e5∞

17. ♖f2 ♗e8 18. ♖cxe4 ♗f5 19. ♗f3 ♖d7 20. ♗ae1 b5= There has arisen a position of a dynamic balance.

Chapter 14

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6
5.f3 0-0 6.♗g5



The move ♗g5 has its merits just like every other move in the opening. This bishop is actively placed there, it pins the enemy knight, but the move has some drawbacks as well. The bishop can be attacked with tempo by Black with h6 and the d4-square remains relatively weak.

A) 6...a6

B) 6...c5

A) 6...a6

Black is preparing c7-c5 and he wishes to advance immediately b7-b5 in answer to d4-d5.

7.♞d2

White can play a waiting move – 7.a4, but this leaves his oppo-

nent with too many promising alternatives. See one of them: 7... ♘bd7 8.♘h3 e5 9.d5 a5 10.♘f2 ♘c5 11.♗e2 h6 12.♗e3 ♘h5 13. 0-0 f5 ♞ Varga – Almasi, Hungary 1992.

In case of 7.♘ge2, Black realizes his plan obtaining an excellent position: 7...c5 8.d5 b5 9.cxb5 ♞a5 10.♘g3 axb5 11.♗xb5 ♗a6. There arises a very nice version for Black of the Benko Gambit with White's bishop on g5 and his knight on e3. 12.♗xa6 ♘xa6 13. 0-0 ♞f8 14.♞b1 ♞b7, draw, Dreev – Azmaiparashvili, Reggio Emilia 1996, 15.♞d2 ♘c7 16.f4 ♘g4 17. ♞e2 ♘e3 18.♞fc1 ♗d4 19.♗h1 f6 20.♗h6, Sammour-Hasbun – Guseinov, Internet 2007, 20...♗xc3 21.bxc3 ♞xc3! ♞

7...♘bd7

Zigurds Lanka likes to play this in answer to numerous possible versions of the Saemisch Attack and the Averbakh Variation.

8.♘ge2

8.♘h3. This move is a bit melancholic. There will arise soon a pawn-structure of the Benko Gambit and the a and b-files will

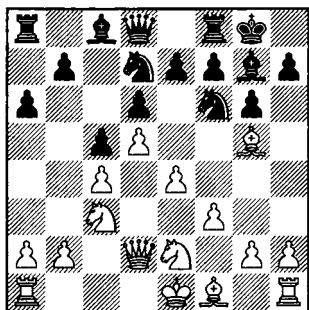
be opened, while White removes away from the queenside his knight. 8...c5 9.d5 b5 10. ♖f2 (10. cxb5 axb5 11. ♗xb5 ♗a6 12. ♗xa6 ♗xa6 13. 0-0 ♖a8 14. ♗h6 ♗xh6 15. ♖xh6 ♖b8 16. ♖ab1 ♖ab6 17. ♖d2 c4 18. ♖f2 ♖c5= Ballon – Milov, Schaan 1996; 12. 0-0 ♖a5 13. a4 ♖fb8 14. ♖a3 ♖b6 15. ♖e2 ♖fd7 16. ♗d2 ♗xb5 17. ♖xb5 ♖a6 18. b3 ♖c8 19. ♗c1 ♖a7= Lutz – Kasparov, Horgen 1994) 10... ♖a5 11. cxb5 (11. ♗e2 ♖b6 12. 0-0 ♖xc4 13. ♗xc4 bxc4 14. ♗h6 ♗xh6 15. ♖xh6 ♖b8 16. ♖ab1 e5 17. f4 exf4 18. ♖xf4 ♖d8 19. e5 dxe5 20. ♖xe5 ♗f5 21. ♖bd1 ♖xb2= Ionescu – Atalik, Romania 1996) 11... ♖b6 12. ♗e2 (12. ♖fd1 axb5 13. ♖xb5 ♗d7 14. ♖bc3 e6 15. dxe6 ♗xe6 16. ♗e2 16...d5 17. exd5 ♖fxd5 18. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 19. 0-0 ♖fb8= B.Socko – Spisak, Poland 1997; White should better try to enter an endgame with the move 16. ♖b5, but Black has a good position even without queens: 16... ♖xd2 17. ♗xd2 d5 18. ♖c7 ♖a7 19. ♖xe6 fxe6 20. ♖c3 dxe4 21. fxe4 ♖a4 22. ♗c4 ♖xc3 23. ♗xc3 ♖xe4=) 12... axb5 13. ♖xb5 ♗d7 14. ♖c3 (14. ♖xa5 ♖xa5 15. ♖c3 ♖a4 16. ♖xa4 ♖xa4 17. 0-0 ♖fa8 18. a3 h6 19. ♗d2 ♖e8 20. ♖fb1 ♖b8 21. ♖d1 ♖a7= Geler – Vujacic, Podgorica 2008) 14... ♖fb8 15. 0-0 ♖e8 16. ♖fc1 (16. ♖fb1 ♖a4 17. ♖xa4 ♖xd2 18. ♗xd2 ♗xa4 19. ♗c3 ♗c2 20. ♖f1 ♗xc3 21. bxc3 ♖b2 22. ♗c4 ♖a4 23. ♗b3 ♖a3 24. ♗xc2 ♖xc2 25. ♖d1 ♖axa2 26. ♖xa2 ♖xa2= Dreev – Beliavsky,

Linares 1995) 16... ♖a4 17. ♖xa4 ♖xd2 18. ♗xd2 ♖xa4 19. b3 ♗xa1 20. bxa4 ♗d4 21. ♗b5 ♗xb5 22. ♖b1 ♖a8 23. axb5 ♖xa2 24. b6 ♖f6 25. b7 ♖d7 26. b8= ♖ ♖xb8 27. ♖xb8 ♖g7 28. ♗e1 ♗xf2 29. ♗xf2 ♖a1 30. ♗e1 ♖xe1 31. ♖f2 ♖d1= I. Novikov – Beliavsky, Graz 1996.

8. 0-0-0 b5!? (White is well prepared to counter the move 8...c5, because he will not close the position, but on the contrary he will try to exploit maximally his lead in development with: 9. dxc5 ♖xc5 10. e5! ♖e8 11. ♖d5 f6 12. exd6 exd6 13. ♗e3±) 9. h4 (It is possibly stronger for White to continue with 9.e5!? b4?! 10. ♖a4 ♖e8 11. h4 and his direct attack may turn out to be very dangerous. We can recommend to Black to try 9... ♖e8, preserving the tension on the queenside.) 9... c5 10. dxc5 ♖xc5 11. e5 b4. In this situation, when Black's knight is on c5, the move b5-b4 is perfectly justified. White's knight on c3 does not have a comfortable square to retreat to and in case of its exchange the b-file will be opened. Black will attack the enemy king along it. 12. exf6 bxc3 13. ♖xc3 exf6 14. ♗e3 ♖e7 15. ♖e2 ♖b8 16. ♖d2 ♖a4 17. ♗d4, Riazantsev – A. Zhigalko, Hengelo 2005 and here Black had to continue opening files against the enemy king sacrificing material if necessary: 17...d5 18. ♖c3 ♖xc3 19. ♗xc3 dxc4 20. ♗xc4 ♗f5 21. h5 ♖fc8=

8...c5 9.d5

The trade of the dark squared bishops with 9.♗h6 would not pull the sting out of the King's Indian Defence, because White cannot checkmate the enemy king in this fashion. He can try to open the h-file and bring some reserves, but Black will succeed in creating counterplay and parrying the threats during this time: 9...♗xh6 10.♖xh6 b5 11.h4 b4 12.♕d5 e6 13.♕xf6 (13.♕e3 ♖a5 14.b3 cxd4 15.♕xd4 ♗b7 ♞ Gupta – Flores, Andorra la Vella 2006) 13...♖xf6 14.h5 g5 15.♖xf6 ♕xf6 16.0-0-0 e5 17.dxe5 dxe5 18.g4 ♗e6 19.♕g3 ♜fd8= I.Novikov – Spassov, Yerevan 1996.



9...b5 10.♕c1

10.cxb5 ♖a5 11.a4 (11.♕c1 – see 10.♕c1) 11...♕b6! This is the typical scheme of actions in the Benko Gambit pawn-structure. Black's queen goes to a5 (eventually to b4), while his knight goes to b6, eyeing the c4-square. Later, he exchanges on b5, forcing his opponent to capture with a bishop and then he develops his own

bishop on a6 getting rid of the piece-obstacles along the a and b-files. 12.♕c1 axb5 13.♗xb5 ♗a6, Lorscheid – Howell, Germany 1995, 14.♕1a2 ♗xb5 15.axb5 ♕h5 16.0-0 ♗d4 17.♖h1 ♗xc3 18.♖xc3 ♖xb5=

10...♖a5

We have already mentioned that it is essential for Black to develop at first his queen on the queenside and only then to bring in the cavalry with ♕b6.

11.cxb5 axb5

After 11...♕b6 12.a3 axb5 13.♕xb5 ♗d7 14.♖xa5 ♜xa5 15.♕c3 ♜b8, Black enters a comfortable version on the Benko Gambit, Iljushin – Inarkiev, Krasnodar 2002.

12.♕xb5 ♕b6 13.♖xa5 ♜xa5 14.♗d2 ♜a8 15.♜b1

It would be enough for White to make just a single mistake and Black's pieces will be on a rampage: 15.♕e2?! ♕c4 16.♕ec3 ♕xb2 17.a4 c4 18.♜a2 ♕d3 ♞ Dreev – Topalov, Linares 1997.

15...♕e8 16.b3 f5 17.♗d3 fxe4 18.fxe4, Starostits – Lanka, Germany 2001 and here Black had to transfer his knight to the e5-square with 18...♕d7 obtaining his standard compensation.

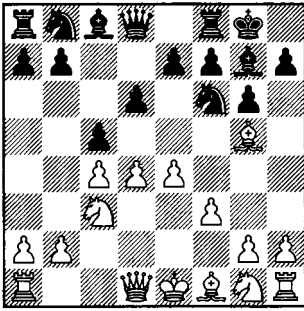
B) 6...c5

(diagram)

7.d5

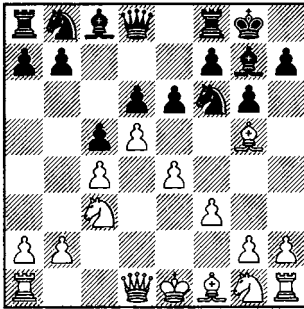
It would be a mistake for White to play 7.dxc5 ♖a5 8.♖d2

3.♖c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6 5.f3 0-0 6.♗g5



dxcc5, because Black will occupy to d4-outpost sooner or later. He should counter 7.♗ge2 with 7... ♗a5, threatening ♖c6-d4, while after 8.d5, he can act analogously to the variation, which we have analyzed above 6...a6: 8...b5 9.cxb5 a6 etc.

7...e6



8.♗d2

In case of 8.♗d3, Black should better delay the trade on d5 and continue with his development. This approach would be very unpleasant for his opponent, because it is not favourable for White to exchange in e6, while the trade exd5 is still on the agenda, acting on

White's nerves. 8...♖bd7! 9.♗ge2 ♖e5 10.0-0 h6 11.♗h4 (11.♗e3, Hubert – Lorscheid, Pardubice 2000, 11...a6 12.a4 exd5 13.cxd5 ♖xd3 14.♗xd3 ♖d7, followed by f5, ♗b8 and b5, with a good counterplay.) 11...g5 12.♗f2 b6 13.b3 exd5 14.cxd5 ♖h5 15.♗c1 ♖f4 16.♖xf4 gxf4 17.♖h1 ♖g6 Roa – Lanka, Spain 1995. Black plans to follow with the set-up: ♗e5, ♗d7, ♖h8, ♗g8, ♗f6, ♗g7, ♗ag8, ♖h4, with a powerful kingside attack. After 8.♗ge2, Black should better transpose to Chapter 13 (variation B): 8...h6 9.♗e3 exd5 10.cxd5 a6 11.a4 ♖bd7 12.♖g3 h5.

B1) 8...exd5

B2) 8...♗a5

B1) 8...exd5 9.cxd5 h6

This move is based on a familiar tactical motive.

10.♗e3

If 10.♗xh6, then 10...♖xe4. This is a typical tactical resource! Whenever White has played f2-f3 (this is the move, which defines the Saemisch Attack), he opens the diagonal e1-h4, so he must consider the possible check on h4 in all the variations. 11.♖xe4 ♗h4 12.g3 ♗xh6 13.♗xh6 ♗xh6 14.♖xd6 ♖d7. White has won a pawn indeed, but Black has more than a sufficient compensation with his-bishop pair in an open position. 15.f4 (15.♗h3 ♖b6 16.♖xc8 ♖xc8 17.f4 ♗e8 18.♖f2 ♗g7 19.♖f3 ♖d6= Rotstein – Vidarte, Olot

1994; White's extra pawn is irrelevant, while Black's positional compensation is excellent.) 15... ♖b6 (but not 15... ♖f6 16.0-0-0 ♖d8 17. ♖xc8 ♖axc8 18. ♖h3 ♖c7 19.d6 ♖c6 20.d7±) 16.0-0-0 ♖d8 17. ♖xc8 ♖axc8 18. ♖h3 f5 (18... ♖b8 19.d6 ♖g7 20.d7 f5 21.g4) 19. ♖f3 (19. ♖e2 ♖g7; 19.d6 ♖c4 20. ♖f3 ♖xd6 21. ♖he1 ♖e4 22. ♖f1 g5=) 19... ♖xd5 20. ♖he1 ♖g7 21. ♖f1, K.Berg – Onoprienko, Groningen 1994 and here Black had to play actively: 21... c4 22. ♖e5 c3 23.b3 ♖xe5 24. ♖c4 (24. ♖xe5 ♖b4) 24... ♖f8 25. ♖xd5 ♖f6= with equality in a position with bishops of opposite colours.

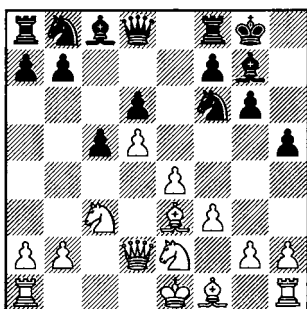
10...h5 11. ♖ge2

We have to analyze in short White's alternatives. In some of the games, which we will quote later, White's bishop on e3 and Black's pawn on h5 have gone there in one move. (i.e. without the inclusion of the maneuver ♖g5 h6), but we have changed the numbering on the moves to make our readers comfortable and it has been unified everywhere. 11. ♖h6 a6 12. ♖xg7 ♖xg7 13.a4 ♖a5 14. ♖a3 ♖e8 15. ♖ge2 ♖bd7 16. ♖d1 ♖b4 17. ♖ec3 ♖e5 18. ♖e3 h4 19. ♖e2 ♖d4 20. ♖c1 c4 21. ♖c2 ♖c5± Graf – I.Belov, Cappelle la Grande 1995.

11. ♖e2 a6 12.a4 ♖h7 13. ♖d1 ♖d7 14. ♖ge2 ♖b8 15.a5 b5 16. axb6 ♖xb6 17.0-0 ♖e5 18.b3 f5± Jussupow – Dolmatov, Wijk aan Zee 1991.

11. ♖d3 ♖bd7 12. ♖ge2 ♖e5 13. 0-0 a6 14.a4 ♖e8 15.b3 ♖xd3 16. ♖xd3 ♖b8 17. ♖ab1 ♖d7± Altermann – Dolmatov, Beer-Sheva 1991.

11.a4 a6 12. ♖ge2 ♖bd7 13. ♖d1 ♖e5 14. ♖ec3 ♖h7 15. ♖e2 ♖h4 16. ♖f2 f5 17.exf5 ♖xf5 18.0-0 ♖ae8± Urban – Kempinski, Sopot 1997.



11...♖h7

Black maims the enemy knight to the disadvantageous f4-square.

He tests in practice much more often 11... ♖bd7 12. ♖c1 ♖e5 13. ♖e2 ♖h7 14.0-0 f5 15.f4 ♖f7 16.e5 dxe5 17. ♖xc5 ♖e8 18. ♖d3 e4 19. ♖e1 b6 20. ♖d4 ♖f6, with approximate equality, Ernst – Tal, Subotica 1987. White can develop his knight to f4, of course, but in fact it is doing nothing there and it even impedes the pawn-advance f3-f4: 12. ♖f4 ♖e5 13. ♖e2 ♖d7 14. 0-0 a6 15.a4 ♖b8 16.a5 ♖e8 17. ♖a4 ♖xa4 (It is sometimes favourable for Black to part with his light-squared bishop, enlarging the scope of action of his knight in

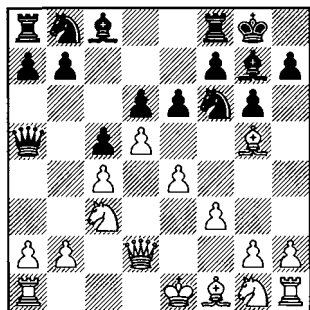
the process.) 18.♟xa4 ♞c7 19.♞d3 (19.b4 c4 20.♟c1 ♞b5 21.♟xc4 ♞xc4 22.♟xc4 ♟c8 23.♟d3 ♟xc4 24.♟xc4 ♟c8 25.♟xc8 ♟xc8=) 19...♞d7 20.♟c4 b5 21.axb6 ♞xb6 22.♟cc1 ♞b5= I.Sokolov – Smirin, Burgas 1993.

12.♞f4

Otherwise, Black intended to continue with f5.

12...♞d7 13.♟e2 ♞e5 14.0-0 ♟d7 15.♟ab1 ♟c8 16.♟fc1 a6 17.a4 ♟a5 18.b3 ♟fe8= Sandler – Fedorowicz, London 1988. Black is preparing either f5, or b5, depending on the situation.

B2) 8...♟a5



He could have tried to be trickier and delayed the exchange on d5 for a while.

9.♞ge2

After 9.a4, the b4-square would be weakened and Black can exploit this by playing 9...♞a6.

9.♞b5 ♟b6 10.a4 (10.dxe6 ♟xe6 11.♟xd6 ♞c6 12.♟e3 ♞d7 13.♟d2 ♟fd8 14.♟c2 a6 15.♞c3 ♞d4, with a more than sufficient com-

pensation for the pawn, F.Romero – Martinez Sanchez, Barcelona 2002) 10...a6 11.a5 axb5 12.axb6 ♟xa1 13.♞f2, Tolush – Boleslavsky, Moscow 1952, 13...bxc4! 14.♟xc4 exd5 15.exd5 ♞bd7 16.♟f4?! ♟e8! 17.♟xd6? ♞g4 18.fxg4 ♟d4 19.♞f3 ♞e5+ (Tolush).

9.♟d3. This move has the habitual drawback that the bishop can be attacked with tempo after ♞e5. 9...exd5 (9...a6 10.♞ge2 ♞bd7 11.dxe6 fxe6 12.0-0 ♞e5 13.f4 ♞c6 14.f5 ♞e5, Magalashvili – Dzhakaev, Batumi 2002, 15.fxg6 hxg6 16.♞f4 ♟c7 17.♟h4 ♟d7 18.♟ad1 ♞h7 19.♟g3 ♟ad8 20.♟e2 ♟c8=) 10.cxd5 ♞bd7 11.♞ge2 ♞e5 12.0-0 ♟d7 13.a3 b5 14.b4!? This is a typical resource for White. 14...cxb4 (14...♟b6 15.♟e3) 15.axb4 ♟xb4 16.♟fb1 ♟c5 17.♟e3 and now I had to include at first 17...♟h6 (17...♞c4 18.♟xc4 ♟xc4 19.♟c1 b4 20.♞a2 ♟b5 21.♞d4 ♟b7 22.♞xb4± Lutsko – Bologan, Nikolaev 1993) 18.f4 and only then to play 18...♞c4 19.♟xc5 ♞xd2 20.♟xd6 ♞xb1 21.♟xb1 ♟fc8 with equality.

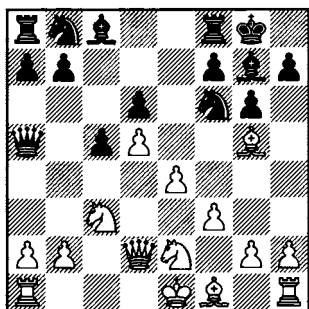
9...exd5 10.cxd5

10.♟xf6? ♟xf6 11.♞xd5 ♟d8 12.♞xf6 ♟xf6 13.0-0-0 ♟d8 14.h4 ♞c6 15.h5 ♟e6=

(diagram)

10...♟d7

It is also interesting for Black to try 10...b5 11.♞g3 (11.♞c1 b4 12.♞b5 ♟b6 13.♟f4 ♞e8 14.a3 ♟a6 15.a4 ♞d7 16.a5 ♟b7 17.♞xd6 ♞xd6 18.♟xd6 ♟fe8=) 11...c4 12.



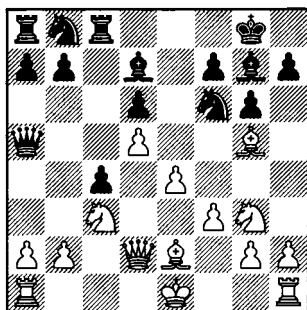
♙e2 ♘fd7. He needs to bring his bishop into the actions in order to support the planned advance of his c-pawn (White can counter 12...♘bd7 with 13.b4! This is a typical resource, thanks to which he can neutralize his opponent's counterplay on the queenside, for example: 13...cxb3 14.♘xb5 ♖b6 15.♙e3 ♘c5 16.axb3 ♘fxe4 17.fxe4 ♙xa1 18.b4 ♘b3 19.♖d3 ♘c1 20.♙xc1 ♙a6 21.♖a3± Dreev – Shirov, Wijk aan Zee 1996.) 13.0–0 (13.♙e7 b4 14.♘d1 c3 15.bxc3 bxc3 16.♖c2 ♘a6 17.♙xd6 ♖d8 18.a3 ♘e5 19.♙e7 ♖e8 20.♙d6 ♖d8 and Black has at least a draw.) 13...b4 14.♘d1 c3. His passed c3-pawn, supported by the bishop on g7 provides him with an advantage.

11.♘g3

11.♖f4 ♘h5 (It might be more precise for Black to opt here for

11...♘xd5 12.exd5 f6 13.♙h4 g5 14.♙xg5 fxg5 15.♖xd6 b5 with a powerful initiative for him.) 12. ♖xd6 ♖e8 13.♙e7 ♖xe7! 14.♖xe7 f6 15.g4 ♙f8 16.♖xf8 ♘xf8 17.gxh5 g5 18.h4 ♘a6∞ Kludacz – Dworakowska, Sopot 1998.

11...♖c8 12.♙e2 c4



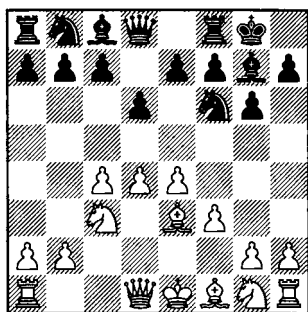
13.a4

White should never allow his opponent to advance b5: 13.0–0 b5 14.♖fc1 ♘a6 15.♘h1 ♘e8 16.♘d1 ♖xd2 17.♙xd2 ♘c5 18.♙c3 a5± Zhukova – Kiseleva, Warsaw 2001.

13...♘a6 14.0–0 ♘c5 15. ♙xc4 ♖b4 16.♙a2 ♙xa4 17. ♘ge2 ♘fd7 18.♙e3 ♘e5± Black's pieces are all over White's position and he will maintain an advantage even after a transfer into an endgame.

Chapter 15

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♙c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.f3 0-0 6.♙e3



This is the most natural and popular plan for White – his bishop is developed to e3, the queen to d2, then he castles long and makes up his mind where to develop his kingside pieces.

6...c5

I believe this is the most precise and aggressive reply by Black. He is ready to sacrifice a pawn in order to obtain a slight lead in development and an active piece-play.

7.dxc5

We will analyze in the next chapter the other popular alternatives for White – 7.d5 and 7.♘g2.

7...dxc5 8.♙xd8

White tried to play with queens present on the board in some

games, but that case Black's possibilities to create powerful counterplay were even greater.

8.♙xc5 ♙c6 and now:

9.♙xd8 ♖xd8 – see 8.♙xd8 ♖xd8 9.♙xc5 ♙c6;

9.♙a4 ♘d7 10.♙f2 ♙b6 11.♙a3 ♙xc3! 12.bxc3 (Black is better after 12.♙xc3 ♙a4 13.♙c2 ♙a5.) 12... ♙e6 13.♖d1 ♙c7 14.c5 ♙c4 15.♙xc4 ♙xc4 White must still solve the problem with his castling and his extra pawn is much rather a burden than something to brag about, Hartmann – Rakovic, corr. 2000;

9.♙e3 ♘d7 10.♖c1 (10.♘ge2 ♙a5 11.♘d4, Ibragimov – Kaminiski, Warsaw 1990, 11...♙b6 12.♙a4 ♙a5 13.♙d2 ♙c7 14.♙b5 ♙b8) 10...♙a5 11.♙h3 ♖d8 12.♙f2 ♙c5 13.♙d2 ♙xc3! (This rather untypical capturing again provides Black with the initiative.) 14.bxc3 ♙e6 15.♙c2 ♙e5 16.♙f4 ♙xc4+ Dlugy – Gelfand, Palma de Mallorca 1989;

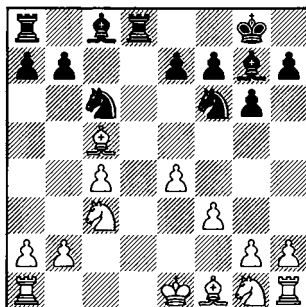
9.♘ge2 ♙a5 10.♙e3 ♖d8 11.♙c1 ♙h5 12.♙g3 (12.♙f2 f5! This is one of the top-ten resources for Black in the King's Indian Defence. 13.exf5 ♙b4 14.♙g3 ♙xf5 15.♙xf5

gxf5 16.g3 ♖h8 17.a3 ♖c6 18.♙e2 f4 19.gxf4 ♖d4= Graf – Zulfugarli, Dubai 2003; 13...♙xf5!? 14.g4 ♖e5 15.♗g2 ♖d3 16.♗d2 ♖df4 17.♙xf4 ♙xd2 18.♙xd2 ♙d8 19.♙c1 ♙d7 20.gxh5 ♗xh5=) 12...♖xg3 13.hxg3 ♙e6 14.♗f2, Polugaevsky – Dzindzichashvili, USSR 1974 and here it would have been more precise for Black to have played 14...♗b4 15.a3 ♗b3 16.♖d5 ♙xb2 17.♗b1 ♙xd5 18.♙a2 ♙e6 19.♙xb2 ♗xa3 20.♙xb7 ♖a5 21.♗b2 ♗xb2 22.♙xb2 ♖xc4 23.♙xc4 ♙xc4 24.♙b4 ♙e6 25.♙a1=

8.e5 (This is an interesting attempt to restrict the enemy pieces.) 8...♖fd7 9.f4 f6 (Black must get rid of the pawn-wedge on e5 as soon as possible.) 10.exf6 (10.e6 ♖b6 11.♗xd8 ♙xd8 12.♙xc5 ♙xe6 13.b3 f5 14.♙c1 ♖a6 15.♙a3 ♙d4 16.♖d1 ♙c5 17.♙xc5 ♖xc5 18.♖f3 a5 = Bronstein – Smirin, Oslo 1994) 10...♖xf6! (It deserves attention for Black to opt for the unusual transfer of his rook along the sixth rank after 10...♙xf6 11.♗d5 ♖h8 12.♖f3 ♙d6 13.♗f7 ♙f6 14.♖g5 ♗b6 15.♖d5 ♙xf7 16.♖xb6 axb6 17.♖xf7 ♖g8=; 11.♙e2 ♙d6 12.♗c1 ♖c6=) 11.♗xd8 ♙xd8 12.♙xc5 ♙f5 13.♖f3 (13.♖ge2 ♖c6 14.♖g3 ♙e6 15.♙e2 ♖d7 16.♙e3 ♖b6 17.♙xb6 axb6 18.♖ge4 ♖d4= Rustemov – Shulman, Minsk 1994) 13...♖e4 14.♖xe4 ♙xe4 15.♙a3 ♖c6 16.♙e2 ♖d4 17.♖xd4 ♙xd4 18.♙f3 ♙xf3 19.gxf3 ♙ac8 = Campos Moreno – Mortensen, Barcelona-Arhus 1991.

8...♙xd8 9.♙xc5

9.e5 ♖fd7 10.f4 b6, Bilgin – Topel, Turkey 2002, 11.♙e2 ♙b7 12.♙f3 ♙xf3 13.♖xf3 ♖c6 14.0-0-0 f6 15.exf6 ♖xf6= 9...♖c6



A) 10.♙a3

B) 10.♖d5

C) 10.♖ge2

White cannot create great problems for his opponent if he retreats with his bishop to e3, for example: 10.♙e3 b6 11.♙c1 ♖d7 12.♖h3 ♖c5 13.♖f2 ♙e6 14.♙e2 ♖b4= Levitt – Fedorowicz, New York 1994.

The move 10.♙d1 would not contribute to White's development, therefore Black can feel safe, for example: 10...♙xd1 11.♖xd1 (11.♖xd1 ♖d7 12.♙a3 ♙xc3!? 13.bxc3 ♖de5 = Dlugy – van der Wiel, Hoogovens 1990) 11...♖d7 12.♙a3 a5 13.♖e2 ♖b4 = Moeschinger – Salzgeber, Arosa 1996.

A) 10.♙a3 a5

This advance of the pawn

is particularly effective when White's bishop is on a3. Black is preparing a reliable square for his knight and he increases the scope of action of his rook on a8.

11.♙d1

11.♖d5 ♖xd5 12.cxd5 ♖b4 13. 0-0-0 e6 (In principle, Black could have captured a pawn here with 13...♖xa2.) 14.♙c4 exd5 15. ♙xb4 axb4 16.♞xd5 (16.♙xd5 ♙e6 17.♖b1 ♞a5 18.♖e2 ♙xd5 19. exd5 ♞axd5 20.♞xd5 ♞xd5=) 16...♙e6 17.♞xd8 ♞xd8 18.♙d5 ♙h6!± Bel- iavsky – Nunn, Amsterdam 1990.

Black has an excellent counter- play after 11.♙c5 ♖d7 12.♙e3 a4 13.0-0-0 a3 14.♖ge2 axb2 15.♖xb2 b6 16.♖b1 ♙a6 Knaak – Wojtkiewicz, Stara Zagora 1990.

11...♙e6

A1) 12.♞xd8

A2) 12.♖d5

It would be harmless for Black if White plays 12.♖h3 ♖b4 13. ♖f4, draw, Jobava – R.Mamedov, Kusadasi 2006, 13...♖c2 14.♖f2 ♖xe4 15.fxe4 ♖xa3 16.♖xe6 fxe6 17.♙d3 ♙xc3=

A1) 12.♞xd8 ♞xd8 13.♖d5 ♙xd5 14.cxd5 ♖b4 15.♙b5

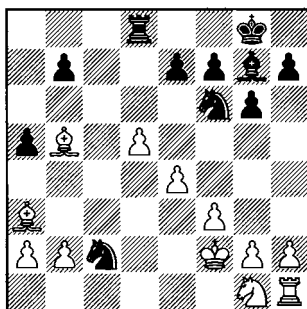
White fails to cover all the files for penetration of the enemy rooks anyway: 15.♙xb4 axb4 16. ♙c4 ♞c8 17.b3 b5 (Black is not forced to sacrifice a pawn, because he can enter the enemy camp in another fashion: 17...♞a8 18.♖e2

♞xa2 19.♖f2 ♖d7 20.♞b1 ♙c3 21. ♖e3 ♖g7=) 18.♙xb5 ♞c1 19.♖f2, Milovanovic – Dujkovic, Nis 1995, 19...♖xd5 20.exd5 ♙d4=

15...♖c2

15...♖e8 16.♙xe8 ♞xe8 17. ♖e2±

16.♖f2



16...♖xd5!!

This is a surprising sacrifice, thanks to which Blacks succeeds in exploiting White's lag in devel- opment.

17.exd5 ♞xd5 18.♙c4 ♞d4 19.♙e2

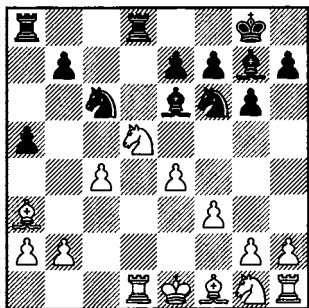
It would be more prudent for White to comply here with the repetition of moves after 19.♙b5=

19...♖xa3 20.bxa3 ♞d2 21.♖e3 ♞xa2± Black has three pawns for the piece and two of them are dangerous connected passed pawns supported by his rooks and the bishop on g7.

A2) 12.♖d5

White would not mind occupy- ing such a juicy outpost, but Black has serious counter arguments in

view of his opponent's lag in development.



12...dxb4!

Black sacrifices a second pawn.

13.dxe7

13...xb4? axb4 14.dxb4 d7, De Oliveira – Stephan, Email 2001, 15.d2 d5.

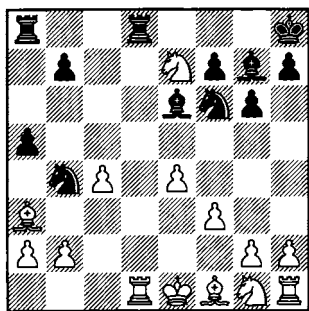
13.d3 d5 14.cxd5 dxd3.

This is the most precise reaction by Black. He isolates his opponent's d5-pawn and then he attacks it from all the sides. (It would be somewhat slow for him to opt for 14...d7!? 15.d2 d5 16.b1 e6 17.d3±; 15...d5 16.b5 e6 17.d6 d2 18.f2 dxa3 19.bxa3 Bc8 20.a4 c2 James – Hebden, Great Britain 1993; 17.dxe6!? fxe6 18.0-0; 17...d3 18.d3 d3 19.d3 d3 20.d4 d4 21.e7 – Black must play very precisely in order to neutralize White's dangerous passed pawn.) 15.d3 e6 16.e7 (16.d6 b5 17.c5 d7 18.d4 d5) 16...d7 17.d6 (17.dxf6 dxf6= Dya-

chkov – Kaminski, Halle 1995) 17...a6 18.d2 (The attempt to penetrate with the rook into the enemy camp 18.c3 can be easily parried by Black in two ways: 18...a8 19.c5 d8 20.e b6 21.b5 d7 22.dxc7 dxe7 23.d2 dxc7 24.d3 a4 Zhou Jianchao – Volokitin, Moscow 2007, or 18...c6 19.d2 d8 20.dxc6 bxc6 21.d3 dxd6 22.dxd6 dxd6 23.d2 dxc3 24.bxc3 c5 25.b1 c4= Wang Yue – Dyachkov, Moscow 2007) 18...d8 19.0-0 e5 20.f1 f6= Pelletier – Glek, Biel 1995.

13.f2, Quinteros – Garcia Raimundo, Florida Valle 1993, 13...d5 14.cxd5 (14.exd5 e6 15.d6 a6 16.c5 c6) 14...e6 (Black builds up his counterplay according to the already familiar scheme, meanwhile with a knight on a4 White cannot play d7 and then d6.) 15.d6 (15.b4 axb4 16.c4 exd5 17.exd5 b5!? 18.b3 d7 19.d2 d5). Now, Black has a pleasant choice to make – to attack immediately the annoying pawn, or to activate at first his queen's rook: 15...Bc8!? (15...d8 16.d7 d6 17.b5 f8 18.d2 – 18.e5 d5 – 18...d7 19.d1 dxd7 20.d3) 16.b5 (16.dh3 c2 17.d2 dxa2 18.d3 d4 19.f4 h5 20.d2; 17...d8 18.d7 d6) 16...c5 17.a4 b5 18.b4 axb4 19.b3 d8. Black regains his pawn and he balances the position.

13...h8



A2a) 14.♖d5

A2b) 14.♖xd8

A2a) 14.♖d5 b5

This spectacular move is not so well analyzed yet.

According to GM M. Golubev, Black has no problems to worry about after 14...♖c2 15.♗f2 ♖xa3 16.bxa3 b5, but this is not exactly true. We have to continue the analysis of this position: 17.♖h3 ♜ac8 18.♙e2 (It would be dubious for White to continue with 18.cxb5, Rogozenko – Anton-sen, Vejle 1993, 18...♜c2 19.♙e2 ♖xd5 20.exd5 ♙xh3 21.gxh3 ♜e8 22.♜he1 ♙c3, since Black ends up in a better endgame.) 18...bxc4, Bigler – Har-Zvi, Biel 1993, 19.♖b6. It becomes clear now, that the rook on c8 is overburdened. It must protect its neighbour and control the movement of the passed c4-pawn. 19...c3. This exchange-sacrifice looks smart, but it is insufficient. 20.♖xc8 ♜xc8 21.♙a6! This is the same motive to repel the enemy rook from its optimal c8-square, from

where it supports the c-pawn and takes care of the safety of the last rank. 21...♜b8 22.♖f4 ♜b2 23.♙e3 ♙h6 24.g3 c2 25.♜d8 ♖g7 26.♙d3. White's pieces are coming closer to the dangerous passed pawn on c2. It is not destined to promote into a queen... 26...♜xa2 27.♜c1 ♙b3 28.♜c8 ♜xa3 29.♜c3± It looks like Golubev's intuition was correct and he chose the right move in his game – 14...b5.

15.♙xb4 axb4 16.♖xb4, Rogozenko – Golubev, Nikolaev 1993.

16...bxc4

This move was recommended by M. Golubev.

17.♖xd8

17.♖e2 ♜db8 18.a3 ♙f8 19.♖d4 ♙xb4 20.axb4 ♜xb4±

17...♖xd8 18.♖e2 ♙h6 19.♖c3 ♜d2

19...♙c1!?

20.♖d1 ♜d4 21.♖c2 ♜d2 22.♖a3 c3 23.bxc3 ♜xa2 24.♖c4 ♖d7 25.♖ce3 ♖e5 – Black is too pawns down indeed, but his compensation is sufficient to draw the game.

A2b) 14.♖xd8 ♜xd8 15.♖d5

It seems amazing, since White has two extra pawns and a beautiful knight on the d5-outpost, but Black's resistance has not crumbled yet!

In case of 15.♙xb4 axb4 16.♖d5 ♜a8 17.♖xb4 ♖d7 18.♙d3 ♖c5 19.♖d2 ♜a4 20.a3 ♙xb2± Black seizes the imitative, Taleb – Wa-

tanabe, Yerevan 1996.

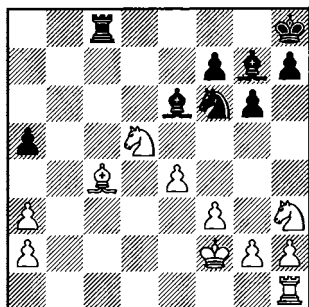
15...♖c2 16.♗f2

16.♗d2 ♖xa3 17.bxa3 b5 18. ♖h3 bxc4 19.♙xc4 ♖xd5 20.exd5 ♙xd5 21.♙xd5 ♙xd5= Gual – Timoschenko, London 1993.

16...♖xa3 17.bxa3 b5!

White's centre is in ruins after this move.

18.♖h3 bxc4 19.♙xc4 ♙c8



20.♖b6

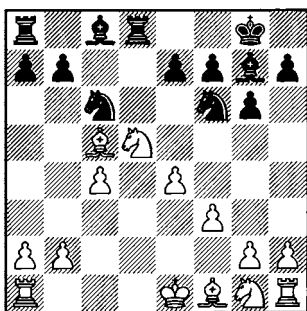
In case of 20.♙b3, Black sacrifices even a third pawn with 20...a4!, with the idea later, just like in the game of checkers, to regain everything with tempo: 21.♙xa4 ♖xd5 22.exd5 ♙xd5 23.♙b3 ♙xb3 24.axb3 ♙c2 25.♗g3 (25.♗e3 ♙c3, Martinovic – Saric, Bjelolasica 2007, 26.♗e4 ♙xb3 27.♙d1 f5 28. ♗f4 ♙h6 29.♗g3 ♙xa3=) 25...♙e5 26.f4 ♙c3 27.♗f2 ♙d4 28.♗e2, Lahlum – Gullaksen, Hamburg 2002, 28...♙e3 29.♗d2 ♙xb3=; 20.♖xf6 ♙xc4 21.e5 ♙xa2 22.♗g3 ♙f8= with a probable draw.

20...♖xe4! 21.fxe4

21.♗e3 ♙c6 22.♙xe6 ♙xe6 23. fxe4 ♙xb6=

21...♙d4 22.♗f3 ♙xb6 23. ♙xe6 ♙c3 24.♗g4 fxe6 25.♙b1 ♙c7 with equality.

B) 10.♖d5



10...♖d7

Black should not stop in the middle of the road. The activity of his pieces takes precedence over everything else!

11.♖xe7

11.♙xe7 According to statistics, this is the most popular move. Still, it is logical that White can hardly strive for anything real if he parts deliberately with his dark-squared bishop. 11...♖xe7 12.♖xe7 ♗f8 13.♖d5 (13.♖xc8 ♙xb2 14.♙b1 ♙c3=) 13...♙xb2 14. ♙b1 ♙g7 15.♖h3 (15.h4 ♖c5 16.h5, Wang Rui – Moradiabadi, Cebu 2007 and White has nothing to do on the h-file: 16...f5! 17.♖h3 fxe4 18.hxg6 hxg6 19.fxe4 ♖xe4=) 15...♖c5 16.♖f2 ♙e6 17.♙e2 (17. ♖d3 ♙ac8 18.♖xc5 ♙xc5 19.♙xb7 ♙a5= Andresen – Sonntag, Germany 1993.) 17...♙ac8 18.0-0 b6 19.♙fc1, Christiansen – Renet,

Cannes 1992, 19...f5!≡

11.♗a3. This is an attempt by White to stabilize the position, preserving his extra pawn. We know however, that his bishop is misplaced on a3 and its exchange for a knight is not favourable at all. Black has more than enough resources to maintain the balance. 11...e6 12.♖c7 (12.♖e3 b6 13.♖d1 ♗b7 14.♖e2 ♖c5≡ Black has won the battle for the dark squares in the centre, Avery – Valvo, Chicago 1992) 12...♖b8 13.0-0-0 (13.♖b5 a6 14.♖d6 b5 15.cxb5 axb5 16.♖xb5 ♗a6 17.♖c3 ♗xf1 18.♗xf1 ♖de5≡; 17.♖c1 ♖de5≡ Benidze – Grigoryan, Yerevan 2007) 13...b6 14.♖e2 ♗b7 15.♖b5 (15.♗d6 ♖c5 16.♖b5 ♖bc8 17.♖ec3 a6 18.♖a3 f5 19.exf5 gxf5 20.♗b1 ♖d4 21.♗e7 ♖d7 22.♗h4 e5 and Black has seized the initiative, Petursson – Sax, Biel 1985) 15...♖c5 16.♖d6, Stoljarov – Teemae, corr. 1986, 16...♗a8 17.b4 ♖b7 18.♖xb7 ♗xb7 – White's kingside has not been developed yet and Black has enough time to organize an attack against the pawns on c4 and b4.

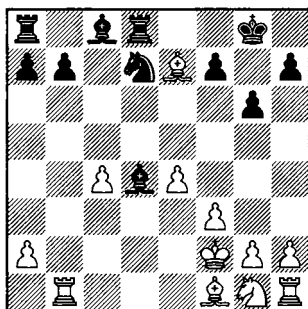
11...♖xe7 12.♗xe7 ♗xb2 13.♖b1

In case of 13.♖d1 ♖e8 14.♗d6 ♖e5, Black's piece-activity compensates the sacrificed pawn, for example: 15.c5 ♗e6 16.f4 ♗c3 17.♗f2 ♖g4 18.♗f3 ♖f6 19.h3 ♗xa2= Behling – Hazai, Hamburg 1984.

Following 13.♗xd8 ♗c3, Black wishes to displace the enemy king

at first and only then he recaptures the rook. 14.♗d1 (The evaluation of the position remains the same after the more prudent line: 14.♗f2 ♗xa1 15.♖e2 ♖e5 16.♖f4 ♗d4 17.♗g3 ♗e6 18.♖xe6 fxe6 19.♗c7 ♖c8 20.♗xe5 ♗xe5 21.f4 ♗c3 22.♗d3 ♖d8 23.♖d1 e5≡ Csi-bor – Timar, corr. 1992) 14...♗xa1 15.♖h3 ♖c5 16.♗e7 ♖e6 17.♗d3 b6 18.♗d2 ♗e5 19.g3 ♖d4 20.♖g1 ♗b7≡ Gerasimov – Klimov, St. Petersburg 2005.

13...♗c3 14.♗f2 ♗d4



15.♖g3

After 15.♖e1 ♗c3, White should better comply with the repetition of moves, since his king will be rather unsafe in the middle of the board, for example: 16.♗d1 ♖e8 17.♖e2 (17.♗a3 ♖e5 18.♗c2 ♗a5 19.♖b5 b6 20.♗b2 ♖c6 21.a3 a6 22.♖d5 ♗e6 23.♖h3 ♗xd5 24.cxd5 ♖e5 25.f4 ♖ac8 26.♗b1 ♖c4≡ Man-keyev – Klimov, St. Petersburg 2004; 17.♗c2 ♗g7 18.♗d6 ♖e5 19.♗xe5 ♖xe5 20.♖e2 ♖a5 21.♖c1 b6 22.♖b5 ♗d7 23.♖xa5 bxa5 24.♗e2 ♖b8 25.♖d3 ♗e6 26.♖b1 ♖xb1

27.♖xb1 ♖xc4 28.♟f4, draw, Zelinskis – Rogozenko, corr. 1988) 17...♙e5 18.♙b4, Gunawan – Khalifman, Minsk 1986, 18...b6 19.♗e1 ♙a6 20.♜c3 ♖ac8 21.♜b5 f5±

15...♙e8 16.♙g5

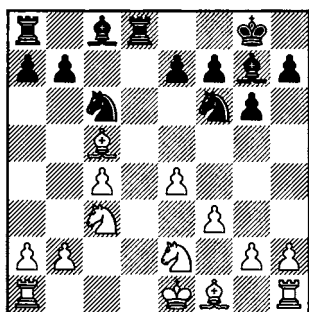
In case of 16.♙d6 ♜f6, Gar-mendez Gonzalez – Arribas, Matanzas 1993, White's king might come under a dangerous attack. For instance, he loses by force after 17.♜h3? ♜h5.

16...♜f6 17.♙xf6

The following game illustrates how dangerous it will be for White to leave the enemy knight of the board. 17.♜h3 ♜h5 18.♜h4 ♜g7 19.g4 h6 20.♙xh6 ♜xh6 21.gxh5 f5 22.♜g3 fxe4 23.♙g2 gxh5 24.f4 ♙g8 25.♜g5 h4, and White resigned in view of the unavoidable checkmate 26.♜xh4 ♙f2# Gil – Howell, Gausdal 1986.

17...♙xf6= Graf – Inarkiev, Lugo 2007.

C) 10.♜ge2



10...♜d7

The lead in development is

something very abstract and it might disappear without a trace in case Black slows down: 10...b6 11.♙a3 a5 (11...e6 12.♜b5 ♜e8 13.♙d1 ♙a6 14.♜ec3 ♙xd1 15.♜xd1 ♙d8, Schmidt – E.Guseinov, Dresden 2007, 16.c5 bxc5 17.♙xc5±) 12.♙d1 (12.♜d5 ♜xd5 13.cxd5 ♜b4 14.0–0–0 ♜xa2 15.♜b1 ♜b4= Kutsankov – Dydyshko, Byelorussia 2007) 12...♙a6 13.♜f4 ♜b4 14.♜f2 e6 15.♙e2±

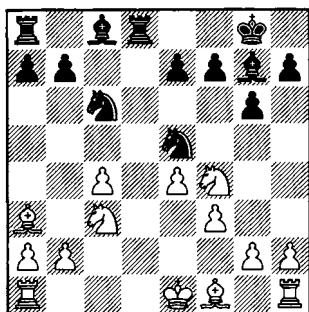
11.♙a3

11.♙e3 ♜de5 12.♜f4 ♜b4 13.♙c1 (After 13.♙d1, Black follows with a simple, but attractive combination – 13...♜xf3! 14.gxf3 ♙xc3 15.bxc3 ♜c2 16.♗e2 ♙xd1 17.♜xd1 ♜xe3 18.♜d2 ♜xf1 19.♙xf1 b6 and he ends up with an advantage in the endgame, Kruglyakov – Pavlov, Kiev 2008. In response to 13.♜f2, young Boris Gelfand found a very interesting counter argument: 13...♙e6!? 14.♜cd5 ♙xd5 15.♜xd5 ♜c2 16.♙c1 ♜xe3 17.♜xe3 e6 18.♜c3 ♙h6 19.f4 g5 20.g3 ♜g6 21.♙c2 gxf4 22.gxf4 ♙xf4+ Gunawan – Gelfand, Minsk 1986) 13...♙e6 14.b3 (14.a3 ♜bd3 15.♜xd3 ♜xd3 16.♙xd3 ♙xd3= Bezviner – Bonin, Nassau 1992) 14...g5 15.♜xe6, Christiansen – Charbonneau, ICC 2008, 15...fxe6 16.♙xg5 ♜f7 with approximate equality

It deserves attention for White to retreat his bishop – 11.♙f2, so that he can continue later with ♙g3. 11...♜de5 12.♜f4 b6. Black must bring other pieces, be-

fore starting active actions. (It is therefore bad for him to play 12...g5 13.♖fd5 e6 14.♖c7 ♖b8 15.♙d1 ♖xd1 16.♙xd1 ♙d7 17.♖7b5 a6 18.♖a3 ♖b4 19.♙e3 h6 20.h4 ♖ed3 21.♙xd3 ♖xd3 22.♙c2+ Rowson – A.Hunt, England 2008.) 13.♙e2 (The position would remain equal after 13.♖fd5 e6 14.♖c7 ♖b8 15.♙d1 ♖xd1 16.♙xd1, Elsness – Gallagher, Goteborg 2005, 16...♖b4=) 13...♙a6 14.♖b5 ♖b4 15.0-0 ♙xb5 16.cxb5, Unzicker – Duschek, Germany 2004, 16...♙d2 (16...♖ed3 17.♖xd3 ♖xd3 18.♙xd3 ♖xd3 19.♙ad1 ♙ad8 20.♖xd3 ♖xd3 21.b3 ♙d2 22.a4±) 17.♙ab1 ♙h6 18.♙g3! White keeps his material thanks to this resource 18...♙xf4 19.♙xf4 ♖xe2 20.♙xe5 f6 21.♙d4 ♖xa2 22.♖f2 ♖xf2 23.♙xf2 ♙d8 24.♙e3 e5= Black forces a transition into a drawish rook and pawn endgame.

11...♖de5 12.♖f4



12...e6

This is a familiar situation for the King's Indian Defence. Black controls the d5-square and White

cannot cover the d4-square.

After 12...♖d4, the developments are forced: 13.0-0-0 ♙h6 14.♙xe7 (14.g3 ♖ec6 15.♙b1 e5 16.♖fd5 ♖xf3 17.♙e7 ♖d2 18.♖xd2 ♙xd2 19.♙xd8 ♖xd8= Budraitis – Trygstad, Bergen 2000; 14.♖cd5 e6 15.g3 exd5 16.♖xd4 ♖xf3 17.♙d1, Granda Zuniga – Glavina, San Fernando 1991, 17...d4 18.♙b1 ♖g5 19.♙g2 ♙g4 20.♙e7 ♙xd1 21.♙xd8 ♖e6 22.♖xe6 fxe6 23.♖xd1 ♖xd8=) 14...♙xf4 15.♙b1 ♙d7 16.♖d5 ♖ec6 17.♖f6 ♙g7 18.♖xd7 ♙xd7 (18...♖xe7 19.♖xd4) 19.♙c5 ♙e3, O.Andersen – Bekker Jensen, Helsingor 1997, 20.♙d3 ♙f2 21.b4 b6 22.♙d6 a6= and White has nothing better than repeating moves.

13.♙d1 ♖xd1 14.♖xd1

14.♙xd1 ♖a5 15.b3 (15.c5 ♖ac4 16.♙xc4 ♖xc4=) 15...♙xf3 16.gxf3 ♙xc3 17.♙c2 ♙g7 18.♙g2 ♙d7 19.♙d1? (19.♖e2=) 19...♖xc4! 20.♖xd7 (White loses after 20. bxc4 ♙a4 21.♙c1 ♙h6 22.♙d6 ♙xd1 23.♙xd1 ♙d8.) 20...♖xa3 21.♖d1 b5+ Simon – Timoschenko, Avoine 1993.

14...a5

Black should seriously consider 14...b6 15.♙e2 (15.♙f2 ♙h6 16.g3 ♙a6 17.b3 ♙d8 18.♙e2, Ufodike – Barnes, West Bromwich 2005, 18...♙d2 19.♙b2 ♙f8 20.♙e1 ♖c2+ – White has failed to complete his development, while five enemy pieces are gathering around his king.) 15...♖d4 16.♙d6 ♙a6 17.♙xe5 ♙xe5=

15.♠d6

15.♠c5, Cossin – Franklin, Cappelle la Grande 2008, 15... ♖d7 16.♠d6 (16.♠e3 ♖b4) 16...b6 17.♠e2 ♠a6 Black will increase the pressure against the c4-pawn, occupying with his knights the wonderful squares c5, e5 and d4.

15...b6 16.c5

White should try to get rid quickly of this object of attack.

16.b3 ♖b4 17.♠c7 ♖xa2 18.♖d3 ♖xd3 19.♠xd3 ♠d4 20.e5 ♠b7 21. ♖d2 a4 22.bxa4 ♠xa4= Murey – Degraeve, Cappelle la Grande 1993.

16.♠c7 ♠a6 17.b3 ♖b4 18.♠xb6 ♖xa2 19.♖d3 ♠b8 20.♠xa5 ♖xd3 21.♠xd3 ♠xb3 22.♠e2 ♠b1 23.♖d2 ♠c1 24.f4 ♠xc4= Alvares Vilar – Ludsenberger, corr. 1998.

16...bxc5 17.♠xc5 ♖b4

Black's knight is creating havoc in his opponent's position even when acting alone.

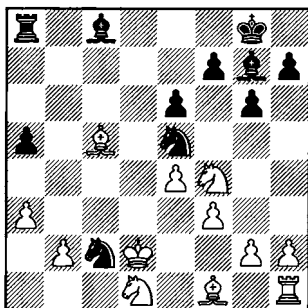
18.a3 ♖c2 19.♖d2

The king must protect the queenside; otherwise, he would have to face problems there: 19. ♖f2 ♠b8 20.♠e2 ♠d7 21.h4 ♠b3 22.♠d6 (22.h5 g5) 22...♖d4 23. ♠xe5 ♠xe5. The position is about equal, because Black has a powerful couple of bishops and he exerts pressure against the enemy pawn.

(diagram)

19...♖a1!

The paradoxical escapade of this knight into the enemy camp



is just amusing.

20.♠f2

In case of 20.♠e3, the bishop might be attacked by Black with tempo after ♖c4. For example: 20...♠a6 21.♠xa6 ♠xa6 22.♖d3 ♖b3 23.♖e2 ♖c4 24.f4 ♠c6 25.e5 f6 26.exf6 ♠xf6 27.♠e1 a4 and his compensation is sufficient for a draw.

20...♠d7 21.♖c3 ♠b8 22. ♖c1 ♖b3 23.♖c2 ♖c6

Black's knights continue dancing...

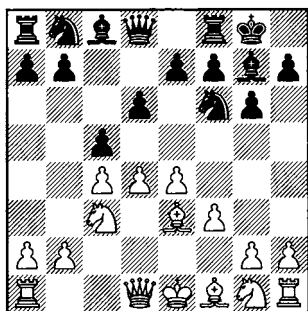
24.♖fe2

White should possibly complete his development at first by developing the bishop to c4: 24.♠c4 ♖cd4 25.♖d1 ♠c8, with compensation, or to d3: 24.♠d3 ♖cd4 25.♖b1 ♖c5 26.♠c4 ♖a4 27. ♖xa4 ♠xa4 28.♠xd4 ♠xd4 29.♖d3 ♖g7=. Black should not be afraid of losing the game with his two bishops in an open position.

24...f5! 25.h4 fxe4 26.fxe4 ♖e5 27.♖f4 ♖g4 28.♠a7 ♖d4 29.♠xd4 ♠xd4= Roques – Lutzenberger, corr. 2000.

Chapter 16

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.f3 0-0 6.♙e3 c5



A) 7.d5

B) 7.♘ge2

If White is reluctant to exchange on c5 (see chapter 15), then he will have to close the centre with the move d4-d5 at some moment. Still, is it better for him to wait for the appearance on Black's knight on c6, by playing 7.♘ge2 (variation B).

A) 7.d5 a6!?

White plays straightforwardly, so Black should try something smarter.

8.a4

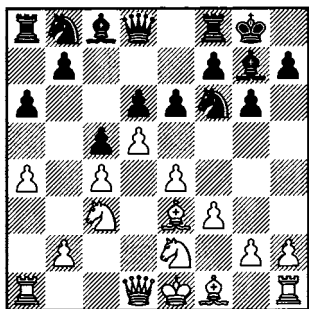
In similar pawn-structures, it is essential to evaluate after every move what would happen if the

game transfers into the Benko Gambit. For example: 8.♙d2 b5 9.cxb5 ♖a5 (You should remember a simple rule: at first you develop the queen to a5 and then the knight to b6.) 10.♙h6. It is good to exchange the bishops, of course, but all this takes time. White can hardly checkmate the king on g8, while his queen goes away from the weakened queenside. (It deserves attention for White to try 10.♙d3 ♘bd7 11.♘ge2 ♘e5☞ Kopriva – Chytilek, Moravia 1994.) 10...♙xh6 11.♙xh6 ♘bd7 12.♙d2. It is time for White to retreat. (The attempt to begin an attack can only backfire: 12.♘h3, Vasvari – Farkas, Hungary 2000, 12...♘e5 13.♘g5 axb5 14.♙xb5 ♖b8 15.a4 ♖xb5+ 12...axb5 13.♙xb5 ♖b8 14.a4 ♙a6 15.♖a3 ♘e5 16.♘ge2 ♘c4 17.♙xc4 ♙xc4☞

8...e6 9.♘ge2

9.♙d2 exd5 9.cxd5 ♖a5 11.♖a3 (11.♙d3 ♘bd7 12.♘ge2 b5 13.0-0 b4 14.♘d1 ♘e5 15.♘f2 c4 16.♙c2 ♙d7 17.♙d4 ♖fc8☞ S.Schneider – Cabrera, Tenerife 2009) 11...♖e8 12.♘ge2 ♘bd7 13.♘c1 ♘e5 14.♙e2 h5 15.0-0 ♘h7 16.♘b3 ♙d8 17.a5

f5∞ Goldstern – Rogers, Biel 1991.



9...♞e8!

We have already encountered this idea – Black is trying to be tricky, delaying the immediate exchange on d5.

10.♟g3 h5 11.♞d3 exd5

Now, this trade is justified. White's bishop is on d3 (It could have gone to the c4-square in one move.) and it will soon come under attack with tempo after ♟e5.

12.cxd5 ♟bd7 13.0–0 ♟e5 14.♞e2

White should better prevent the exchange of the bishop, at least because now Black has a superfluous piece, since both of his knights are headed for the same square – e5.

In response to 14.♟h1, Black can exchange immediately one of his knights, then he transfers to the e5-square his other knight and starts a counter offensive on the queenside: 14...♟xd3 15.♞xd3 ♟d7 16.♞c2 ♟e5 17.♟f2 ♞d7 18.b3 b5±

14...♞d7 15.♞d2 ♜b8 16.♜ab1

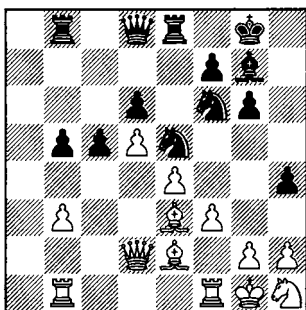
After 16.h3, with the idea to trap the knight, Black plays 16...b5 17.axb5 axb5 18.f4 ♟c4 19.♞xc4 bxc4 20.e5! White cannot hold on to his e4-pawn anyway. 20...dxe5 21.fxe5 ♞xe5 22.♞f4 ♟e8 (This is a standard exchange-sacrifice, meanwhile the knight will be an excellent blocker of the d6-pawn.) 23.♞a2 ♟d6 24.♞fa1 ♞f5∞

16...b5 17.axb5 ♞xb5! 18.♟xb5

18.b3!? h4 19.♟h1 ♞xe2 20.♞xe2 h3 21.g4 ♞a5 22.♞d2 ♞b4 23.♟f2 ♞d4 with the idea to follow with c4↑

18...axb5 19.b3 h4 20.♟h1

Small wonder there are plenty of tactical motives for Black with a knight like this...



20...♟eg4!↑ 21.♞g5

The knight is "poisoned": 21.fxg4 ♟xe4 22.♞d3 ♟c3 23.♞f3 ♟xb1 24.♞xb1 ♞xe3 25.♞xe3 ♞d4 26.♞e4 ♞g5 27.♟f2 ♞a8–+; 21.♞f4 ♟xe4 22.fxe4 ♞d4 23.♟f2 ♟xf2 24.♞xf2 ♞xf2 25.♟xf2 ♞xe4

3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4. e4 d6 5. f3 0-0 6. ♗e3 c5

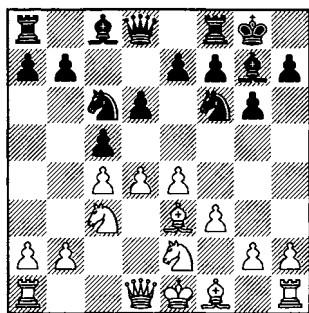
26. ♗f3 ♗d4 27. ♖e3 ♖f6 28. g3 ♗a8

21... ♖b6 22. ♖f2

White should avoid unnecessary complications and exchange his bad knight. It is riskier for him to opt for 22. ♗xh4 c4 23. ♗f2 ♖xf2 24. ♖xf2 c3 25. ♖d3 b4=

22... ♖xf2 23. ♗xf2 ♖d7 24. ♗e3 b4= with a comfortable game for Black, Markus – Bologan, Neum 2008. I had the feeling during the game that I was better all the time, while in fact the position had been objectively equal.

B) 7. ♖ge2 ♖c6



B1) 8. ♖d2

B2) 8. d5

About 8. dxc5 dxc5 9. ♗xc5 ♖a5, or 9. ♖xd8 ♗xd8 10. ♗xc5 ♖f7, see Chapter 15.

B1) 8. ♖d2

Black must make a choice now between two possibilities.

B1a) 8... e6

B1b) 8... ♖a5

B1a) 8... e6 9. 0-0-0

He demonstrated an attractive tactical idea in the following game: 9. d5 ♖e5 10. ♖g3 exd5 11. cxd5 a6 12. a4 h5 13. ♗g5 (in order to contain the h-pawn) 13... h4! (despite everything) 14. ♗xh4 ♖xe4 15. ♗xd8 ♖xd2 16. ♗c7 ♖xf1 17. ♗xf1 ♗e8↑ Lapicciarella – Vocaturo, Bratto 2006.

Black obtains his standard compensation for the pawn after 9. dxc5 dxc5 10. ♗xc5 ♖xd2 11. ♖xd2 ♗d8 12. ♖c2 b6 13. ♗a3 ♗b7 14. ♗d1 ♗xd1 15. ♖xd1 ♗d8 16. ♖dc3 ♖d7 17. b3 ♖de5 18. ♗c1 ♖d3= J. Gonzales – Glavina, Ibi 1996.

In case of 9. ♗d1, Black can maintain the tension in the centre with: 9... b6 10. d5 (10. ♗g5 ♗a6= Atalik – Miles, Heraklio 1993; 10. g3 ♗a6 11. b3 ♗e8, Gheorghiu – Shirov, Moscow 1989, 12. ♗g2 d5=) 10... exd5 11. cxd5 ♖e5 12. ♖g3 h5 13. ♗e2 h4 14. ♖f1 ♖h7 15. f4 ♖g4 16. h3 ♖xe3 17. ♖xe3, Christiansen – Benjamin, Jacksonville 1990, 17... ♗e8 18. 0-0 ♗d4 19. ♗d3 ♖f6 20. ♗f1 ♗d7=

9... b6!?

9... ♖a5 10. ♖b1 a6 11. d5 ♖e5 12. ♖c1 b5 13. dxe6 ♗xe6, Av. Bykhovsky – Smirin, Rishon le Zion 1998, 14. ♖b3 ♖c7 15. ♖xd6 ♖xd6 16. ♗xd6±

10. ♖b1

10. h4 ♗a6 11. b3, Medina Carasco – Martinez Martin, Dos Hermanas 2002, 11... d5=

10. d5 ♖e5 11. ♖g3 exd5 12. cxd5 a6 13. h3 b5 14. f4 ♖ed7 15. e5

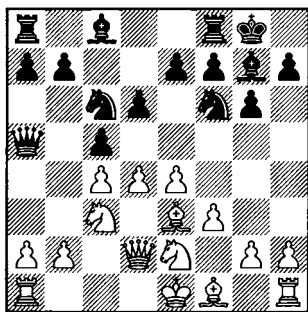
dx e5 16.fxe5 ♖xe5 17.♙xc5 ♖e8
18.♗b1 ♙b7 19.a3 ♖c8 20.♙e3
♗a5 ♞ Bu Xiangzhi – Ponomarev,
Lausanne 2001.

10...♙a6

It is not very easy for White to protect his c4-pawn, because his knight on e2 is bound to remain immobile.

11.♗b5 ♙xb5 12.cxb5 ♖xd4
13.♖xd4 cxd4 14.♙xd4 d5 ♞
Nguyen Anh Dung – Nadyrhanov,
Moscow 1994.

B1b) 8...♗a5!?



9.d5

9.♙d1 ♖b8 10.a3 a6 11.dxc5
dxc5 12.♖d5 ♗xd2 13.♖xd2 b6
14.b4 ♖xd5 15.cxd5 ♖e5 16.bxc5
bxc5 17.♙xc5 ♖b1 18.♗f2 ♙h6
19.f4 ♖e8 20.h3 ♙d7 ♞ Mitkov –
Smirnov, Ohrid 2001.

After 9.0–0–0, Black has the resource 9...e5 10.dxc5 dxc5 and there arises a symmetrical pawn-structure in the line: 11.♗b1 ♖d4 12.♖xd4 exd4 13.♖d5 ♗xd2 14.♙xd2 ♖xd5 15.exd5 ♙f5= Hoi – Sylvan, Denmark 2006.

Following 9.♖c1, Black can play immediately e5, but he can also try something trickier: 9...e6 10.b3 a6 11.d5 ♖e5 12.♖g3 h5 13.♖ge2 exd5 14.cxd5 b5 15.♖f4 ♙d7 16.♖d3 b4 17.♖b1 ♖xd3 18. ♙xd3 ♖ae8 19.0–0 ♖xd5 ♞ Mensch – Gallagher, France 2005.

9...♖e5

Here, White usually goes with his knight to c1, or he deploys it to the g3-square.

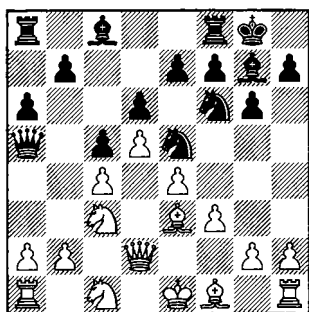
10.♖c1

After 10.♖g3, Black can attack immediately the c4-pawn: 10... ♗b4!? 11.♖b5 (11.a3 ♗b3 12.♗d1 ♗xd1 13.♖xd1 e6 14.♙e2 exd5 15. cxd5 a6 16.f4, draw, Maiwald – Kempinski, Dresden 2008; if 11. b3, Black has the powerful response 11...♖fg4! and it would be bad for White to play 12.fxg4?, in view of 12...♖f3 13.gxf3 ♙xc3.) 11...♗xd2 (11...♙d7 12.♗xb4 cxb4 13.♖xa7 h5 14.h4 e6 15.♙e2) 12. ♙xd2 a6 13.♖c3 h5 14.♙e2 h4 15.♖f1 b5! Black has entered advantageously a wonderful endgame of the Benko Gambit type. 16.cxb5 axb5 17.♖xb5 ♙d7 18.♖c3 ♖fb8 ♞

The plan with b5 is on the agenda again: 10...a6 (instead of 10...♗b4) 11.♙e2 (11.h3 b5 12.cxb5 axb5 13.♖xb5 ♗xd2 14.♖xd2 ♙a6 15.f4 ♖ed7 16.♖c2 ♖fb8 17.♖c3 ♖b6 18.♙xa6 ♖xa6 19.♖hd1 ♖c4 20.♙c1 ♖d7 ♞ Eltsov – Dyachkov, Ufa 2004; 11.f4 ♖ed7 12.h3, Korchnoi – Zueger, Bern 1992, 12... b5! 13.cxb5 h5 14.bxa6 h4 15.♖ge2 ♙xa6 ♞) 11...e6 12.0–0 exd5 13.

cx d5 (13.ex d5, Topel – Arakhamia, Kemer 2007, 13...b5 14.cxb5 axb5 15.♖xb5 ♗xd2 16.♗xd2 ♖xd5 17.♖xd6 ♗a6=) 13...b5 14.♗h6 c4 15.♗xg7, Reilly – Lukey, Auckland 2007 and now it is essential for Black to give a check, prior to establishing control over the squares e3 and d4: 15...♗b6 16.♗f2 ♖xg7 17.h3 ♗e8 18.f4 ♖ed7 19.f5 b4=

10...a6



11.♗e2

11.a3 b5 12.cxb5 axb5 13.♗xb5 ♗a6= Badev – Chatalbashev, Sunny Beach 2006.

White's attempt to attack the enemy knight backfires: 11.f4 ♖eg4 12.♗g1 ♖h5, Fonrobert – Everard, Sao Bernardo 1968, 13. h3 ♖g3 14.hxg4 ♖xh1= and the knight on h1 cannot be trapped.

It is principled for White to play 11.a4, but Black has already seized the initiative.: 11...e6 12. ♗a3 (12.♗e2 exd5 13.cxd5 b5) 12...exd5 13.cxd5 ♖h5 14.♗e2 f5 15.exf5 gxf5 16.♗h6 ♗b4 17.♗xg7 ♖xg7 18.f4 (In case of 18.0-0, Black can continue with 18...♗d4

19.♗xd4 cxd4 20.♖d1 f4 21.♗b3 ♖f5 22.♖d3 b5, with a double-edged position.) 18...♖c4 19.♗xc4 ♗xc4 20.a5 ♗d7= Spassky – Ju.Polgar, Budapest 1993.

11...♗d7

Black can try to advance b5 in another fashion 11...♗b8 12.a4 ♗b4 13.♖1a2 ♗b3 14.♖c1 ♗b4=

12.a4

White is not well prepared yet for active actions in the centre: 12.f4 ♖eg4 13.♗g1 b5 14.♗f3 ♖h5 15.♖1e2 ♗h6 16.♗xg4 ♗xg4= Lehtivaara – Gallagher, Neuchatel 2004.

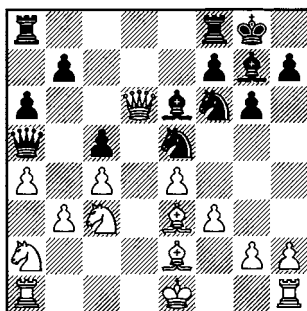
12...♗b4 13.b3

After 13 ♖1a2, Black has a spectacular queen-sacrifice at his disposal: 13...♖xc4 14.♗d3 ♖xe3!? 15.♖xb4 ♖xg2 16.♖f2 ♖f4 17.♗c4 b5 18.axb5 axb5 19.♖xb5 ♖h3 20.♖g2 ♖f4 and he has at least a draw.

13...e6 14.♖1a2

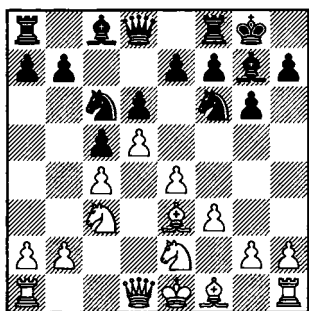
14.0-0 exd5 15.cxd5 b5!? Cu.Hansen

14...♗a5 15.dxe6 ♗xe6 16. ♗xd6, Kramnik – Gelfand, Linares 1993.



Here, Boris overlooked unfortunately a typical tactical resource: **16...♖xe4! 17.fxex4 ♖fd8 18.♖xc5** (In case of 18.♖e7, Black plays 18...♗d3 anyway.) **18...♗d3 19.♗xd3 ♗xc3 20.♙f2 ♖xc5 21.♗xc5 ♗xa1** and he could have won the exchange for a pawn.

B2) 8.d5



8...♗e5 9.♗g3

The other moves with the knight are less popular.

9.♗f4 a6 10.a4 e6 11.♗e2 exd5 12.♗fxd5 ♗xd5 13.♗xd5 ♗c6 14.♖b1 ♗e6 15.0-0 ♗d4 16.b4 b6± Ljubojevic – Kamsky, Monaco 1994. Following 9.♗c1, Black manages to organize a swift queenside offensive: 9...e6 10.♗e2 exd5 11.cxd5 a6 12.a4 ♗d7 13.0-0 (In response to 13.a5, his plan works effortlessly, for example: 13...b5 14.axb6 ♖xb6 15.♖b1 ♖a5 16.0-0 ♖fb8 17.h3 ♗b5= and he continues the fight for queenside space, or 15...♖c7 16.0-0 ♖fb8 17.♙h1 ♗b5 18.♗xb5 axb5 19.♗b3 ♗fd7 20.♗d2 ♗b6 21.b3 c4 22.bxc4

♗bxc4 23.♗d4 ♗xd2 24.♖xd2 ♗c4 25.♗xc4 bxc4= Arbakov – Gallagher, Bad Ragaz 1994.) 13...b5. This is a typical resource. Black opens both a and b-files for his heavy artillery and he obtains more than sufficient compensation for the pawn. 14.axb5 axb5 15.♖xa8 ♖xa8, Palm – Lindfeldt, Denmark 2009, 16.♗xb5 ♗xb5 17.♗xb5 ♖a6 18.♗a3 (18.♗c3 ♖b8 19.♖f2 ♗e8 20.♖c2 ♗c7±) 18...♖b8 19.♖f2 ♗e8 20.♖c2 f5 21.exf5 gxf5 22.♖e2 ♖b7. Both White's knights are misplaced and Black has an excellent position.

B2a) 9...h5

B2b) 9...e6

B2a) 9...h5

This is not the main line for Black, but it deserves attention, since he attacks immediately the enemy knight and this forces White to look for another set-up.

10.♗e2 h4

10...♗h7 11.♖d2 h4 12.♗f1 f5 13.f4 ♗f7 14.exf5 ♗xf5 15.g4 hxg3 16.♗xg3± Narciso Dublan – Surre, Barcelona 2005.

11.♗f1 e6

Black would not achieve much with 11...h3?!, Lalic – Berg, Germany 2003, because White has an adequate counter argument -12.g3 a6 13.♗d2±

Having in mind White's lag of development, Black can try his standard plan with b5: 11...a6!? 12.♗d2 (12.a4 e6 13.♗d2 exd5

14.cxd5 ♖h7 15.f4 ♖d7 16.0-0 ♗e8 17.♗d3 ♖hf6∞ Ozolin – Belous, Moscow 2008; 12.f4 ♖eg4 13.♗d2 b5 14.h3 ♖h6 15.cxb5 axb5 16.♗xb5 e6 17.♖e3 exd5 18.exd5 ♖f5 19.0-0 ♖d4 20.♗d3 ♗e8 21.f5 c4 22.♖xc4 ♖xf5, having some compensation for the pawn.) 12... ♗b8 (12...e6 13.a4 ♗b8 14.0-0 h3, Manolache – Jianu, Bucharest 2006, 15.g4 exd5 16.cxd5 b5 17.axb5 axb5 18.♖xb5 ♖xf3 19.♗xf3 ♖xg4 20.♗f4 ♗d7 21.♖xd6 ♗xb2 22.♗a6±) 13.h3 (13.f4 ♖eg4 14.♗g1 h3 15.gxh3 ♖h6) 13...♖h5 14.0-0 ♖g3 15.♗f2 b5∞

12.♖d2

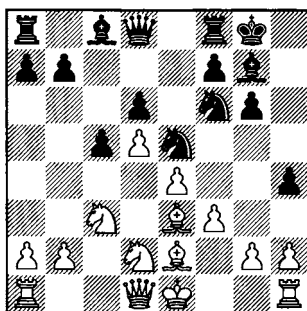
Black can counter 12.f4, with a little, but rather typical combination: 12...♖eg4! 13.♗xg4 (13.♗g1 exd5 14.cxd5 b5! – 15.h3 b4 16.♖a4 ♖h6 and White's centre is defenceless: 17.e5 dxe5 18.fxe5 ♖xd5∞ Gunina – Girya, St. Petersburg 2008.) 13...♖xg4 14.♗xg4 exd5 15.f5! d4 (but not 15...dxe4 16.♗g5! ♗xc3 17.bxc3 f6 18.♗d2±) 16.♖d5 dxe3 17.0-0-0 e2 18.♗xe2 ♗e8 19.fxg6 fxg6 20.♗d3 b5 21.♖fe3 ♗b8 22.cxb5 ♗d7 23.a4 a6 24.♗hf1, Hovmoller – G.Szabo, Hallsberg 2003 and here Black had better continue with 24...axb5∞ with a clear advantage.

12.♗g5!? h3 13.g4 (13.gxh3 exd5 14.♖xd5 ♗xh3 15.♖fe3 ♖xd5! 16.♗xd8 ♖xe3 17.♗b3 ♖g2 18.♖f2 ♗axd8 19.♗f1 ♖f4 Black's three light pieces are obviously superior to the enemy queen. Poluektov – Grigorchuk, Khar-

kov 2004) 13...♗a5 14.♖d2 exd5 15.cxd5 c4! 16.♗xc4 ♖xe4 17.fxe4 ♖xc4 18.♖xc4 ♗xc3 19.bxc3 ♗xc3 20.♖d2 ♗e5 21.♗e3 ♗xg4 22.♗b1 f5†

12.h3 exd5 13.cxd5 b5 14.f4 ♖c4 15.♗xc4 bxc4 16.♖d2 ♗e8 17.♗f3 ♗b8 18.0-0 ♗xb2 19.♗ac1 ♗a6∞ Oms – Damljanovic, Andorra 2006.

12...exd5 13.cxd5



13...a6

Black's other plan is connected with kingside actions – 13...♖h7, but I will not recommend it to you. 14.0-0 (14.f4 ♖d7 15.0-0 ♗e8 16.h3 f5 17.♗f2 fxe4 18.♖dxe4± Razuvaev – Khalifman, Germany 1992) 14...g5 15.f4 gxf4 16.♗xf4 ♖g6 17.♗e3 f5 18.♗h5 ♖e5 19.h3 ♖g5 20.♗e2 ♗d7 21.♗f2 ♗e7 22.♗af1. Naturally, Black has achieved something more or less. He has the e5-square for his knight, a free piece – movement, but his king is so unsafe that the pluses of his position are negated. White is better.

14.a4

Black counters 14.♙g5 in the habitual fashion – 14...h3.

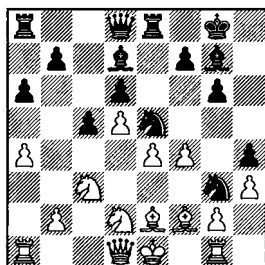
14...♙d7

14...♘h7 15.f4 ♘d7±

15.0–0!?

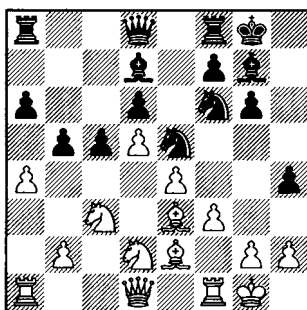
15.♙g5 h3 16.g3 (16.f4 hxg2 17.♙g1 ♘eg4 18.♙xg4 ♙xg4 19.♙xf6 ♙d7!) 16...♙b6 17.♙b3 ♙b4 18.f4 ♘eg4±

After Ha 15.h3!? Black must sacrifice advantageously a piece: 15...♘h5 16.f4 ♘g3 17.♙g1 ♙e8!? (It not advisable for him to play immediately 17...f5 18.fxe5 ♙xe5 19.♘c4 ♙xc3 20.bxc3 ♘e4 21.♙c1 ♙f6 22.♘b6 ♙ad8 23.♙f3 ♘xc3 24.♘d2 ♘e4 25.♙xe4 fxe4 26.♙c3± and White gradually establishes a complete control over the situation; 17...♙h6!?) 18.♙f2 (18.fxe5 ♙xe5 19.♙c2 f5 20.♙f2 b5!?, or 20...♙d4; 20.♘c4 ♙xc3 21.♙xc3 ♘e4 22.♙a3 ♘g3±)



18...♘c4!! 19.♘xc4 (19.♙xc4 ♙xc3 20.bxc3 ♘e4 21.♘f1 ♙f6 22.♘e4 ♙xe4 23.♙d3 ♙xf4→) 19...♙xc3 20.bxc3 ♘e4 21.♙c1 b5 (Black is opening a second front.) 22.axb5 ♙xb5 – White can hardly come out of the woods.

15...b5



16.axb5

White can always refrain from capturing on b5 – 16.h3!? c4 (Black's knight needs a square.) 17.♙e1 (17.f4 ♘d3 18.♙xd3 cxd3 19.axb5 axb5 20.♙b3, Lou Yiping – Belous, Moscow 2007, 20...♘h5 21.♙xa8 ♙xa8 22.♘d1 ♘g3 23.♙e1 f5!±) 17...b4 18.♘d1 ♘h5 19.♘xc4 (19.f4 ♘d3 20.♙xd3 cxd3; 19.♙f2 ♘f4 20.♘xc4 ♙g5) 19...♘g3 (19...♘xc4 20.♙xc4 a5 21.♙f2) 20.♙f2 (20.♘xd6 ♙c7) 20...♘xc4 21.♙xc4 a5 22.♙c1 f5!± – Black's compensation for the pawn is absolutely spectacular.

16...axb5 17.♙xa8 ♙xa8 18.h3

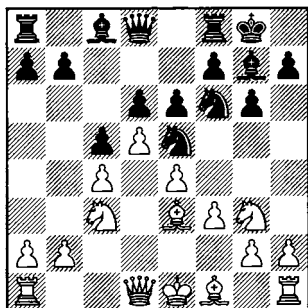
18.♙xb5 ♙xb5 19.♘xb5 ♙a6 20.♘c3 ♙b8 21.♙c2, Psakhis – M. Piket, Amsterdam 1990, 21...♘fd7 22.b3 h3 23.g3 ♘d3 24.♘d1 ♘7e5±

18...c4 19.♙e1 b4

Black's pawns can be very dangerous with the direct support of the queen and the indirect support of his bishop on g7. **20.♘d1 ♙a2 21.♙xh4 ♙a4 22.f4 ♘d3 23.♙xd3 cxd3 24.♙d4 ♙xd1 25.♙xd1 ♘h5 26.♙xg7 ♘xg7**

27. ♖f2 ♜xb2 ♞ Vyzmanavin – Ju. Polgar, Groningen 1993.

B2b) 9...e6



10. ♗e2

10. ♖d2 – see variation B1a:
8. ♖d2 e6 9. d5 ♖e5 10. ♖g3.

10...exd5

10...b5? 11. ♖xb5 exd5 12. cxd5
♞b8 13. ♖d2±

11. cxd5 a6

The following possibilities will be always on the agenda for Black. 11...♖h5!? 12. ♖xh5 (12.0–0 ♖xg3 13. hxg3 h5; 12.f4 ♖xg3 13. hxg3 ♖d7 14.g4 ♖f6 15.g5 ♖xe4 16. ♖xe4 ♞e8±) 12...gxh5 13.0–0 f5 14.f4 (14. ♖d2 fxe4 15. ♖xe4 ♗f5) 14...♖g4 15. ♗xg4 hxg4 16.e5 dxe5 (16...b6 17.e6 ♗xc3 18.bxc3 ♗a6 19.♞e1 ♞e7 20. ♖b3±) 17. ♗xc5 ♞e8 18.fxe5 ♗xe5 19. ♗d4 ♗d7 20.g3 ♖f6 21. ♗xe5 ♖xe5 22. ♖g2 b5± – White's position is slightly preferable, but Black has nothing to be afraid of.

12.a4

It would be premature for White to play 12.f4?! ♖eg4 13.

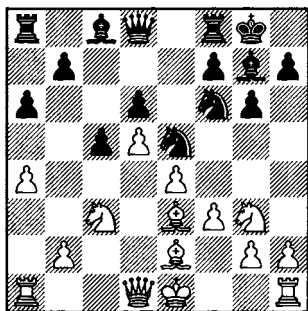
♗g1, Sammalvuori – Pihlajasalo, Finland 1997, 13...♞e8 14.h3 ♖h6 15. ♗f2 b5±

He should not let his opponent advance b7–b5, just like this, since he would obtain an excellent position:

12.0–0 b5 13. ♖d2 (13.a3 ♞b8 14.b4 ♖fd7 15. ♖b3 ♖b6 16. ♗f2, Kramnik – Har-Zvi, Oakham 1992, 16...♖ed7∞) 13...♞e8 14.b3 (14.a3 h5 15.b4 ♖fd7 16.f4 h4, Zhang Ziyang – D. Petrosian, Moscow 2006, 17. ♖h5 ♖c4 18. ♗xc4 gxh5 19. ♗d3 c4 20. ♗c2 h3 21.a4 hxg2 22. ♖f2; 14...♖fd7 15.f4 ♖c4 16. ♗xc4 bxc4 17. ♗ae1 ♞b8 18. ♞e2 ♞b3 19.h3 ♖a5± Liu Pei – Ju Wenjun, Wuxi 2005) 14...♗d7 (14...h5 15.a4 b4 16. ♖d1 h4 17. ♖h1 h3 18.g3 ♖xf3 19. ♗xf3 ♖xe4 20. ♗xe4 ♗xa1 21. ♗g5 f6±) 15.a4 (15. ♗ac1 ♖a5 16. ♗c2 b4 17. ♖d1 ♗b5 18. ♗h6 ♗h8 19. ♖e3 ♗xe2 20. ♖xe2 ♖b5= Sakaev – Skoberne, Dresden 2007) 15...bxa4 16.bxa4 ♖a5 17. h3 ♗ab8 18.f4 ♖h5 19. ♖xh5 ♖f3 20. ♗xf3 ♗xc3 21. ♖c1 gxh5 22. ♗g3 ♖h8∞

12. ♖d2 b5 13. ♗h6 ♗xh6 14. ♖xh6 ♗d7 15.0–0 (The placement of White's queen might entice him to check the possibility of a direct attack: 15.h4 b4 16. ♖d1 ♗b5 17.h5 ♗xe2 18. ♖xe2 c4 19. ♖f2 c3 20.bxc3 ♗c8± Black's knight on f6 is covering reliably his king, while White should worry about his own king. The move 15.a3 can only help Black: 15...b4 16.axb4 cxb4 17. ♖d1 ♖b6 18. ♖f2 ♗fc8 19.0–0

a5 $\bar{7}$) 15...b4 16.♟d1, van Der Sterren – Kindermann, Prague 1992, 16...♙b5! (This is a typical square for the activation on the light-squared bishop.) 17.♟e3 ♙xe2! 18.♟xe2 c4 19.♞h1 ♞c8 $\bar{7}$ – Black is not better yet, but everything is developing in his favour. Should White aim at restricting the enemy knight with 12.h3, Black can counter this with the thematic 12...b5, creating a new field of action for his pieces. For example: 13.f4 ♟ed7 (13...♟c4!? 14.♙xc4 bxc4 15.0–0 ♞e8 16.♞f3 ♞e7 ∞) 14.0–0 ♞e8 15.e5 (15.♙f3 b4 16.♟a4 h5 17.h4 ♟g4! $\bar{7}$) 15...dxe5 16.f5 e4 17.fxg6 hxg6 18.♙g5 ♞b6 19.d6 c4 $\bar{7}$ Kornev – V.Kotronias, Moscow 2005.



B2b1) 12...h5

B2b2) 12...♙d7

B2b1) 12...h5

Black wishes to continue with his kingside operations by playing ♟h7, h4, f5 etc.

13.0–0 ♟h7 14.♞d2

14.h3 h4 15.♟h1 f5 16.f4 ♟f7

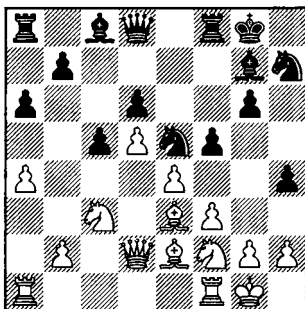
17.♟f2 b6 18.a5 fxe4 19.axb6 ♟h6 20.♟fxe4 ♟f5 21.♙f2 ♞xb6 22.♞d2 ♞d8 23.♞fe1, draw, Turov – Wittmann, Budapest 2005.

14...h4

After the rather slow move 14...♙d7, White can already afford to continue with 15.f4 ♟g4 16.♙xg4 ♙xg4, Browne – Shulman, Las Vegas 2001 and here White had better play immediately 17.e5 b6 18.a5 \pm

15.♟h1 f5 16.♟f2

The f4-square is under control and White can complete his development.



16...♞e8

Black has here two approximately equally strong possibilities, but neither of them equalizes. We will analyze both of them in short.

1) 16...♞f6!? One of the merits of this move is that it is advantageous for Black to fix the pawn-structure, because White was threatening f4. Its drawback is that the queen is misplaced on f6. 17.f4 (17.♟h3 ♙d7 18.♟f4 ♞f7

19.exf5 ♙xf5 20. ♘e4 ♚ad8 21. ♚ad1 ♚d7 22. ♘e6 ♙xe6 23.dxe6 ♚xe6∞ Dreev – Amonatov, Dagomys 2008) 17... ♘f7 18.e5 dxe5 19. ♙xc5 exf4 (19... ♚e8 20.d6 ♙e6 21. ♘d5 ♙xd5 22. ♚xd5 exf4 23. ♙c4 ♘hg5 24.d7 ♚ed8 25. ♚ae1±; 19... ♚d8 20.fxe5 ♚xe5, F.Graf – Huschenbeth, Neuhausen 2007, 21. ♘d3 ♚c7 22. ♚e3±) 20. ♙xf8 ♘xf8 21. ♚xf4±

2) 16... ♙d7 and now:

17.exf5 gxf5 (It is illogical for Black to play 17... ♙xf5, since the bishop would go to f5, in two moves.) 18. ♘h3 (18. ♙h6 ♚f6 19. ♙xg7 ♚xg7 20.f4 ♘g4 21. ♘xg4 fxg4 22. ♘e4 ♚g6, A.Kuzmin – Sandipan, Catalan Bay 2004 and here White had to continue 23. ♙d3 and Black would have to provoke a series of exchanges: 23... ♙f5 24. ♚ae1 ♚ae8 25. ♚c2 ♚g7! 26. ♘f6 ♘xf6 27. ♙xf5 ♚xe1 28. ♚xe1 g3, with a position with mutual chances.) 18... ♘g6 19.f4 ♚e8 20. ♙f2 ♘f6 21. ♘g5, Lautier – Kazhgaleyev, France 2004, after which it would be interesting for Black to transfer his queen to the queenside without being afraid of ♘e6: 21... ♚a5 22. ♙d3 (22. ♘e6 ♙xe6 23.dxe6 d5 24. ♚c2 d4 25. ♙e1 ♚b6±) 22... ♘e7 (22... ♘g4 23. ♘e6) 23. ♚c2 ♘g4 24. ♘e6 ♙xe6 25.dxe6 ♘xf2 26. ♚xf2 ♙d4 27. ♘h1 c4±;

17. ♘h1 ♚f6 18.exf5 gxf5 19. ♘h3!? (19.g4 hxg3 20.hxg3 ♚g6 21. ♘g2 ♘f6 22. ♘h3 ♘h5 23. ♘g5 ♚ae8 24. ♚ae1 ♙f6→) 19... ♘g6 20.

f4 (20. ♘f4 ♘xf4 21. ♙xf4 ♚fe8 22. ♚fe1 ♚d4 23. ♙f1 ♙e5 24. ♙e3 ♚xd2 25. ♙xd2 ♘f8 26.f4 ♙d4, with a somewhat better endgame for Black. Akhmadeev – Amonatov, Kazan 2007) 20... ♚fe8 21. ♚fe1±. The last variation is a perfect illustration of how White should parry Black initiative, reducing his available squares one after the other.

17. ♘h1

17. ♚ad1?! ♙d7 18.exf5 gxf5 19. ♘h3 ♘g6 20. ♙h6, Polaczek – Roeder, Gent 1993, 20... ♙d4 21. ♘h1 ♚f6 22. ♚fe1 ♚e7 23. ♙f1 ♚ae8=

17... ♚b8

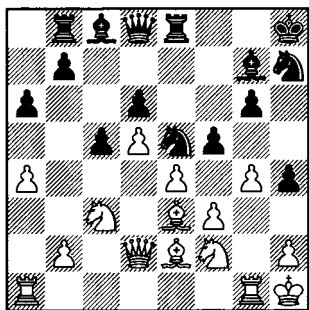
After 17... ♙d7, White succeeds in continuing with 18.exf5 (18. ♚g1 ♚b8 19.g4 f4 20. ♙xf4 g5 21. ♙e3 ♚f8 22. ♘g2 ♚f6 23. ♚d1 b5 24. axb5 axb5 25. ♘h3 b4 26. ♘b1 c4 27. ♙d4, Lautier – Bijaoui, France 2007, 27... ♚g6 28. ♚a7 ♚a8 – 28... ♙xg4!? – 29. ♚xa8 ♚xa8±) 18... gxf5 19. ♘h3, establishing control over the f4-square on the process: 19... ♘g6 20. ♚fe1 ♚f6 21.f4 (21. ♘f4 ♚xe3!) 21... ♚e7 22.a5 (22. ♙h5 ♙h6 23. ♙f2 ♚g7 24. ♚e2 ♚e8 25. ♚xe8 ♙xe8 26. ♚e1 ♙d7 27.a5 ♚d8 28. ♙xg6 ♚xg6 29. ♚e2 ♚xa5 30. ♚e7 ♘f8 31. ♙xh4 ♚b4∞; 23... ♚ae8 24. ♙xg6?! ♚xg6 25. ♙xh4 ♚xe1 26. ♚xe1 b5 27.axb5 axb5± Vyzmanavin – Ki.Georgiev, Elenite 1993) 22... ♚ae8 23. ♙f2±

18. ♚g1

18.a5 b5 19.axb6 ♚xb6 20. ♘a4 ♚b4=

18...♙h8 19.g4

19.g3 b5 20.axb5 axb5 21.gxh4 ♖xh4 22.♖g3 b4 23.♙cd1, Vyzmanavin – Ki.Georgiev, Groningen 1993, 23...♗e7 ♞ Black has advanced both f5 and b5, while it remains unclear what White has really done in the meantime. Or 23.♙b5 f4 24.♙xf4 ♖f8 25.♙g4 ♙xg4 26.fxg4 ♗e7 27.♙xd6 ♗xe4 28.♖g2 ♖f2 29.♙f3 ♖xf3 30.♙xb8 ♖d3, with an unclear position.



19...hxg3

The PC program “Rybka” prefers this move.

Some players for Black might like to sacrifice a pawn with – 19...f4, but the true King’s Indian experts should be able to avoid giving up material just like this: 20.♙xf4 g5 21.♙e3 ♗f6 22.f4 (22. ♗d1, draw, Banikas – V.Kotronias, Salonika 2006) 22...gxf4 23.♙xf4 ♖f8 24.♙h3±. Naturally, Black’s knight is very beautiful on e5, but White still preserves an extra pawn and well deployed pieces. It is not advisable for Black to let an enemy piece to the e4-outpost:

19...fxe4 20.♙cxe4 b5 21.axb5 axb5 22.♙h6 ♙xh6 23.♗xh6± Lautier – V.Kotronias, Moscow 2004.

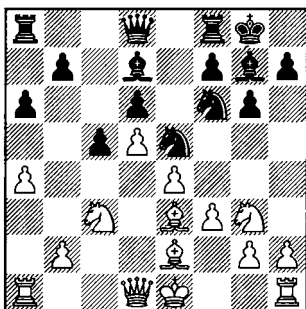
20.♖xg3 fxe4 21.♙cxe4 ♙f5 22.♖ag1

22.♙h6 ♙xh6 23.♗xh6 ♗e7 24.♗d2 ♙f6=

22.f4 ♙f7 23.♙d3 ♗d7 24.♖ag1 ♙h6 25.b4 b6=

22...♗e7 – White is slightly better, but it is not clear how he plans to improve his position.

B2b2) 12...♙d7



This natural move is not as popular, as the already analyzed above 12...h5, although I consider it more promising for Black.

13.0–0

White plays sometimes here 13.h3, but after 13...b5 14.f4 ♙c4 15.♙xc4 bxc4 16.0–0 ♖b8, the game transposes to the main line which we analyze below.

It is a bit different after the more principled line: 13.f4 ♙eg4 14.♙d2 ♙h6!? (14...h5 15.h3 h4!?

16.hxg4 hxg3, Portisch – Ju. Polgar, Biel 1993, 17.g5 ♜e8 18.♞c2±; 14...b5 15.h3 ♜h6 16.axb5 axb5 17.♙xa8 ♞xa8 18.♜xb5 ♙xb5 19.♙xb5 ♞b7 20.♙d3 ♞e8 21.0-0 ♞xb2± Black's knight is stranded on h6 indeed, but it is not clear how White can exploit this.) 15.h3 (Black should not be afraid of 15.f5 gxh5 16.0-0 ♜xe4 17.♜gxe4 fxe4 18.♜xe4 ♞e7; 15.0-0 ♜fg4) 15...♜e8 16.0-0 f5 17.e5 dxe5 18.fxe5 ♙xe5 19.♙xh6 ♞h4! 20.♜h5 gxh5 21.♙xf8 ♞g3. He has at least a draw in this line.

13...b5!

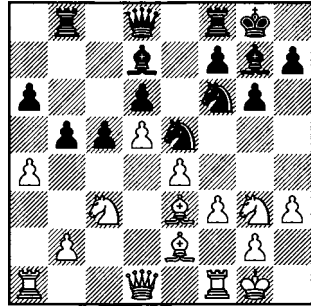
This can hardly be defined as a sacrifice.

14.h3

In case White accepts the gift, Black obtains an excellent position: 14.axb5 axb5 15.♙xa8 (15.♙xb5 ♙xb5 16.♜xb5 ♞b6 17.♞e2 ♙ab8 18.♜a3 ♞xb2 19.♞a6 ♙a8 20.♞xd6 ♞fc8† Pascual – Humen, corr. 2002; about 16.♙xa8 ♞xa8 – see 15.♙xa8 ♞xa8 16.♙xb5 ♙xb5) 15...♞xa8 16.♙xb5 ♙xb5 17.♜xb5 ♞a6 (Black should not be in a hurry to occupy the b-file and he should better leave it for his rook.) 18.♜c3 ♞b8 19.♞c2 ♞d3 20.♞f2 ♜c4† Nikolaev – I. Belov, Podolsk 1991.

After the indifferent move 14.♞d2, Black can calmly capture on a4: 14...bxa4!? 15.♜xa4 ♙b5! 16.♞fc1 ♞e8 17.h3 ♞b8 18.♙g5 ♞d7 19.♞c2 ♙xe2 20.♞xe2 ♞b5† Mahjoob – Al Modiahki, Cebu 2007.

14...♞b8



We can call this the tabia of this variation. White can force now the issue with f4, or he can include at first axb5, or he can simply improve his position with ♞d2, ♞f2.

15.f4

White is trying to clarify the situation. We must have a look at his alternatives.

15.axb5!? ♙xb5 (15...axb5!?) 16.♜xb5 axb5 17.b3 ♜ed7 (17...♞e8 18.♙a6 ♞e7 19.♞d2 ♜e8 20.♙g5 f6 21.♙e3± Wang Hao – Inarkiev, Poikovsky 2008; 17...♜e8!? 18.f4 ♜d7 19.♙a6±) 18.♙a6, draw, Lalic – Timoscenko, Piastany 1996. He could have refrained from offering a draw indeed, but Black's position was quite acceptable anyway, for example: 18...♞e7 19.♞d2 ♞fc8 20.♞c1 ♜e8∞

White can opt for 15.♞d2!?, in order to trade the bishops and to reduce his opponent's potential queenside pressure: 15...♞e8, Atalik – Wang Pin, Beijing 1996, 16.♙h6 (16.f4 ♜c4 17.♙xc4 bxc4

– see 15.f4 ♖c4 16.♙xc4 bxc4 17.♞d2 ♖e8) 16...♙h8 17.axb5 ♙xb5 18.♖xb5 axb5=

White counters sometimes b5 with the move 15.b3, depriving the enemy knight of the c4-square, but this has its drawbacks as well, because he weakens the long diagonal. 15...♖e8 16.♙c1 ♞h4 17.♖h1 bxa4 18.bxa4 (18.f4 axb3) 18...♙b4 19.♙xa6 ♖c7 20.♙e2 ♖a8= Gallagher – Nunn, London 1990.

It would be interesting for White to play here the prophylactic move 15.♙f2!?, covering the second rank and avoiding the eventual checks against his king. 15...♖e8 16.♞d2 (16.b3 h5 17.f4 ♖c4 18.bxc4 b4 19.♙f3 bxc3 20.e5 dxe5; 16.axb5 axb5 17.b3 b4 18.♖a4 ♙b5 19.♙xb5 ♙xb5 20.♖b2 ♖a5. The fight for the c4-square is still going on and if White plays f4, then he will have to worry about the protection of his e4-pawn.) 16...♖c4 17.♙xc4 bxc4 18.♙g5 (18.♖h2 f5 19.exf5 ♙xf5 20.♖xf5 ♙xf5 21.g4 ♙f7 22.♙c1, Vyzmanavin – Hebden, Cappelle la Grande 1992, 22...♙b3 23.♖g2 ♖c7; 18.♙h6 ♞h4 19.♙xg7 ♖xg7 20.♖f1) 18...f6 19.♙h6 ♙xh6 20.♞xh6 ♞e7 21.♙e1 ♙b4 22.a5 ♖c7 23.f4 ♖b5 24.f5 ♞g7 25.♞c1 ♖d4 26.fxg6 hxg6 27.♙ef1, Andersen – Ratzmann, corr. 2003, 27...♙b7

15...♖c4 16.♙xc4 bxc4 17.♙f2

17.♙b1?! ♖e8 18.f5 ♙b3

There may arise interesting

complications after 17.e5 ♖e8 18.♙f3 (18.♞d2!?, Kanelakis – Tzermiadianos, Kavala 1999, 18...dxe5 19.fxe5 ♖xe5 20.♙f4 ♖e8 21.♙xe5 ♙xe5 22.♖ge4 ♙d4 23.♖h1 f5 24.♖g5 ♖g7) 18...♙xb2 (18...dxe5? 19.fxe5 ♖xe5 20.♙f4 ♞e8 21.♙xe5 ♞xe5 22.♙ae1 ♞d4 23.♖h1 ♙xb2 24.♖ce4± Meessen – Laurent, Westerlo 2004) 19.exf6 (19.♖ge4? ♖xe4 20.♖xe4 dxe5 21.fxe5 ♖xe5 22.♞xf7 ♖h8+) and now:

19...♙xf6?! 20.♖ce4 (20.♖ge4 ♙g7 21.♙f2 ♙b3 22.♙ac1 ♖xe4 23.♞xe4 ♙xc3 24.♙xc3 ♙xc3=) 20...♙b3 21.♖xf6 (21.♙ae1 ♙d4 22.f5 ♞e7 23.♖h1± Bu Xiangzhi – Jenni, Lausanne 2000) 21...♞xf6 22.♙ae1 ♞e7 23.♙f2 (23.♖f2 ♙xa4) 23...♙xf3 24.♙xe7 ♖xe7 25.gxf3 f5. It is hard to predict whether White will win this position, but it is evident that Black's maximum is a draw;

19...♞xf6! 20.♙ac1 (20.♖ge4 ♞e7) 20...♞d8 21.♙fe1 f5 22.♙f2 (22.♖h1 ♞a5 23.♙d2 ♙xa4 (23...♙eb8!? 24.♞e2) 24.♙a1 ♞d8! 25.♙xa4 ♙xd2 26.♙xe8 ♞xe8) 22...♙b3 (22...♙d4!?) 23.♙xe8 ♞xe8. All Black's pieces left are long range and every one of them is active, so we can consider that he has a sufficient compensation for the piece. In addition, White can hardly provoke advantageous simplifications. 17.♞d2 ♙b3! Black may decide to double, even treble his heavy pieces along the b-file and he also creates pressure

against the c3-square, as well as along the entire third rank. 18.f5 (18.e5 ♟e8 19.♟a1 ♟b8 20.♟e2 f5 21.e6 ♟c8, followed by an attack against the d5-pawn with: ♟c7 and ♟b7. 18...♟b6! (18...♟e7!? 19.♟f3 ♟b8 20.♟a1 ♟xb2 21.♟c1 ♟e8 22.fxg6. The experienced GM with White offered here a draw and it was accepted, Psakhis – Mittelman, Ashdod 2004, but Black could have prolonged the fight 22...hxg6 23.♟xf7 ♟xf7 24.♟xf7 ♟xf7 25.♟ge2 ♟b3) 19.♟h6 ♟xb2 20.♟g5 ♟xh6 21.♟xh6 ♟d8 22.♟f3 ♟e7 23.♟a1 ♟e5 24.fxg6 fxg6 25.♟h4 ♟g7 Roghani – Khader, Beirut 2004.

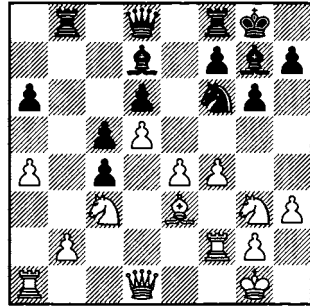
White has also tried in practice the move 17.♟e2!?, in order to be able to capture on c4 if necessary: 17...♟e8 18.♟a1, Bentley – Hebden, England 2006. White's queen is misplaced on the e-file in this case and you can witness this in the variation 18...h5!? 19.e5 (19.♟xc4 h4 20.♟ge2 ♟b4 21.♟d3 ♟xe4) 19...dxe5 20.♟xc4 exf4 21.♟xf4 ♟xb2 22.♟ce4 ♟xe4 23.♟xe4 ♟f5 24.♟d6 ♟b4

(diagram)

In this situation, Black can bring some more wood into the raging fire.

17...♟e8!?

17...♟b3!? This is not the worst possible square for the rook. It exerts pressure against the b2-pawn,



it controls the vital third rank and in addition Black prepares the eventual doubling of his rooks along the b-file. 18.♟f3 ♟b8 19.e5 (19.♟a2 ♟e8 20.♟h1 h5 21.f5 ♟xc3 22.bxc3 ♟b1 23.♟h2 h4 Chernin – Hebden, London 1994) 19...dxe5 20.fxe5 ♟xe5 21.♟f4 ♟e7 22.♟g5 ♟e5!= with a repetition of moves.

18.e5

18.♟d2 h5 19.e5 h4 20.♟ge4 ♟xe4 21.♟xe4 dxe5 22.♟xc5 ♟c8

18...♟b3

Black exploits the defencelessness of the enemy bishop and he improves maximally the placement of his pieces.

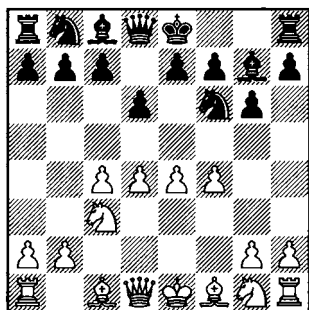
19.♟f1 dxe5 20.♟xc4 exf4

This positional exchange-sacrifice for Black can be often encountered in this variation. 21.♟xb3 ♟xe3 22.♟f1 ♟e4 23.♟xe3 ♟xf2 24.♟xf2 fxe3 25.♟e2 ♟d4 26.♟f1 ♟g5→ Mohota – Moradiabadi, Abudhabi 2004.

Part 4

The Four Pawns Attack

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♚g7 4.e4 d6 5.f4



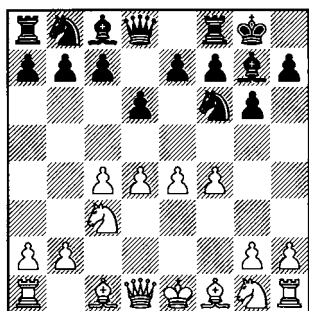
The Four Pawns Attack is quite different in its thematic essence than all the other systems against the King's Indian Defence. White usually tries to build up his game on a sound positional basis, he fortifies his centre carefully and

he tries to restrict Black's counterplay. In this system, he simply occupies space and he goes after his opponent, trying to crush him. Still, is it possible to make four out of the five first moves with pawns and this to be an impeccable plan?

The Four Pawns Attack is very seldom played nowadays, but the King's Indian players should be well acquainted with its ideas and they must refresh their memory about the forced lines; otherwise, against a well prepared opponent Black may succumb right in the opening.

Chapter 17

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.f4 0-0



It is premature for White to play 6.e5?! – his pawn-centre is still very weak and it comes under an immediate massive counter attack: 6...♘fd7 7.♘f3 (White would not change much with 7.♙e3 c5 8.exd6 exd6 9.♖d2 ♘c6 10.♘f3 ♗e8 11.0-0-0 ♖a5 12.a3, Balko – Polacik, Slovakia 2000, 12... cxd4 13.♙xd4 ♘xd4 14.♘xd4 ♘c5 15.♘b1 ♙g4+; 8.dxc5 dxe5 9.fxe5 ♘xe5 10.♖xd8 ♗xd8 11.♘d5 ♘bc6 12.♗d1 ♙f5 13.♙g5, Bartha – Sidhoum, Creteil 1983, 13...h6+ and it would not work for him to opt for 14.♘xe7?, in view of 14... ♘xe7 15.♙xe7 ♗e8 16.♙d6 ♘d3 17.♘d2 ♘f2; 7.exd6 exd6 8.♘f3 ♘f6 9.♙d3 ♗e8 10.♘e2 c5 11.d5 b5 12.cxb5 ♙b7 13.♙c4 ♘bd7 14.0-0

♘b6 15.♙b3 c4 16.♙c2 ♘bxd5+ Psarakis – Hatzidakis, Chania 1998.) 7...c5 8.d5 (After 8.♙e3 cxd4 9.♙xd4 dxe5 10.♙xe5 ♘xe5 11.♘xe5 ♘d7 12.♘xd7 ♙xd7 13.♙e2 ♙c6 14.♖xd8 ♗fxd8+ – White's centre has disappeared and Black's two bishops will be omnipresent in this endgame, Glicenstein – Amsellem, France 1997; 8.exd6 exd6 9.d5 ♗e8 10.♙e2 ♙xc3 11.bxc3 ♖e7 12.a4 ♘f6 13.♗a2 ♘e4 14.♖b3 ♖f6 15.♙d2 ♘xd2 16.♗xd2 ♖xf4+ Zibell – Riebert, Germany 2002.) 8...dxe5 9.♙d3, Fonoage – Marcu, Deva 1999, 9...f5 10.fxe5 ♘xe5 11.♘xe5 ♙xe5 12.♖e2 ♘d7 13.♙g5 – White has some compensation for the pawn, but not more than that.

The move 6.♙e3?!, aimed at preventing c7-c5, brought success to White in the ancient game Spassky – Rukavina, Sochi 1973, since Black responded with the tentative move 6...c6. What was White going to do after 6...♘g4 – ? He would be reluctant to part with his bishop, for example: 7.♖d2 ♘xe3 8.♖xe3 ♘a6 9.a3 c5 10.d5 ♖a5 11.♘ge2 ♙d7 12.♖b1

b5↑ Vicainne – Renard, Bethune 2007. If it goes back to its initial position 7.♙c1, then Black can repeat moves with 7...♟f6, but he can also try to seize the initiative with: 7...c5 8.d5 ♙d4 9.♟h3, J.Balogh – Szittar, Zalakaros 1993, 9...e5! 10.dxe6 ♙xe6, with a very active position.

In case of 6.♙d3 c5 7.d5 e6 8.♟f3, or 8.dxe6 fxe6 9.♟f3, there arise positions analyzed in chapter 18. White connects sometimes the early development of the bishop on d3 with the idea to deploy his knight to e2 – 8.♟ge2. The rather modest e2-square is not the best for his knight in an aggressive scheme like the Four Pawns Attack. The knight on e2 does not support the eventual pawn-break e4-e5 and it cannot go to c4 after the exchange exd5 cxd5. It can only go to g3, from e2, but with a black pawn on g6, it has practically nothing to do there. It is not surprising that Black obtains easily an excellent position after: 8...exd5 9.exd5 (9.cxd5 a6 10.a4 ♟bd7 11.0–0 ♖e8 12.♟g3 ♜c7 13.h3 c4 14.♙c2 ♖b8 15.♙h1 b5 16.axb5 axb5 17.e5 dxe5 18.f5 b4 19.♟ce4 ♙b7 F.Benko – Najdorf, Buenos Aires 1960) 9...♟h5 10.0–0 f5 11.♙d2 ♖e8 12.♜c2 ♟d7 13.h3 ♟f8 14.♙ae1 ♙d7 15.♙h2 a6 16.a3 ♟f6 17.♟g1 ♜c7 18.♟f3 b5 19.♙xe8 ♙xe8 20.♙e1 ♖b8 Keres – Panno, Los Angeles 1963.

The game develops in the spirit of the Benko Gambit after 6.♙e2

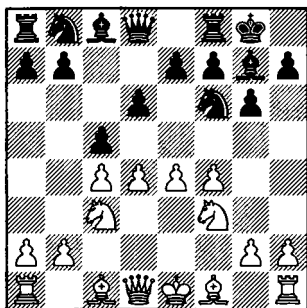
c5 7.d5 (7.♟f3 – see variation A) 7...b5 8.cxb5 (White's attempt to advance his pawn-centre backfires after 8.e5 dxe5 9.fxe5 ♟fd7 10.e6 fxe6 11.dxe6 ♟e5 12.♜xd8 ♙xd8 13.cxb5 ♙xe6 14.♟f3 ♟d3 15.♙xd3 ♙xd3 Olivares – Dalinger, Acasusso 1991.) 8...a6 9.e5 (9.a4 axb5 10.♙xb5 ♙a6 11.♙d2 ♙xb5 12.axb5 ♟bd7 13.♟ge2 e6 14.dxe6 fxe6 15.0–0 ♜b6 Wrendenberg – Johnson, Sweden 1998; 9.b6 ♜xb6 10.♟f3 e6 11.dxe6 ♙xe6 12.♟g5 ♟c6 13.♟xe6 fxe6 14.0–0 ♟d4 15.♙f3 ♙ad8 16.♙h1 d5 17.e5 ♟d7 Isbulatov – Shishkin, Minsk 1996; 9.bxa6 ♙a5 10.♙d2 ♙xa6 11.♟f3 ♙xe2 12.♜xe2 ♙a6 13.♜xa6 ♟xa6 14.0–0 ♖fb8 15.♙ab1 ♟d7 16.b3 ♟c7 17.a4 ♖b7 18.♟a2 f5 19.exf5 ♟xd5 20.fxc6 hxc6 21.♟g5 ♙ab8 Behm – Bischoff, Bad Wiessee) 9...dxe5 10.fxe5 ♟fd7 11.♟f3 (11.e6 ♟e5 12.♟f3 ♟xf3 13.♙xf3 axb5 14.d6 ♙a6; 14.exf7 ♙xf7 15.0–0=) 11...♟xe5 12.♟xe5 ♙xe5 13.0–0 ♙b7 14.bxa6 ♙xa6 15.♙xa6 ♟xa6 Karpeta – Stanach, Krakow 2005.

6...c5

This is Black's most principled response. White's infantry is already away from his panzer regiments and Black should better attack it immediately, before it has the adequate piece-support.

In this chapter we will have a look at some relatively seldom played variations and in the next chapter we will deal with the main line – 7.d5.

3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4. e4 d6 5. f4 0-0 6. ♖f3 c5



A) 7. ♗e2

B) 7. dxc5

A) 7. ♗e2 cxd4 8. ♖xd4 ♖c6

It turns out now that White has played f4 in a popular position from the Maroczy system. As a result, he lags in development and his e4-pawn is not supported by its neighbour. Black has excellent chances of seizing the initiative.

9. ♗e3

After 9. ♖c2 ♗e6 10. 0-0 ♖c8, White's c4-pawn has become an attractive target for Black's attack. White cannot protect it with b2-b3, because his knight on c3 will be hanging along the long diagonal (Black has the tactical strike ♖xe4 up his sleeve.), as well as along the c-file, after a6 and b5.

Now, White's hasty kingside attack can only cause additional problems for him: 11. f5 ♗d7 12. g4 h6 13. h4 ♖e5 14. g5 hxg5 15. hxg5 ♖h7 16. ♖a3 (In the Chelyabinsk variation White has the d5-square as a compensation for the fact that his knight is on a3...) 16...

♖c6 17. ♖b1 ♖b6 18. ♗g2 ♗e5∞ – the position remains sharp, but Black's game is evidently easier, at least because his king is safer.

On the other hand, White must do something on the king-side; otherwise, Black will have his hands free for queenside actions: 11. ♗e3 a6 12. ♖e1 ♖a5 13. b3 b5 14. c5 ♖b7 15. b4, Yewdokimov – Grechkin, corr. 1962, 15... dxc5 or 11. ♖b1 a6 12. b3 b5 13. cxb5 axb5 14. ♗f3, Jezek – Boleslavsky, Vienna 1957, 14... ♖a5 15. ♗d2 b4 16. ♖a4 ♖d7, Boleslavsky.

9... ♗g4

Black can try another version of the same idea: 9... ♖g4!? 10. ♗xg4 ♗xd4 11. ♗xd4 ♗xg4 12. ♖d2 ♖xd4 13. ♖xd4 e5! (preparing the check on the h4-square) 14. fxe5 ♖h4 15. ♖f2 ♖xf2 16. ♖xf2 dxe5 17. ♖ac1 ♖ad8 18. ♖d5 ♗e6 19. ♖hd1 f5 20. exf5 gxf5= Uhlmann – Fischer, Leipzig 1960.

10. ♖xc6

10. ♗xg4 ♖xg4 11. ♖xg4 ♖xd4 12. ♖d1 ♖c6= Benko – Reshevsky, Los Angeles 1963.

10... ♗xe2 11. ♖xd8 ♗xd1 12. ♖xd1

But not 12. ♖xb7, Winter – Uhlmann, Hastings 1960, 12... ♗c2

12... ♖fxd8 13. ♖e2 ♖dc8 14. b3

14. c5 ♖g4 15. cxd6 ♖xe3 16. ♖xe3 exd6 17. ♖d5 ♖f8 18. ♖d2 ♖c6 19. ♖f1 ♖e8 20. ♖d3 f5 21. exf5 ♖c5, draw, Malich – Stein, Berlin 1962.

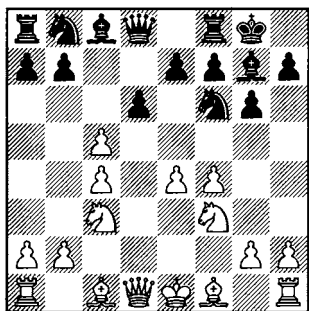
14...b5 15.e5!?

White can win a pawn, but his pieces will be isolated on the flank and Black will obtain an excellent compensation by advancing his pawns in the centre: 15.♟xb5 ♞xe4 16.♞f3 f5 17.♞xa7 ♜cb8 18.♞d5, Schroeder – Moehring, Aschersleben 1963, 18... ♞c3 19.♞a5 e5 20.♞e1 e4 21.♞f2 d5 22.cxd5 ♞d8±

15...dxe5 16.fxe5 ♞g4 17. ♟xb5 a6 18.♞c3 ♟xe5 19.♞d5 ♞xe3 20.♞xe3 ♞a7∞ – Black has sufficient counter arguments against his opponent's passed pawns.

B) 7.dxc5

This move is absolutely not in the spirit of the Four Pawns Attack. After this exchange, there remains no venom in White's set-up, including the move f2-f4.



Black is faced with a choice here. He can enter an approximately equal endgame with 7... **dxc5!?** (B2), or he can preserve the queens and go to a slightly

worse, but a very complicated position with 7...♞a5 (B1).

B1) 7...♞a5 8.♟d3

The developments are in favour of Black after 8.cxd6 ♞xe4 9.dxe7 ♞e8 10.♟d2 ♞xc3±

It looks dubious for White to try to acquire even more space on the queenside with: 8.♟d2?! ♞xc5 9.b4 (9.♞c1 ♞c6 10.♟e2 ♟g4 11.♟e3 ♞a5 12.0-0 e5 13.f5 gxf5 14.exf5 ♟xf5 15.♞h4 ♟g6 16.♞f5 ♟xf5 17.♞xf5 ♞e7 18.♞f2 ♞e8 19.♟h6 f5 20.♞g5 ♞d8 21.♞af1 ♞f6 22.♟xg7 ♞g6 23.♞d2 ♞xg7± Rotstein – Westerinen, Dresden 2006; 10...♞g4! – This is stronger for Black. 11.♞f1 ♞d4 12.♞xd4 ♟xd4± – White's king is stranded in the centre and he can hardly complete his development.) 9... ♞b6 (This possibility can attract only players who would not mind a quick draw in the opening: 9...♞xb4 10.♞a4 ♞a3 11.♟c1=) 10.♟d3 ♞c6 11.♞a4 ♞c7 12.♞c1 ♟g4 13.h3 ♟xf3 14.♞xf3, Chtcherbine – Zuriel, Buenos Aires 1999 and here, Black had to play 14...e5 15.0-0 exf4 16.♞xf4 ♞h5 17.♞f2 ♟d4 18.♟e3 ♞xb4, with an advantage.

8...♞xc5

It is worse for Black to play 8...♞fd7?! 9.cxd6! (In one of my games, my opponent was afraid to sacrifice his rook and he soon lost the battle for the dark squares in the centre: 9.♟d2 ♞xc5 10.♟c2 ♞c6 11.a3 ♞a6 12.♞b5 ♟g4 13.♞b1

♖d4 14. ♖bxd4 ♗xd4 15. ♗e2 ♗ac8 16.h3 ♗xf3 17.gxf3 ♖a4 (Gorbatow – Bologan, Novgorod 1995.) 9... ♗xc3 10.bxc3 ♗xc3 11. ♗d2 ♗xa1 12.dxe7 ♗e8 13.e5. Presently, White has only two pawns for the rook (Black can even recapture one of them when he pleases.), but Black's queen has been trapped on the a1-square, while his king's position has been compromised and there are almost no defenders around it. 13... ♖c6 14.0-0 ♖d4 15. ♖g5! (The idea of sacrificing a rook is well familiar, but in the first game played in this line, White followed the wrong path: 15. ♗b2?! ♖xf3 16.gxf3 ♗xa2, Ljubojevic – van Der Wiel, Wijk aan Zee 1986, 17. ♗c3 ♖c5 18.e6 ♗xb2 19. ♗xb2 ♖xd3 20. ♗d2 ♗xe6 21. ♗xd3 ♗xe7) 15... ♖e6 16. ♖xe6 fxe6 17. ♗xg6! hxg6 18. ♗a3 ♗xf1 19. ♖xf1 – The material is equal indeed, but White's kingside attack will soon become decisive, Vukadinov – Smirin, Winnipeg 1997.

9. ♗e2 ♖c6

The move 9... ♗g4, does not have any separate importance in connection with ♗h5: 10. ♗e3 ♗h5 11.0-0 ♖c6 (11... ♖bd7 12. ♗ac1 ♗a5 13.h3 ♗xf3 14. ♗xf3 ♗fc8, Sieciechowicz – B.Socko, Warsaw 2006, 15.a3 ♗d8 16. ♗d2 ♖c5 17. ♗c2±) 12. ♗f2 (12. ♗ad1 ♖d7 13. ♗b1 ♗a5 14.h3 ♗xf3 15. ♗xf3 ♗xc3 16.bxc3 ♖b6 17. ♗f2 ♖a4 18. ♗c2 ♗ac8 19. ♗d5 ♗a6 20. ♗b5 ♖b6 21. ♗e2 ♖a5 22. ♗d3 ♖a4 23. ♗b4

♖c5= Vokac – Marholev, Prague 2007; 12. ♗ac1 ♖d7 13. ♗f2 ♖c5 14. ♗b1 ♗ac8 15. ♖d2 ♖b4 16.h3, draw, Neuman – Havlik, Klatovy 2007; 12.h3 ♗xf3 13. ♗xf3 ♖d7 14. ♗f2 ♗a5 – White's pieces are misplaced) 12... ♗xf3 13.gxf3! Black would have been quite happy in an endgame, but now it becomes clear that his queen is misplaced and his opponent can exert a powerful pressure along the g-file. 13... ♗a5 14. ♖h1 ♖d7 15. ♗ac1 ♗fc8 16. ♗g1, Heberla – Zhe-rebukh, Pardubice 2007, 16... ♖c5 17. ♗b1 ♗b4 (17... ♖a4 18. ♖xa4 ♗xa4 19.f5!) 18.f5± – White has good attacking chances.

10. ♗e3 ♗a5 11. ♗c1

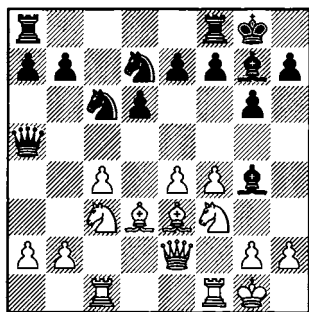
It would be reasonable for White to protect his knight on c3 in advance, in order to anticipate Black's counterplay connected with moves with his knight on f6. In case of 11.0-0, Black has the resource 11... ♖g4!?, for example: 12. ♗d2 (12. ♗fc1 ♖xe3 13. ♗xe3 ♗g4 14. ♗ab1 e6 15.h3 ♗xf3 16. ♗xf3 ♗ac8; 12. ♗c1 ♖d4 13. ♖xd4 ♗xd4 14. ♖h1 ♗h5 15.h3 ♗h4; 15.g3 e6 16. ♖b5 ♗c5 17. ♗g2 ♗d7 18.h3 ♗c6) 12... ♗b6 13. ♖h1 ♗xb2 14. ♗ab1 (14. ♖b5!? a6 15. ♖c7 ♗b8 16.h3 ♖f6 17. ♗fb1 ♗a3 18. ♗b3 ♗c5 and White cannot trap Black's queen) 14... ♗a3 15. ♖b5 ♗c5 16.h3 a6. This is an important intermediate move. After White's knight retreats, Black will not be afraid that his queen might be trapped on the c5-square. (White

is better after 16...♖h5 17.♗e1 ♘f6 18.♙h2 ♘e8 19.f5 ♙h6 20.♙g4 ♙xd2 21.♗xd2± Flear – Likavsky, Saint Vincent 2002.) 17.♙c3 (17.♙c7 ♙d4 18.♙xd4 ♗xc7±) 17...♙f6 18.♙a4 ♗h5 19.♙b6 ♖b8 20.f5 gxf5 21.♙xc8 ♖fxc8 22.exf5 ♙d7. Black's knights have numerous good squares in the centre, while his opponent's pawn-structure has been compromised. His two bishops compensate this indeed, so the chances are approximately equal. 23.♙e4 ♙ce5 24.♙xb7 ♖xc4=

11...♙g4

Black must get rid of this bishop.

12.0–0 ♙d7



13.♗f2

White's queen can avoid the pin with 13.♗d2, but Black can counter this in numerous fashions: 13...♙xf3 (13...♙c5 14.♙b1 ♖fd8 15.b3 ♖ac8 16.h3 ♙xf3 17.♖xf3; 14...♗b4 15.b3 a5; 15.♖f2 ♙xf3 16.gxf3 ♗xc4 17.♙d5 ♗a4, Garcia Palermo – Flores, Buenos Aires 2001, 18.b4±) 14.♖xf3 ♙c5 15.♙b1

♗b4 (15...♙a4 16.♙xa4 ♗xa4 17.♖f2 ♗b4 18.♗xb4 ♙xb4 19.c5 dxc5 20.♖xc5± Garcia Palermo – Solana, Ponferrada 1991) 16.b3 a5 17.♙d5 ♗xd2 18.♙xd2 e6 19.♙c7 ♙d4 20.♙xa8 ♙xf3 21.gxf3, Jones – Taimbert, Great Britain 1989 and here Black should better give an intermediate check on d4 – 21...♙d4 22.♙f1 ♖xa8=

13.♙h1 ♙c5 14.♙b1 ♖fc8 15.h3 ♙xf3 16.gxf3 ♙a4 17.♙xa4 ♗xa4 18.h4 ♗b4 19.♖f2 ♙d4 20.♖g2 ♗c5± Giardelli – Crosa, Pinamar 2002.

13.♖fd1 ♗h5 14.♙b1 ♖ad8 15.♖d5 ♙xf3 16.gxf3 ♗h3 17.♙h1 ♙f6 18.♖dd1 ♙h5 19.♖f2 ♙h6 20.♙e2, Bjornsson – Unnarsson, Reykjavik 2005, 20...e5 21.f5 ♙xe3 22.♗xe3 ♙h8 23.♖g1 ♖g8 24.♖cd1 ♙f6 25.♖g3 ♗h4 26.fgx6 ♖gx6=

13...♙xf3

13...♖fc8 14.♙d2 ♙c5 (14...♙b4 15.♙b1 ♙c5, Capo – Elbaba, Turin 2006, 16.♙b3 ♙xb3 17.axb3±) 15.♙b1 ♙d7 (15...♙a4 16.♙b3 ♗a6 17.♙xa4 ♗xa4 18.f5) 16.a3 ♗d8 17.e5± Elbaba – Flores, Turin 2006.

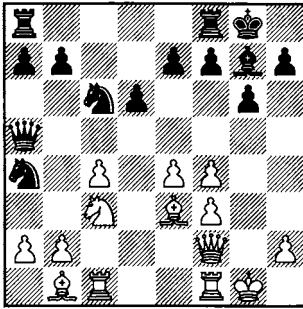
14.gxf3

14.♗xf3!? ♙xc3 (14...♖ac8 15.a3) 15.♖xc3 ♗xa2 16.♗f2 ♗a5 17.g4, Usachyi – Kosticky, corr. 1988, 17...♙c5 – White has some compensation, but not more.

14...♙c5 15.♙b1 ♙a4

The trade of the knights is in favour of Black. It is somewhat worse for him to opt for 15...♖ac8!? 16.e5 (16.♙d5 e6 17.b4

♗xb4 18. ♖e7 ♗h8 19. ♖xc8 ♖xc8
20. ♖fd1 ♖a3 21. ♗d4 ♖c6 22. ♗xg7
♗xg7∞ Grinev – V.Onischuk,
Kiev 2005) 16...b6 17.exd6 exd6
18. ♖d5 ♖fe8 19.f5 ♖e7 20. ♖cd1±



16. ♖d1

Tournament practice has confirmed the reasonability of this move. White wishes to preserve both knights with the idea to use them for an attack in the centre, or on the kingside.

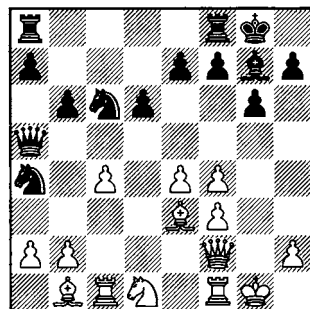
Black's game is much easier after the exchange on a4: 16. ♖xa4 ♖xa4 17. ♖fd1 (17.b3 ♖a3 18. ♖fd1 b6; 18. ♖c2 a5 19.e5 a4 20. ♗c1 ♖c5 21. ♗e3 ♖a3 22. ♗c1, draw, Barrett – Wu, Great Britain 2007; 18.c5 dxc5 19. ♗xc5 ♖xc5! 20. ♖xc5 ♗d4 21. ♖d1 ♗xf2 22. ♗xf2 ♖fd8 23. ♖cd5 e6 24. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 25. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 26. ♗e3 ♗f8= Topalov – Kasparov, Linares 1994) 17...b6 (17...♖b4 18.b3 a5 19.c5 ♖fd8 20.cxd6 ♖xd6 21. ♖xd6 ♖xd6 22.e5±; 18...♖fd8 19. ♖d5 ♖a3 20. ♖cd1 ♗b2 21.e5± Flear – Rouchouse, France 2004; 17...♖ac8 18.b3 ♖a5 19. ♖d5 ♖c7 20. ♖cd1 b6 21.a3 ♖fd8 22.h4 e6

23. ♖g5 ♖e7±, Black is preparing the pawn-break in the centre – d5, Topalov – Dolmatov, Elenite 1995; 23...♖e7!? with the idea d5) 18. ♗h1 ♖ac8 19.h4 ♖b4 (19... ♖c7 20.h5± I.Sokolov – Xie Jun, Breda 1999) 20.b3 ♖a3 21. ♖g1 ♖b2 22. ♖xb2 ♗xb2 23. ♖cd1 ♖c6 24.h5 ♗a3 25.f5 ♗c5 26. ♗xc5 bxc5 27.hxg6 fxg6= Zimmerman – Morev, Lipetsk 2007.

16...b6

16...f5, Serov – Solovjov, St. Petersburg 2006, 17.exf5 gxf5 18. ♗h1 ♗h8 19. ♖g1 e6 20.a3 ♖g8 21.b3 ♖b6 22. ♖a2 ♖d7 23.b4 ♖d8 24. ♖d2±

16...♖ac8 17. ♗h1 ♖fe8 18. ♖g1 ♖c5 19.h4 ♖c7 20. ♖d2 ♖e6 21. ♖c3 ♖ed4 22. ♖f2 ♖d7 23. ♖g3 ♗f6 24. ♖h2 e6 25.h5± – Black has managed to hold the position, but White has prepared a dangerous attack, Gabriel – Hausrath, Germany 1997.



17.f5!

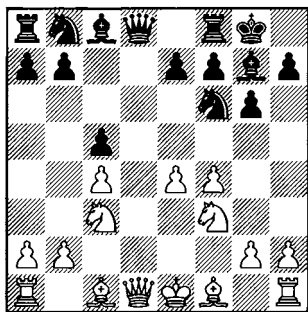
Now, Black's queen has no access to the h5-square.

If 17.a3, then 17...♖h5 (It looks

like this is the best square for the queen, because it would only impede the maneuvers of his other pieces on the queenside.) 18.b4 a5 19.b5 ♖b8!? (19...♗d8 20.♗h1 ♗c5, Kapnisis – Gelashvili, Kavala 2007, 21.♗c3 e6 22.♗e2±) 20.♗h1 (20.♗xb6 ♗xb6 21.♖xb6 ♗h6 22.♖e3 ♖h4±) 20...♗d7 21.f5 ♗ac5 22.♗c3 e6 23.♗e2 ♗h6 24.♗f4 ♗xf4 25.♗xf4 ♗e5 26.♖fd1 ♖ad8 – White can hardly protect his weaknesses.

17...♖ac8 18.♗d2 ♖c5 19.♗e3 ♖a5= – Both sides should probably comply here with the repetition of moves.

B2) 7...dxc5



8.♖xd8

Black does not have too many problems after 8.♗e3 b6 9.♗d3 ♗g4 10.♖e2, Ube – Garcia Millan, Formigal 2002, 10...♗xe3 11.♖xe3 ♗d4 12.♖e2 ♗c6.

Naturally, White can preserve the queens – 8.♗d3, but Black has a good game then too: 8...♗c6 9.0–0 (9.♗e3 ♗g4!; 9.e5 ♗b4 –

9...♗h5!? – 10.♗b1 ♖xd1 11.♗xd1, D.Fridman – Szelag, Warsaw 2008, 11...♗h5! 12.0–0 ♗e6 13. b3 f6±) 9...♗h5! 10.♗e3 (10. ♖e2 ♗g4; 10.e5 f6! 11.exf6 ♗xf6 12.♗d5 ♗g4 13.♗xf6 ♖xf6±) 10... ♗d4 (This move changes abruptly the character of the fight.) 11.♗xd4 cxd4 12.♗e2 ♗g4 13.e5 (Otherwise, Black will occupy the centre himself.) 13...♖b6 14.♖b3 ♖xb3 15.axb3 ♗b4 16.♖ad1 ♖ad8 17.h3 ♗xf3 18.♖xf3 ♗g7 19.♗b1 ♗e6 20.f5 ♗c5= White's bishop on b1 is completely out of action and Black will soon seize the initiative.

8...♗xd8 9.e5 ♗e8

It is bad for Black to opt for 9... ♗h5 10.♗e3 ♗c6 11.g3 (11.♗e2 b6 12.0–0 f6 13.♗d5 ♗g4 14.h3; 11... ♗b4 12.♗f2 b6 13.♖hd1±) 11...♗g4 12.♗e2 ♗b4 13.♗f2 ♗c2 14.♖ad1 ♗xe3 15.♗xe3. White has consolidated his position in the centre, while Black's knight on h5 is safe indeed, but it is totally misplaced.

10.♗e3

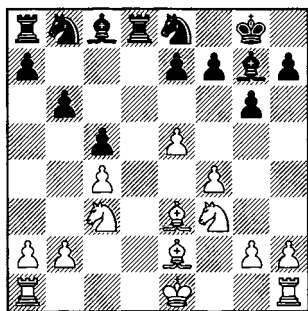
10.♗d5 ♗c6 11.♗e3 e6 12.♗c3 b6 13.♖d1 ♗b7 14.♗e2 f6 15.exf6 ♗xf6± Coves – Almenar, Manises 2003.

10...b6 11.♗e2

Black should not be afraid of 11.♗d5 ♗c6 12.0–0–0 ♗b7 13.♗d3 (13.♗e2 e6 14.♗c3 ♖xd1 15.♖xd1 ♖d8 16.♖xd8 ♗xd8 17.a3 ♗c6 18. g3 ♗f8 19.♗g5 h6 20.♗ge4 ♗e7 21.♗b5 f6 22.exf6 ♗xf6 23.♗xf6 ♗xf6 24.♗f3 a6 25.♗a7 ♗d7= Maksimenko – Cherednichenko,

3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6 5.f4 0-0 6. ♖f3 c5

Legnica 2005) 13...e6 and White's knight must retreat: 14. ♖c3 ♖d4! 15. ♗xd4 ♗xf3 16. gxf3 ♗xd4 17. ♖e2 ♗d7 18. ♗e4 ♗ad8 19. ♗xd7 ♗xd7 20. ♗c6 ♗d8 21. ♗xe8 ♗xe8 22. ♗d1 f6! ♞ – Black will have no problems after he activates his bishop, Kazhgaleyev – Kovalev, Istanbul 2000.



11...♖c6

Black plans to push f6, but he can simply develop his pieces as well: 11...♗b7 12. ♖f2 ♖c6 13. ♗hd1 ♖c7 14. g4 (14. ♗d2 ♖e6 15. ♗ad1 ♗xd2 16. ♗xd2 ♗d8 17. ♗xd8 ♖exd8 18. ♖d5 ♖e6 19. g4 f6 20. exf6 exf6 21. ♗d3 ♖f7= Capo – Alvarez, Cali 2007) 14...♗xd1 15. ♗xd1 ♗d8 16. ♗xd8 ♖xd8 17. a3 f6 18. b4 cxb4 19. axb4 fxe5 20. ♖xe5 ♖f7= Capo – Waldo, Morelia 2007.

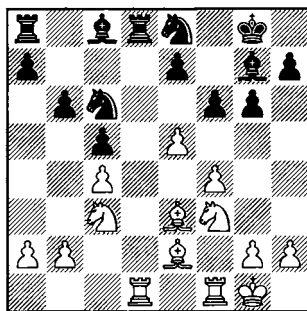
12. 0-0

12.a3 f6 13. ♖d5 ♗e6 14. 0-0 fxe5 15. ♖g5 ♗xd5 16. cxd5 ♖d4 17. ♗xd4 exd4 18. f5 gxf5 19. ♖e6

♖d6 20. ♖xd8 ♗xd8 21. ♗d3 ♗f8 22. ♗ac1 ♗h6 ♞ Jianu – Petrenko, Bucharest 2000.

12. ♖f2 f6 13. exf6 ♖xf6 14. h3 ♗f5 15. ♗ad1 ♗ac8 16. ♗hg1 ♗c2 17. ♗xd8 ♗xd8 18. ♗c1 ♗f5 19. ♗d1, ничья, Phillips – McDonald-Ross, Oxford 1967.

12...f6 13. ♗ad1



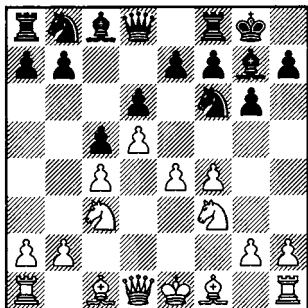
13...♗e6

Black undermines the pawn-wedge on e5, he controls the e5-square and the pawn-structure is symmetrical. It is not surprising that White's initiative evaporates gradually.

14. ♖d5 fxe5 15. fxe5 ♗xd5 16. cxd5 ♖xe5 17. ♗g5 ♗f6 18. ♖xe5 ♗xg5, Velvart – Nagy, Hungary 1990, 19. ♖f7 – This is White's last tactical trick, but it is sufficient only for a draw. 19...♗e3 20. ♖h1 ♗dc8 21. ♗d3 ♗d4 22. ♖h6 ♖g7 23. ♗f7 ♖xh6 24. ♗h3=

Chapter 18

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6
5.f4 0-0 6.♘f3 c5 7.d5



This is no doubt White's most principled move. He has placed his four pawns in the centre, in order to keep there his beautiful pawn-chain.

7...e6

A) 8.dxe6

B) 8.♗e2

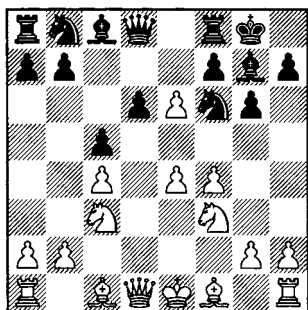
There arise interesting complications after 8.e5!? dxe5 9.fxe5 ♗g4 10.♗g5 (10.♗f4?! exd5 11.cxd5 ♘d7 12.♗e2 ♘dxe5 13.♖d2 c4 14.♘xe5 ♘xe5 15.0-0 ♗f5+ Yezepz – Eliskases, Tel Aviv 1964) 10... ♖a5 11.♗e2 (White must give up a pawn here smiling; otherwise, it would be much worse for him:

11.♖e2, Holt – Thomas, Melbourne 1992, 11...exd5 12.cxd5 ♘xe5 13.♘xe5 ♗e8 14.♗f4 ♘d7+) 11...exd5 12.cxd5 and here, instead of the move (played in fact mostly between amateurs...) 12... ♘xe5, we will analyze 12...c4!?, with the idea to open the a7-g1 diagonal, where soon White's king will appear. There might follow: 13.0-0 h6 14.♗f4, Zabala – Garcia Ruido, Los Barrios 1995, (14.♗e7 ♗e8 15.d6 ♗e6 and Black seized the initiative in the game Povah – Kruppa, Oerebro 1995.) 14...♖b6 15.♖d4 (15.♗h1!? ♘d7∞) 15... ♖xd4 16.♘xd4 ♘xe5 17.♗xe5 ♗xe5 18.♘f3 ♗g7 19.♗xc4 ♘d7, with an approximately equal endgame.

In case of 8.♗d3 exd5 9.cxd5, Black begins an immediate queenside action – 9...b5!?, with a good counterplay, for example: 10.e5 (10.0-0 c4 11.♗c2 b4 12.♘a4 ♗e8 13.♗e1 ♘a6 14.h3 ♖a5 15.♗d2 ♗d7 16.a3 ♗xa4 17.♗xa4 ♗xe4 Oud – Stellwagen, Vlissingen 2004; 10.♗xb5 ♘xe4 11.♘xe4 ♖a5 12.♗f2 ♖xb5 13.♘xd6 ♖b6 14.♘c4 ♖a6 15.♖e2 ♗d7 16.♗e3 ♗b5 17.♗hc1 ♗e8, draw, A.Zaitsev

– Bogdanovic, Sochi 1967) 10... dxe5 11.fxe5 ♗g4 12.♙xb5 ♜xe5 13.0-0 ♗g4 14.♙e2 ♙xf3 15.gxf3 (15.♙xf3 ♜xf3 16.♙xf3 ♜d7) 15... f5 16.♙e3 ♜bd7 17.f4 ♜f7 18.♙b5 ♙e8 19.♙f2 ♜d6 20.♙xd7 ♙xd7 21.♙xc5 ♙ab8= Platonov – Geller, Kiev 1958.

A) 8.dxe6



8...fxe6

Black's alternative here is – 8...♙xe6 9.♙d3 ♜c6. He must preserve his light-squared bishop, since he needs it to control the d5-square. (Naturally, after the exchange on f3, Black will deploy his knight on the d4-outpost, but this is not sufficient for equality, because his second knight does not have a good square and the knight on d4 closes the diagonal of the dark-squared bishop. For example: 9...♗g4 10.0-0 ♜c6 11.h3 ♙xf3 12.♙xf3 ♜d4 13.♙f2 a6 14.♙d2 b5 15.♙ae1 b4 16.♜e2. This move is played with the idea to trade Black's wonderful cen-

tralized knight and not the other one, which has no good perspectives at all. 16...♜xe2 17.♙xe2 ♜d7 18.♙e3± West – Solomon, Melbourne 1995. If Black manages to transfer his knight to d4, then he will have a very good position. He needs however three tempi to do it and in a sharp situation like this each tempo is vital.) 10.f5 (10.0-0 ♜a5 11.♙e2 ♙e8 12.♙e1 ♜c6 13.♙f1 ♗g4 14.h3 ♙xf3 15.♙xf3 ♜d4 16.♙f2 a6 17.♙e3 ♜d7± Bernasek – R.Mamedov, Pardubice 2007) 10...♙d7 11.0-0, Bukhman – Karasev, Leningrad 1967, 11...♙b6 12.♙f4 ♙xb2 13.♜a4 ♙a3 14.♙c1 ♙b4 15.♙d2=

9.♙d3

9.e5 dxe5 10.♙xd8 ♙xd8 11.fxe5 (11.♜xe5 ♜fd7 12.♜xd7 ♙xc3 13.bxc3 ♙xd7 14.♙e3 b6 15.♙d1 ♙xd1 16.♜xd1 ♜c6 17.♙d3 ♙a6± Karasev – Nicevski, Polanica Zdroj 1974) 11...♗g4 12.♙g5 ♙d7 13.♜e4 ♜xe5 14.♜xc5 ♜xf3, draw, G.Kuzmin – Bilek, Reggio Emilia 1977.

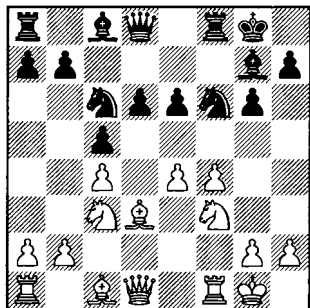
9.♙e2 ♜c6 10.0-0 b6 11.♙g5 (11.♜h1 ♙b7 12.♙e3 ♙e7 13.♙d2 ♙ad8 14.♙ae1 ♜h8 15.f5 exf5 16.exf5 gxf5 17.♙g5 ♙d7 18.♙d3, Picket – Nunn, Wijk aan Zee 1992, 18...♜b4 19.♙b1 ♙de8±) 11...♜d4 12.♙d3 ♙e7 13.♙e1 ♙d7 14.♙d2 ♙ad8 15.♜h1 ♜h5 16.♙d1 ♙f6± Fridman – Conquest, Liverpool 2008.

9...♜c6

It is interesting for Black to play 9...e5, but this move looks a

bit unnatural, because he closes deliberately his dark-squared bishop and he weakens the d5-square. 10.0-0 – This is White's most flexible move. He evacuates his king from the centre, before making the decision about the pawn-structure. (We must have a look at White's alternatives: 10.fxe5 dxe5 11.0-0 ♖c6 12.♙g5 h6 13.♙h4 ♖d6 14.♜d5 g5 15.♙e1 ♙g4 16.♙c3 ♜d4= Dokhoian – Smirin, Sverdlovsk 1987; 10.f5 gxf5 11.exf5 d5. This move has become possible, since White's king has been stranded in the centre. The line 12.♜xd5 ♜xd5 is in favour of White: 13.cxd5 e4 14.♙xe4 ♖e8 15.0-0 ♖xe4, Krause – Mattern, St. Ingbert 1991, 16.♜g5; correct is 12...e4 13.♜xf6 ♙xf6 14.♙xe4 ♖e8 15.♖e2 ♙xf5 16.♙d5 ♜h8 17.♙e3 ♖a5 18.♜f2 ♜c6=) 10...♜c6 (10...exf4 11.♙xf4 ♜c6 12.♙e2±) 11.f5 ♜d4 12.fxg6 (12.♜g5 – see 9...♜c6) 12...hxg6 13.♜h4 ♜g4 14.♖xf8 ♙xf8 15.♖e1 ♜h7 16.♜d5 ♙e7, Turov – B.Socko, Kusadasi 2006, 17.♜xe7 ♖xe7 18.♖g3 ♖g7±

10.0-0



10...♜d4

It is also interesting for Black to try here 10...a6 11.♙d2 (White's attempt to play hazardously, sacrificing material backfires: 11.♜h1 ♖b8 12.♜g5 ♖e7 13.f5 exf5 14.exf5 ♙xf5 15.♙xf5 gxf5 16.♜d5 ♜xd5 17.♖xd5 ♜h8 18.♙f4 ♙e5= Inkiov – Antic, Nis 1994) 11...♖b8 (11...♜d4 12.♖e1 ♜xf3 13.♖xf3 ♙d7 14.♖d1 ♙c6 15.♖f1 ♜h5 16.♜h1 b5 17.cxb5 axb5 18.♜xb5 ♙xb2 19.♙c4 ♙xb5 20.♙xb5 ♙d4 21.f5; 12...♜d7 13.♖d1 ♜xf3 14.♖xf3 b6 15.♙e3 ♙b7; 13...♜b8 14.♜g5 ♜bc6 15.e5 h6 16.♜f3 dxe5, Turov – Nijboer, Kusadasi 2006, 17.♖g3±) 12.♖e1 ♜h5 13.f5 ♜e5 14.♙e2, Polajzer – Rakic, Ljubljana 1981, 14...♜xf3 15.♙xf3 exf5 16.exf5 ♙d4 17.♜h1 ♖xf5=

11.♜g5

11.♜h1 ♙d7 12.♙d2 ♙c6 13.♜g5 h6 14.♜f3 ♜h5 15.♜xd4 cxd4 16.♜b5 ♖h4 17.♙e1 ♖f6= Yuneev – Fedorov, St. Petersburg 1994

11.♙d2 ♙d7 12.♖e1 ♜h5 13.♜xd4 cxd4 14.♜e2 e5 15.b4 exf4 16.♜xf4 ♜xf4 17.♙xf4 ♙e5 18.♖g3 ♖e7= Estevez – Ostojic, Keskemet 1977.

11.♜xd4 cxd4 12.♜b5 ♜e8 13.♙d2, Turova – Nebolsina, Sochi 2007, 13...a6 14.♜a3 ♜f6 15.♜c2 ♖b6 16.b4 e5=

11.♖e1 ♜h5 12.♜xd4 (12.♜h4 ♙d7 13.f5 ♙c6 14.fxg6 ♖xf1 15.♜xf1 hxg6= and the pawn is untouchable) 12...cxd4 13.♜e2 ♙d7 14.g4 ♜f6 15.g5 ♜g4 16.♖g3 ♜e3 17.♙xe3 dxe3 18.♖ab1 ♖a5, with a

double-edged position, Spyrou – Mecklenburg, Germany 1997.

11...e5 12.f5 h6 13.♗h3

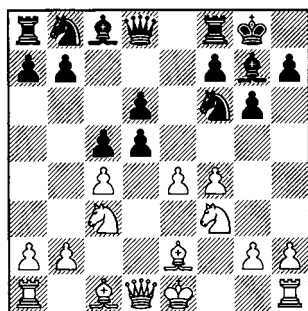
13.fxg6 hxg5 14.♖xg5 ♖g4 15.♗xf6 ♖d7 16.♖xg7 ♗xd1 17.♗xf8 ♗xf8 18.♗axd1 ♖g4 19.♗d5 ♖g7 20.h3 ♗xf1 21.♗xf1, Toporov – Chehlov, St. Petersburg 1998, 21...♗xg6

13...gxf5 14.exf5 e4!?

14...b5 15.♗e3 (15.♗xb5!?) 15...bxc4 16.♗xc4 ♗h8 17.♗xd4 cxd4 18.♗d5 ♗a6♞ Christiansen – Kasparov, Moscow 1982.

15.♗xe4 ♗xf5 16.♗xf6 ♖xf6 17.♗xf5 ♗xf5 18.♗f4, Pajeken – Shevelevich, Hamburg 2002, (18.♖d5 ♗f7 19.♗f4 ♖d4 20.♖xd4 ♗xd4 21.♗h1 ♗xb2 22.♗ad1 ♗d4♞ Lampen – Zivkovic, Kallithea 2008) **18...♗ae8 19.♖d5 ♖f7♞** – The d5-square is not so important here. Black controls the long diagonal and the d4-outpost and he has the edge.

B) 8.♗e2 exd5



9.cxd5

In case of 9.e5, Black can use the e4-square as a base for his pieces: 9...♗e4!? (The more prudent move 9...♗fd7 also leads to an advantage for Black: 10.cxd5 dxe5 11.fxe5 ♗xe5; 11.0-0 exf4 – 11...a6 12.a4 b6 13.♗c4 ♗b7 14.♖b3 – 12.♗xf4 ♗f6 13.♖d2 ♗f5 14.d6 ♗c6 15.♗c4 ♖b6 16.♗ae1 ♖b4♞; 13.♖b3 a6 14.a4 ♗bd7 15.a5 b5 16.axb6 ♗xb6 17.♗e5, Kirillov – Zhidkov, Riga 1968, 17...♗bxd5 18.♗ad1 ♖b6♞) 10.♗xd5 (10.cxd5 ♗xc3 11.bxc3 ♗d7 and White has no more resources to preserve his centre: 12.0-0 dxe5 13.fxe5 ♗xe5♞ Li Zunian – Gheorghiu, Dubai 1986) 10...♗c6 11.0-0 (11.♖c2 f5 12.0-0 dxe5 13.fxe5 ♗xe5 14.♗f4 ♗c6 15.♗ad1 g5 16.♗c7? ♗d4 17.♗xg5 ♖xc7 and White resigned, Wesseln – Vogt, Germany 1992; 16.♗e3 g4 17.♗d2 ♗d4♞; 11.♗d3 f5 12.exf6 ♗xf6 13.0-0 ♗xd5 14.cxd5 ♗d4 15.♗g5 ♖f6 and now, White's hasty attack would not work 16.♗xh7? – he should better opt for 16.♗e4 with mutual chances – 16...♗xh7 17.♖h5 ♗h6 18.g4, because of 18...♗f5! 19.♗xf5 ♗xf5 20.♖h3 ♖d4+– San Segundo – Howell, Gausdal 1986) 11...dxe5 12.fxe5 ♗xe5 13.♗f4 ♗c6, Friesen – Zozulia, Vlissingen 2005. White could have won the exchange here – 14.♗c7 ♗b8 15.♗d5 ♗xb2 16.♗b1 ♖g7 17.♗xb8 ♗xb8♞, but Black would be better with his two pawns and a beautiful dark-squared bishop.

9...♗g4

Black's light-squared bishop is not so useful sometimes in the King's Indian pawn-structures. This is particularly true in the Benoni defence. After the exchange on f3, Black has two possible plans. The first is to deploy his knights on c7 and d7 and he thus prevents e5 and prepares b5. His second plan is connected with the set-up ♖e8, ♜bd7, c4, ♜c5.

In the next chapter, we will analyze another very popular line for him – 9...♖e8.

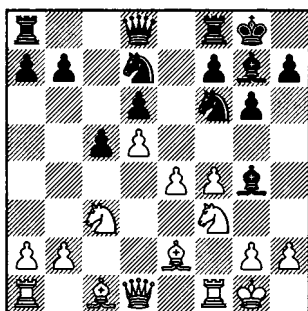
10.0–0

White's pawn-break in the centre cannot be effective, at least because his king has not castled yet: 10.e5 dxe5 11.fxe5 ♙xf3 12. ♙xf3 ♜fd7 13.e6 ♜e5 14.0–0!? (14.exf7 ♙xf7 15.0–0 ♜bd7 16.d6 ♜xf3 17.♙xf3 ♙xf3 18.♙xf3 ♙b6; 16.♜e4 ♜xf3 17.♙xf3 ♙xf3 18. ♙xf3 ♜e5+ Knezevic – Gligoric, Yugoslavia 1970) 14...fxe6 15.♙e3 ♜xf3 16.♙xf3 ♙xf3 17.♙xf3 exd5 18. ♜xd5 ♜c6 19.♙xc5 ♜h8= Borg – Kovacevic, Panormo 1998.

The plan with 10.♜d2, looks a bit artificial: 10...♙xe2 11.♙xe2 ♖e8 12.0–0 ♜a6 13.♙d3 (13.e5 dxe5 14.f5 e4!+; 13.♙f3 ♜b4 14.f5 ♜c2 15.♙b1 ♜d4 16.♙d3 ♙e7) 13...♜b4 14.♙b1 ♜g4 15.a3 ♙d4 16.♜h1 ♜xh2!!+ Zaric – Ciric, Yugoslavia 1968.

10.h3 ♙xf3 11.♙xf3 ♜bd7 12. 0–0 – see variation **B2** (10.0–0 ♜bd7 11.h3 ♙xf3 12.♙xf3).

10 ... ♜bd7



B1) 11.♖e1

B2) 11.h3

11.♜h1 ♖e8 12.♜d2 ♙xe2 13. ♙xe2 a6 14.a4 ♙c7 15.a5 ♙ab8 16.♙a3 h6 17.♜c4 b5 18.axb6 ♜xb6+ Rogers – Hulak, Nis 1985.

After 11.a4, Black is not forced to play a6, but he can go immediately with his knight to b3 and d3, after c4 and ♜c5: 11...♖e8 12.h3 ♙xf3 13.♙xf3 c4 14.♙e3 ♙a5 15.♙d4 ♜c5 16.e5 ♜fd7 17.e6 fxe6 18.dxe6 (18.♙xg7 ♜xg7, Kahn – Kayar, Budapest 2006, 19.♙d4 e5) 18...♜xe6 19.♙xg7 ♜xg7 20. ♜h1, Hausner – Vogt, Czechoslovakia 1978, 20...♙ad8 21.♜b5 ♜f6=

The exchange of the light-squared bishops after 11.♜d2 is obviously in favour of Black: 11... ♙xe2 12.♙xe2 ♖e8 13.♙f3 ♙c8 14.♜c4 ♜b6! (Black exchanges pieces favourably and he gradually obtains an advantage.) 15.♜xb6 (15.♜xd6 ♙xd6 16.e5 ♙d7 17.exf6 ♙xf6+ Moreto – Timoshenko, Lorca 2007) 15...♙xb6 16.f5 ♙b4

17.fxg6 (17.a3 ♖c4 18.♙g5 ♖xe4 19.fxg6 fxg6 20.♗f7 ♖h8 21.♖xe4 ♗xe4 22.♙f6 ♙xf6 23.♗xf6 ♖g8=) 17...fxg6 18.♙g5 ♗f8 Khaghani – Babaev, Lahijan 2005.

B1) 11. ♖e1!? ♖e8

11...♖e8 12.h3 ♙xf3 13.♙xf3 a6 14.a4 ♖c7 15.♙e3 ♗b8 16.a5 b5 17.axb6 ♗xb6 18.♗d2 (18.e5, Khmelniker – Stellwagen, Vlissingen 2005, 18...♗xb2 19.♖a4 ♗b4 20.exd6 ♖b5) 18...♗b8 19.♗a2 ♖b5 20.♖a4 ♗b7 21.e5 dxe5 22.d6 ♖d4 23.♙xb7 ♗xb7 24.♖c3 ♗c6= Gerard – Woodward, Budapest 2005.

12.h3

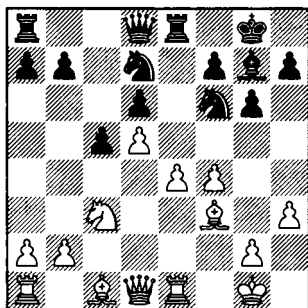
12.♙f1 a6 (12...♗c8 13.h3 ♙xf3 14.♗xf3 a6 15.a4 c4 16.♙e3 ♖c5 17.♙f2, Jobava – Nebolsina, Benidorm 2007, 17...♗b6 – After the retreat of White's bishop to f2, Black's queen is totally dominant on the queenside.) 13.a4 ♖h5 14.h3 (14.g3 f5 15.♙e2 ♙xc3 16.bxc3 ♗xe4 17.♖g5 ♗xe2 18.♗xe2, Khmelniker – David, Dresden 2007, 18...h6 19.♖e6 ♗a5 20.c4 ♗c3) 14...♙xf3 15.♗xf3 ♗h4 16.♗d1 (16.♙e3 ♙d4) 16...♗g3 17.♙e2 ♙d4 18.♖h1 ♗xf3 19.♙xf3 ♙xc3 20.bxc3 ♖g3 21.♖h2 ♖xe4 Khmelniker – Cvitan, Dresden 2007.

12...♙xf3 13.♙xf3

(diagram)

13...♗a5

Garry Kasparov played here 13...♗c8 and he equalized, but later White's play was improved: 14.♖h1 (14.♙e3 b5! 15.♖xb5 ♖xe4 16.♙xe4 ♗xe4 17.♖xd6 ♗xe3



18.♗xe3 ♙d4 19.♗f3 ♗b8! = No-gueiras – Kasparov, Barcelona 1989) 14...a6 15.a4 ♗c7 (15...c4 16.♙e3 ♖c5 17.♙xc5 ♗xc5 18.e5 dxe5 19.fxe5 ♖d7 20.e6 ♖e5 21.exf7 ♖xf7 22.♙e2) 16.♗e2 ♗b8 17.a5 (White maintains a slight edge after 17.g4 h6 18.a5 b5 19.axb6 ♗xb6 20.♗a4) 17...♗e7 18.♙e3 ♗ce8 19.♙f2 ♙h6 20.♗c1 b5 21.axb6 ♗xb6 22.♙h4 ♗b8 23.g4± Banikas – Arakhamia-Grant, Ikarria 1995.

14.♙e3

14.a4 c4 15.♙e3 ♖c5 16.♙xc5 ♗xc5 17.♖h1 ♖d7 18.♗c1 ♗b4 19.♗e2 ♗ac8 20.♙g4 ♗cd8 Forestier – Billon, Pau 2008.

White can also try to squeeze his opponent on the kingside with 14.g4 and Black should better counter this with 14...h6 15.h4 c4 16.g5 (or 16.♗e2 ♖c5 17.♗xc4 ♖fxe4 18.b4 ♗d8) 16...hgxg5 17.hxg5 ♖h7 18.♙e3 (18.♙g4 ♖c5 19.e5 ♖d3! Barrett – Povah, Birmingham 2001) 18...♖c5 19.♙xc5 ♗xc5 20.♖g2 b5 21.♗c1 a5 22.♗e2 a4 Vaisser – David, France 1997.

14...b5

It deserves attention for Black to play here 14...c4!?, for example: 15.♘h1 ♚c5 16.♙xc5 ♜xc5 17. e5 dxe5 18.fxe5 ♚d7 19.e6 ♚e5 20. exf7 ♚xf7 21.♚e4 ♜b4 22.d6 ♜ad8∞ Cebalo – Timoschenko, Italy 2003.

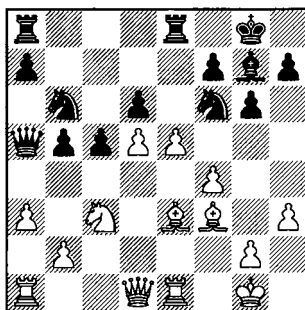
15.a3 ♚b6

15...♜ac8 16.♘h1 ♚b6 17.♙f2 ♚fd7 18.♜c2 a6 19.♙g4 h5 20. ♙xd7 ♚xd7 21.e5!? dxe5 22.f5 ♜b6 23.♜ad1, Cebalo – Smirin, Solin 1999, 23...♜f6 24.♚e4 ♜xf5+. It is better for White to continue with 16.♙f2, not allowing his opponen's knight to go to b6, but Black can ensure another square for his knight with: 16...h6 (16...a6 17.♙g3 ♚b6 18.e5±; 16...c4 17.a4) 17.♙g3 ♚h7 – White has a slight edge, but Black's position is solid enough.

16.e5

16.♙f2 ♚c4 17.♜c2 (17.e5 ♚d7) 17...♚d7 18.a4 (18.e5 dxe5 19.d6 ♜ac8 20.♙b7 ♜cd8 21.♙c6 ♜b6 22.♙xb5 ♚xd6 23.♙xd7 ♜xd7 24. b4 ♜a6 – Black is not worse at all; 18.♙e2 ♜ab8 19.a4 b4 20.♚d1 ♚a3!; 20.♚b5 ♚xb2 21.♚xd6 b3 22.♜b1 ♚xa4 23.♜a3 ♜ed8= Cebalo – Mohr, Rabac 2003; 20.♙xc4 bxc3 21.b3 a6 22.♜ec1 ♚b6+ Kozul – Nunn, Wijk aan Zee 1991.) 18...b4 19.♚b5 a6 20.♜xc4 axb5 21.axb5 (21.♜xb5 ♜xb5 22.axb5 ♙xb2 23.♜a6 ♜xa6 24.bxa6 ♜a8 25.♙e2 f6 26.♜b1 ♙c3+) 21...♜xa1 22.♜xa1 ♜xa1 23.♘h2 ♙xb2, Sladkov – S.Makarov, Dagomys 2004,

24.e5 ♙xe5!? This is a very attractive piece-sacrifice for Black. He annihilates his opponent's potentially dangerous pawns and he seizes the initiative. (It might be even stronger for Black to play here 24...♚b6 25.♜d3 ♙c1.) 25.fxe5 ♚xe5 26.♜b3 ♜a3 27.♜b1 ♚xf3 28.gxf3 ♜b8∞ – His connected passed pawns are very powerful and White's king is bare. On the other hand, he should not underestimate the might of the queen in this open position, since it can be perfectly helped by the dark-squared bishop. The prospects are balanced in this sharp position.



16...♚fd7!

Black should not be in a hurry to open the game.

17.e6 ♚c4! 18.exd7

18.♙d2 ♚db6 19.b4 cxb4 20. exf7 ♚xf7 21.♚e4 ♜xe4 22.♙xb4 ♜xe1 23.♜xe1 ♜e8 24.♜xe8 ♚xe8 25.♜e1 ♚f8 26.♙xa5 ♚xa5 27.♜c1 ♚ac4+– Colson – Parmentier, Paris 2006.

18.♜b3 ♚xe3 19.exd7 ♜e7, Bro-

mann Manthey – Wichmann, Germany 2001, 20.♞e2 ♞xd7 21.♞ae1 ♟d4+

18...♞xe3 19.♞xe3 ♟xe3 20.♞e2

20.♞d3 b4 21.♟b5, van Unen – Krebs, Email 2002, 21...bxa3 22.♟xa7 ♞xa7 23.♞xa3 ♞b8+

20...♞d8 21.♟h2

21.♟xb5 ♞xd7 22.♞xe3 ♞xb5 23.♞e8 ♟f8+

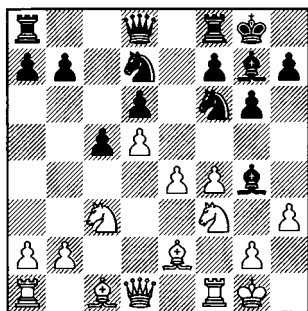
21...♟d4 22.♟xb5 ♞xd7

Black has not only neutralized his opponent's passed d-pawn, but he has remained with a very advantageous material ratio.

23.b4 ♞d8 24.♟xd4 cxd4

25.♞c1 ♞f6 Ludden – De Vilder, Wijk aan Zee 1999.

B2) 11.h3



White postpones the development of his rook on e1 with the idea that after e5, it may be better placed on d1.

11...♟xf3 12.♟xf3 ♞e8

I considered before that the immediate move 12...c4!? was very strong, but after some analysis

with "Rybka" I came to the conclusion that Black should better avoid it: 13.♟e3 ♞a5 14.♞e2 (14.♟d4 ♟c5 15.e5 ♟fd7 16.e6 fxe6 17.♟xg7 ♟xg7 18.dxe6 ♟xe6 19.♞xd6 ♞c5 20.♞xc5 ♟dxc5=) 14...♞ac8 15.g4 ♟c5 and here in case of 16.g5 ♟fd7 17.♞xc4, he would have the powerful tactical strike 17...♟xe4!! 18.♞xe4 ♞fe8 19.♞a4 (19.♞d3 ♟xc3 20.♟g4 ♟xb2 21.♟xd7 ♞c3 22.♞d2 ♞exe3 23.♞xb2 ♟g3 24.♟h1 (24.♟h2 ♞c7+) 24...♞xd5 25.♟h2 f5! 26.gxf6 ♞h5+) 19...♞xa4 20.♟xa4 ♞xe3 21.♟g4 ♞d8 (21...♟d4 22.♟h1 ♞c7 23.♞ac1 ♞xc1 24.♞xc1 f5 25.gxf6 ♟xf6 26.♞c8 ♟g7 27.♞c7 ♟h6+) 22.♞ae1 ♞xe1 23.♞xe1= Potterat – Al-Modiahki, Biel 2007. But after 16.e5! Black is in trouble: 16...♟fd7 (16...dxe5 17.fxe5 ♟fd7 18.e6 fxe6 19.dxe6 ♟xe6 20.♟xb7 ♞c7 21.♞g2±) 17.e6 ♟b6 18.f5 ♟xc3 19.bxc3 ♞xc3 20.♟h6 ♞fe8 21.♟g2+ and the final position is so pathetic for Black, that he should not see it even in his worst nightmares.

13.♞c2

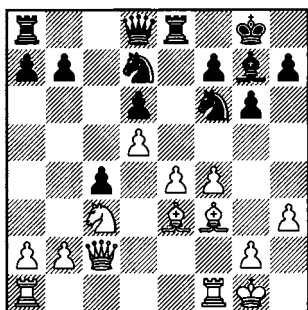
In case White is in a hurry to begin active actions on the king-side with 13.g4, Black's defensive resources are sufficient: 13...h6 14.h4 h5! (He exploits his opponent's lag in development and his vulnerable king and he opens the position.) 15.g5 (15.gxh5 ♟hx5 16.♟hx5 ♞xh4!+ Otano – Otero, Cuba 1997) 15...♟g4 16.♟xg4 hxg4 17.♞e1 (17.♞xg4 ♟xc3 18.bxc3 ♞xe4 19.♟d2 ♞e7 20.♞ae1 ♟b6=

Bach – Trisic, Hamburg 1996)
17...c4 18.♙e3 ♙xc3 19.bxc3 ♗xe4
20.♖xg4 ♗e7 21.♙f2 ♖c5= Kouat-
ly – Kindermann, Trnava 1987.

13.♖h1 b5 14.♖c2 b4 15.♖d1
♗c8 (15...♖h5 16.♙xh5 gxh5) 16.
♖e3 c4 17.♖g4, Krcmar – Felix,
Karvina 1989, 17...c3+

13...c4 14.♙e3

Black must decide now how to
organize his queenside actions.



14...♖a5

His alternative is a pawn-as-
sault: 14...a6!? 15.♗ae1 b5 (15...
♗c8 16.♖f2 h6 17.♙d4 ♖c7 18.♖h1
b5 19.a3 ♖b8 20.♗e2 a5 21.a4
bxa4 22.♗fe1 ♖h7 23.♙xg7 ♖xg7,
Buckley – Timoschenko, Metz
1996, 24.♖xa4±) 16.a3 ♖c7 17.♖f2
♗ab8 18.♗e2 a5 19.♙a7 ♗b7 20.e5
(20.a4!?) 20...b4 21.exf6 ♖xf6 22.
♗xe8 ♖xe8 23.♗e1 ♖f6 24.♙d4
bxc3 25.bxc3 ♗b8=

15.♗ad1

In case of 15.♖f2, Black should
transfer his knight immediately to

c5: 15...♗ac8 16.♗ae1, Oud – Van-
cini, Martigny 1988, 16...♖c5+

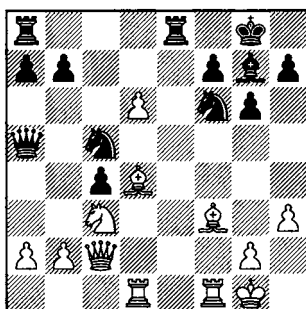
15...♖c5

Black has saved a tempo for
the move b5, assuming quite cor-
rectly that he must first improve
the placement of his pieces.

16.e5

White plays this move almost
always in the Four Pawn Attack.

16...dxe5 17.fxe5 ♗xe5 18.
♙d4 ♗ee8 19.d6



19...♖d3!

Black severs the connection
between his opponent's forces.

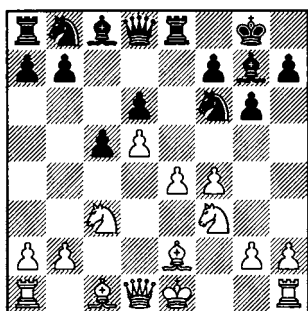
20.♖a4

20.♙xf6 ♙xf6 21.♖d5 ♖c5 22.
♖h1 ♖xd6=

20...♗ad8 21.♖xc4 ♖e5 22.
♖b3 ♗xd6 23.♙xb7 ♗d7 24.♙c3
♖c7 25.♗xd7 ♖fxd7=. White's
two-bishop advantage is immater-
ial in this position, because Black
has a wonderful bishop on g7 and
his knights have complete free-
dom of movement.

Chapter 19

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.f4 0–0 6.♗f3 c5 7.d5 e6 8.♙e2
exd5 9.cxd5 ♖e8



Black begins an immediate attack against the e4-pawn, deploying his rook on the semi-open file on which White's king remains at present. White has a choice. He can push the attacked pawn; he can protect it, or just sacrifice it.

A) 10.♘d2

B) 10.e5

In case of 10.♙c2, Black can even capture on e4: 10...♗xe4 (It is also possible for him to play 10...♗a6 11.♙xa6 bxa6 12.0–0 ♖b8 13.f5 gxf5 14.♙g5 ♙b6, or 10...a6 11.a4 ♙g4 12.0–0 ♗bd7 13.h3 ♙xf3 14.♙xf3 c4 15.♖e1 ♗c5 Des Bouillons – Sorin, France 1999.) 11.♗xe4 ♙f5. This is a deadly pin

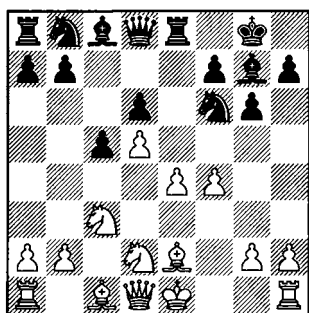
(although White has a queen on c2 and not a king) and White cannot get rid of it at all. If he protects his knight on e4 with his bishop, then the king on e1 comes under the x-ray by the rook on e8. 12.♗fd2 (12.♙d3 ♗a6 13.♙d2 ♙xe4 14.♙xe4 f5 15.♗g5 fxe4 16.♗e6 ♙h4 17.g3 ♙h5) 12...♙e7 13.♙f3 ♙xe4 14.♗xe4 f5 15.0–0 fxe4 16.♙g4 ♙f6

Black should know how to react to the straightforward response 10.0–0. There may follow: 10...♗xe4 11.♗xe4 ♖xe4 12.♙d3 ♖e8 13.f5 ♗d7 14.♗g5. It looks like White's attack is running smoothly, but Black has sufficient defensive resources. 14...♗e5 15.♗xf7 ♗xf7 16.fxg6 ♗e5 17.♙h5 (17.gxh7 ♗h8) 17...h6 (If Black wants more than a draw, he should calculate the following variation 17...hxg6 18.♙xg6 ♗xg6 19.♙xg6 ♖e5 20.♙d2 ♙e8 21.♙xd6 ♙e6!! and he has extra material and the initiative.) 18.♙xh6 18.♙f7, Otten – Muhren, Rotterdam 2000, 18...♗g4!+ White's attack has suddenly reached its dead end. 18...♗g4 19.♙f7!! White must play

imaginatively in order not to end up in a lost position with material deficit. 19...♖e7 (19...♙xh5 20.♙xg7 with a perpetual.) 20.♗h4 ♜xf7 21.gxf7 ♜xf7 22.♗xg4 ♜xh6 23.♗g6 ♗h4 24.♗h7 ♜f8 25.♙f1 ♙f6 26.♗h8 ♜f7 27.♗h7= White has nothing more than a draw by a perpetual.

A) 10.♘d2

This is a very logical move. White's knight protects the pawn for the time being and later it will occupy the comfortable c4-square. Still, it is far from clear whether it will be better placed there, in comparison to f3. In fact, White's main threat in the Four Pawns Attack is to push his central pawns, for example with e4-e5. He postpones this operation by playing ♘d2.



10...a6

It is interesting for Black to prepare b5 with pieces, leaving his a-pawn on its place at the moment 10...♙d7!? and then:

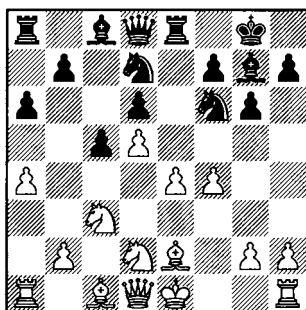
11.♗b3 ♘a6! (Black is prepar-

ing a trap for White's queen.) 12.0-0 ♖b8 and the pawn-advance b7-b5 is unstoppable.

11.a4!? (As usual, with the inclusion of the moves a4 and a6, Black obtains the wonderful b4-square for his knight.) 11...♘a6 12.0-0 ♘b4 13.♙f3 h5 14.♘c4 (14.h3 ♘g4!↑) 14...♘g4 15.h3 ♙d4 16.♜h1 ♘f2 17.♙xf2 ♙xf2 18.♘xd6 ♙xh3!, Aliev – Askerov, Baku 2004, 19.♗f1 ♙d4 20.♘xe8 ♙g4!↑;

11.0-0 b5! (White's knight on c3 is busy protecting the e4-pawn.) 12.♙xb5 (12.♗c2 b4 13.♘d1 ♘xd5 14.♗d3 ♘c7 15.f5 ♙b5—+ Ilic – Petrovic, Yugoslavia 1981) 12...♙xb5 13.♘xb5 ♘xe4 14.♘xe4 (14.f5 ♘xd2 15.♙xd2 a6 16.♘c3 ♘d7=) 14...♙xe4 15.f5 ♖b4 16.♗e2 a6 17.♘c3 ♘d7 18.a3 ♙d4 19.♜h1 ♖b3+. Black has achieved almost everything. He controls the long diagonal; he has the b-file for his rook and the e5-square for his knight.

11.a4 ♘bd7



12.0-0

3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4. e4 d6 5. f4 0-0 6. ♜f3 c5 7. d5 e6 8. ♗e2 ed 9. cd ♗e8

Following 12.a5, Black opens the b-file 12...b5 13.axb6 ♜xb6 and he obtains excellent counter chances (see the notes to the move 13.a5, after 12.0-0 ♗b8 in the main line).

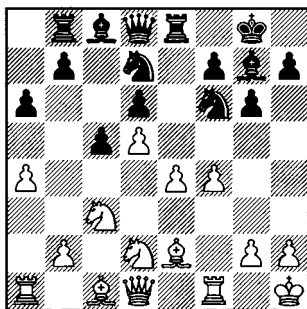
12...♗b8 13.♝h1

In case of 13.♞c2 ♞e7 14.♗a3 ♜b6 15.♞b3, Black's pieces do not have enough good squares, but they will find space later on the queenside: 15...♞d8 16.♞d1 ♖d7 17.♗f3 ♜c8 18.a5 ♗b5 19.♗e1 ♜d7 20.♗e2 ♖d4 21.♝h1 ♜a7 ♞ Ramon – Levitina, Salonika 1988.

If 13.♗e1, Black can try active queenside actions with: 13...c4!? 14.e5 dxe5 15.♜xc4 b5 16.axb5 axb5 17.♜xe5 b4 18.♜a4 ♜xe5 19.fxe5 ♜xd5 20.♗f3 ♗b5 ♞ van der Sterren – Chandler, Amsterdam 1983.

If White plays 13.a5, with the idea to stop the b7-pawn, Black should ignore this and continue with 13...b5 14.axb6 ♜xb6. He must capture here with his knight, in order to establish control over the c4-square. His a6-pawn looks weak indeed, but White cannot capture it, because of the pin ♗a8. Black has now a wonderful object for his counterplay – White's b2-pawn, attacked by the rook on b8 and the bishop on g7. The c4-square is an excellent base for White's pieces, but Black has a good b4-outpost for his pieces, if they can reach it! 15.♝h1 c4. This is a typical resource. Black's c4-pawn cannot be easily attacked

and he covers his a6-pawn, obtaining the c5-square for his king's knight. 16.♗a3 ♞c7 17.b4?! cxb3 18.♗xb3 ♜fd7 19.♜a4 ♜xa4 20.♗xb8 ♜c3 21.♗xc8 ♞xc8 22.♞e1 ♜xe4 23.♜xe4 ♗xe4 ♞ Navara – Gashimov, Reggio Emilia 2007.



13...h5

Black's light pieces do not have enough reliable squares, so he is trying to ensure a base on g4.

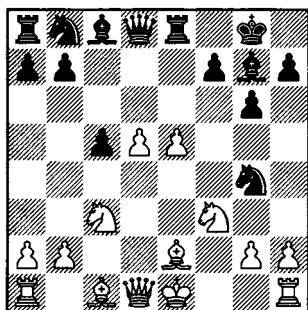
14.a5

14.♞c2 ♜g4. Black eyes the e3-square. If White ignores this, Black will play ♖d4 creating very dangerous threats on the dark squares. 15.♜f3. White covers both critical weaknesses e3 and d4. He weakens the e4-pawn in the process. 15...♜df6 16.h3 ♜h6 17.♖d2 (It deserved attention for White to play 17.♜g5, or 17.♗e1, impeding the possible pawn-advance b7-b5.) 17...b5! 18.axb5 axb5 19.♗xb5 ♜xe4 20.♗xe8 ♜g3 21.♝g1 ♜xf1 22.♗xf7 ♜xf7 23.♗xf1 ♖f5 ♞ Vegh – Borocz, Hungary 1998. Black has sacrificed a pawn, but he has excellent counterplay and all his

pieces are very active.

14...b5 15.axb6 ♖xb6 16. ♖c4 ♜xe4 17.♜xe4 ♖xe4 18. ♜xb6 ♜xb6 19.♙xa6 ♞d4 Kozul – Pantsulaia, Rethymnon 2003.

B) 10.e5 dxe5 11.fxe5 ♜g4



This is in fact the main line of the Four Pawns Attack in the King's Indian Defence. White opens the centre by advancing his pawns and the position becomes very sharp. Black should not be afraid of the pawn-break and he must find a way to create counter threats.

B1) 12.0–0

B2) 12.♙g5

B3) 12.e6

12.♙f4 ♜xe5 13.♜xe5 (13.0–0 ♜bd7 – see 12.0–0) 13...♙xe5 14.♙xe5 ♖xe5 15.0–0 ♙f5!? – see 12.0–0 ♜xe5 13.♙f4 ♙f5 14.♜xe5.

B1) 12.0–0 ♜xe5 13.♙f4 ♜bd7

It is also very good for Black to opt here for 13...♙f5, for example:

14.♞d2 ♜bd7 15.♞ad1 c4 16. ♜h1 ♜d3+ Sydor – Hever, Hungary 1976;

14.♜h1 ♜bd7 15.d6 ♞b6 16.♞d2 ♞ad8 17.♞ad1 ♜xf3 18.♙xf3 ♜e5+ El Gindy – Murey, Clichy 1998;

14.♜xe5 ♙xe5 15.♙xe5 (15. ♞d2 ♜d7 16.d6 ♜f6 17.♞ad1 ♙d4 18.♜h1 a6 19.♙f3 ♜e4 20.♜xe4 ♙xe4 21.♙xe4 ♖xe4+ De Lagontrie – Sarakauskas, Port Erin 2006; 16.♞ad1 ♙d4 17.♜h1 ♜f6 18.♙f3 ♜e4 19.♜xe4 ♙xe4 20.♙xe4 ♖xe4 21.d6 ♞d7+ Tsivelekidis – Souleidis, Aghia Pelagia 2004) 15...♖xe5, De Lagontrie – Chevrier, Chambery 1994, 16.♞d2 ♜d7 17.♞ad1 (17.g4 ♙e4 18.♞ae1 ♞e7 19.♙b5 ♞d8 20.♞f2 f5 21.♞g3 ♜h8 22.d6 ♞e6 23.♞h4 ♞f6+ – White's offensive has ended and Black is safe with an extra pawn.) 17...a6, without being afraid of 18.g4 ♙xg4 19.♙xg4 ♖g5 20.h3 f5 21.♞de1 fxe4 22.♜e4 ♖f5 23.hxe4 ♖xf1 24.♖xf1 ♞e7+ – Black has covered all the dangerous squares and he has preserved his extra pawn.

14.d6

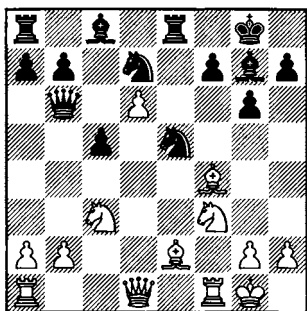
In case of 14.♙b5!? Black would not mind numerous exchanges – 14...a6 15.♜xe5 ♙xe5 16.♙xe5 ♖xe5 17.♙xd7 ♙xd7, since White's knight would not have any access to the vulnerable dark squares.

14...♞b6

Black obtained a comfortable position in the following game after 14...a6, but this move was not

3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4. e4 d6 5. f4 0-0 6. ♖f3 c5 7. d5 e6 8. ♗e2 ed 9. cd ♗e8

tested sufficiently in practice, so it would be too early to evaluate it properly: 15. ♖d5 ♗f8 16. ♖d2 ♖xf3 17. ♗xf3 ♖e5 18. ♗g5 f6 19. ♖e7 ♗h8 20. ♗h6 ♖c4 21. ♖f4 ♖xd6 22. ♖xc8 ♖xf4 23. ♗xf4 ♗axc8 24. ♗xb7 ♖xb2 25. ♗xc8 ♗xc8 26. ♗f3 f5 27. ♖c1 c4+ Gerard – Shirazi, Sautron 2005.



15. ♖d5

15. ♖d5!? ♖xd6 16. ♖xe5 (It might become even more complicated after 16. ♗b5 ♗d8 17. ♗g5 ♖xf3 18. ♖xf3 ♖e5 19. ♖f6 ♗h8; 17. ♖g5 ♖f6 18. ♗c4. This is all temporary. Black should better sacrifice his queen: 18... ♖xd5 19. ♖xf7 ♖xf4 20. ♖xd6 ♖xc4 21. ♗xf4 ♖xd6+ and his three light pieces are superior to White's queen.) 16... ♖xe5 17. ♗g5 ♗h8 18. ♖f6 ♗e6 19. ♖xd6 ♗xd6 20. ♖e8 ♗b6 21. ♖xg7 ♗xg7+

15. ♗b5 c4 16. ♗h1 ♖d3 17. ♗xc4 ♖xf4 18. ♖g5 ♖e5 19. ♗xf4 ♖xc4 20. ♗xc4 h6 21. ♖ge4, Vaisser – Nataf, France 1997 (21. ♖d5 ♖xd6 22. ♖c7 ♖xd1 23. ♗xd1 ♗g4! 24. ♗xg4 ♗ad8+) 21... ♗f5+ – The ma-

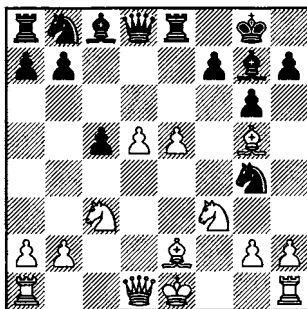
terial is equal, but Black's bishops are much stronger than his opponent's cavalry and in addition White's pawn on d6 is much rather a weakness than a threat.

15... ♖xe5! 16. ♗xe5

16. ♖d5 ♖xd6 – see 15. ♖d5.

16... ♗xe5 17. d7 ♗xd7 18. ♖xd7 ♖xb2+ – Black has not only regained his material, but he has seized the initiative, S. Ivanov – Shulman, Minsk 1995.

B2) 12. ♗g5



12... ♖b6 13. 0-0

White's attempt to seek complications in a position with opposite sides castling backfires: 13. ♖d2 ♖xe5 14. 0-0-0 ♖xf3 (It is advantageous for Black to have a knight on e5 and not a bishop. For example, after 14... ♗f5, White can play 15. ♖xe5 ♗xe5 16. ♗he1∞, threatening g4.) 15. ♗xf3 ♖d7 16. ♗he1 (16. d6 ♖e5 17. ♗e2 ♗e6 18. ♗hf1 ♖d7 19. ♗e7 ♖a5+ De Lagotrie – Vigneron, France 1995) 16... ♖e5 17. ♗e2 ♗d7 18. d6 ♖a5 19. ♗b1 ♗e6+ – Black controls reli-

ably the d7-square and four of his pieces are eyeing White's king.

13...♟xe5

It deserves attention for Black to continue with the forced line: 13...c4 14.♟h1 ♞d7 15.e6 fxe6 16.dxe6 (16.♟xc4!? ♟xb2 17.♟a4! b5 18.♟xb5 ♞f2 19.♟g1), but here not ♞df6, like everybody has played up to now, but 16...♞c5!? 17.♟xc4 (17.e7 ♟e6 18.♞d4 ♟d6 19.♟xg4 ♟xd4 20.♟f3 h6=) 17...♟xe6 18.♞d5 ♟xd5 19.♟xd5 ♟h8 20.♟c1 ♞e4 21.♟xe4 ♟xe4 22.♟c2 ♟ae8 23.♟xe4 ♟xe4 24.♟c8 ♟f8 25.♟xf8 ♟g7 26.♞d2 ♟e1! 27.♟f8f7= with a draw by a perpetual.

14.♞xe5

14.♟d2 ♟g4, Ochkoos – Mihaljevic, Toronto 1992, 15.♟ae1 ♟xf3 16.gxf3 ♞bd7

In case of 14.d6, Black should play 14...c4, not being afraid of forced lines like: 15.♟h1 ♟xb2 (15...♞d3 16.♟xd3 cxd3 17.♟xd3 ♟f5 18.♟d2 ♞d7 19.♟ad1± Gorelov – Shashin, Krasnodar 1980) and here:

16.♞a4 ♟b4 17.♟b1 ♟a5 18.♞xe5 ♟xe5 19.♟d2 ♟d5 20.♟c1 ♟xe2 21.♟xe2 ♟xd6 22.♟c3 ♟xc3 23.♞xc3 ♞c6 24.♟xc4 ♟e6=;

16.♟c1 ♟xc1 17.♟axc1 ♞bc6 18.♞b5 ♟b8 19.♞c7 ♞xf3 20.♟xf3 ♟e5 21.♟f4 ♟a5 22.♟xc4 ♟f5+;

16.♞d5 ♞xf3 17.♟xf3 (17.♞e7 ♟h8 18.♟b1 ♟e5 19.♟xf3 ♟xg5 20.♞xc8 ♟xc8 21.♟xb7 ♞d7+) 17...♟xa1 18.♟xa1 ♟xa1 19.♟xa1 ♞d7 20.♟e7 (20.♞c7 ♟e5) 20...♟b8 21.♞c7 (21.♟e1 c3! 22.♞c7 ♟f8

23.♟xf8 ♞xf8 24.♟c1 ♟e6 25.♟xc3 ♞d8+) 21...♟f8 22.♟e1 b5+ Goczan – G.Horvath, Eger 1987.

14...♟xe5

There arise interesting complications after 14...♟xe5!? and then:

15.♟d2 ♟b4!? (15...♞d7 16.♟ad1 a6 17.♟h1 ♟d4 18.♟f4 f5 19.d6!± Vaisser) 16.♟ae1 ♟f5 17.♟b5 ♟d4 18.♟h1 ♟xd2 19.♟xd2 ♟d7 20.♟c4 f6 21.♟h6 ♞a6 22.d6 ♟h8 23.♟f7 ♟ed8 24.♟f4 ♟d4+;

15.♟b5 ♟d7 16.♟f3 f5 (16...f6+) 17.♟c4 ♟xb2 18.d6 ♟h8 19.♟ac1 ♟c6 20.♟h3 ♞d7+– Nei – Ciocaltea, Zinnowitz 1966;

15.♟c4 ♟b4!? 16.♟f3 (16.♟b3 ♟f5 17.d6 ♟xb3 18.axb3 ♟xd6 19.♞d5 ♞d7 20.♟xf5 gxf5 21.♟b5 ♟e5 22.♟xd7 ♟ed8 23.♟xd8 ♟xd8 24.♞e7 ♟f8 25.♟xf5 ♟xe7 26.♟xa7 ♟f6 27.♟xh7 b5= Janosevic – Forintos, Vrnjacka Banja 1973) 16...♟f5 (16...f6 17.♟xf6 ♞d7 18.♟g7 ♟xg7 19.♟f7 ♟h6 20.♟xe8 ♟xc4 21.♟ae1→) 17.♟b5, Vaisser – Degraeve, Cannes 1990, (White loses after 17.g4?, in view of 17...♟xb2 18.♞e2 ♟d4 19.♞xd4 ♟xd4 20.♟f2 ♟xa1, Mueller – Sjogirov, Kirishi 2004; or 18.♟fe1 ♞d7 19.gxf5 ♟xh2 20.♟f1 ♟d4 21.♟g2 ♟xg2 22.♟xg2 ♟xc3) 17...♟d4 18.♟h1 ♟f8 19.♟h6 ♟xb2 20.♟xf8 ♟xc3 21.♟xc3 ♟xc3 22.♟ac1 ♟b2 23.♟xc5 ♟xc1 24.♟xc1 a6 25.♟f1 ♞d7 26.♟d4 b5=

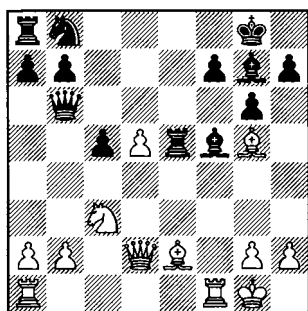
15.♟d2

In case of 15.♟f4, Black should simply sacrifice the exchange:

3. ♖c3 ♖g7 4.e4 d6 5.f4 0-0 6. ♖f3 c5 7.d5 e6 8. ♖e2 ed 9.cd ♖e8

15... ♖xb2 16. ♖xe5 ♖xe5 17. ♖b5 a6
18. ♖b1 ♖xa2 19. ♖c7, Delalande –
Delalande, Trignac 2001, 19... ♖a7
20.d6 b5+

15... ♖f5



16.g4

16. ♖f4 ♖e8 17.d6 ♖c6+

16. ♖c4 ♖d7 17. ♖f4 (After 17.
d6, Black should control the d5-
square: 17... ♖e6+) 17... ♖ee8 18.
♖ad1 ♖ad8+

16.d6 ♖d7 17. ♖d5 ♖xd5 18.
♖xd5 ♖e6 19. ♖d2 ♖xb2 20. ♖xb2
♖xb2 21. ♖ab1 ♖d4 22. ♖h1 ♖b8+
Jones – Sandler, Gold Coast
2001.

16. ♖ae1 ♖d7 17.d6 c4 18. ♖h1,
Banikas – Grigore, Genoa 2000
and here Black had to continue
with 18... ♖d3! 19. ♖f4 ♖xe2
20. ♖xe2 ♖xe2 21. ♖xe2 ♖c6 22. ♖g3
b5+ – His knight is an excellent
blocking piece and it neutralizes
White's only dangerous idea.

16. ♖ad1 ♖d7 17.d6, Cebalo –
Isonzo, Montecatini Terme 2002,
17... ♖ae8 18. ♖e7 (18. ♖f4 ♖xe2
19. ♖xe2 ♖xb2+; 18. ♖c4 ♖e6) 18...
c4 19. ♖f2 ♖c8 20. ♖f3 ♖e6 21. ♖d5

♖xd5 22. ♖xd5 ♖f5+ – White's first
attacking wave has been parried
and Black's life is easier now.

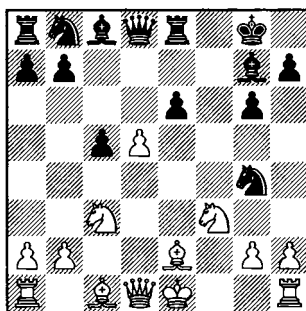
16... ♖d7

16... ♖e4!?

17. ♖f4 ♖e8 18. ♖h1 ♖a6 19.

♖ae1 ♖ad8+ – This position re-
sembles very much the Gruenfeld
Defence, except that White has
some problems with his kingside
pawns. One of them is missing
and the other one is placed rather
awkwardly on g4.

B3) 12.e6 fxe6



B3a) 13.d6

B3b) 13. ♖g5

It would not be consistent
for White to play 13.0-0 exd5
14. ♖xd5 ♖e6 15. ♖c4 (15. ♖f4 ♖xd1
16. ♖xd1 ♖f7 17. ♖g5 ♖e5 18. ♖xf7
♖xf7 19. ♖c4 ♖d4 20. ♖h1 ♖c6+
Czuchnicki – Karbowiak, Poznan
2006) 15... ♖e5 16. ♖g5 (16. ♖xe5
♖xe5 17. ♖b3 ♖c6 18. ♖f6 ♖xf6
19. ♖xe6 ♖h8+) 16... ♖xf3 17. ♖xf3
♖xg5 18. ♖ae1 ♖f8! 19. ♖xe6 ♖d4
20. ♖h1 ♖xf3 21. ♖e8 ♖g7 22. ♖xf3

♖c1 23.♙f1 ♘c6 24.♞xa8 ♘e5-+
Niemela – Tal, Riga 1959.

B3a) 13.d6

The positions with a white pawn on d6 deserve a very thorough attention. It is one thing when there are only a few pieces left on the board and the blocking knight is safe and it is quite different when the board is full of pieces and Black's every imprecision may have terrible consequences for him. It is essential for him to know how to deploy his pieces.

13...♙d7!

Black wishes to place his bishop on c6 and his knight on d7, which is more flexible than the straightforward approach 13...♘c6 14.0-0 (14.♘g5 ♘h6 15.0-0 ♘f5 16.♘ge4 h6 17.♘b5 ♞f8 18.♘c7 ♞b8 19.♙c4, Vasilchenko – Kovalev, Katowice 1990, 19...♘h7! 20.♞e1 ♙d4 21.♘h1 ♘xd6+) 14...♞f8!? (White is better after 14...♘d4 15.♘e4 ♘f6 16.♙g5 ♘xe4 17.♙xd8 ♞xd8, Arencibia – Pere-dun, Toronto 2003, 18.♘h1 ♘xd6 19.♘xd4 ♙xd4 20.♞b3±; 15...♞f8 16.♙g5 ♞d7 17.♘xd4 ♙xd4 18.♘h1 ♞xf1 19.♙xf1 h5 20.♞c2±) 15.♙g5 ♙d4 16.♘xd4 (16.♘h1 ♞xd6 17.g3 ♘ce5 18.♙f4 ♞c6 19.♙b5 ♞b6 20.♘xe5 ♘xe5+ Gloria – Sutter, Geneva 1993) 16...♞xf1 17.♞xf1 ♞xg5 18.♘xc6 ♞e3 19.♘h1 ♘f2 20.♘g1 ♘h3, with a perpetual check.

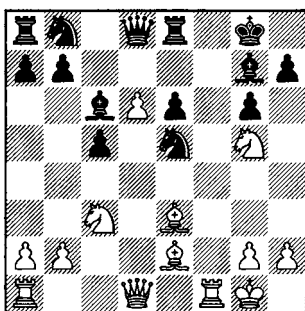
14.0-0

14.♘g5 ♘e5 15.0-0 ♙c6 – see 14.0-0.

14...♙c6 15.♘g5 ♘e5 16.♙e3

16.♘ge4 ♘bd7 17.♙g5 ♞b6 18.♞c2 c4 19.♘h1 h6 20.♘f6 ♙xf6 21.♙xf6, Kantorik – Sikora, Tatranske Zruby 2006, 21...♘xf6 22.♞xf6 ♘g7 23.♞af1 ♞d4!+

After 16.♙f4 ♘bd7 17.♞e1 h6 18.♘ge4 ♞b6, Black has completed successfully his development, while White still must prove the correctness of his pawn-sacrifice.



16...♘bd7 17.♞d2 ♞a5 18.h3 ♞ad8∞ – Black has mobilized his forces, preventing his opponent from starting an offensive after d6. In this position, he can go for c4, or he can transfer his knight to d5 via b6.

B3b) 13.♙g5

I encountered over the board this seldom played move and naturally, I considered

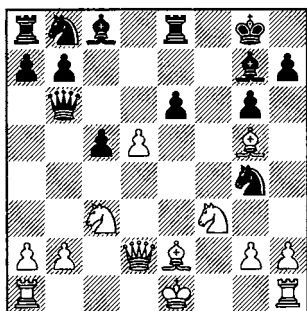
13...♞b6!

However, I was either not resolute enough or I was not in the right mood, but I failed to find the correct decision.

3. ♖c3 ♗g7 4. e4 d6 5. f4 0-0 6. ♖f3 c5 7. d5 e6 8. ♗e2 ed 9. cd ♗e8

I preferred 13... ♖f6 14. d6 h6 (Black has an interesting alternative here, but it requires a thorough analysis – 14... ♗b6!?) 15. ♗e3! (This would have been stronger for White than what my opponent chose 15. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 16. ♖b5 ♖c6 17. ♖c7; 16... ♖a6 17. d7 ♗xd7 18. ♗xd7 ♗xb2 19. ♗d1 ♗xa2 20. ♖d6 ♗f8 21. ♖xb7±; 16... ♗d7 17. ♖c7 ♗xb2 18. ♗b1 ♗c3 19. ♖f2 ♖c6 20. ♖xa8 ♗xa8 21. ♗xb7 ♗d8±; 17... ♖c6 18. ♖xa8 ♗xa8 19. 0-0, Jobava – Bologan, Turin 2006 and now, Black should have completed his development: 19... ♗d8! 20. ♗b1 ♖d4 21. b4 cxb4 22. ♗xb4 ♖f5 with a complicated position.) 15... ♖bd7 16. 0-0 (16. ♖b5 ♖d5). I know now that White has compensation for sure, but I do not know what to recommend to Black. For example: 16... ♖g4 17. ♗d2 c4 18. ♗c2 ♖de5 19. ♖xe5 ♖xe5 20. ♗f4†

14. ♗d2



14... c4

Inarkiev could have given up

his bishop – 14... ♗xc3, but he had to calculate this variation to the end: 15. bxc3 exd5 16. 0-0 c4 17. ♖d4 ♖c6 18. h3 ♖xd4 19. cxd4 and here Black would have an important intermediate move 19... h6! 20. ♗ab1 (20. ♗xg4 ♗xg4 21. ♗xh6 ♗e2†) 20... ♗xe2! 21. ♗f4 ♗f2! After this, there arises by force a material ratio of a rook and a bishop against a queen and neither side has any serious chances of winning the game: 22. ♗xf2 ♗xb1 23. ♗f1 ♗xf1 24. ♗xf1 hxc3 25. hxc3 ♗xg4=

15. 0-0-0

White's attempt to hold on to his passed d-pawn 15. d6, would lead to the loss of his castling rights: 15... ♗f2 16. ♖d1 ♗c5 17. ♖c1 ♖d7 18. h3 ♖gf6 19. ♗d4 ♖d5†

15... exd5 16. ♗he1

In case of 16. ♖xd5, Black exploits the overburdening of White's queen: 16... ♗xb2! 17. ♗xb2 ♗xb2 18. ♖xb2 ♗xe2 19. ♖c3 ♖c6 20. ♗he1 ♗xe1 21. ♗xe1 h6! = It is essential for Black to repel the enemy bishop from g5, because he obtains additional squares for his king.

16... ♖c6

16... ♗e6 17. ♖xd5 ♗xd5 18. ♗xc4!±

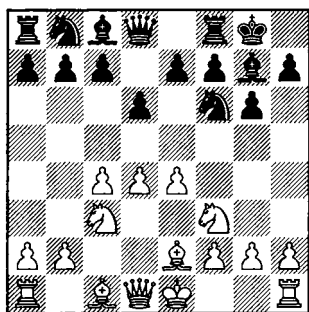
17. ♗xc4 ♗f5 18. ♗xd5 ♖h8

19. ♖h4, I. Popov – Inarkiev, Sochi 2008 and here Black could have retreated his bishop: 19... ♗d7 20. ♗xe8 ♗xe8 21. ♗f7 ♗f8 22. ♗xd7 ♗xc3 23. bxc3 ♖ce5= with an equal position.

Part 5

The Classical System

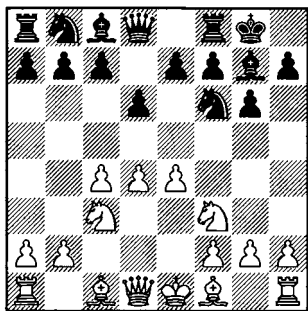
1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6 5.♘f3 0-0 6.♗e2



White's last two moves lead to the so-called Classical system,

which is White's most popular response to the King's Indian Defence. This name is due to the fact that White develops his pieces according to the classical principles. He occupies the centre with pawns and then he develops his knights and later the bishops. Black's counterplay is usually connected with the pawn-advance e7-e5, after which there appears in the centre the thematic juxtaposition of the pawns on e4 and e5.

Chapter 20 1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♗g7 4.e4 d6 5.♗f3 0-0



6.♗e2

At first, at the dawn of the appearance of the Classical system, White used to play the move 6.♗g5, which was introduced by Alexander Alekhine in his game against Reti in the year 1922 and later in the 60ies of the past century Lajosh Portisch and Wolfgang Uhlmann started playing it too. For a period of about more than ten years this line was very popular, but it came gradually out of fashion, since it became clear that Black had several comfortable ways of countering it. The line might still become modern some day, because it seems reasonable from the positional point of view. It is in fact a hybrid between the

Averbakh system and the Classical system.

According to theory, Black's main reply against it should be: 6...h6 7.♗h4 g5 8.♗g3 ♘h5 9.♗e2 e6 (9...♘d7 10.0-0 e6 11.♗e1 ♘xg3 12.hxg3 f5 13.exf5 exf5 14.♗c2 c6 15.♖d2 ♗f6 16.d5 c5 17.♗ae1 ♗e8 18.♗d3 ♗d7 19.♗e2 g4, draw, Malich – Boleslavsky, Minsk 1968) 10.d5 f5 11.♗d4 ♗xg3 12.hxg3 fxe4 13.♗xe6 ♗xe6 14.dxe6 ♗xc3 15.bxc3 ♖f6 ♘ Uhlmann – Fischer, Habana 1966, but it also interesting for Black to opt for 6...♗g4 7.♗e2 ♗fd7 8.d5 ♗b6 9.♗d2 ♗xe2 10.♖xe2 a5 (10...♗8d7 11.0-0 c6 12.f4 ♗c8 13.♗f3 ♖e8 14.♗e1 e6 15.♖f1 f6 ♘ Uhlmann – Stein, Mar del Plata 1966) 11.0-0 ♗a6 12.♗ac1 ♖d7 13.f4 e6 14.f5 exf5 15.exf5 ♗ae8 16.♖f3 ♖xf5 17.♖xf5 gxf5 18.♗xf5 ♗c5= Malich – Taimanov, Harrachov 1966.

6...e5

Black has completed building up his "King's Indian household" and he has brought his king to safety, so that it is high time that he started fighting for the centre. His counter strike e7-e5, which

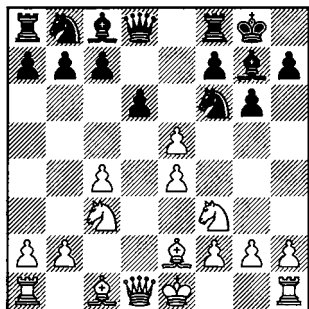
is an integral part of the tactical resources of the position, is his most principled possibility. The knight on b8 and the bishop on c8 should be better left aside for the moment, since it is not clear yet where they would be most useful. The move 6...c5, would much rather transpose to the Benoni system.

In this chapter we will have a look at the endgame arising after the exchange dxe5 (either immediately, or with the inclusion of the moves 7...0-0 ♖c6).

A) 7.dxe5

B) 7.0-0 ♖c6 8.dxe5

A) 7.dxe5



According to the principles of the fight for the centre, capturing dxe5 is a concession by White. He usually plays like this only if he wants to win material, or enter safely an endgame.

7...dxe5 8.♖xd8

In case, White tries to be smarter and he plays 8.♗g5, with

the idea of winning a tempo in case of the exchange of the queens on d1, then Black can continue playing with queens present on the board: 8...♖bd7 9.0-0 c6. Like usual, in similar pawn-structures, Black has covered the d5-square reliably, while White should take care all the time of the d4-square. In the oncoming middle game, Black's chances would be at least equal, for example: 10.♖c2 ♖e7 11.♗ad1 ♖c5 12.h3 ♖e6 13.♗e3 ♖h5 14.♗fe1 ♖hf4 15.♗f1 ♖f6 ♗ Schammo – Kupreichik, Vilnius 1995.

8.0-0 ♖c6 – see variation B.

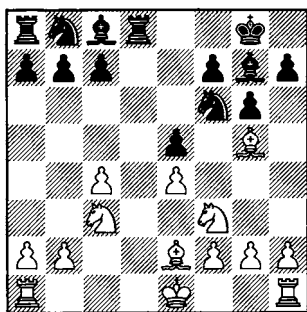
8...♗xd8 9.♗g5

The move 9.♖xe5 is played by White only if he wants an easy bloodless draw. There might follow: 9...♖xe4 10.♖xe4 ♗xe5 11.♗g5 (White must play precisely, because after 11.0-0?! ♖c6! 12.♗e1 ♖g7 13.a3 ♗f5 14.♖g3 ♗e6 15.♗f1 a5 16.♗b1 a4, Black has even a slight edge, Sanchez – Geller, Saltsjobaden 1952.) 11...♗e8 (As it is well known “There is an agreement reached only if there is no opposition from either side...” and GM M.Golubev demonstrated here an interesting way of continuing the fight: 11...♗f8!? 12.♗f6 ♗xf6 13.♖xf6 ♖g7 14.♖d5 ♖a6 15.0-0-0 ♗e8 16.♗f3 c6 17.♖e3 ♗e6 18.♗d4 ♗ad8 19.♗hd1 ♗xd4 20.♗xd4 h5 and the endgame is a bit better for Black, Mankeyev – Golubev, Alushta 2006.) 12.♖f6 ♗xf6 13.♗xf6 ♗f5 14.♗d1 ♖d7

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. d4 d5 8. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 9. ♗g5

15. ♗g5 ♖e5 16. 0-0 f6 17. ♗e3 ♖g4
18. ♗xg4 ♗xg4= Prokhorov – Kuri-
lin, Tula 2002.

The move 9. ♖d5, as a rule,
leads to numerous exchanges and
quick equality: 9... ♖xd5 10. cxd5
c6 11. ♗c4 (11. ♗g5 f6 12. dxc6 ♖xc6
13. ♗c4 ♖h8 14. ♗e3 ♗g4 15. 0-0
♖ac8 16. ♖ac1 ♗f8= Doncea –
Jianu, Bucharest 2004) 11... b5
12. ♗b3 (12. ♗g5 f6 13. ♗b3 cxd5
14. 0-0-0 ♗e6 15. exd5 ♗f7 16. ♗e3
♖a6= Brumen – Cvitan, Medu-
lin 2002) 12... ♗b7 13. ♗g5 ♖c8
14. ♖d1 (14. dxc6 ♖xc6 15. ♗d5 ♖a5
16. ♖d1 ♗xd5 17. ♖xd5 a6 18. ♖e2
♖c2 19. ♖d2 ♖c4= Svirin – Lanka,
Podolsk 1990) 14... ♖d7 (14... cxd5
15. ♗xd5 ♗xd5 16. ♖xd5 f6 17. ♗e3 a6
18. 0-0 ♖c6 19. ♖d7 ♖d8 20. ♖fd1
♖xd7 21. ♖xd7 ♖d8, draw, Kotov
– Smyslov, Hastings 1963) 15. d6
c5 16. ♗d5 ♗xd5 17. ♖xd5 f6 18. ♗e3
♖c6 19. ♖e2 ♖f7 20. ♖c1 ♖ac8= Re-
zan – Cvitan, Split 2008.



In this position, we will ana-
lyze Black's two main lines, but at
the end we will recommend to you
to opt for the second one.

A1) 9... ♖f8

A2) 9... ♗e8

A1) 9... ♖f8

Thanks to Lanka and his pu-
pils, this ancient move has be-
come an important part of the
theory of the exchange variation.
In fact, we used to play ♖f8, think-
ing not only about a draw, but of
playing for win as well. That is
what Lanka taught us to do...

10. ♖d5

This is exactly where one of
the fine points of the variation
with ♖f8 is emphasized.

White obtains no advantage
with the routine attempt to win
a pawn: 10. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 11. ♖d5
♗d8 12. ♖xe5 ♖e8 13. ♖d1, Korell
– Koenig, Berlin 2002, 13... c6
14. ♖c3 ♗a5 15. ♖f3 ♖xe4=

It would be harmless for Black
if White tries 10. 0-0-0 ♖c6 11. h3
♗e6 12. ♗e3 ♖ad8 13. a3 h6 14. b4
a5 15. b5 (I declined a draw offer
at the beginning of this game and
the moment had come to justify
my decision.) 15... ♖d4! 16. ♖xd4
exd4 17. ♗xd4 ♖xd4 18. ♖xd4 ♖g4
19. ♗xg4 ♗xd4 20. ♗xe6 fxe6 21.
♖d1 ♗c5 22. a4 ♖d8= Wang Yue –
Bologan, Moscow 2006.

Unfortunately, after 10. ♖xe5,
White is better: 10... ♖xe4 11. ♖xe4
♗xe5 12. 0-0-0 ♖c6 13. f4 (13. ♖he1
♖g7 14. f4 f6 15. fxe5 fxg5 16. ♖xg5
♖xe5=) 13... ♗d4 14. ♖f6 ♖g7 15.
♖d5 f6 16. ♗h4 ♗f5, Ravisekar –
Bologan, Calcutta 1992. White
should have completed his cen-

tralization with 17.♖he1±, ending up with a slight edge.

10...♖xd5 11.cxd5 c6 12.♙c4 b5 13.♙b3 ♙b7 14.♖c1

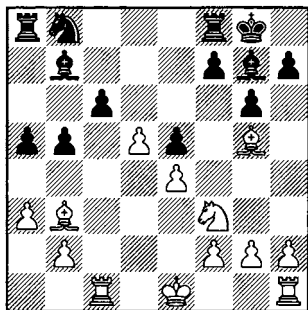
14.0–0 cxd5 15.♙xd5 ♙xd5 16.exd5 e4 17.♖d2 f6, followed by f5 with an advantage for Black (according to an old analysis by Lanka).

Or 14.0–0–0 c5, planning c4, ♖d7–c5, ♖fc8, a5, b4 with equality (Lanka).

14.dxc6 ♖xc6 (14...♙xc6 15.♖c1! a5 16.♙e7 ♖e8 17.♙d6 a4 18.♙xf7 ♖xf7 19.♙xb8 ♖a6 20.♙a7 ♙f6 21.♖d2 ♙b7 22.♙e3±) 15.♙d5 ♖fb8 16.0–0–0 ♖b4 17.♙xb7 ♖xb7 18.♖b1 f6 19.♙d2 ♙f8=

14...a5 15.a3

In case Black's rook had been on e8, then White would have played 15.a4 bxa4 16.♙xa4 with a slight edge. With a rook on f8 however, Black can already capture 16...cxd5 and he would seize the initiative.



15...a4

Lanka used to teach us that Black should fix his opponent's

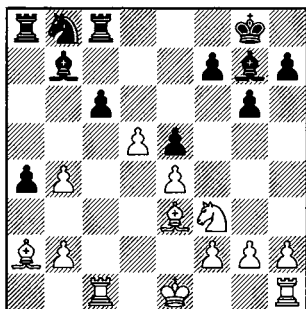
pawns on the queenside on dark squares with this move and that would provide him with chances of playing for a win even in the endgame. It is worse for him to opt for 15...cxd5 16.♖c7 dxe4, Kachar – Inarkiev, Moscow 2006, 17.♙e7! exf3 18.♙xf8 fxg2 19.♖g1 ♙xf8 20.♖xb7±; 17...♖c8 18.♖xc8 ♙xc8 19.♖g5 h6 20.♖xf7 ♖h7 21.♙d6 ♖c6 22.♙d5 ♙b7 23.♖d2±, because White ends up with a slight edge.

16.♙a2 ♖c8 17.♙e3

17.dxc6 ♖xc6 18.♙d5 ♖a5 19.♙xb7 ♖xb7 20.♖e2 ♖c5 21.♖d2 ♖e6 22.♙e3 ♖f4 23.♖f3 f5± Kar-kanaq – Bologan, Xanthi 1991.

17.♙e7 ♙h6 18.♖g5 (18.♖d1 ♖e8 19.♙d6 ♖d7 20.dxc6 ♙xc6 21.♙d5?! ♙xd5 22.♖xd5 ♖f6 23.♖xb5 ♖xe4 24.♙b4 ♙c1± Cherniak – Bologan, Moscow 1995) 18...c5 19.♖c3!? (19.h4 ♖d7 20.♖c3 ♙f8 21.♙xf8 ♖xf8 22.♙b1 h6 23.♖f3 f5± L'Ami – Gladyshev, Bethune 2006) 19...♖d7 20.♖h3 ♖g7 21.♖xh7 ♖h8 22.♖xh6 ♖xh6 23.♖f6 ♖xf6 24.♙xf6 ♖he8 25.f3 ♖a6 26.♙h4∞

17...b4! 18.axb4



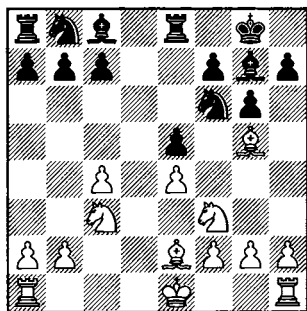
5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. de de 8. ♜xd8 ♝xd8 9. ♔g5

18...a3!

This is another of Lanka's ideas. Black sacrifices material temporarily and he opens files in order to develop his initiative to a maximal degree, because White's King has not castled yet.

19.bxa3 ♝xa3 20.♗c4 (After 20. ♗b1 cxd5 21. ♝xc8 ♗xc8 22. exd5 ♗a6 23. ♖d2 ♖d7 24. ♝c1 ♗f8, Staniszewski – B.Socko, Warsaw 2001, in principle, White should be able to draw after a precise play, but the initiative, including the psychological one, is on Black's side; 20. dxc6 ♖xc6 21. ♗d5 ♖xb4 22. ♗xb7 ♝xe3 23. ♖d2 ♖d3 24. ♖e2, Brunner – Gladyshev, Chambery 2007, 24... ♝cd8=) **20...cxd5 21.exd5 e4↑** Hertneck – Bologan, Germany 1994.

A2) 9...♝e8



10. ♗d5

In case White wishes to do something real, he must act swiftly.

For example, after 10.0-0-0

h6 11. ♗h4 (11. ♗e3 c6 12. ♖e1 ♗e6 13. f3 ♗f8 14. b3 ♖a6 15. ♖c2 ♖g7 16. ♖d2 ♖d7 17. ♝hd1 ♖b6 18. ♖b2 ♖c5 19. g3 a5 ♞ Nei – Tal, Tallinn 1973) 11... ♖a6 12. ♖e1 c6 13. ♖c2 (13. f3 ♖h5 14. ♗f2 ♖f4 15. ♗f1 ♗f8 16. a3 ♗c5 17. ♗xc5 ♖xc5 18. b4 ♖b3 19. ♖b2 ♖d4 20. ♖d3 ♖xd3 21. ♗xd3 ♗e6= Petersen – Yurtaev, Lyngby 1990) 13... ♖c5 14. f3 a5= there arises a comfortable endgame for Black, De Castro – Kavalek, Manila 1973.

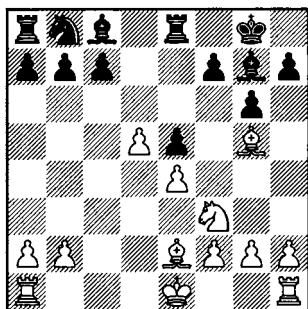
It is not advisable for White to opt for 10. ♗xf6?! ♗xf6 11. ♖d5 ♗d8, because the weakness on d4 will be a very important factor for the future. For example: 12. 0-0-0 c6 13. ♖e3 ♖d7 14. a3 ♖c5 15. ♖d2 ♖e6 16. ♗g4 h5 17. ♗xe6 ♗xe6 18. ♖f3 ♗c7 ♞ Computer "Novag Scorpio" – Bronstein, Hague 1992.

10. h3 ♖a6 11. ♗e3 ♗f8 12. 0-0 c6 13. a3 ♖c5 14. ♖d2 ♖e6 15. ♖b3 ♖f4 16. ♖fe1 ♖xe2 17. ♝xe2 b6 ♞ P. Perez – Zapata, Mexico 2007.

10. 0-0 ♖a6 11. ♖d2 ♖d7 12. a3 ♖dc5 13. ♗e3 ♖e6 14. ♖fd1 ♖d4 15. ♝ac1 f5 16. f3 ♖c5 17. b4 f4 18. ♗f2 ♖xe2 19. ♖xe2 ♖d3 20. ♝b1 ♖xf2 21. ♖xf2 ♗e6 ♞ Nikas – Kr. Georgiev, Ano Liosia 1993.

This is a very unusual doubled-edged position, which arose in a game played more than forty years ago: 10. ♖d1 ♖a6 11. 0-0 ♖c5 12. ♖d5 ♖xd5 13. exd5 ♖a4 14. ♖d2 ♗d7 15. ♗d1 ♖c5 16. ♗c2 b6 17. ♗e3 ♖b7 18. b3 f5 19. ♖dd1 ♖d6 ♞ Shamkovich – Stein, Kiev 1969.

10...♖xd5 11.cxd5



11...c6

"The scythe has faced flint!"

12.♙c4

The move 12.d6?! dooms this battle unit, for example: 12...f6 13.♙e3 ♙e6 14.♙d1 ♙d8 15.b3 ♙f8 Di Pasquale – Goldwaser, Argentina 2006.

The Norwegian player Joran Jansson invented an interesting gambit here: 12.0–0!? cxd5 (Black's alternative is 12...h6 13.♙e3 cxd5 14.exd5 f5 15.♙fd1 ♖d7 16.♙ac1 f4 17.♙c5, Jansson – Trygstad, Fuegen 2006, 17...e4 18.♖d4 ♖xc5 19.♙xc5 ♖f8, with an interesting and approximately equal position.) 13.exd5 e4 14.♖d2 ♙xb2 (White is slightly better after 14...♙e5 15.♙e3 ♙xd5 16.♖xe4 ♖c6 17.♙c4 ♙d8 18.♙ad1 ♙f5 19.♖d6 Jansson – Thomassen, Norway 2008.) 15.♙ab1 ♙g7 16.♙fc1 ♖d7 17.d6 ♖b6 and it looks like White's piece-activity compensates fully the sacrificed pawn.

12.♙d1 cxd5 13.exd5 (It is better for him to play 13.♙b5 ♙d7

14.♙xd5 ♙xb5 15.♙xb5 b6 16.♖e2 ♖a6!??) 13...e4 14.♖d2 ♙xb2 15.0–0 ♙a3 16.♖c4 ♙c5 17.d6 ♙e6 18.♖e5 ♖d7? Nazarov – Vitaljski, Dagomys 2004.

12.dxc6 ♖xc6 13.♙b5 ♙e6 14.♙xc6 bxc6 15.0–0 f5 16.♖d2 h6 17.♙e3 ♙ed8 18.♙fd1 ♙d3 19.♖b3 fxe4 20.♖c5 ♙xd1 21.♙xd1 ♙d5? Mirza – Irzhanov, Abudhabi 1999.

12...cxd5

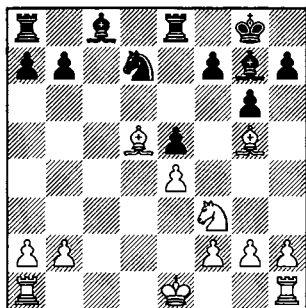
Black's alternative plan includes the advance of his queen-side pawns. He presents his opponent with the right to exchange on c6 (He is not afraid of the pawn-advance d6, but he should better consider it.) and he gains space on the queenside, exploiting the saved tempi: 12...b5 13.♙b3 a5 (The developments are in favour of White after 13...♙b7 14.♙c1 a5 15.a4 ♙c8 16.d6 bxa4 17.♙xa4 – see 15...bxa4 16.♙xa4 ♙c8 17.d6; 15...bxa4 16.♙xa4 ♙c8 17.d6 ♖d7 18.♙e3 ♙ab8 19.0–0 ♙a6 20.♙fd1 ♙b5 21.♙a1±; 17...f6 18.♙b3 ♖f8 19.♙e3 ♖d7 20.h4!? – 20.♖d2± – 20...c5 21.♙e6 ♙d8 22.♖d2 ♙a6 23.♙xd7 ♙xd7, Vallejo Pons – Morozevich, Monte Carlo 2007, 24.♖b3±) 14.a4 (14.dxc6 ♖xc6 15.♙c1 ♙d7 with an equal game. 14.a3 a4 15.♙a2 c5 16.♙e3 ♖d7 17.♙b1 ♙f8 18.♖d2 c4. Black's position is slightly preferable, because of his space advantage on the queenside, Barbero – Dolmatov, Buenos Aires 1991.) 14...♙d7 15.dxc6 ♖xc6 16.axb5 ♖b4 17.0–0

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♕e2 e5 7. d6 de 8. ♖xd8 ♕xd8 9. ♕g5

♕xb5 18. ♖fc1 a4, A. Shneider – Smirin, Leningrad 1990. The opponents agreed to a draw here, because after the forced line: 19. ♕c4 ♕xc4 20. ♖xc4 ♖d3 21. ♖cxa4 ♖xa4 22. ♖xa4 ♖xb2= most of the material disappears from the board.

13. ♕xd5 ♖d7

This knight is headed along the route c5-e6 and then Black will make a decision where to go with it – to d4, or to f4. His other possibility after ♖f6 is the simultaneous attack against d5 and e4.



14. ♖d2

It would be unsuccessful for White to try to do something along the c-file: 14. ♖c1 h6 15. ♕e3 ♖f6 16. ♕b3 ♖xe4 17. ♖c7 ♕e6 18. ♕xe6 ♖xe6 19. ♖xb7 ♖a6 20. a3 ♖d6 21. ♖b4 ♖c6= and he should already think about equalizing, Teschner – Fischer, Stockholm 1962.

14. 0-0 h6 15. ♕h4 g5 16. ♕g3 ♖f6 17. ♖fd1 ♖xd5 18. ♖xd5 f6 19. b3 ♕e6 20. ♖d2 ♕f8 21. ♖e1 ♕c5= Zuehlke – Kindermann, Fuerth 2000.

14. 0-0 h6 15. ♕h4 ♖b6 16. ♕b3 ♕g4 17. ♖d3 ♖ac8 18. ♖b1 a5 19. a3 a4 20. ♕a2 ♖d7 21. ♖d6 ♕c6 22. ♖e1 ♖f8= Ki. Georgiev – Uhlmann, Hungary 1985.

14... ♕c5 15. 0-0-0

15. ♕e3 ♖d3 16. ♖e2 ♖f4 17. ♕xf4 exf4 18. ♖f3 ♕e6 19. ♖c4 ♕xd5 20. exd5 ♖ed8 21. ♖hd1 ♖ac8 22. ♖ac1 ♖c5 23. d6 b5 24. ♖d2 ♖xc1 25. ♖xc1 ♕xb2 26. ♖b1 ♕d4 27. ♖xb5 ♖xd6= Ostojic – Makarov, Belgrade 1993.

15. ♖c4 ♕f8 16. 0-0 ♕e6 17. ♕xe6 ♖xe6 18. f3 b5 19. ♖e3 h6 20. ♕h4 ♖d3 21. ♖d5 ♖c8= Acebal – Gallagher, Candas 1992.

15. ♖e2 ♖e6 16. ♕e3 ♖f4 17. ♕xf4 exf4 18. ♖ac1 ♕xb2 19. ♖c7 ♕e6 20. ♕xe6 ♖xe6 21. ♖b1 ♕e5 22. ♖cb7 ♖a6= Bonin – Liu, New York 2008.

15... ♕e6

Black solves his last problem with this move – he takes the d5-square under control.

It is also interesting for him to try here 15... ♖e6!? 16. ♕e3 ♖f4 17. ♕xf4 exf4 18. f3 ♕e6= Khetsuriani – W. Schmidt, Katowice 1990.

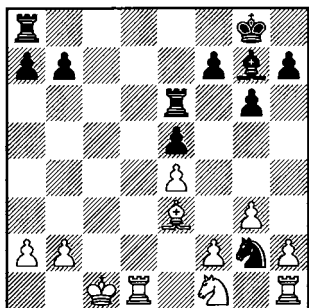
16. ♕xe6 ♖xe6

White would have been better off with a knight on d5, while now Black forces simplifications.

17. ♕e3 ♖f4 18. g3

After 18. ♕xf4 exf4 19. f3, Kriwonosov – Maes, Poland 1007, 19... ♖ac8 20. ♖b1 f5!? the position remains equal, because White's knight cannot easily abandon the passive d2-square

18...♖g2 19.♙f1 ♜e6



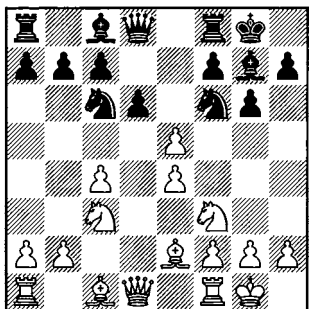
20.♙b1

White fails to trap the enemy knight, while after 20.♙d2? Movsziszian – Strikovic, Benidorm 2007, Black can play 20...♜f6 and White suffers material losses.

It is only equality after 20.♜g1!? ♖xe3 21.♖xe3 ♜f6 22.♜gf1 ♙h6= Ki.Georgiev – Sutovsky, Gibraltar 2006.

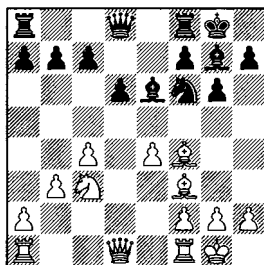
20 ...♜f6 21.♜d2 ♜f3 22.♜e2 ♖xe3 23.♖xe3 ♜d8 24.♜c1 ♙h6= Black exchanges the last light piece and he equalizes completely.

B) 7.0–0 ♖c6 8.dxe5



8...dxe5

In principle, it would be favourable for Black to exchange the knights as well, by playing 8...♖xe5, in order to control the d5-square with c6. Naturally, White should not capture on e5: 9.♙f4!? (After 9.♙g5 h6 10.♙h4, White's bishop is isolated and Black can easily exchange it. 10...♖c6 11.♜c2 g5 12.♙g3 ♖h5=; 11.♖d4 ♖xd4 12.♜xd4 g5 13.♙g3 ♖h5 14.♜d2 ♖xg3 15.hxg3 ♙e6=; White would not achieve much with 9.♙e3 ♖fg4 10.♙d2 ♖xf3 11.♙xf3 ♜h4 12.♙xg4 ♙xg4 13.♜c1, Urban – B.Socko, Poznan 2005, 13...♙e6 14.b3 f5) 9...♖xf3 10.♙xf3 ♙e6 11.b3 (11.♙e2 h6 12.♜d2 ♖h7 13.♜ad1 ♖d7, draw, Gleizerov – Fedorov, Eforie Nord 2008)



Black can begin a piece-play on the kingside with 11...♖h5!? (He must adhere to some concrete plan; otherwise, White will gradually squeeze his opponent exploiting his space advantage and the excellent d5-outpost. 11...♖d7 12.♜d2 ♜e8 13.♜ac1 a6 14.♜fel ♜b8 15.♙e2 ♖e5 16.♙g5 f6 17.♙e3 f5 18.exf5 ♙xf5 19.♖d5

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. de de 8. ♖xd8 ♗xd8 9. ♗g5

♗d7 20. ♗d4 ♗e4 21. f4 ♗xd5 22. cxd5 ♖f7 23. ♗xg7 ♖xg7, Ernst – Stellwagen, Amsterdam 2006, 24. h3±) 12. ♗d2, Saric – Pesotsky, Plovdiv 2008. Later, Black should make use of some tactical motives by playing 12... ♖f4! (The diagonal a1-h8 has been opened and Black often exploits the motive of deflection.) 13. ♖c2 (13. ♗xf4 ♗xc3=) 13... ♖h4 14. ♖h1 ♗g4 15. ♗xf4 (15. ♗xg4 ♖xg4 16. ♗xf4 ♖xf4 17. ♖d5 ♖h4 18. ♖xc7 ♗xa1 19. ♗xa1 ♖ac8 20. ♖d5 f5±) 15... ♗xf3 16. ♗g3 ♖h5 17. ♖ae1 (The bishop on f3 is taboo.) 17... f5±

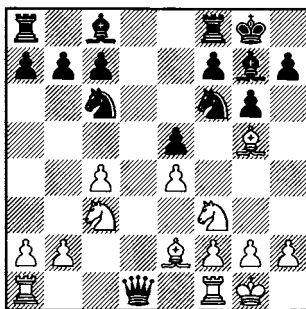
9. ♗g5

Black does not have any problems if White transfers into an endgame when the pawn on e5 is protected and the d5-square is covered. 9. ♖xd8 ♗xd8 10. ♗g5 ♖f8 11. ♗e3 (11. ♖fd1 – see 9. ♗g5 ♖xd1 10. ♖fxd1; 11. ♖ad1 – see 9. ♗g5 ♖xd1 10. ♖axd1) 11... ♗g4 12. ♖fd1 ♖fd8 13. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 14. ♖d1 ♖e8 15. h3 ♗xf3 16. ♗xf3 a6 17. ♖d5 ♖xd5 18. cxd5, draw, Melnichuk – G. Timoshenko, Alushta 2007.

9. ♗e3 ♗g4 10. h3 ♗xf3 11. ♗xf3 ♖d4 12. ♖d5 ♖d7 13. ♖c1 c6 14. ♖b4 ♖c5 15. ♗xd4 ♖xd4 16. ♖c2 ♖e6= Schuster – Taimanov, Oberhausen 1961.

9. h3 ♖e7 10. ♗e3 ♖d8 11. ♖c2 ♖d4 12. ♗xd4 exd4 13. ♖d5 ♖xd5 14. exd5 c6 15. dxc6 bxc6 16. ♖ad1 ♖b8 17. b3 ♗f5 18. ♗d3 ♗xd3 19. ♖xd3 c5= Papa – Hoffmann, Lipstadt 1999.

9... ♖xd1



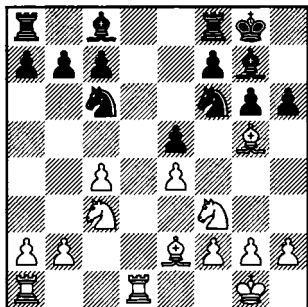
10. ♖fxd1

Capturing with the other rook – 10. ♖axd1 is not so logical, so White should better leave his rook on a1, since his only chances of an active play are on the queenside: 10... ♗g4 11. ♖d2 (11. ♖fe1 h6 12. ♗e3 ♖fd8 13. ♖d5 ♖xe4 14. h3 ♗d7 15. b4 ♖f6 16. ♖xc7 ♖ac8 17. ♖b5 e4 18. ♖fd4 ♖xb4± Bu Xiangzhi – Dyachkov, Moscow 2006) 11... ♗xf3 12. ♗xf3 ♖d4 13. ♖b5 c5 14. ♖xd4 cxd4 15. ♗xf6 ♗xf6= Bacrot – Radjabov, Rishon le Zion 2006.

10... h6

It is useful for Black to repel the enemy bishop to a less active position, but he could have played immediately 10... ♗g4, for example: 11. h3 (11. ♖d3 a6 12. h3 ♗xf3 13. ♗xf3 ♖d4 14. ♖d5 ♖xd5 15. cxd5, Chekhov – Iordachescu, Dresden 1996, 15... f5±) 11... ♗xf3 12. ♗xf3 ♖d4 13. ♖d5 ♖xd5 14. cxd5 f5 (14... c6 15. dxc6 bxc6 16. ♖ac1 ♖fb8 17. b3 a5 18. ♖c4 a4 19. bxa4 ♖b2 20. ♖d2 ♖b1 21. ♖h2 ♗f8 22. ♗d1± Ernst – Nijboer, Dieren 2006) 15. ♗e3 ♖xf3 16. gxf3 ♖f7 17. ♖ac1 ♗f8 18. ♗c5 ♗h6 19. ♖c3

♠d7= Shneider – Beliavsky, Bern 1995.



11.♠e3

It is risky for White to present his opponent with the two bishop advantage, particularly when the bishop on e2 does not have any good prospects whatsoever: 11.♠xf6 ♠xf6 12.♟d5 ♠d8 13.h3 ♠e8 14.c5 ♟d4 15.♟xd4 exd4 16.♠xd4 c6 17.♟c3, Alexandrova – Motoc, Istanbul 2003, 17...♠e7 18.♠ad1 (Black's position is again preferable in case of 18.♟a4 ♠f6 19.♠b4 – 19.♠c4 ♠e6 – 19...a5 20.♠b3 ♠xe4†) 18...♠xc5†

11...♠g4

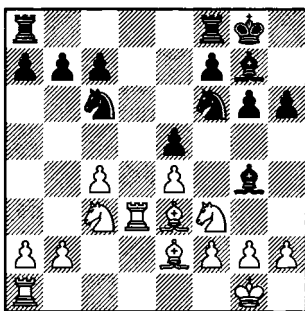
Of course, Black should fight for the d4-outpost, moreover that his knight is already on c6.

12.♠d3

12.h3 ♠xf3 13.♠xf3 ♠fd8= Alexandrova – Golubev, Alushta 1999.

12.♟d5 ♟xe4 13.h3 ♠xf3 14.

♠xf3 ♟g5 15.♠xg5 hxg5 16.♟xc7 ♠ac8 17.♟b5 a6 18.♟d6 ♠c7= Vnukov – Kotsur, Krasnoyarsk 1998.



12...♟xe4!

Naturally, this sacrifice is not forced, but Black does not have so often the possibility of equalizing so easily in the King's Indian Defence.

13.♟xe4 f5 14.♟c5

14.♟c3 e4 15.♠d2 exf3 16.gxf3 f4 17.♠c5 ♠xc3 18.bxc3 ♠f5= Perun – S.Pavlov, Kiev 2004.

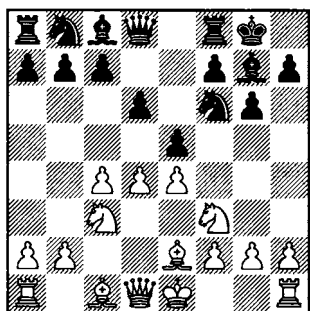
14...e4

It would have been more precise for Black to have started with the other pawn – 14...f4!? 15.h3 (15.♠d2 e4 16.♟xe4 ♠ae8 17.♟c3 ♠xc3 18.♠xc3 ♠xe2=) 15...♠f5 16.♠c1 e4 17.♠b3 b6 18.♟a6 exf3 19.♠xf3 ♟d4 with an approximate equality.

15.♠b3 exf3 16.gxf3 f4 17.fxg4 fxe3 18.fxe3 ♟d4!= Itkis – Golubev, Romania 2000.

Chapter 21

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♠c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.♠f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5



7.♙e3

This system is named after the famous Yugoslavian GM Svetozar Gligoric. White completes the development of his light pieces and he waits for the response of his opponent to make up his mind about the situation in the centre. The e5-pawn continues to be hanging; the exchange exd4 ♘xd4 is not advantageous for Black at all and the move ♘c6 will be countered by White by playing d4-d5 with tempo.

It is hardly advisable for White, to follow with 7.h3?!, because after 7...exd4 8.♘xd4 ♙e8, Black will attack the e4-pawn and White will have problems protecting it. For example, after 9.f3, the dark

squares on the kingside are weakened and Black can exploit this effectively. For example: 9...♘h5 10.0-0 ♘g3 11.♙e1 ♙h4 12.♙f1 ♘xf1 13.♙xf1 ♙xh3! 14.♘de2 (It would be hopeless for White to try 14.gxh3 ♙g3 15.♘h1 ♙xh3 16.♘g1 ♙xd4 17.♙xd4 ♙g3 18.♘h1 ♙e5.) 14...♙e6 and Black won a pawn in the game Vark – Stein, Piarnu 1971. In the more recent games White failed to achieve anything much, for example 9.♙d3 (instead of 9.f3) 9...♘bd7 10.♘b3 a5 11.a4 ♘e5 12.♙c2 ♙e6 13.♘d2 ♘c6 B. Dzha-garov – Morozov, Voronezh 2007, or 9.♙g5 h6 10.♙xf6 ♙xf6 11.♘f3 ♘a6 12.0-0 ♙d8 13.♙d3 ♘c5 14.♙e1 ♙xc3 15.bxc3 ♙f6 B. Hansen – Borge, Copenhagen 1997.

In case of 7.♙g5, Black should attack immediately the enemy bishop with 7...h6, and now:

It would be harmless for Black if White plays 8.♙e3, in view of 8...♘g4 and contrary to the main line White's bishop would not have the g5-square anymore. In the game Sablic – Cetkovic, Belgrade 2006 after 9.♙c1 ♘d7 10.h3 ♘gf6 11.♙e3 exd4 12.♘xd4 ♙e8

13.f3 ♖h5 14.♟d2 ♖g3 15.♞g1 ♖xe2 16.♖cxe2 a6 17.♖c3 ♖e5 18.b3 c5 19.♖de2 b5, Black seized the initiative.

The simple exchange here is full of venom 8.♙xf6 ♙xf6 9.a4!? (In the endgame after 9.dxe5 ♙xe5 10.♖xe5 dxe5 11.♟xd8 ♞xd8, Black holds the position successfully, for example: 12.♖d5 ♖a6 13.0–0–0 ♙e6 14.♖c3 c6= Stefanac – Juric, Zadar 1996.) 9... ♖c6 10.d5 ♖e7 11.0–0 ♙g7 12.b4. White's queenside offensive is developing seemingly fast, but Black manages to create counterplay: 12...f5 13.♙d3 h5 14.h4 ♙h6 15.c5 a5 16.cxd6 cxd6 17.bxa5 ♞xa5 18.♖b5 ♞f6 19.♖g5 ♙d7 20.♟b3 ♙xb5 21.axb5 ♙xg5 22.hxg5 ♞f7, with mutual chances. Eingorn – Ivanchuk, Odessa 2006.

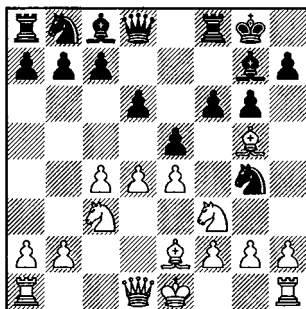
White tries more often to preserve the pin with the move 8.♙h4, but Black can be more persistent and get rid of it with 8...g5. There might follow 9.♙g3 (There arise interesting complications after 9.dxe5 gxh4 10.exf6 ♟xf6 and they lead to a double-edged position. 11.♖d5 ♟d8 12.♟d2 ♖a6 13.♖d4 ♖c5 14.f3 a5 15.0–0 c6 16.♖e3 ♟g5⇒ Loeffler – Lanka, Hamburg 2002, or 11.♟d2 ♙e6 12.♞d1 ♖d7 13.♟e3 ♖b6. It is essential for Black to cover the d5-square. 14.c5 dxc5 15.♟xc5 ♞fe8 16.0–0 c6 17.♖d4 ♟g5 18.♟xg5 hxg5 19.f4 ♙xa2, draw, Smejkal – Sax, Vrsac 1981.) 9...g4 (This is the most precise move for Black,

because he provokes an immediate crisis, making use of his lead in development.) 10.♖h4 exd4 11.♟xd4 ♙e8 12.♟d3 ♖bd7 13.f3 (Black is better after 13.♖f5?! ♖c5 14.♟c2, Uusi – Lanka, Daugavpils 1979, 14...♖fxe4 15.♖xg7 ♖xg7 16.♖xe4 ♖xe4 17.0–0 ♙f5.) 13... ♖c5 14.♟c2 (14.♟d2 ♖h5 15.0–0–0 ♖xg3 16.hxg3 a5∞ Marcus – Sosonko, Leeuwarden 1973) 14...♖h5 15.0–0–0 (15.♙f2, Webster – Hebden, England 1999, 15... ♖f4 16.0–0–0 ♟g5 17.♖b1 ♙xc3 18.bxc3 ♙d7↑) 15...♖xg3 16.hxg3 c6 17.♖b1 a6 18.♟d2 ♙e6 19.♖f5 ♙xf5 20.exf5 ♟f6 21.fxg4 ♖e4 22.♖xe4 ♞xe4 23.♞c1 b5, with approximately equal chances, Schuster – Peralta, Buenos Aires 1998.

7...♖g4

This is the most principled and best move for Black. He frees the way forward of his f-pawn with tempo and he opens the diagonal of his dark-squared bishop. His knight is not stable on the g4-square indeed and he will need to retreat it to h6 in the future.

8.♙g5 f6



5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♖e2 e5 7. ♖e3 ♖g4 8. ♖g5 f6

A) 9. ♖c1
B) 9. ♖h4

Black does not have too many problems to solve after the “abstract” move 9. ♖d2, for example: 9... ♖c6 10. d5 ♖e7 11. h3 ♖h6 12. g4 ♖f7 13. ♖c2 c5 14. 0-0-0 a6 15. ♖dg1 ♖d7 16. ♖d1 b5, with mutual chances, Tarasov – Biriukov, St. Petersburg 1995.

A) 9. ♖c1

This retreat of the bishop only looks like a loss of time, but in fact Black can hardly make any use of tempi like ♖h6 and f6. On the contrary, he would need to decide now what to do later.

A1) 9...exd4

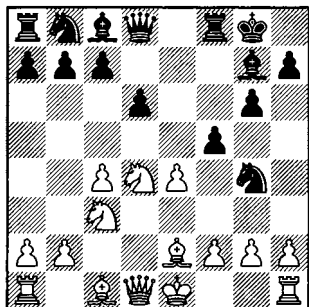
A2) 9...f5

A1) 9...exd4

This is the simplest solution for Black. He clarifies the situation in the centre and after

10. ♖xd4 f5

He regains his bishop and White’s advantage becomes highly questionable, if at all...



11. h3

White falls into a beautiful trap after 11. exf5 – 11... ♖xf2!! 12. ♖xf2 ♖h4 13. g3 (13. ♖e3 ♖c6+) 13... ♖xd4 14. ♖xd4 ♖xd4 15. ♖g2 ♖xf5 – Iskushnyh – Sudakova, St. Petersburg 2002.

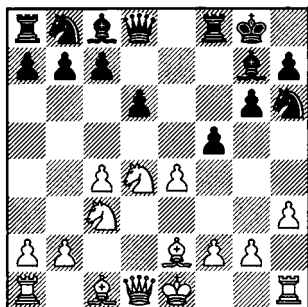
11. ♖xg4 fxg4 12. ♖e3 c6 13. ♖d2 ♖e8 14. ♖de2 ♖d7 15. ♖d1 ♖e5 16. b3 ♖a5 17. ♖d4 a6 18. 0-0 b5 – Marcelin – Bologan, France 2003.

In case of 11. 0-0, Black continues with exchanges in the centre: 11... fxe4 12. ♖xg4 ♖xg4 13. ♖xg4 ♖xd4 14. ♖h6, Harikrishna – Hernandez Guerrero, Merida 2007 (14. ♖xe4 ♖c6 15. ♖e3 ♖g7 16. ♖ad1 ♖e8 17. ♖xe8 ♖axe8 18. ♖d5 ♖f7 = D’Costa – Degraeve, Le Touquet 2007; 14. ♖d5 ♖d7 15. ♖xd7 ♖xd7 16. ♖h6 ♖f7 17. ♖xc7 ♖c8 18. ♖b5, Kruppa – S. Pavlov, Kiev 2005, 18... ♖e5 19. ♖ad1 ♖f6 20. ♖g5 ♖e6 21. b3±; 14... ♖c6, V. Popov – Djukic, Saint Vincent 2005, 15. ♖h6 ♖e8 16. ♖ae1 ♖c8) 14... ♖e8 15. ♖xe4 ♖c6 16. ♖ae1 ♖c8! (Black activates his queen, because its eventual trade is favourable for him.) 17. ♖f3 ♖f5 =

11... ♖h6

Black should consider very seriously the possibility 11... ♖e5!? 12. exf5 gxf5 13. ♖d5 ♖bc6 (13... ♖g6 14. h4 ♖c6 15. ♖g5 ♖d7 16. ♖b5 h6 17. ♖d2± Volkov – Nevednichii, Silivri 2003) 14. ♖b5 ♖f7, L’Ami – Di Berardino, Hoogeveen 2008, 15. ♖e3 (15. ♖h5 ♖g6 16. 0-0 ♖ce5) 15... ♖g6 (15...

a6 16. ♖bxc7) 16. ♖d2 f4 17. ♖xf4 ♖xf4 18. ♖xf4 ♖f6.



12. ♖xh6

Naturally, White should be reluctant to present his opponent with the two-bishop advantage, but as the analysis below will show, the alternatives for White provide him with even less chances of obtaining the advantage.

12. exf5 ♖xf5 13. ♖xf5 ♖xf5! (Black is ready to part with his b7-pawn, but he completes quickly his development and exerts powerful pressure against his opponent's queenside.) 14. ♖d5 (14. ♖e3 ♖c6 15. ♖d2 a5 16. 0-0 ♖h8 17. ♖ad1 ♖f6 18. ♖d5 ♖f7 19. b3 b6 20. a3 ♖ae8= Aronian – Grischuk, Linares 2009; 14. 0-0 ♖c6 15. ♖e3 ♖f6 16. ♖c1 ♖d4 17. b3 ♖ae8 18. ♖d5 ♖xe2 19. ♖xe2 ♖f7= Gustafsson – Shomoev, Dresden 2007) 14... ♖f7 15. ♖xb7 ♖d7 16. 0-0 ♖c5 17. ♖d5 ♖b8=, with an excellent compensation for Black.

12. 0-0 ♖c6 13. ♖xc6 bxc6 14. ♖f3, Ornstein – Westerinen, Helsinki 1975, 14... ♖d7 15. c5 fxe4

16. ♖xe4 ♖f7 – Black's pieces are harmoniously deployed and his pawns control all the important squares in the centre. The position is about equal.

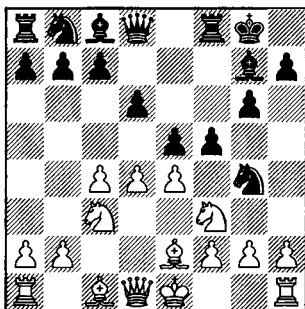
In case of 12. h4, Black should react energetically with 12... fxe4 13. ♖xe4 ♖f5 14. ♖xf5 ♖xf5 15. ♖d5 ♖h8 16. ♖xb7 ♖d7 17. h5 ♖e7 18. ♖g3 ♖c5=

12... ♖xh6 13. exf5 gxf5 14. 0-0 ♖c6 15. ♖f3

15. c5, Aliavdin – Evdokimov, Sochi 2007, 15... ♖g7 16. ♖xc6 bxc6 17. ♖a4 ♖d7 with mutual chances. 15. ♖xc6 bxc6 16. ♖f3 ♖b8 17. ♖b1, Williams – van Der Weide, Oslo 2004, 17... c5 18. ♖e1 ♖d7 19. ♖d3 ♖g7= Black's two bishops compensate the defects of his pawn-structure.

15... ♖xd4 16. ♖xd4 ♖g7 17. ♖d5 ♖h8 18. ♖ad1 ♖e5 19. ♖fe1 c6 20. ♖d3 ♖f6 21. g3 ♖d7= Black has completed his development, having equalized successfully.

A2) 9... f5!?



A2a) 10. exf5

A2b) 10. ♗g5

Black has nothing to worry about after 10. dxe5 ♘xe5 11. exf5 (11. ♘xe5 ♗xe5 12. ♗h6 ♗e8 13. ♗d2 ♘c6 14. ♗g5 ♗d7 15. 0-0 fxe4 16. ♘xe4 ♗f7 17. ♗ae1 ♗f5 18. ♘g3 ♘d4 19. b3 ♘xe2 20. ♗xe2 ♗d7= Winants – David, France 2007) 11... ♗xf5 (It is also possible for him to choose another capturing 11... ♗xf5 12. 0-0 ♘bc6 13. ♘d5 ♘xf3 14. ♗xf3 ♗f8 15. ♗e4 ♘d4 16. ♗e3 c5 17. ♗d2 ♗e6 18. ♗h6 ♗h4 19. ♗xg7 ♘xg7 20. ♗ae1 ♗f7= Kruppa – Baklan, Pivne 2005.) 12. ♘d4 ♘d3 13. ♗xd3 ♗xd4 14. ♗xf5 ♗xc3 15. bxc3 ♗xf5 16. c5 d5 17. 0-0 ♘c6 18. ♗e3 b5 19. ♗e2 a6 with approximately equal chances, Kruppa – Moliboga, Kiev 2008.

After the indifferent move 10. 0-0, Zivanic – G. Timoshenko, Kavala 2008, Black reduces the tension in the centre, reaching an acceptable position. 10... fxe4 11. ♘xe4 exd4 12. h3 ♘f6 13. ♗xd4 ♘c6.

He can counter 10. h3, with the beautiful tactical strike 10... ♘xf2!, which surprisingly enough (!) worked even against Ivanchuk in a game with a classical time-control. 11. ♘xf2 fxe4 12. ♘xe4 ♗h4 13. ♘g1 (White's king succumbed in a beautiful fashion in the middle of the board after 13. ♗e3 ♗h6 14. ♘d3 ♗xe4 15. ♗xe4 ♗f5 16. ♘d5 c6 17. ♗xd6 ♗f6 18. ♘c7 ♗f7 19. ♘d6 ♗g7, with a checkmate in three

15. ♘c3 exd4 16. ♘xd4 ♗g7+ Eletskikh – Pancevski, Herceg Novi 2005.) 13... ♗xe4 14. ♗d3 (14. dxe5 dxe5+; 14. d5 ♗f5+ Ivanchuk – Bologan, Edmonton 2005; 14... ♗f5!?) 14... ♗c6+ A pawn is a pawn, even in Africa!

A2a) 10. exf5

This move might lead to interesting complications.

10... exd4

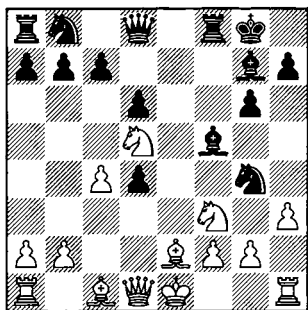
This is the thematic move for Black, although even after 10... ♗xf5, he preserves good chances of holding the position, for example: 11. h3 ♘f6 12. dxe5 dxe5 13. ♗xd8 ♗xd8 14. ♘xe5 ♘e4 15. ♘xe4 ♗xe4 16. ♗f3 ♗xf3 17. ♘xf3 ♘c6. White evidently lags in development and in addition his queenside has come under attack. 18. 0-0 ♘d4 19. ♘xd4 ♗xd4 20. b3 ♗xc4 21. bxc4 ♗xa1 22. ♗e3 ♗f6 23. ♗d1 b6= Onischuk – Smirin, Turin 2006.

11. ♘d5

White's attempt to complicate matters with 11. ♗g5 ♗e8 12. ♘d5 (12. ♘xd4, Hoang Thi Bao – Dembo, Beijing 2008, 12... ♗e5 13. ♘f3 ♗xf5 14. ♘d5 ♘c6, and the c7-pawn is poisoned. 15. ♘xc7? can be countered by Black with the surprising fork 15... ♗a5+ and if 15. 0-0, then 15... ♗f7 and later Black develops his bishop on c8, completing the mobilization of his queenside.) 12... d3! (This is the elegant trick, which Black's defence is based on.) 13. ♗xd3 (13. ♘xc7 ♗f7) 13... ♗xf5 14. ♗d2 (14.

♖e7 ♜xe7 15.♙e7 ♙xd3 16.♙xf8
 ♙xb2=; 14.♞b3 ♖a6 15.♞xb7 –
 15.♖e7 ♖h8 – 15...♖c5 16.♞xc7
 ♖d3 17.♖f1 ♖dxf2 18.♞g1 ♖e4+)
 14...♞d7 (14...♞f7!?) 15.0–0 (15.
 h3 ♖e5 16.♖xe5 ♙xe5 17.♖e7
 ♖h8 18.♖xf5 ♞xf5 19.0–0 ♖c6
 20.♙e3 ♙f4 21.♞c3 ♞f6 22.♞xf6
 ♞xf6 23.♙xf4 ♞xf4= A.Rychagov
 – Amonatov, Moscow 2007)
 15...♖c6 16.♞ad1 ♞ae8 17.b3 ♙e4
 18.♖e1 ♙f5 19.h3 ♖d4 20.♖c3
 ♖xe2 21.♖xe2 ♖f6+ Gavrillov –
 Amonatov, Moscow 2007.

11...♙f5 12.h3



12...d3

We are already familiar with this resource.

Meanwhile, the soundness of
 Black's defence can be empha-
 sized by the fact that he has a quite
 reasonable alternative – 12...♖f6
 13.♖xd4 ♖c6 14.♖xf5 gxf5. Black's
 pawn-structure has its defects
 indeed, but his pieces are full of
 enormous potential energy. White
 has numerous moves to choose
 from, but Black can counter all of
 them quite effectively. 15.0–0 (15.

♙e3 ♖xd5 16.cxd5 f4 17.dxc6 fxe3
 18.cxb7 exf2 19.♖f1 ♞b8 20.♙f3
 ♞h4; 15.♙f4 ♖e4 16.0–0 ♖d4 17.
 ♙d3 c6 18.♖c3 ♖e6) 15...♖xd5
 16.♞xd5 ♖h8 17.♙e3 f4 18.♙d2
 ♙xb2 19.♞ab1 ♞f6 and he is not
 worse at all...

13.hxg4 dxe2 14.♞b3 ♙xg4

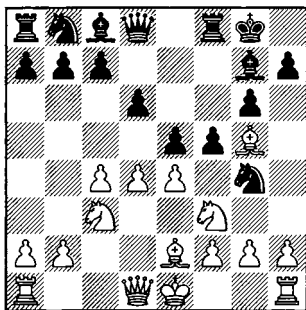
14...♙e6 15.♖g5 ♙xd5 16.cxd5
 ♞f6, Damljanovic – Miljanic, Ti-
 vat 2002, 17.♙e3+

15.c5 ♖h8! 16.♖f4

Black's e2-pawn is like a bone
 up White's throat. He will try to
 annihilate it and castle, but Black
 is so much ahead in development
 that he manages to seize the ini-
 tiative for long.

16...♙f5 17.♖h4 ♞f6 18.
 ♞xb7 ♖d7+

A2b) 10.♙g5 ♞e8



This is another important vari-
 ation for Black.

11.dxe5

11.h3?! Pfeiffer – Mischke,
 Merzig 1996, 11...♖xf2 12.♖xf2
 exd4 13.♖xd4 ♞e5+

11.♖d5 fxe4 12.♖xc7 ♞f7 13.

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♕e2 e5 7. ♕e3 ♖g4 8. ♕g5 f6

♖xa8 exf3 14. gxf3, Kolesnikov – Abdulov, Urgup 2004, 14... exd4

11. exf5 h6 (11... gxf5!?) 12. f6 (12. ♖d5 hxg5 13. ♖xc7 ♖e7 14. ♖xa8 e4 15. ♖d2 ♖xf2 – 15... gxf5 – 16. ♖xf2 e3 17. ♖e1 exd2 18. ♖xd2 ♕xd4 19. ♖b3 ♕xf5; 12. ♕h4 e4 13. ♖d2 ♖xf2 14. ♕xf2 e3 15. ♕xe3 ♖xe3 16. ♖d5 ♖xd4 17. ♖e7 ♖h7 18. fxc6 ♖h8) 12... ♖xf6 13. ♕xf6 ♕xf6 14. dxe5 dxe5 15. 0-0 ♖c6 16. ♖d5 e4!;

11... ♖xe5

It is obviously disadvantageous for Black to close the e-file and particularly the long dark-squared diagonal: 11... dxe5 12. exf5 ♕xf5 13. ♖d5 ♖f7 14. h3 ♖f6 15. ♖xf6 ♕xf6 16. ♕xf6 ♖xf6 17. ♖d5 ♖f8 18. ♖xe5 ♖d7 19. ♖c3 ♖g8 20. ♖d1± Gustafsson – Enders, Germany 2007.

12. ♖xe5 ♖xe5 13. exf5 ♕xf5

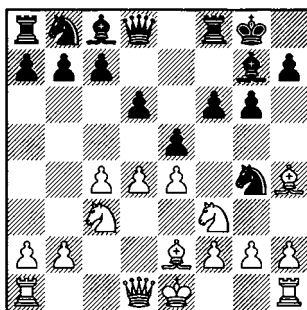
Black queen on e5 is deployed quite well; therefore it should remain there, while he must worry about the development of his queenside: 13... ♖xf5?! 14. ♕e3 ♖c6 15. ♖d2 ♕e6 16. 0-0 ♖ae8 17. b3 ♕c8 18. ♖ad1 ♖f7 19. ♖d5 b6 20. f4 ♖d8 21. ♕f3 ♖e6 22. ♕g4 ♖c5 23. ♕xc8 ♖xc8 24. f5± Reshevsky – Byrne, Chicago 1973.

14. 0-0

Black's game is quite acceptable in the variation 14. ♕e3 ♖a6 15. 0-0 ♖ae8 16. ♖c1 ♖c5 17. b3 ♖e4 18. ♖b5, Nguyen Huynh Minh – Lo Kin Mun, Singapore 2006, 18... ♖xf2 19. ♕xf2 ♖xe2 20. ♖d5 ♖h8 21. ♖xc7 ♖e5.

14... ♖c6 15. ♖e1, Marzolo – Perpinya, Tarragona 2007, 15... ♕e6 16. ♕e3 ♖d4 17. ♕d3 ♖ae8 18. ♖a4 a6 19. f4 ♖c5 20. ♕f2 b5± Black has seized the initiative.

B) 9. ♕h4



9... g5

It looks like this is not a logical move for Black "to pack" his King's Indian bishop in such fashion. After all, it was eulogised by chess giants like Geller, Bronstein, and particularly Gufeld. On the other hand, there arises a question – what is White's bishop going to do on g3?

10. ♕g3 ♖h6

White retreats prudently with his knight, creating the threat g4 in the process and this might be very useful in the fight for the centre.

10... ♖c6?! 11. d5 ♖e7 12. ♖xg5 ♖xf2 13. ♕xf2 fxc6 14. ♕g4 ♖g6 15. g3 h6 16. 0-0 ♖h7 17. ♖e2 c5 18. dxc6 bxc6 19. ♖ad1 ♕xg4 20. ♖xg4 ♖e7 21. c5± Malaniuk – Szczepinski, Barlinek 2006.

B1) 11.dxe5

B2) 11.h3

B3) 11.d5

White should better avoid the line: 11.h4?! g4 12.♟h2 f5

Black's position is perfectly acceptable after 11.♟d2 g4 12.♟h4 ♟c6 13.d5 ♟d4 14.f4 gxf3 15.♟xf3 f5, Halldorsson – Popovic, Pula 2006.

After 11.0–0, there appeared a game as if it had been played by Robert James Fischer on the Internet: 11.0–0 exd4 12.♟xd4 ♟c6 13.♟xc6 bxc6 14.h3 ♟b8 15.♟d2 f5 16.exf5 ♟xf5 17.♟h2 ♟d4 18.♟d3? (Naturally, White was not obliged to blunder a pawn here...) 18...♟xh3! 19.♟e3 ♟f5 20.♟ae1 ♟xd3 21.♟xd3 ♟xb2 and White resigned, Raynolds – Fischer, 2002. We will hardly ever know now who had been Black, but this player acted quite purposefully and around move seventeen his position was at least equal.

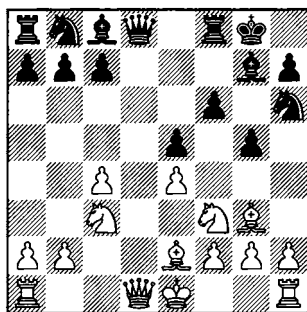
11.c5 – White is trying to play all over the entire board. Black has more than sufficient counter chances and his development is superior, so he will hardly have any problems at all. 11...g4 (beginning the fight for the d4-square) 12.♟h4 (12.♟d2 ♟c6 13.dxe5 dxe5 14.♟b3 ♟e6 15.0–0 ♟h8 16.♟b5 ♟e7 17.♟d5 ♟f7, Matveeva – Xie Jun, New Delhi 2000, 18.f3 gxf3 19.♟xf3 f5=) 12...♟c6 13.dxe5 (13.cxd6 cxd6 14.dxe5 fxe5 – see 13.dxe5) 13...fxe5 14.cxd6 cxd6

15.♟b5 (15.♟f5 ♟xf5 16.exf5 ♟xf5 17.♟xg4 ♟d4 Ksieski – B.Socko, Glogow 2001; 15.♟d5 ♟e6 16.0–0 ♟d4 17.♟e3 ♟c8 18.b3 ♟d7 19.♟c4 ♟xc4 20.♟xc4 ♟f6 21.f4 ♟e7 22.fxe5 dxe5 23.♟f5 ♟hxf5 24.exf5 h5 Poluljahov – Antoniewski, Koszalin 1999) 15...a6 16.♟xd6 ♟a5 17.♟f1 ♟d8 18.♟b3 ♟h8 19.♟hf5 ♟xf5 20.♟xb7 ♟d4 21.♟xa5 ♟xb3 22.♟xb3 ♟xe4 Slugin – I.Belov, Dagomys 2009.

B1) 11.dxe5

Vasily Ivanchuk liked to capture regularly on e5. In fact, Black's queenside weaknesses enable White to hope for an advantage, but tournament practice shows that Black should hold.

11...dxe5



12.c5

It deserves attention for White to try to attack his enemy's weaknesses directly with 12.h4!?. In that case however, Black succeeds in occupying the d4-square: 12...g4 13.♟h2 (13.♟xd8 ♟xd8 14.♟d2 ♟c6 15.♟b3 ♟d4 16.♟xd4 ♟xd4

17. ♜b5 ♜d7 18. f3 c6= V. Shishkin – Kanarek, Mielno 2006) 13... ♜c6! 14. ♙xd8 ♜xd8 15. ♜d5 ♜d4 16. ♜c1 f5↑ Gulkov – Dyachkov, Voronezh 1999.

White can exchange queens with 12. ♙xd8 ♜xd8 13. ♜d5 (13. ♜d2 ♙e6 14. 0-0-0 ♜a6 15. h4 g4 16. a3 c6 17. b4 ♜c7 18. ♜b3 b6 19. ♜b2 f5; 15. f3 c6 16. ♜b3 ♜f7 17. ♙f2 ♙f8 18. ♜xd8 ♜xd8 19. ♜d1 b6 20. ♜a1 ♜b7 21. ♜c2 ♜d8 22. ♜xd8 ♜xd8, draw, Ivanchuk – Bologan, Foros 2006.) and then Black will have to part with his light-squared bishop: 13... ♜a6 14. ♜e7 (14. 0-0-0 ♙e6 15. h4 g4 16. ♜h2 c6 17. ♜e3 ♜c5 18. f3 gxf3 19. gxf3 f5 20. ♜hg1 ♜f8= Kaka-geldyev – Al Modiahki, Dubai 1996) 14... ♜f8 15. ♜xc8 ♜axc8 16. a3. He should not be afraid of this however, because he will succeed in occupying the weak d4-outpost after a while: 16... ♜c5 17. ♜d2, Timoscenko – Pinter, Hlohovec 1998, 17... ♜d7 18. h4 g4 19. 0-0-0 ♜cd8 20. ♜c2 a5=

White has tried in practice to give a check at first 12. ♙d5 ♜h8 and exchange queens only then: 13. ♙xd8 (13. 0-0-0 ♙e7 14. ♙a5 c6 15. ♜d2 b6 16. ♙a4 ♙d7 17. f3 c5 18. ♙a3 ♜c6 19. ♜d5 ♙f7 20. ♙d3 ♙e6 21. h3 f5∞ Motylev – Radjabov, Wijk aan Zee 2007) 13... ♜xd8 14. h4!? (14. ♜d2 c5! 15. f3 ♜c6 16. 0-0-0 ♜d4 17. ♙d3 ♙e6 18. ♜b3 ♜ac8 19. ♜b1 f5= Ivanchuk – Radjabov, Sochi 2007) 14... g4 15. ♜d2 ♜a6 16. 0-0-0 ♙e6 17. ♜b3 ♜f7

(17... c6?! 18. ♜a5 ♜xd1 19. ♜xd1 ♜b8 20. a3 ♙f8 21. ♜c2 ♜f7 22. f3 gxf3 23. gxf3 ♜d8 24. f4 b6 25. ♜b3 ♜f7 26. f5± Onischuk – Shomoev, Sochi 2007) 18. ♜a5 ♜d6∞

In case of 12. 0-0, Black's simplest reaction is to take an immediate control over the d5-square: 12... c6 13. ♙xd8 ♜xd8 14. ♜fd1 ♜xd1 (14... ♜e8!?) 15. ♜xd1 ♙e6 16. ♜d8 ♜f7 17. ♙xe5! fxe5 18. ♜xg5 ♜e7 19. ♜xe6 ♜xe6 20. ♙h5, Giorgadze – A. Kuzmin, Benasque 1997, 20... ♙f6 21. ♜e8 ♜d7 22. c5 b6∞

12. ♙b3 c6 13. c5 ♜h8 14. ♜d2 ♙e7 (14... ♜d7 15. ♙c4 ♙e7 16. ♜a4 ♜d8 17. ♙c3 f5 18. f3± Giorgadze – Z. Polgar, San Sebastian 1991) 15. h4 g4 16. 0-0-0 ♙xc5, with approximately equal chances.

12... ♜c6 13. ♙xd8

Black will need to face complex problems after this simple exchange.

13. ♙c4 ♜h8 14. ♙xd8 ♜xd8 15. 0-0-0 (15. ♜b5 ♙e6 16. ♙b3 ♙xb3 17. axb3 ♜e6= V. Shulman – Umanskaya, St. Petersburg 1994) 15... ♜e6 16. b4 a5 17. a3 axb4 18. axb4 c6 19. ♜b2 ♜f4 20. ♙xf4 exf4 21. ♜b3, draw, San Segundo – Romero Holmes, Vendrell 1996.

13. 0-0 g4 14. ♜h4 ♙e6 15. ♙a4 ♙d4 16. ♙b5 ♙b4 17. f4 gxf3 (17... ♜ad8!?) 18. ♜xf3, Ivanchuk – Radjabov, Odessa 2007, 18... a6 19. ♙xb4 ♜xb4 20. a3 ♜c2 21. ♜ac1 ♜c3 22. ♜fe1 ♜f7=

13... ♜xd8!?

This is an attempt by Black to counter attack.

The defence of this position is a hard and laborious task. 13... ♖xd8 14. ♖b5 ♜f7 15. 0-0-0 ♙e6 (After 15... ♖e6 16. ♙c4 Black has great problems unpinning his pieces.) 16. h4 g4 17. ♖g5! (White emphasises the awkward placement of Black's knight on a6 with this move.) 17... ♜fg5 18. ♜xg5 ♖c6 19. ♜gxh6 ♙f8 20. ♜h5, with an edge for White, Grabliauskas – Krogh, Ringsted 1992.

14. ♖d5

Black can counter 14. ♖b5 in the same fashion, by playing 14... g4 15. ♖d2 ♖d4 and after capturing on c7, there arises a transposition to the main line, while after 16. ♖xd4 ♜xd4 the position is equal.

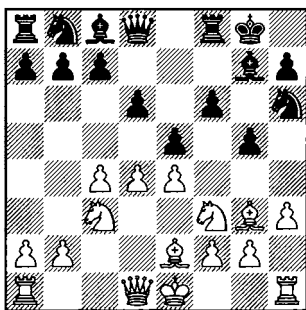
14...g4 15. ♖d2 ♖d4 16. ♖xc7 (or 16. ♜c1 ♖xe2 17. ♖xe2 ♖f5! 18. ♖xc7 ♖d4 19. ♖e1 ♜b8, with a good compensation for the pawn.) **16...♖c2** (but not 16... ♜b8? 17. ♙c4 ♖f7 18. 0-0-0) **17. ♖d1 ♖xa1 18. ♙c4** (18. ♖xa8 ♙e6=) **18...♖f7 19. ♖xa8 ♙h6 20. ♙d5 ♙d7 21. ♖c7 ♜c8 22. ♖e6 ♙xe6 23. ♙xe6 ♜xc5** with mutual chances.

B2) 11.h3

(diagram)

11...♖d7

It would be premature for Black to opt for 11...exd4?! 12. ♖xd4 ♖c6 (12...f5 13. exf5 ♙xf5 14. 0-0 ♖c6 15. ♖xf5 ♖xf5, Shulman – Finegold, Bolingbrook 2005, White had better preserve his bishop



– 16. ♙h2±) 13. h4 (13. 0-0 f5 14. ♖xf5 ♖xf5 15. exf5 ♖d4 16. ♙g4 ♙xf5 17. ♜e1 ♖h8 18. ♜c1 ♜d7 19. ♜e4, Timoscenko – Abbasov, Ohrid 2001, 19... ♙xg4 20. ♜xg4 ♖e6; 13. ♖xc6 ♜xc6 14. 0-0 f5 15. exf5 ♖xf5 16. ♙h2 ♜b8 17. ♜d2 c5 18. ♙f3 ♖d4 19. ♙e4 ♙e6 with an equal game. Engqvist – Hermansson, Hasselbacken 2001. In case of 13. c5, Black succeeds in pushing 13...f5.) 13...f5 14. ♜xg5 ♙xd4 (14... ♜xg5 15. ♖db5 f4 16. ♙h4 ♜xg2 17. ♙f3 ♙xc3 18. ♜xc3 ♜g7 19. ♜d5 ♖h8 20. 0-0-0, Volkov – B.Socko, Neum 2000, 20... ♖e5 21. ♜dg1 ♙g4 22. ♙xg4 ♖hxg4 23. ♖d4 ♜f7∞) 15. ♜gxh6 ♜xe4 16. ♜d2 (16. ♖xe4, Hilarp Persson – Blehm, Ohrid 2001, 16... ♙xb2 17. ♜d5 ♖h8 18. ♜d1 ♙f5 19. 0-0 ♙xe4 20. ♜xe4 ♜f6 21. c5 ♜ae8±) 16...e3!? 17. ♜xe3 ♙e5 18. ♙h4 ♙f6 19. ♙xf6 ♜xf6 20. 0-0-0±

12.d5

12. 0-0 f5 13. exf5 (13. dxe5!? f4, Belmonte – Bass, Salta 1993, 14. ♜d5 ♖h8 15. ♙h2 ♖xe5 16. c5 ♖xf3 17. ♙xf3 ♖f7 18. ♜ad1 ♜f6∞) 13... ♖xf5 14. dxe5, S.Ivanov –

Inarkiev, Moscow 2005, 14... g4! 15. hxg4 ♘xg3 16. fxxg3 ♘xe5 17. ♖d5 ♘h8 18. ♘e5 ♗xe5 and Black's position is at least equal.

12. ♖d2 f5 13. ♖xxg5 exd4 14. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 15. ♘b5 d3 16. ♘xc7 fxe4 17. ♘xa8 dxe2 18. ♘g5 ♘c5= V. Belov – Inarkiev, Moscow 2007.

12...f5

White has already blocked the centre, so Black can continue with this thematic pawn-break.

13. exf5

13. h4 g4 14. ♘g5 ♘f6 15. exf5 ♘xf5 16. ♘ce4 ♘xe4 17. ♘xe4 ♘xg3 18. fxxg3 ♗f5= Tarek – Mahia, Mendoza 1985.

13. ♖c2 ♘c5 14. ♘d2, Berkes – van Delft, Hamburg 2003, 14... fxe4 15. ♘dxe4 ♘xe4 16. ♘xe4 ♘f5=

13. ♘d2 ♘f6 14. ♖c2 (14. exf5 ♗xf5 15. 0-0, Timoschenko – Kur-nosov, Satka 2008, 15... ♗g6 16. ♘f3 ♘h5=) 14... c6 15. a4 cxd5 16. cxd5 fxe4 17. ♘dxe4 ♘xe4 18. ♖xe4 ♖b6 19. 0-0 ♘f5 20. ♗d3 ♗d7 21. b4 ♖ac8= Gustafsson – Solleveld, Enschede 2003.

13...♘c5!

This is an important fine point – White's f5-pawn is running nowhere, so it is essential for Black to take the e4-square under control.

Following 13... ♘xf5 14. ♘e4, White can rely on obtaining some edge.

14. ♘d2

In case of 14. ♖d2, Black has

a promising pawn-sacrifice at his disposal: 14... ♘xf5 15. ♘xg5 ♗h6 16. h4 ♘g3 17. fxxg3 a5 18. g4 ♖e7 19. 0-0-0 ♗d7 20. ♖hf1 ♖xf1 21. ♖xf1 ♖f8 22. ♖xf8 ♖xf8= Akesson – Nataf, Stockholm 2002.

14...♗xf5 15. 0-0

15. f3 e4! 16. fxe4 ♗xc3 17. bxc3 ♗xe4+

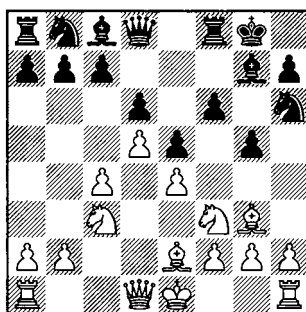
15...e4 16. ♘b3 ♘xb3

16... b6 17. ♘d4 ♖f6 18. ♘c6 a5 19. f4 ♗d7 20. ♘b5 ♗xc6 21. dxc6 ♖xb2 22. ♖b1 ♖xa2= Sasikiran – Topalov, Sofia 2007.

17. ♖xb3 ♗g6 18. ♖ael ♖e8!?

19. ♖xb7 ♘f5 20. ♗g4 ♖b8= Onischuk – Smirin, Toljatti 2003.

B3) 11. d5



11...♘d7

Black should better not be in a hurry to play 11... f5 12. exf5. There begins a fight for the light squares in the centre and Black will be not so well prepared for it, because of his knight stranded on the b8-square. 12... g4 (12... ♘xf5 13. ♘d2 ♘d4 14. 0-0 ♘xe2 15. ♖xe2 ♖e8 16. ♘de4 ♖g6 17. f3 ♗f5 18. h3

h5 19.c5 dxc5 20.♖xc5 ♖d7= Ki.Georgiev – Bologan, Gibraltar 2006; 14.♗de4 g4 15.f3 gxf3 16.♙xf3 ♖xf3 17.gxf3 ♗h8 18.♞e2 ♙f5= Prusikin – B.Socko, Germany 2003; 14.♙d3! ♙f5 15.♙xf5 ♞xf5 16.♗de4±. Both knights, white and black, occupy beautiful squares in the centre, the only difference being that White can exchange the enemy knight on d4 with his bishop on g3 after some time, reaching a classical position with his good knight dominating over Black's bad bishop.) 13.♗d2 ♙xf5 14.♗f1 (This is trickier than 14.♗de4 ♗d7 15.♙d3 ♗h8 16.0–0 a5 17.♞e1?! – 17.♞e2 – 17...♙g6 18.♞e2 ♞e7 19.a3 a4 20.♞ad1 ♗b6± Gofshtein – Kasimdzhanov, Hoogeveen 1999; 15.0–0 ♞e7 16.♞e1 a5 17.a3 ♗f6 18.♙h4 ♞e8 19.♙xf6 ♙xf6 20.c5 ♙e7 21.♞b3± Zhao Xue – Xiu Deshun, Jinan 2005.) 14...♗d7 15.♗e3 e4 (Black cannot avoid the trade of his light-squared bishop; otherwise, he will simply lose his g4-pawn without any compensation whatsoever. 15...♗c5 16.0–0 ♞d7 17.♗xf5 ♞xf5 18.b4 ♗d7 19.♗b5±) 16.0–0 ♗c5 17.♞c1 a5 18.♗xg4 ♗xg4 19.♙xg4 ♞g5 20.♙xf5 ♞xf5 21.♞c2 e3 22.♞ce1 exf2 23.♙xf2± Roiz – Radjabov, Saint Vincent 2005. White has a solid extra pawn.

12.♗d2

The move 12.h3 leads to variations, which we analyze after 11.h3.

There arise original positions

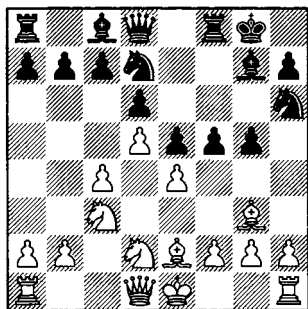
after the pawn-advance 12.h4!? g4 13.♗d2!? (13.♗h2 f5 14.exf5 ♗xf5 15.♗xg4 ♗xg3 16.fxg3 ♗c5 17.♗f2 e4±. Black's compensation for the pawn is more than evident and he has even seized the initiative.) 13... f5 14.exf5 ♗f6 (14...♗xf5 15.♙xg4 ♗xg3 16.fxg3 ♗c5 17.♙xc8 ♞xc8 18.♗de4± D.Gurevich – Zenyuk, Stillwater 2007) 15.♗de4 ♗xf5 16.♗xf6 ♞xf6 17.♗e4 ♞g6 18.h5 ♞h6 19.♙xg4 ♗xg3 20.fxg3 ♞e3 21.♞e2 ♞xe2 22.♙xe2 ♙h6±

The move 12.0–0 has focused the attention recently and its merit is its high reliability. Black must play very precisely in order to equalize. 12...f5 13.exf5 ♗xf5 (The developments would be much more interesting after 13... ♗c5!?) 14.♗d2 ♗d4 15.♗de4 h6 (It is also good for Black to opt for 15...♗xe2 16.♞xe2 h6 17.b4 ♗f6 18.h3 ♙f5 19.♞fe1 ♞d7 20.a3 ♞f7 David – Bologan, Moscow 2005.) 16.♙g4 b6 17.f3 ♗c5 18.♙xc8 ♞xc8 19.♙f2 ♞d7 20.♗g3 a5 21.♗ce2 ♗f5 22.♗xf5 ♞xf5 23.♗g3 ♞g6 24.♙xc5 bxc5 25.♞b1 (It would be better for White, to continue with 25.♗e4, but even then after 25...g4, Black obtains an excellent position.) 25...♞xb1 26.♞axb1 e4! (Black activates his King's Indian bishop thanks to this thematic pawn-sacrifice.) 27.♗xe4 ♙d4 28.♗h1 a4 and Black has seized the initiative, Wang Yue – Radjabov, Wijk aan Zee 2009.

12...f5

Black has no time for prophy-

lactic like 12...a5 13.h4 g4 14. ♖xg4 ♗xg4 15. ♖xg4 ♖c5 16. ♖e2 f5 17. f3 ♕h6 18. ♕f2 b6 19. exf5 ♕xf5 20. ♕xc5 bxc5 21. ♖de4± Gheorghiu – Southam, Biel 1990.



B3a) 13.f3

B3b) 13.exf5

B3a) 13.f3

White restricts the enemy knight on h6 and he deprives Black of the possibility to sharpen the game with the pawn-sacrifice e5-e4. He loses however, the excellent e4-square, as well as the b1-h7 diagonal, which can be used later by his bishop on e2 and his queen.

13... ♖f6 14.h3 fxe4

It would be also quite reliable for Black to continue here with 14...c5 15. ♕f2 f4 16.a3 (16. ♖b1 b6 17.b4 cxb4 18. ♖xb4 ♖d7 19.a4 ♖c5 20.a5 ♕d7 21.axb6 axb6 22. ♖b3 ♖f7 23. ♖b1 ♖a6 24. ♖d2 ♖c7 and the game remains approximately equal, Gelfand – Radjabov, Turin 2006.) 16...b6 17.b4 ♖f7 18. ♖b3 h5 19. ♖d1 ♕d7 20. ♖c2 ♖c7 21.

♖hb1 ♖fb8 22.a4 a5 23.bxa5 bxa5 24. ♖b5 ♖d8= Bacrot – Radjabov, Cap d'Agde 2006. White's only reasonable plan can be connected with an attack against the e5-pawn with ♕c3, ♖b3, ♖d2, but in the meantime Black can advance g4.

15. ♖dx4

In answer to 15.fxe4, Black should try to acquire some space for his knights: 15...g4 16. ♕h4 ♖e8, Zhao Xue – Ju, Wuxi 2006, 17.c5 ♖g6 18. ♖b3 ♖h5 19.0-0-0 ♖f4 20. ♕f1 b6!? and the position is rather unclear.

15... ♖xe4

Black can also begin his operations with 15... ♖f5 16. ♕f2 ♖h4 (16... ♖xe4!? 17.fxe4 ♖d4 18. ♕g4 ♕xg4 19.hxg4 c5=) 17. ♖g1 ♖xe4 18. ♖xe4 ♕f5 19. ♕e3 h6 20. ♖d2 ♕h7 21.0-0-0 a6 22. ♖b1 ♖f5 23. ♕d3 c5!± Prusikin – Stellwagen, Pulvermuehle 2004.

16. ♖xe4

16.fxe4 g4 17.hxg4 (17.h4 c5 18. ♕f2 ♕d7 19. ♕e3 a6 20. ♖d2 ♖f7=) 17... ♖xg4 18. ♖d2 ♕f6 19. ♕f3 ♖e7 20. ♖e2 ♖g7= The knight on g4 cements Black's compromised kingside.

16... ♖f5 17. ♕f2 c5

This is a typical preparatory move by Black for his queenside offensive. Meanwhile, the pawn on c5 emphasizes the presence of Black's almighty knight in the centre on d4.

18. ♖d2?!

It looks like this developing move cannot be criticized at all. It

all depends however on the pawn-structure. White forfeited his right to capture *en passant* – 18.dxc6! bxc6 19.♖d2 d5 20.cxd5 cxd5 and now he could have equalized with 21.♗c5 (21.♗xg5 h6; 21.0–0–0 ♗d4) 21...♗d4 22.♗xd4 exd4∞

18...h6

It becomes clear suddenly that Black has excellent prospect on both sides of the board, while White has nothing else to do but only admire his beautiful knight on e4.

19.0–0–0

19.0–0 ♗d4±

19...b5!?

The merit of this sacrifice, in comparison to the game, is that Black is acting faster. It is worse for him to opt for 19...a6 20.g4 (20.♗b1 ♗d4 21.h4 ♗xe2 22.♖xe2 g4 23.fxg4 ♖f4 24.♗g3 ♗xg4 25.♖d3 ♖f8) 20...♗h4 21.♗xh4 gxh4± Huzman – Bologan, Moscow 2006.

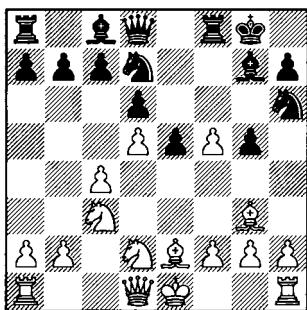
20.cxb5 a6 (but not 20...♗d4 21.h4 g4 22.♗xd4 exd4 23.fxg4) **21.bxa6** (or 21.b6 ♖b8 22.♗b1 ♖xb6 23.h4 gxh4) **21...♗xa6 22.♗xa6 ♖xa6 23.♗b1 ♖a8 24.♗c3 ♖b8** and White's position is obviously beyond salvation.

B3b) 13.exf5

(diagram)

13...♗f6 14.♗d3

The fight is now focused on the e4-square. Black has enough tactical counter chances in order to avoid entering a dull position, in which he might be only fighting



for draw.

14.0–0 ♗xf5 15.f3 ♗h5 16.♗de4 ♗g6 17.♗f2 ♗f4 18.♖e1 ♗xe2 19.♖xe2 ♗f5 20.♖ac1 c5!= with equality, Markus – Miljanic, Budva 2003.

14.♗de4 ♗xe4 15.♗xe4 ♗xf5 (15...♗xf5 16.0–0) 16.♗d3 g4 (Now, if White wishes to bring his dark-squared bishop into the actions he must have an idea what to do with the enemy g4-pawn.) 17.0–0 (The position would be double-edged as a result of 17.♖e2 ♗h8 18.0–0–0 ♖e8 19.♗b1 ♖g6 20.h3 gxh3 21.gxh3 ♗g8! followed by ♗f6 and equality, Dorfman – Nataf, Mondariz 2000; 18.0–0 ♖e7 19.f3 gxf3 20.♖xf3 ♗g4 21.♖xf8 ♖xf8 22.♖c2 ♗f5 23.♗f2 ♗d4 24.♖d2 a6= Prusikin – B. Socko, Dresden 2007.) 17...♗xe4. Black will have to part with this bishop sooner or later; otherwise, it is inconceivable how to develop the knight. (17...♖e8 18.c5 ♖g6 19.♖e1 ♗f7 20.♗h4 ♖ae8 21.♖c1 dxc5 22.♖xc5 ♗d6 23.♖a4 ♗xe4 24.♗xe4 ♖h6 25.♗g3± Aronian – Radjabov, Morelia 2006) 18.♗xe4

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♖e2 e5 7. ♖e3 ♖g4 8. ♖g5 f6

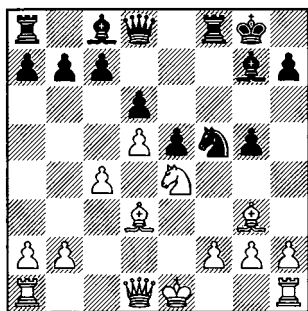
♖g5 19. ♖d3 (19. ♖c1 ♖h5 20. c5 ♖f7 21. cxd6 cxd6 22. ♖c2 ♖f6 23. ♖ad1 ♖af8 24. ♖a4 ♖f5 25. ♖xa7 ♖d4= Vanheste – Piket, Amsterdam 1988) 19... ♖f5 20. ♖ac1 ♖f7 21. ♖xf5, Arsovic – Mozetic, Podgorica 1996 and here Black had better capture with his queen – 21... ♖xf5 22. ♖xf5 ♖xf5, ending up in an equal endgame..

14... ♖xf5 15. ♖de4 ♖xe4

Radjabov tried to use another plan against Kramnik: 15... ♖h6!? 16. 0-0 ♖h8 17. c5 g4 (The pawn is not hanging with check now.) 18. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 19. ♖b5 ♖e7 20. ♖e2, Kramnik – Radjabov, Wijk aan Zee 2007. Here, Volodya could have continued simply with 20... a6 21. ♖xf5 ♖xf5 22. ♖c3 ♖f8 23. ♖e4 ♖g8 24. ♖c4 ♖f5= with an approximate equality.

16. ♖xe4

16. ♖xe4 ♖e8 17. f3 ♖h5 18. ♖f2 ♖h4 19. 0-0 g4 20. fxg4 ♖xg4 21. ♖c2 ♖g6 22. ♖xg6 hxg6 23. ♖e3 e4 24. ♖xe4 ♖e5 25. ♖f4 ♖g7 26. ♖e3, draw, Avrukh – Smirin, Haifa 2008.



16... ♖h4!

Black's knight prefers to occupy the juicy d4-outpost, instead of going on a long journey all the way to the h4 square. This is all done, because of a tempo. It is essential for him to push g4. I realized all this over the board. Black is not afraid of his pawns being doubled, because of his ample space advantage on the kingside.

17. 0-0

After 17. ♖xh4 gxh4 18. ♖h5 ♖f5, Black's light-squared bishop protects reliably his king.

17... ♖g4 18. ♖d2

I was planning to counter 18. c5 with 18... ♖g6 (Black is threatening ♖f4 and he is also preparing h5-h4.) 19. ♖c1 ♖f4 20. ♖e1 ♖xd3 21. ♖xd3 ♖f5=

18... ♖g5 19. ♖e4

19. c5 ♖f5 20. cxd6 cxd6 21. ♖c4 h5 22. f4 gxf3 23. ♖xf3 b5 24. ♖a5 ♖d7 25. ♖c6 h4 26. ♖f2 ♖d4 27. ♖xd4 exd4=

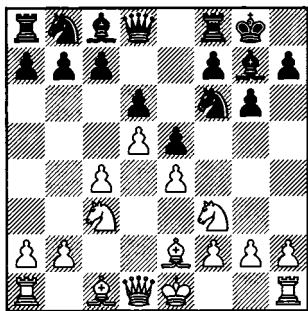
19... ♖e7 20. ♖d2

This was a silent draw-offer, but I decided to play on and I lost...

20... h5 21. f3 ♖f5 22. ♖f2 ♖h6 23. ♖e2 ♖g7 24. ♖xf5 ♖xf5 25. ♖e3, Wang Yue – Bologan, Wuxi 2008. I understood here that my position had been slightly better, except that I had to find the correct decision concerning the pawn-structure. 25... ♖f4!? Black thus provokes his opponent to capture on f4.

Chapter 22

**1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.♘f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.d5**



This is the most straightforward decision by White, because he fixes the pawn-structure in the centre outright.

7...a5

That is some useful prophylactic, since there will not be a better square for his queen's knight than c5. The move restricts the mobility of White's queenside pawns as well.

A) 8.♙e3

B) 8.h3

C) 8.♘d2

D) 8.0-0

E) 8.♙g5

Black has too many attractive possibilities after 8.a3, for exam-

ple: 8...♘h5 9.♘g1 ♘f4 10.♙f3 f5 11.g3 fxe4 12.♘xe4 ♘h5 13.♙g2 ♘f6 14.♙g5 ♙f5 15.♙xf6 ♙xf6 16.♘e2 ♘d7 17.♘2c3 ♙g7 ♞ Zvjaginsev – Morozevich, Pamplona 1995.

The French GM Bachar Kouatly liked to play the move 8.h4, with the idea to begin a swift kingside assault, at the end of the 80ies of the last century, until he was crushed by Garry Kasparov: 8...♘a6 9.♘d2 ♘c5 10.g4 a4 11.h5 gxh5 12.g5 ♘g4 13.♘f1 f5 14.f3 ♘f2!? 15.♙xf2 fxe4 16.♙g2 a3 17.♙xh5 exf3 18.♙xf3 e4 19.♙e2 ♙f5 ♞ Kouatly – Kasparov, Evry 1989.

A) 8.♙e3

The game develops now similarly to the Gligoric system, in a very good version for Black.

8...♘g4 9.♙g5 f6 10.♙h4

10.♙d2 f5 11.exf5 gxf5 12.♘g5 ♙e8 13.c5 dxc5 14.♙b3 ♘h8 15.0-0 ♘f6 16.♙c4 a4 17.♙c2 c6 18.♙e3 b5 ♞ Zlotnik – Morozevich, Moscow 1991.

10...♘a6 11.♘d2

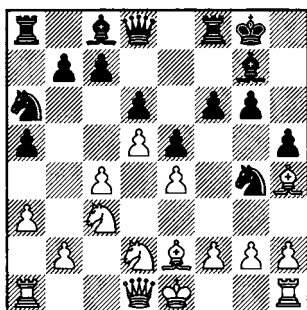
11.0-0 ♙e8 12.♘e1 f5 13.♘d3

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. d5 a5

h5 14. exf5 ♗xf5 15. ♖d2 e4 16. ♗xg4 hxg4 17. ♖c1 ♖d7 18. ♖1e2 ♗ae8 19. ♗g5 ♖c5 20. ♖g3 ♖d3 Gran-da Zuniga – Sasikiran, Andorra 1998.

11...h5 12.a3

12. h3 ♖h6 13. a3 ♗d7 14. ♗b1 ♖c5 15. b4 axb4 16. axb4 ♖a4 17. ♖xa4 ♗xa4 18. ♖c1 ♖e8 19. f3 ♗d7 20. c5 f5 Kumaran – Shirov, Oakham 1992.



12...♗d7

Black protects his rook on a8 with this modestly looking move and he prevents b2-b4 in the process.

13. ♗b1

13. 0-0 ♖e8 14. h3 ♖h6 15. b3 f5 16. f3 ♖h8 17. ♗b1 ♗g8 18. g4 ♖f7, draw, Petrosian – Geller, Sochi 1977.

13...♖c5

Now, in case of b2-b4, the knight will go the f4-square and again the move ♗d7 turns out to be very useful.

14.b3

14. h3 ♖h6 15. b4 axb4 16. axb4 ♖a4 (Black's position is a bit

cramped and the exchanges are advantageous for him. In addition, he occupies the a-file.) 17. ♖c2 ♖xc3 18. ♖xc3 g5 19. ♗g3 h4 20. ♗h2 f5 21. c5 g4 22. c6 ♗c8 23. cxb7 ♗xb7 Bareev – Kasparov, Tilburg 1991.

14...g5 15. ♗g3 f5 16. h3 ♖f6 17. f3

17. ♗xh5 fxe4 18. 0-0 ♗f5

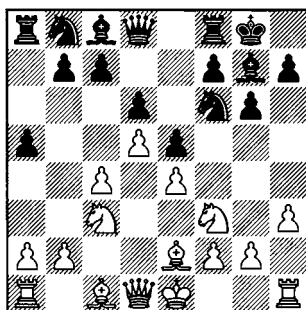
17...♖e8 18. ♖c2 fxe4 19. fxe4

White's rook on b1 may come under attack by the bishop on f5, so he will need to capture with the pawn on e4 anyway: 19. ♖dxe4 ♖cxe4 20. ♖xe4 ♖xe4 21. fxe4 ♖g6

19... ♖g6 20. b4 axb4 21. axb4 ♖a6 22. ♖f1, Loginov – Fedorov, St. Petersburg 1997,

22...g4! 23. h4 ♗h6. Nearly all of Black's pieces are active and even his knight on a6 cannot be defined as bad, because White's rook must restrict its movements.

B) 8.h3



8...♖a6

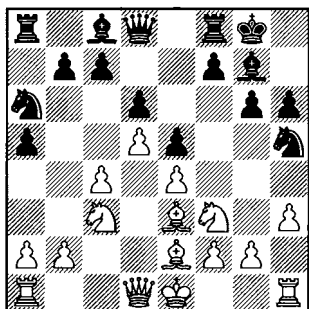
This is the most logical move for Black, since he continues calmly with his development. He has an interesting and more dynamic alternative, though: 8... ♖h5 9. ♖d2 ♖f4 10. ♖f1 ♖a6 11. g3 ♖h5 12. ♖b3 c6 13. ♖e3 ♖d7 ♞ Zvjaginsev – Beliavsky, Tivat 1995.

9. ♖g5

White achieves nothing much after 9. ♖e3 ♖d7 10. 0-0 ♖e8 11. ♖e1 f5 12. exf5 ♖xf5 13. g4 ♖d7 14. ♖d2 ♖c5 15. f3 ♖f6 16. ♖d3 ♖a4 17. ♖xa4 ♖xa4 18. ♖f2 ♖d7 19. ♖ad1 b6, draw, A. Ivanov – Dolmatov, Toljatti 2003.

White fails to build up a positional bind with 9. g4 ♖c5 10. ♖c2 c6 11. ♖e3 a4 12. 0-0-0 (12. g5 ♖h5; 12. ♖d2 ♖a5 13. g5 ♖h5 14. ♖xh5 gxh5 15. 0-0-0 a3 16. b3 f5 17. ♖xc5 ♖xc5 18. exf5 ♖xf5 19. ♖de4 ♖b4 20. ♖d3 b5) 12... cxd5 13. cxd5 ♖a5 14. ♖d2 ♖d7 ♞ Yurtaev – Shulman, Vladivostok 1995.

9...h6 10. ♖e3 ♖h5



11. ♖d2

In case of 11. ♖d2, Black is ready to sacrifice a pawn: 11... ♖f4 12. ♖xf4 (In case White declines the gift with 12. ♖f1, Black succeeds in advancing 12... f5 13. g3 fxe4 14. ♖xe4 ♖f5 15. ♖c2 c6 16. gxf4 ♖b4 17. ♖b1 exf4-+; 15. ♖c3 ♖b4 16. gxf4 ♖c2 17. ♖d1 ♖xa1 18. fxe5 dxe5 19. ♖e1 c6, with a double-edged position.) 12... exf4 13. ♖xf4 ♖c5 14. 0-0 ♖e8 15. ♖f1 g5 16. ♖d2 ♖xe4 17. ♖xe4 ♖xe4 – Black has equalized, Cramling – Romero Holmes, Ceuta 1993.

11. g3 f5 12. exf5 gxf5 13. ♖xe5, Popovic – Narayanan, Reykjavik 2008 (13. ♖g1 f4 14. gxf4 ♖xf4=) 13... f4! (Black seizes the initiative, thanks to this intermediate move.) 14. gxf4 ♖xf4 15. ♖d3 ♖g2 16. ♖d2 ♖xe3 17. fxe3 ♖f5 18. ♖g1 ♖h8 19. ♖f4 ♖c5

11... ♖f4 12. ♖f1 f5

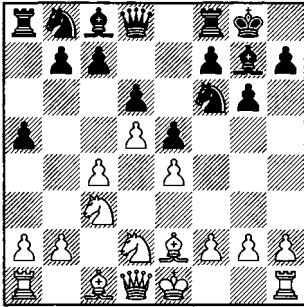
The idea of sacrificing a piece would not work: 12... ♖b4 13. ♖db1 f5 14. a3 ♖bd3 15. ♖xd3 ♖xg2 16. ♖e2 f4 17. ♖c1 f3 18. ♖d2 ♖h4 19. ♖g1 ♖xh3 20. ♖d1 g5 21. ♖c2 g4 22. ♖bc3 ♞ Zvjaginsev – Loginov, Loosdorf 1993.

13. g3, G. Schebler – van den Dikkenberg, Zwolle 1996 (13. exf5 ♖xf5 14. ♖de4 c6 15. g3 cxd5 16. cxd5 ♖e7 17. a3 b5! with mutual chances)

13... ♖d3! 14. ♖xd3 f4 15. ♖e2 fxe3 16. ♖xe3 ♖d7 17. h4 a4 18. 0-0 g5 19. hxg5 ♖xg5 20. ♖xg5 hxg5 21. ♖e2 g4! ♞ Black's compensation should be sufficient for a draw in this endgame.

5.♖f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.d5 a5

C) 8.♖d2



This move is usually connected with advancing h4-h5, but its obvious drawback is that White's dark-squared bishop is temporarily isolated from the actions.

8...♖a6 9.h4

9.♖b3 a4 10.♖d2 ♖c5 11.♖b1 c6 12.0-0 ♗e8 13.b4 axb3 14.♖xb3 ♖xb3 15.axb3 f5 ♞ Palacios – Zanoletty, Logrono 2002.

9...♖c5 10.h5

10.g4 c6 11.g5 and now Black can sacrifice a pawn with 11...♖h5! 12.♙xh5 ♖d3 13.♙f1 g5 14.♙xh5 f5 15.♙d1, Minaya – Avrukh, Benidorm 2008, 15...♙b6 ♞

10...c6 11.g4

11.h6 ♙h8 12.f3 ♖h5 13.♖f1 ♖f4 14.g3 ♖xe2 15.♙xe2 f5 16.♙e3 fxe4 17.fxe4 ♙f6 18.♙d1 ♙d7 ♞ Av.Bykhovsky – Caspi, Herzelia 2006.

11...cxd5 12.cxd5

12.exd5 e4 13.g5 ♖xh5 14.♙xh5 gxh5 15.♖cxe4 ♙e8 16.♙xh5 ♙f5 17.f3 ♙g6 18.♙h4 ♙c8 ♞ Shchukin – Inarkiev, St. Petersburg 2001.

12...a4 13.g5 ♖e8 14.b4

axb3 15.♖xb3 ♖a4

White's knight on b3 is misplaced, so Black must avoid its exchange.

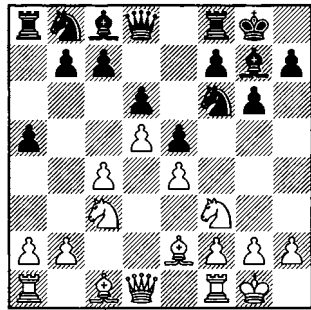
16.♖b5

16.♖xa4 ♙xa4 17.♙c2 ♙d7 18.hxg6 hxg6 19.f3 f5 ♞

16...♖c7 17.♖xc7 ♙xc7 18.

♙e3 ♖c3 19.♙c2 ♖xd5 ♞ Karttunen – Iulidachev, Istanbul 2000.

D) 8.0-0



This move cannot change Black's plans.

8...♖a6 9.♖d2

9.♙c2 ♙d7 10.♖e1 ♖c5 11.♙g5 h6 12.♙h4 g5 13.♙g3 ♖fxe4 14.♖xe4 ♖xe4 15.♙xe4 f5 16.♙c2 f4 17.♙d3 g4 18.♙e4 fxg3 19.hxg3 b6 ♞ Danner – Inarkiev, Saint Vincent 2005.

9.♖e1 ♖c5 10.f3 ♖h5 11.g3 ♙h3 12.♙f2 f5 13.♖d3 ♖xd3 14.♙xd3 f4!? 15.g4 ♖g3!? 16.♙d1 ♙h4 17.♙d2 h5 18.♙e1 ♙f7 19.♙g2 ♙xg2 20.♖xg2 hxg4 21.fxg4 ♙f6 22.hxg3 ♙h6 ♞ Faraj – Miroshnichenko, Amman 2008.

After 9.♔g5 h6 10.♙h4 ♖e8 11.♘d2 (11.♘e1 ♘h7 12.♘d3 f5 13.f3 ♘f6 14.a3 g5 15.♙e1 ♖g6 16.exf5 ♙xf5 17.g4 ♙d7 18.♘f2 ♘c5 19.b4 axb4 20.axb4 ♙xa1 21.♙xa1 ♘b3 22.♙d1 ♘d4= Lugovoi – Diu, Ekaterinburg 2002) 11...♘h7 12.a3 (12.b3 h5 13.f3 ♙h6 14.a3 ♙e3 15.♘h1 ♙d7 16.♙a2 f5 17.exf5 gxf5 18.f4 exf4 19.♙xh5 ♖e5 20.♘b5 ♖h8 21.♙e2 ♘f6= Eliet – Relange, France 2008; 12.♘h1 h5 13.f3 ♙h6 14.a3 ♙d7 15.♙b1 a4 16.b4 axb3 17.♘xb3 ♙e3 18.♘b5 ♙xb5 19.cxb5 ♘c5 20.♘xc5 ♙xc5 21.a4 ♙a7 22.♙d3 ♘g7 23.♙e1 b6= Cherniaev – Avrukh, Biel 2001; 12.f3 ♙d7 13.a3 h5 14.♙b1 a4 15.♘b5 ♙h6 16.b4 axb3 17.♘xb3 ♘h8 18.a4 ♙g8 19.♘h1 f5 20.c5 g5 21.♙e1 ♖g6= Gligoric – Geller, Sochi 1968) 12...♙d7 13.b3, the game transposes to 8.♔g5 (see variation E2).

In case of 9.♙e3, Black can attack the enemy bishop with 9...♘g4 10.♙d2 (White tries to gain some time with 10.♔g5 f6 11.♙d2, but Black pushes f5 anyway, while in case of 11.♙h4, there arise positions analogous to variation A) 10...♘c5 11.♘e1 f5 (Black complies with the doubling of his pawns, but he succeeds in occupying space on both flanks.) 12.♙xg4 fxg4 13.♙e3 b6 14.♙d2 ♙a6 15.b3 ♖h4 16.f3 ♙f7, with an equal position, Speelman – Gelfand, Moscow 1990.

9...♘c5 10.♙b1

10.♙c2 ♙h6 11.♘b3 ♙xc1 12.

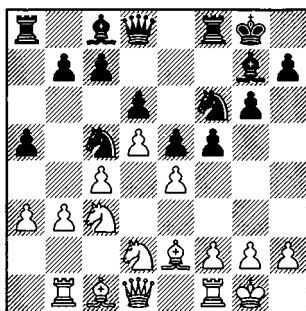
♘xc5 ♙h6 13.♘d3 ♘d7= Spiridonov – Tal, Tbilisi 1969.

10.a3 a4 11.f3 ♙h6 12.b4 axb3 13.♘xb3 ♙xc1 14.♘c1 b6 15.♘d3 ♘xd3 16.♙xd3 ♘d7= Al Qauasmi – A.Kuzmin, Doha 2002.

10.f3 ♘h5 11.♘b3 b6 12.♘xc5 bxc5 13.a4 f5 14.♙e1 ♘f4 15.g3 ♘h3 16.♘g2 ♘g5 17.h4 ♘f7 18.♙h1 ♙h6 19.♙xh6 ♘xh6 20.♙d2 ♘g7 21.♙af1 ♙d7= Kaminski – Kovaliev, Katowice 1990.

10.b3 ♘f7 11.a3 (11.♙b1 – see 10.♙b1) 11...f5 12.f3 ♘f6 13.♙c2 ♘h5= Moriarty – Thorvaldsson, Skopje 1972.

10...♘fd7 11.b3 f5 12.a3 ♘f6



Black has managed to outrun his opponent just by a tempo.

13.b4

13.f3 ♙d7 14.b4 (14.♙c2 ♙h6 15.♘h1 ♘h5 16.b4 axb4 17.axb4 ♘a4 18.♘xa4 ♙xa4 19.♘b3 ♙xc1 20.♙fxc1 ♖h4 21.♘g1 ♖g5= Inkiov – Komljenovic, Torcy 1991) 14...axb4 15.axb4 ♘a4 16.♘xa4 (16.♙c2 ♙h6 17.♙d3 ♙e3 18.♘h1 ♘xc3 19.♙xc3 ♙d4 20.♙c2 ♘h5= Gre-

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♕e2 e5 7. d5 a5

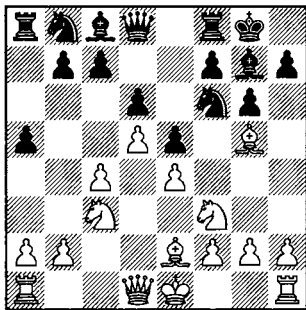
goir – A.Adamski, Belgium 2003)
16... ♕xa4 17. ♖e1 fxe4 18. fxe4
♕h6 ♞ Erwanto – Peng Xiaomin,
Beijing 1993.

13... axb4 14. axb4 ♖cxe4
15. ♖dxe4 ♖xe4 16. ♖xe4 fxe4
17. ♕e3

17. c5 ♖h4 18. ♖b3 ♕a2 19. ♖c3
♕h6 20. ♕xh6 ♖xh6 21. cxd6 cxd6 ♞
Karayannis – Bologan, Xanthi
1991.

17... ♖h4 18. ♖d2 ♕g4 19.
♕xg4 ♖xg4 ♞ Black's extra pawn
cannot be easily converted into a
full point, but he has his chances,
Bacrot – Kritz, Mainz 2004.

E) 8. ♕g5



8... h6 9. ♕h4

White retreats usually his
bishop to this square. If 9. ♕e3,
then Black continues with the
chase: 9... ♖g4 10. ♕c1 f5 (10... ♖a6
11. h3 ♖f6 12. ♕e3 – see 8. h3) 11.
exf5 gxf5 12. g3 ♖a6 13. ♖h4 ♖c5
14. 0-0 e4 15. ♖xf5 ♖xf2 16. ♖xh6
♕xh6 17. ♖xf2 ♖xf2 18. ♕xh6 ♖f7,
but despite his extra exchange, the
prospects are balanced, Volzhin –

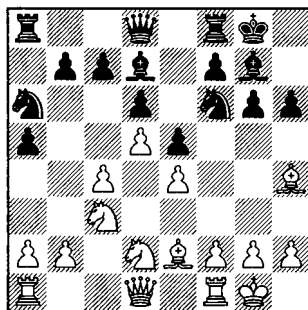
Balcerak, Senden 1999.

9... ♖a6 10. ♖d2 ♕d7 11.
0-0

11. b3 ♖e8 12. 0-0 – see varia-
tion E2.

11. ♖b1 ♖e8 12. b3 ♖h7 13. f3
h5 14. a3 ♖c5 15. ♖c2 ♕h6 16. ♖b5
♖a6 17. b4 axb4 18. axb4 f5 19. ♕f2
♖e7 20. 0-0 h4 ♞ Panno – Kava-
lek, Wijk aan Zee 1978.

After 11. a3, Black can continue
with 11... ♖e8, transposing to the
main lines, but he can also try a
tactical operation: 11... h5 12. ♖b1
(12. ♕g5 ♖e8 13. b3 ♖h7 14. ♕e3 h4
15. ♖b1 f5 16. f3, Kiss – Vlcek, Slo-
vakia 1999, 16... f4 17. ♕f2 h3 18. g3
fxg3 19. hxg3 ♕h6, with a slight
edge for him.) 12... ♕h6 13. f3 (13.
♖f3 a4 14. ♕xf6 ♖xf6 15. ♖xa4
♕xa4 16. ♖xa4 ♖c5 17. ♖c2 ♖f4
18. g3 – 18. ♕d3 f5 – 18... ♖xe4
19. ♖xe4 ♖xe4 ♞ Titz – Brunner,
Munich 1992) 13... ♕xd2 14. ♖xd2
♖xe4! 15. ♖xe4 ♖xh4 16. g3 ♖e7
17. ♖h6 ♕f5 18. ♕d3, Krijgelmans –
Hausrath, Belgium 1997, 18... f6 ♞



E1) 11... ♖c5

E2) 11... ♖e8

E1) 11...♖c5 12.♚c2

After 12.♚e1 ♚e8, it is not clear what White's rook is doing on e1.

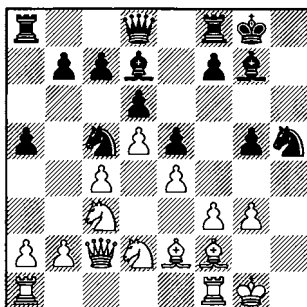
Black can counter 12.b3 with an interesting queen-sacrifice: 12...♖xe4 13.♙xd8 ♖xc3 14.♚e1 ♜fxd8 15.♖b1 (15.f3 ♜e8 16.♖h1 e4 17.fxe4 f5! 18.♚f2 ♖3xe4 19.♖xe4 ♖xe4 20.♚f4 ♙xa1 21.♜xa1 ♖g7=; 16...f5 17.♖e4 ♖3xe4 18.fxe4 ♖xe4 19.g4 ♖g5 20.gxf5 ♙xf5 21.h4 ♖h3 22.♚g3 ♖f4∞ and the game remains very complicated, L.B.Hansen – van Der Wiel, Wijk aan Zee 1995.) 15...♖xe2 16.♚xe2 e4 17.♖d2 ♜e8 (17...f5 18.♜ad1 g5 19.f4 a4 20.fgx5 hxg5 21.g4 axb3 22.♖xb3 f4 23.♖xc5 dxc5 24.♚xe4 and White is close to winning, Gulko – van Wely, Groningen 1994) 18.♚e3 (18.f4 ♙d4 19.♖h1 e3 20.♖f3 ♙xa1 21.♜xa1 ♙f5 22.♖e1 ♜e4 23.g3 ♜ae8) 18...f5 19.♜ad1 (19.f3 f4 20.♚xf4 e3 21.♖e4 e2 22.♜fe1 ♖xe4 23.fxe4 ♙d4 24.♖h1 ♙xa1 25.♜xa1 ♜f8-+; 19.f4 ♖d3 20.♜ab1 c5 21.dxc6 bxc6 22.♖f3 c5 23.♖h1 a4↑) 19...a4↗

12.f3!? g5 (12...♚e8 13.♙f2 ♖h5 14.g3) 13.♙f2 ♖h5 14.g3 (14.a3 ♖f4 Rybansky – Beres, Slovakia 1999) 14...♖f6 15.♖b3 b6 16.♖xc5 bxc5 – White is a bit better.

12...g5 13.♙g3 h5 14.f3

14.h4 ♖g4 15.hxg5 ♚xg5 16.♖f3 ♚h6 17.♖h4 ♙f6 18.♖f5 ♙xf5 19.exf5 h4 20.♙xg4 hxg3 21.fxg3 e4↗ Shulman – Fedorov, Ohrid 2001.

14...h4 15.♙f2 ♖h5 16.g3 hxg3 17.hxg3



It would be worth mentioning that Black does not have enough squares for kingside maneuvering.

17...♚f6 18.♖g2

If 18.f4, then 18...♖xg3.

18...♚g6 19.♜h1 f5

19...g4 20.fxg4 ♙xg4 21.♙xg4 ♚xg4 22.♜h4 ♚g6 23.♜ah1 ♖f4 24.♖f3 ♖fd3 25.♙xc5±

20.♙xc5 dxc5 21.exf5 ♙xf5 22.♖de4± – White has blocked reliably the bishop on g7 and he can calmly trade the superfluous pieces along the light squares, continuing the game with practically an extra piece.

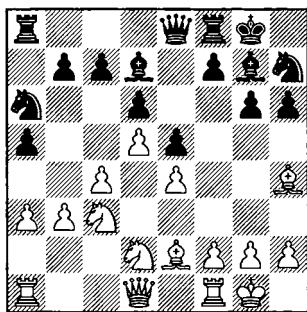
E2) 11...♚e8 12.b3

After the prophylactic move 12.♖h1, Black realizes simply his plan with: 12...♖h7 13.a3 (13.f3 h5 14.♖b3 b6 15.♖c1 ♙h6 16.♖d3 ♙e3 17.♜e1 ♖c5 18.♙f1, draw, Petrosian – Hort, Lugano 1968) 13...h5 14.f3 ♙f6 15.♙xf6 (15.♙f2 ♙g5 16.b3 c5! 17.dxc6 bxc6, Iskusnyh

– Dolmatov, Kemerovo 1995 and here White could have tried 18. c5 ♖xc5 19. ♕xc5 dxc5 20. ♖c4, but after 20... ♕e6 21. ♖d6 ♕e7!, it looks like Black will hold the balance.) 15... ♖xf6 16. b3 ♖e7 17. ♖e1 ♖g7 18. ♖f2 h4 19. f4 (19. ♖xh4 ♖xd5!) 19... exf4 20. ♖xf4 h3 21. gxf3 (21. g3!?) 21... ♕xh3 22. ♖f3 ♖h8 23. ♖e3 ♖ae8 24. ♖g1 ♖e5+ with an obvious advantage for Black, Gulko – Kasparov, Novgorod 1995.

After 12. a3, (without previously played move b2-b3) Black has a standard response – 12... a4 13. ♖b5 (13. b4!? axb3 14. ♖xb3 b6 15. a4 ♖xe4 16. ♖xe4 f5 17. ♖ed2 g5 18. ♕g3 f4 19. ♕h5 ♖c8 20. ♖e4 ♕f5 21. f3 fxg3 22. hxg3 ♖d7+ Illescas – Krakops, Bled 2002) 13... ♕xb5 14. cxb5 ♖c5 15. f3 ♖fd7 16. b4 axb3 17. ♖xb3 f5= Duhr – Klundt, Germany 1982.

12... ♖h7 13. a3



13... h5

This is a multi-purpose move. Its idea is evident. Black wishes to trap the enemy bishop with g5 and

h4. Its other idea is less obvious and that is to transfer the passive bishop on g7 to the queenside.

14. f3 ♕h6 15. ♖b1

15. ♖a2 ♕e3 16. ♖h1 ♖g7 17. ♖b1 f5 18. exf5 gxf5 19. b4 ♖g6+ D. Gurevich – Yermolinsky, Durango 1992.

15. ♕f2 ♖e7 16. ♖a2 ♖g7 17. ♖b2 ♖h8 18. ♖e1 h4 19. ♕f1 ♕f4 20. ♖e2 ♕g5 21. ♖c1 ♖f6 22. b4 axb4 23. axb4 ♖h5+ G. Gutman – Chuprova, Pardubice 2008.

15... ♕e3

White maintains an edge after 15... f5 16. b4 axb4 17. axb4 ♕e3 18. ♕f2 ♕xf2 19. ♖xf2 f4 20. c5 g5, Lyrberg – Sanden, Sweden 1993, 21. cxd6 cxd6 22. ♖c4.

16. ♖h1

16. ♕f2 ♕xf2 17. ♖xf2 ♖e7 18. b4 axb4 19. axb4 c5 20. dxc6 bxc6 21. ♖f1, Stiller – Roos, Dresden 1998, 21... ♖fb8 22. b5 ♖c5 23. ♖e3 ♖g5. Both Black's knights are well placed, so he is not worse at all.

E2a) 16... ♕c5

E2b) 16... f5

E2a) 16... ♕c5 17. ♖c1 c6

17... ♖h8 18. ♖a2 (18. ♕f2 ♖e7 19. ♕xc5 ♖xc5 20. b4 axb4 21. axb4 ♖a4 22. ♖a1 ♖xc3 23. ♖xc3 b6 24. ♖b3 f5 25. ♕d3 ♖f6 26. ♖d2 h4 27. ♖xa8 ♖xa8 28. ♖c2 ♖h5+ Mohammad – Belkhodja, Dubai 2005) 18... f5 (18... g5 19. ♕e1 f5 20. b4 axb4 21. axb4 ♕e3 22. exf5 ♕xf5 23. ♖b3 ♕d4 24. ♖c3 ♖f6 25. ♖b5 ♕b6 26. ♕f2, draw, Naum-

kin – T.Pahtz, Budapest 1991) 19.b4 axb4 20.axb4 ♖e3 21.♟c3 g5 22.♖e1 g4 23.exf5 ♖xf5 24.♟b3, Naumkin – Maxion, Ostend 1991, 24...gxf3 25.♟xf3 ♖f4 26.♟b2 ♟g6∞

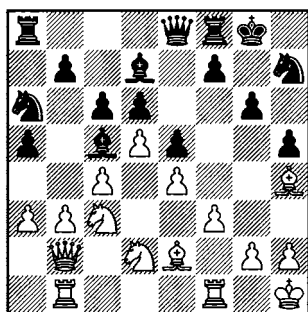
18.♟b2

18.♟a2 cxd5 19.b4 axb4 20.axb4 ♖e3 21.exd5, Naumkin – Ye Jiangchuan, Belgrade 1988 (21.cxd5? ♟c8⚡) 21...f5 22.♟c3 ♟f7 23.♖d3 ♟g7 24.♖f2 ♖xf2 25.♟xf2 ♟fc8 26.♟e2 ♟g5.

18.♖f2 ♖xf2 19.♟xf2 c5 20.♟a2 ♟d8 21.♟f1 f5 22.exf5 ♖xf5 23.♟e4 ♖xe4 24.fxe4 ♟xf1 25.♖xf1 ♟g7 26.♟e1 ♟f6⚡ Vaillant – Degraeve, Metz 2000.

18.♟a4 ♖d4 19.♖f2 ♖xf2 20.♟xf2 ♟d8 21.dxc6?! ♖xc6 22.♟c3 ♟c5 23.b4 axb4 24.axb4 ♟e6⚡ Jussupow – Damljanovic, Saint John 1988.

18.dxc6 bxc6 19.♟a4 ♖d4 20.c5 ♟xc5 21.♟b6, Franco Ocampos – Sion Castro, Pamplona 1991, 21...♟a7 22.♟dc4 ♟e6⚡



18...♖d4!

This bishop maneuvers like a shuttle and it is destroying White's seemingly solid position.

It would be worse for Black to play 18...f6 19.♖f2 ♖xf2 20.♟xf2 c5 21.♟b5! ♟e7 22.f4 exf4 23.♟xf4 ♟ad8 24.♟bf1 ♖e8±

19.b4 axb4 20.axb4 c5 21.bxc5 ♟xc5 22.♟c2, Enders – Rossmann, Leipzig 1989, 22...f5⚡

E2b) 16...f5 17.exf5 gxf5

It is also possible for Black to capture on f5 with the bishop: 17...♖xf5 18.♟de4 ♟c5 19.b4 axb4 20.axb4 ♟xe4 21.fxe4 ♖d7 22.♟xf8 ♟xf8= Demin – Lavrov, Dagomys 2005.

18.f4

18.b4 axb4 19.axb4 ♟h8 20.♖d3 ♟g6 21.♟e2 ♟h6⚡ Topalov – Mamedyarov, Wijk aan Zee 2008.

18...exf4 19.♖xh5 ♟e5 20.♟e2

20.♟c2 ♟g7 21.♖f3 ♟f6 22.♖f2 ♟ae8 23.♟be1 ♟c5 24.b4 axb4 25.axb4 ♖xf2 26.♟xe8 ♟xe8 27.♟xf2 ♟fe4 28.♖xe4 ♟xe4 29.♟dxe4 ♟xe4!⚡ Zielinska – Blimke, Czestochowa 1998.

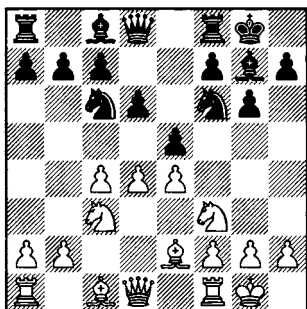
20...♟c5

Black's pawns on f5 and f4 only look weak. In fact, they provide his pieces with excellent outposts in the centre.

21.♟f3 ♟g7 22.g3 ffg3 23.♟xg3 f4⚡ Naumkin – A.Kuzmin, Moscow 1987.

Chapter 23

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.♘f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♘c6



8.d5

Black has nothing to worry about after 8.♙g5 h6 9.♙xf6 (9.♙c1? exd4 10.♘xd4 ♘xe4 11.♘xc6 ♘xc3 12.♘xd8 ♘xd1 13.♙xd1 ♙xd8 T. Johanssen – Ernst, Bad Ems 2004) 9...♙xf6 10.dxe5 ♘xe5 11.♘d4 ♘c6 12.♘xc6 bxc6 13.♙d2 ♙g7 14.♙ac1 ♙e6 15.b3 f5 16.exf5 ♙xf5 17.♙f3 ♙d7 Mas – Delgado, Paretana 2000.

The move 8.♙e3!? has been very popular at the beginning of the 90ies and it is still played by GMs and IMs until now. Black should react in the same fashion as against the Gligoric system – 8...♘g4 9.♙g5 f6 and White must choose where to retreat his bishop to:

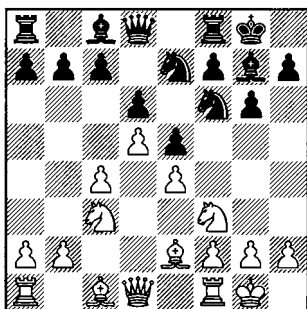
10.♙h4 h5!? (Black protects his knight and he is threatening to trap the enemy bishop on h4 in some variations.) 11.h3 (White has tried in practice numerous moves here, but has not achieved anything real, for example: 11.d5 ♘e7 12.♘d2 ♙e8 13.b4 g5 14.♙g3 f5 15.exf5 ♙xf5 16.♘de4 ♙g6 17.♙e1 a5, draw, Fahnenschmidt – Nunn, Germany 1988; 11.dxe5 dxe5 12.♙xd8 ♘xd8 13.h3 ♘h6 14.♘d5 ♘e6 15.♘e7 ♙f7 16.♘xc8 ♙axc8 17.♙fd1 ♙fd8= Krylov – Klimov, St. Petersburg 1995) 11...♘h6 12.dxe5 dxe5 13.c5 ♙e6 14.♙a4 ♙e8 15.♙c4 g5 16.♙g3 ♙h7 17.♙xe6 ♙xe6 18.♘d5 ♙f7 19.♙ad1 ♙g8 Vera – Ki.Georgiev, Thessaloniki 1988.

White usually plays 10.♙c1, in order not to isolate his bishop from the actions. Black obtains some lead in development and he wishes to exploit it immediately: 10...f5 (10...♙h8 11.d5 ♘e7 12.♘g5 ♘h6 13.♘e6 ♙xe6 14.dxe6 ♘c6 15.♙xh6 ♙xh6 16.♘d5 ♘e7 17.♙d3± draw, L.B.Hansen – Bologan, Stavanger 1992.) 11.♙g5. This is the thematic line for White – his

bishop is activated with tempo. (We should mention some other possibilities for him too: 11.dxe5 ♖xe5 12.exf5 ♙xf5 13.♗xe5 dxe5 14.♙f3 ♖e8 15.♙d5 ♗h8 16.♙g5 h6 17.♙h4 ♗d4⇌ Cebalo – Nunn, Debrecen 1992; 11.exf5 exd4 12.♗b5 ♙xf5 13.h3 ♗ge5 14.♗fxd4 ♙f7 15.♙e3 a6 16.♗xc6 bxc6 17.♗d4 c5 18.♗c2 ♙b7⇌ Bu Xiangzhi – T.Petrosian, Tiayuan 2005; 11.d5 ♗e7 12.♗g5 ♗f6 13.exf5 ♗xf5 14.♗ge4 c5 15.dxc6 bxc6 16.♙g5 ♙e6 17.♙xf6 ♙xf6 18.♗xf6 ♖xf6 19.♖d2 ♗d4⇌ Djurhuus – van Wely, Gausdal 1992; 14.♙d3 ♗d4 15.♗e2 ♗f5 16.♗g3 c6 17.♗3e4 cxd5 18.♗xf6 ♖xf6 19.cxd5 h6 20.♗e4 ♖f7⇌ Farago – Ju.Polgar, Budapest 1991) 11...♖e8 (I have played many times this modestly looking retreat and I am quite happy with my results.) 12.dxe5 (12.exf5 gxf5 13.dxe5 dxe5 14.h3 ♗f6 15.♗d5 ♖f7 16.♙e3 h6 17.♗h4 ♙e6 18.f4 e4⇌ Kantsler – Bologan, Moscow 1991; 12.♗d5 ♖f7 13.♙e7 ♗xe7 14.♗g5 ♖e8 15.♗xc7 ♖d8 16.♗ce6 ♙xe6 17.♗xe6 ♖d7 18.exf5 gxf5 19.♗xf8 ♙xf8 20.h3 ♗h6 21.dxe5 ♙xe5 22.♙f3 b6⇌ Lputian – Bologan, Azov 1991; 12.d5 ♗b8 13.♗e1 ♗f6 14.exf5 ♙xf5 15.♗c2 a5 16.♗e3 ♙d7 17.♗g4 ♗a6 18.♗xf6 ♙xf6 19.♙e3 e4 20.♙d4 ♗c5 21.♙xf6 ♙xf6 22.♖d4 ♙f5⇌ Murugan – Bologan, Gausdal 1991) 12...dxe5 13.♗d5 ♖f7 14.♗d2 (14.♙d2 ♗xf2 15.♙xf2 fxe4 16.♙e3 exf3 17.♙xf3 ♖d7 18.♙xf8 ♗xf8 19.♖f1 ♗g8 20.♙d1 ♗d4⇌

Csoli – Pirisi, Hungary 2001) 14... h6 15.♙h4 g5 16.♙xg4 (16.♙g3!? ♗f6 17.f3 ♗d4 18.♙f2=) 16...fxg4 17.♙g3 ♗d4 18.f3 gxf3 19.♗xf3 ♙g4⇌ Burmakin – Bologan, Sochi 2004.

8...♗e7



We need to know a lot of theory and to memorize numerous variations nowadays, so there is not enough time for second rate lines. I will try to recommend to you short, but effective receipts how to play against White's sidelines on move nine.

A) 9.♙d2

B) 9.♙e3

C) 9.a4

D) 9.♙g5

9.♙b1 a5 10.a3 a4 11.♗d2 ♙d7 12.b4 axb3 13.♗xb3 b6 14.♙a1 ♗e8 15.a4 f5 16.a5 bxa5 17.♙xa5 ♙xa5 18.♗xa5 ♖a8 19.♗b3 ♗f6⇌ Brunner – Nunn, Nuremberg 1990.

9.h3 ♗e7 10.e4 ♗d7 11.♙e3 f5 12.exf5 gxf5 13.♗g5 ♗f6 14.f4 ♙h6 15.♖d2 exf4 16.♙xf4 ♗g6 17.g3

♘xf4 18. gxf4 ♘e4 19. ♘xe4 fxe4 20. ♖e3 ♖f6 ♘ Grachev – Gubajdullin, Samara 2003.

9. ♘h1 ♘d7 10. g4 ♘h8 11. ♖g1 a5 12. ♖e3 ♘c5 13. ♖c1 ♖d7 14. b3 ♘g8 15. ♘d2 f6 16. h4 f5 17. g5 ♘xe4 18. ♘dx4 fxe4 19. ♘xe4 ♘e7 20. ♖g4 ♘f5 ♘ Carlsen – Radjabov, Biel 2006.

9. ♖e1 ♘h5 10. 10. b4 – see Chapter 24, variation C.

A) 9. ♖d2

This is another version of the system with ♘e1, except that White begins with a move with the bishop and awaits Black's reaction.

9... ♘e8

9... ♘h5?! 10. g3 (10. ♖c1 f5 11. exf5 ♘xf5 12. ♘g5 ♘f4 13. ♖xf4 exf4 14. ♘e6 ♖xe6 15. dxe6 c6 16. ♖g4 ♖e7 17. ♖e1 ♖ad8 18. b4, Wunnink – Klinova, Amsterdam 2002, 18... ♖e5 ♘; after 12. g4, Black plays 12... ♘d4 13. gxf5 ♘xe2 14. ♖xe2 ♖g4, regaining his piece) 10... f5 11. ♘g5 (11. exf5 ♖xf5 12. ♘g5 ♘f6 13. g4 ♖d7 14. f4 exf4 15. ♖xf4 ♖c8 16. h3 h6 17. ♘ge4 g5 18. ♖g3 ♘xe4 19. ♘xe4 ♘g6 20. ♖d2 ♖e8 21. ♖xf8 ♖xf8 22. ♖f1 ♖e7 23. ♖d3 ♘e5 ♘ Ligterink – Landtman, Netherlands 1995) 11... ♘f6 12. f3 (There arises a position from the Bayonet attack, except that White has played ♖d2, instead of b4.) 12... c6 13. ♖e3 h6 14. ♘e6 ♖xe6 15. dxe6 ♖c7 16. ♖b3 ♖c8 17. ♖ad1 ♖xe6, Knezevic – Milosevic, Sibenik 2007, 18. ♖xd6! ±

10. ♘e1

White transposes to the system with ♘e1, with a black knight on e8. The inclusion of the not so useful move ♖d2 enables Black to equalize easily.

The move 10. ♖c1 brought disaster to White in the famous match Fischer – Taimanov and understandably was almost ignored by theory. I believe, the move is much better than its reputation and Black must play very precisely in order to obtain a good game: 10... f5 11. ♘g5 (11. exf5?! gxf5 12. ♘g5 h6 13. ♘e6 ♖xe6 14. dxe6 ♖c8 15. ♖b3 c6!? 16. ♖h5 – 16. ♘d5? cxd5 17. cxd5 ♖b8 –+ Tal – 16... ♖xe6 17. ♖xb7 ♘f6 ♘ Taimanov – Fischer, Vancouver 1971, m/1; 11. ♖b3 ♘h8!? 12. exf5 gxf5 13. ♘g5 ♖ Tal; 11... b6 12. exf5 gxf5 13. ♘g5 h6 14. ♘e6 ♖xe6 15. dxe6 ♖c8 16. ♘d5 ♖xe6 17. ♘xe7 ♖xe7 18. c5 ♖ Taimanov – Ma. Tseitlin, USSR 1973; 13... ♘f6 14. f4 h6 15. fxe5 dxe5 16. c5 ♘fxd5 17. ♘xd5 ♘xd5 18. cxb6 axb6 19. ♖c6 ♘h8 ♖ Taimanov – Fischer, Vancouver 1971, m/3) 11... h6 12. ♘e6 ♖xe6 13. dxe6 ♖c8 (13... c6!? 14. exf5 ♘xf5 15. f4 e4 16. ♘xe4 ♖xa1 17. ♖xa1 ♘f6 ♘ Pein – McShane, Isle of Lewis 1995) 14. ♖b3 (14. c5 ♖xe6 15. cxd6 cxd6 ♖ Geller – Minic, Skopje 1978) 14... c6 15. f4 exf4 16. ♖xf4 g5 17. ♖g3 f4 ♖ Ftacnik – Kr. Georgiev, Groningen 1975; 17... ♖d4!? ♖

There is another interesting move for White, which remains

in the shadow – 10.b4. There may follow 10...f5 11.♖b3 ♕f6 12.exf5 gxf5 13.c5 ♘h8 14.cxd6 cxd6 15.♙ac1 (15.♕g5 h6 16.♖e6 ♗xe6 17.dxe6 d5!∞) 15...♗d7 (15...h6!? 16.♖h4 ♗d7= Kozma – Uhlmann, Leipzig 1975) 16.a4, Korchnoi – Geller, Moscow 1971, 16...a6!= Boleslavsky.

10...f5 11.♖d3

11.f3 ♘h8 12.♖d3 ♕g8 13.exf5 gxf5 14.f4 e4 15.♖f2 c5 16.dxc6, draw, Lechtynsky – Babula, Czech Republic 1995.

11...fxe4 12.♖xe4 c6 13.♖b3

13.dxc6 bxc6 14.♗c3, Akopian – Dimitrov, Linares 1996, 14...d5 15.cxd5 cxd5 16.♖xe5 ♖c7 17.f4 dxe4 18.♖b3 ♘h8 19.♖f7 ♘g8 20.♖h6 ♘h8 21.♖f7 with a perpetual check.

13...♘h8

Black takes his king away from the juxtaposition with White's queen on b3 and he prepares the powerful counter strike b7-b5.

14.f4

14.♙ael ♖f5 (14...b5?! 15.♖b4 bxc4 16.♗xc4 ♖b8 17.♖a3 ♖b6 18.b3 cxd5 19.♖xd5 ♖xd5 20.♗xd5 ♖a6, C.Hansen – Bologan, Skanderborg 2003, 21.♗b4±) 15.♗c3 ♖f6 16.♖xf6 ♗xf6 17.dxc6 bxc6 18.c5 ♖d4 19.♖a4 ♗f5∞

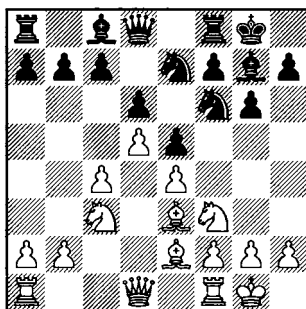
14...b5 15.c5

15.cxb5 cxd5 16.♖c3 d4 17.♖e4 d5 18.♖ec5 e4⚡

15...dxc5 16.♖exc5 exf4 17.♖xf4 ♖xd5 18.♖xd5 ♙xf1 19.♙xf1 ♖xd5 20.♖xd5 cxd5=

Sosonko – Nijboer, Netherlands 1993.

B) 9.♗e3



Naturally, the bishop on e3 is perfectly placed; therefore Black should not let his opponent to play calmly ♖d2, followed by f3.

9...♕g4 10.♗d2

10.♗g5 h6 11.♗d2 (11.♗h4 g5 12.♗g3 f5 13.exf5 ♖f6 14.c5 ♗xf5 15.♖b3 ♕g6 16.♖xb7 ♖b8 17.♖xa7 ♙xb2 18.♗c4 ♖e8 19.♖a3 ♖b8 20.♖b5 h5∞ Wehmeier – I.Belov, Germany 1991) 11...f5 12.♖h4 (12.♖e1 ♖f6 13.f3 f4 14.♖d3 g5 15.c5 ♖g6 16.♙c1 ♖f7 17.♗e1 h5 18.cxd6 cxd6 19.♗f2 g4⚡ Oberbichler – Arztmann, Feffernitz 2007) 12...♖f6 13.exf5, Shengelia – Komora, Cappele le Grande 2005 and here Black had better continue with 13...g5 14.♖g6 ♖xg6 15.fxg6 ♗f5= with equality.

10...f5 11.♖g5

11.♖e1 ♖f6 12.f3 f4 13.b4 g5 14.c5 ♖g6 15.♖d3 ♖f7 16.cxd6 cxd6 17.♗e1 ♗d7 18.♗f2 ♙c8⚡ Piket – Long, USA 1990.

5.♟f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♝c6 8.d5 ♞e7

11.exf5 ♞xf5 12.♞e4 ♞f6 13.♙g5, Lomineishvili – Topel, Kussadasi 2006, 13...h6=

11...♞f6 12.exf5 ♞xf5

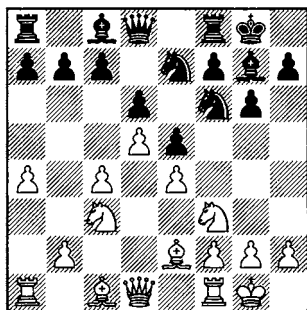
12...gxf5 13.f4 e4 14.♙e3 h6 15.♞h3 c5 16.♞f2 ♙d7 17.♙b1 ♙e8 18.h3 ♞h8 19.♞h2 ♙g8 20.♙g1 h5 21.g3 ♙g6 22.♙d2 ♙h6 23.b4 b6= Lejbovich – Katalymov, Daugavpils 1978.

13.♙d3 c5

13...c6!?; 13...♞d4=

14.♞h1, Ljubojevic – Vukic, Zagreb 1977, **14...♞d4 15.f4 exf4 16.♙xf4 ♞d7 17.♙xf8 ♙xf8 18.♞e2 ♞e5 19.♞xd4 cxd4=**

C) 9.a4



This move looks like a positional mistake at first sight, because after

9...a5

Black has seemingly stopped his opponent's pawn-offensive on the queenside. White succeeds however, in advancing in the long run b4 and c5 with the support of his pieces.

10.♞e1

After 10.b3 ♞h5 11.♙a3 b6 12.b4 axb4 13.♙xb4 ♞f4 14.a5 bxa5 15.♙xa5 ♙d7 16.♙e1 ♞xe2 17.♙xe2 ♙a6= White's attack on the queenside is harmless in the absence of his light-squared bishop, Iturrizaga – Bachmann, Linares 2008.

10...♞d7

10...b6!? 11.♞d3 ♙a6 12.b3 ♞d7 13.f3 f5 14.♞f2 ♞h8 15.♙d2 ♞g8 16.exf5 gxf5, with an approximately equal game, Evdokimov – Inarkiev, Dagomys 2008.

11.♞d3

11.♙e3 f5 12.f3 ♞c5 13.♞d3 b6 14.b4 ♞xd3 15.♙xd3 axb4 16.♞b5 ♞h8 17.♙b3 ♞g8 18.♙xb4 ♞f6= Korchnoi – Kasparov, Barcelona 1989.

11...f5 12.f3

12.exf5 ♞xf5 13.♙a3 ♞b6 14.b3 c6 15.dxc6 bxc6 16.c5, Ftacnik – Nijboer, Hamburg 2005, 16...♞d5 17.♞e4 ♙h4 18.♙f3 ♞d4, with a powerful initiative for Black.

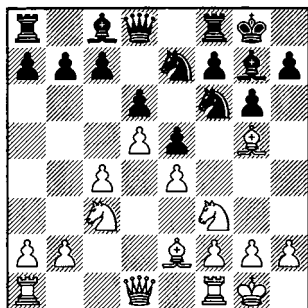
12...♞h8

It would be premature for him to close the position with 12...f4 13.b3 g5 14.♙a3 b6 15.b4 axb4 16.♙xb4 ♞c5 17.a5 ♙d7 18.♞b5 ♙b8 19.axb6 ♙xa1 20.♙xa1 cxb6 21.♙a3 ♞c8 22.♙a1 ♙xb5 23.cxb5 ♙f7 24.♙a8 ♙b7 25.♞b2 (25.♞xc5 dxc5 26.♙c3 ♞d6) 25...♙f8 26.♙xb8 ♙xb8 27.♙a3 ♞f7 28.g3 ♙b7 29.♙f1 ♙c7 30.♞c4 ♙e7 31.♞d2 ♞f6 32.♙a8± V.Popov – Amonatov, Sochi 2007.

13.♙e3 b6 14.♙b1, Pankov – N.Mamedov, Plovdiv 2008 (14.b4

axb4 15. ♖xb4 ♜f6 16. ♜d3 ♜eg8 17. ♜f2 ♜h5 18. ♝e1 ♙h6 19. ♙xh6 ♜xh6 20. ♙f1 f4 21. ♜b5 g5 ♞ S.Khmelevskiy – Beckhuis, Vienna 2006). Here, Black had to include at first **14... ♙a6 15. b3** and only then continue with **15... ♜g8** with equality. He should consider 15...f4 as well.

D) 9. ♙g5



This move was tested in several games by Yannik Pelletier (Vjacheslav Eingorn played it even earlier.), but I do not like this idea for White, because he only helps the offensive of his opponent on the kingside.

9...h6

Black can also try to capture his opponent's other bishop: 9... ♜h5 10. ♜e1 ♜f4 11. ♜d3 ♜xe2 12. ♝xe2 h6 13. ♙e3 f5 14. f3 g5 15. c5 ♜g6 16. ♝fc1 ♝f7. In general, in positions of this type when the board is full of pieces, it is not easy for Black to decide where to place his second knight and the attack with f4 and g4 is impeded by the

presence of White's light-squared bishop. Now, Black's task is much easier. 17. ♝c2 ♜f4 18. ♝d2 ♜xd3 19. ♝xd3 g4 20. fxg4 f4 21. ♙f2 ♙xg4 22. cxd6 cxd6 23. ♝ac1 a6 ♞ Pelletier – Fedorov, Plovdiv 2003.

10. ♙xf6

10. ♙d2 ♜d7 11. ♝c1 ♜h7 12. ♜e1 f5 13. g3 fxe4 14. ♜xe4 ♜f5 15. ♜c2 c6 16. dxc6 bxc6 17. ♙b4 ♜f6 18. ♙f3 a5 19. ♙a3 ♝c7 20. ♝d2 ♝d8 ♞ Golombek – Bronstein, London 1954.

10... ♙xf6 11. b4 c6!

This is a pre-emptive move aimed at neutralizing White's pawn-assault on the queenside.

12. ♝c1

12. a4, I. Belov – Tuzan, Moscow 1990, 12... a5 13. bxa5 c5 ♞

12... a5 13. a3 ♙g7 14. ♝b3

14. c5 axb4 15. axb4 ♙g4=

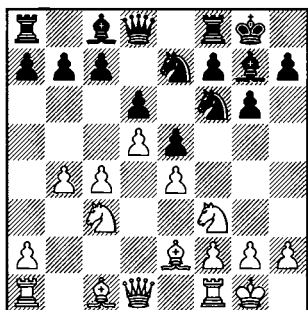
14... cxd5 15. exd5 b6 16.

♝fd1 axb4 17. axb4 ♙d7

18. b5!?, Pelletier – Bologan, Cap D'Agde 2002. (The straightforward approach for White would not work after 18. c5?! bxc5 19. bxc5 dxc5 20. d6 (20. ♙b5 ♜f5) 20... ♜c6 and besides the extra pawn, Black obtains an access to the wonderful d4-square: 21. ♜e4 ♜d4 22. ♝e3 ♙a4 23. ♝f1 ♙c6 24. ♝xc5 ♙xe4 25. ♝xe4 ♝xd6 ♞; 18. ♝a1 ♝xa1 19. ♝xa1 e4 20. ♜e1 ♜f5 ♞). I had to opt here for **18... g5 19. ♜a2 g4 20. ♜e1 ♜g6 21. ♜b4 ♝g5 22. ♜c6 e4**, ignoring completely White's knight on c6. **23. ♝b4 ♙e5 24. g3 h5** and Black would have a powerful attack.

Chapter 24

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.♘f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♘c6 8.d5
♘e7 9.b4



This is the so-called Bayonet attack. White starts an immediate queenside pawn-offensive and he hopes to survive his opponent's attack against his king.

9...♘h5

A) 10.c5

B) 10.g3

C) 10.♙e1

10.♙b3 ♖h8 11.c5 h6 12.a4 f5
– see 10.c5.

10.a4 ♘f4 11.c5 (11.a5 h6 12.♙d2 ♘xe2 13.♙xe2 f5 14.♙ac1 g5 15.exf5 ♙xf5 16.♘e4 ♙g4 17.♙c3 ♘g6 18.h3 ♙f5 19.♙d1 ♘f4 20.♙xf4 exf4 ♞ Lobron – Golubev, Internet 2004; 11.♙a3 f5 12.♘d2, Weiss – V.Rajlich, Budapest

2002, 12...fxe4 13.♘dx4 ♘f5 ♞ 11...f5 12.♙c4 fxe4 13.♘xe4 h6 14.g3 ♘h5 15.♘fd2 ♖h8 16.♙a3 a6 17.cxd6 cxd6 18.b5 ♙f5 19.bxa6 bxa6 20.♙e2 ♙d7 ♞ Bareev – Amonatov, Sochi 2008.

10.♙c2 ♘f4 11.♙xf4 exf4, with the idea to follow with h6, g5 and ♘g6, with equality.

10.♘d2 ♘f4 (Black should react in the same fashion against ♘e1 as well.) 11.♙f3 f5 12.a4 ♖h8 13.♘b3 g5 14.exf5 ♘xf5 15.g3 ♘h3 16.♖g2 ♘h6 17.♙e4 ♘g4 18.♙a2 ♙e8 19.f3 ♘f6 20.♙b1 ♙h5 21.♖h1 ♙d7 ♞ Sosonko – Nibojer, Amsterdam 1996.

A) 10.c5

Now, Black has a pleasant choice between 10...f5 and 10...♘f4.

10...♘f4

10...f5 11.♙b3 (11.♘d2 ♘f4 12.cxd6 cxd6 13.♘c4 ♖h8 14.♙f3 ♙c7 15.♙b3 ♙d7 16.♙d2 ♙ac8 17.♘e3 fxe4 18.♙xe4 ♘f5 19.♙fe1 ♘d4 20.♙b1 ♙d8 ♞ Chibukhchian – Amonatov, Yerevan 1996; 11.♘g5 ♘f4 12.♙xf4 exf4 13.e5 ♙xe5 14.♙c1 ♖h8 15.♙d2 a5

16.cxd6 ♖xd6 17.bxa5 c6 ♞ Bunzmann – Degraeve, Bethune 2002; 12.♙c4 h6 13.♘e6 ♙xe6 14.dxe6 fxe4, Samarin – Jarasz, Mikolajki 1991, 15.♘d5 ♘fxd5 16.♙xd5 c6 17.cxd6 ♘xd5 ♞ 11...h6 12.a4 ♖h8 13.♙d1, I.Sokolov – Piket, Groningen 1992, 13...fxe4 14.♘xe4 ♙f5 15.♖c4 ♘f4, with equality.

11.♙xf4

11.♙c4 ♖h8 12.♙e1 ♙g4 13.h3 ♙h5 14.♙f1 f5 15.♙xf4 exf4 16.♙c1 a5 17.a3 axb4 18.axb4 ♙xf3 19.gxf3 fxe4 20.♙xe4 ♘f5 ♞ Av.Bykhovsky – Avrukh, Beer-Sheva 1996.

11.♘d2 f5 12.f3 ♘xe2 13.♖xe2 f4 14.♘c4 g5 15.♙a3 ♙f6 16.b5 ♘g6 ♞ Commons – Gligoric, Lone Pine 1975.

11...exf4 12.♙c1

12.♖d2 ♙g4 13.♙ac1 ♙xf3 14.♙xf3 g5 15.♙g4 ♘g6 16.♙fd1 ♖e7 17.cxd6 cxd6 18.♙e1 a6 19.a4 ♙ae8 20.♖f1 ♘e5 21.♙f5 f3 22.g3 g4 ♞ Larsen – Gligoric, Lugano 1970.

12.♖b3 h6 13.♙ad1 g5 14.e5 dxe5 15.d6 cxd6 16.♙xd6 ♖e8 17.h3 ♘f5 18.♙dd1 e4 19.♙b5 ♖e7 20.♘xe4 ♖xe4 21.♙fe1 ♘e3 22.♙d3 ♖e6 23.fxe3 ♖xb3 24.axb3 ♙c3 ♞ Najer – Kotsur, Elista 2000.

12...h6 13.♘d2

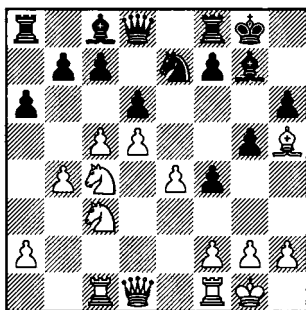
13.h3 g5 14.a4 ♘g6 15.a5 ♙e8 16.♘d2 f5 17.cxd6 cxd6 18.exf5 ♙xf5 19.♘b5 ♙b2 20.♙c4 ♘e5 21.♙c2 ♙xc2 22.♖xc2 a6 23.♖xb2 axb5 24.♙xb5 ♖f6 25.♙b1 ♙e7 ♞ Sosonko – van Wely, Amsterdam 1995.

13.♘d4 ♖h8 14.♙e1 ♘g8 15.a4 a6 16.♖d2 ♖f6 17.♘f3 g5 18.g3

fxg3 19.hxg3 ♖g6 20.♘g2 f5 ♞ Lau-ritzen – Delchev, Benasque 1996.

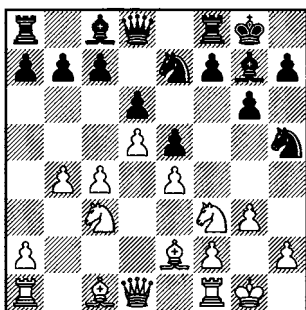
13...g5 14.♘c4 a6 15.♙h5

15.a4 ♘g6 16.cxd6 cxd6 17.a5 ♙e8 18.h3 ♙b8 19.♙h5 ♘e5 20.♘xe5 ♙xe5 21.♙f3 b6 22.♘e2 bxa5 23.♘d4, draw, Keene – Gligoric, Bad Lauterberg 1977.



15...b5 16.♘a5 ♙e5 17.♘e2 dxc5 18.bxc5 c6 19.♘xc6 ♘xc6 20.dxc6 ♖f6 21.h3 ♙e6 22.♖c2 ♙ac8 23.♘c3 ♙xc3 24.♖xc3 ♖xc3 25.♙xc3 ♙xc6 ♞ Legky – Bologan, Sevastopol 1997.

B) 10.g3



The plusses and minuses of

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. d5 ♗e7 9. b4 ♖h5

this move are evident. White covers the f4-square, but he weakens his king.

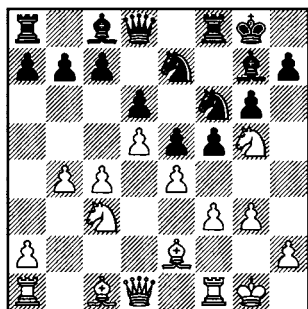
10...f5 11. ♖g5

This is a standard plan for White in the Classical system: his knight is headed for the e6-square, forcing Black to exchange his light-squared bishop. He will have great problems attacking without it, but he can try to encircle and capture White's pawn on e6. It all comes to the eternal dilemma – what is more important in chess – spirit or matter, the pawn or the initiative?

11. ♖d2 ♖f6 12. c5 f4 13. ♖c4 ♗h3 14. ♗e1 ♖c8 15. a4 h5 16. ♗d3 ♖g4 17. ♖d1 ♖h6 18. ♗a3 ♗g4 19. ♗f1 ♖e7 20. h3 ♗c8 21. ♗b3 g5 ♞ Sasonko – Kavalek, Waddinxveen 1979.

11...♖f6 12. f3

12. ♗f3 f4 13. c5 ♖h8 14. cxd6 cxd6 15. b5 ♖e8 16. ♖e6 ♗xe6 17. dxe6 ♗c8 18. ♗b3 ♖c7 19. ♗a3 ♗xe6 20. ♗xe6 ♖xe6 21. ♗xd6 ♗f7 22. ♗e2 ♖c8 23. ♗b4 ♖d4 ♞ Hernandez Holden – Lopez Martinez, Barcelona 2008.



B1) 12...f4

B2) 12...c6

B1) 12...f4

This move was considered the best for Black for a long time, but after Loek Van Wely's improvement Black had to study the line with 12...c6 much more seriously.

13. b5

13. ♖e6 ♗xe6 14. dxe6 fxe3 15. hxe3, Cole – Jensen, Aarhus 1993, 15... ♗c8 16. ♖d5 ♗xe6 17. ♖xc7 ♗h3= with a perpetual.

In case of 13. c5, Black should react with the forced line: 13... fxe3 14. hxe3 h6 15. ♖e6 ♗xe6 16. dxe6 d5 17. exd5 ♖fxd5 18. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 19. ♗c4 c6 20. e7 ♗xe7 21. ♗xd5 cxd5 22. ♗xd5 ♗f7, with equality, Barucker – Wagner, corr. 1989.

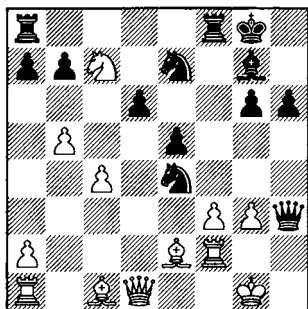
13. ♗g2 c6 14. ♗d3 (14. b5 c5 15. ♗d3 ♖e8 16. ♖e6 ♗xe6 17. dxe6 ♗c8 18. ♖d5 ♗xe6 19. ♗d1 h5 ♞ Michelakis; 14. ♗b3 h6 15. ♖e6 ♗xe6 16. dxe6 ♗c8 17. ♗d1 ♗d8 – 17... ♗xe6 18. ♗xd6 – 18. ♖d5? cxd5 19. cxd5 ♗c7!, followed by ♗ac8 – + Fedorov; 18. b5!? ♗xe6 19. bxc6 ♖xc6=) 14... ♖e8 15. c5 (15. ♖h3, Michelakis – Egger, Buenos Aires 1992, 15... cxd5 16. cxd5 ♗d7 17. ♖f2 g5 18. g4 h5 ♞) 15... ♖xd5 16. exd5 ♗xg5 17. dxc6 (17. ♖e4 ♗e7 18. dxc6 dxc5 19. ♗c4 ♖h8 ♞) 17... bxc6 18. ♖e4 ♗h6 19. cxd6 ♗h3 20. ♖h1 ♗xf1 21. ♗xf1 ♗d8 ♞

13...h6 14. ♖e6 ♗xe6 15. dxe6 fxe3 16. hxe3 ♗c8 17. ♖d5

There begins a more or less

forced play: Black's threats seem to be very dangerous, but presently, with the help of the computer, all kinds of attacks may be neutralized.

17... ♖xe6 18. ♖xc7 ♖h3 19. ♜f2 ♖xe4



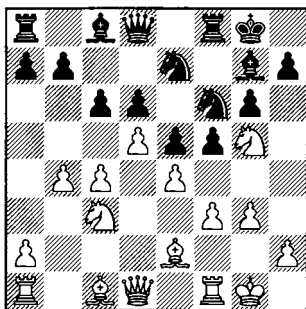
20. fxe4

This is the improvement we mentioned. In general, Van Wely is a very principled player and he never gives up studying and playing variations if he believes in their positional correctness. At first, he tested here 20. ♖h2, but that ended up badly for him after: 20... ♖d7 21. ♖xa8 ♖xg3 22. ♜xh6 ♜xh6 23. ♜xh6 ♜g7 24. ♖h2 ♖ef5 25. ♜f2 ♖xa8 26. ♜d3 ♖c7 27. ♜xf5 ♖xf5 28. ♖d3 ♖c8 29. f4 ♖c5 30. ♜f3 e4+ – van Wely – Degraeve, Mondariz 2000.

20... ♖xf2 21. ♜xf2 ♖f8 22. ♜e3 ♖xg3 23. ♜d2 ♖f2 24. ♖e8 h5 25. ♖xg7 ♜xg7 26. ♖b3 ♖g2 27. ♖e3 ♖g8 28. c5 dxc5 29. ♜b2, van Wely – Radjabov, Dresden 2008, while here, even in case Black plays the best 29...

♖f6 30. ♜e1 ♖g4 31. ♖d3 (31. ♖xc5 ♖xe4=) 31... b6 32. ♜c1± – White's advantage is doubtless.

B2) 12...c6!?



13. ♜e3

13. b5 c5 14. ♖b1 ♖e8 15. ♜g2 f4, with an unclear position.

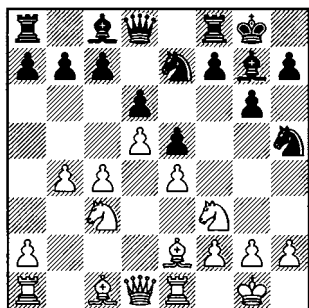
13. ♜g2 ♖e8!? 14. ♖b3 ♖c7 15. c5 (15. dxc6 bxc6 16. ♖d1 ♜h8 17. c5 d5 18. exd5 cxd5 19. b5 h6 20. ♖h3 ♖e8±) 15... cxd5 16. ♖xd5 ♖exd5 17. ♜c4 ♖f6 18. cxd6 ♖xd6= Murugan – Wood, London 1993.

13... ♜h6 14. ♜h1 14. ♖d2 ♖h5 15. f4 exf4 16. gxf4 fxe4, draw, Nikolov – Kr. Georgiev, Bulgaria 1988. 14... ♖fxd5! 15. cxd5 f4 16. gxf4 exf4 17. dxc6 ♜xg5 18. cxb7 ♜xb7 19. ♜d4 ♖f6= Black's position is quite acceptable, Miles – Kr. Georgiev, Komotini 1992.

C) 10. ♜e1

White prepares the retreat of his bishop to f1 and he thus reduces the effect of the occupation of the f4-square by Black's knight.

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. d5 ♗e7 9. b4 ♖h5



C1) 10...f5

C2) 10...a5

C1) 10...f5

This is a popular move, but both opponents need to know the theoretical lines very well. The evaluation of this variation may change with every game. Look at the encounter between Van Wely and Radjabov.

11. ♗g5

11. c5 fxe4 12. ♖xe4 ♖f4 13. ♗xf4 ♗xf4 14. ♖fd2 dxc5 15. ♗c4 ♖xd5 16. ♖b3 c6 17. ♖bxc5 ♗h8= Kramnik – Gelfand, Novgorod 1996.

11. ♖d2 ♖f6 12. a4 a5 13. bxa5 c5 14. ♖b3 f4 15. ♗a3 g5 16. h3 ♖g6 17. ♖xc5 dxc5 18. ♗xc5 ♗xa5 19. ♖b5 ♗d7 20. ♗xf8 ♗xf8 21. d6 ♗b6= Brodsky – Degraeve, Capelle la Grande 2009.

11...♖f6

C1a) 12. ♗f3

C1b) 12. f3

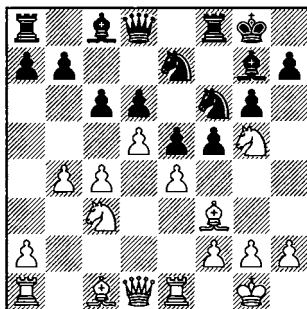
C1a) 12. ♗f3

Black should not be in a hurry to play h6 in this position.

12...c6

He takes the d5-square under control in anticipation of the penetration of the enemy knight to e6.

It is also interesting for Black to try 12...fxe4!? 13. ♖gxe4 (13. ♖cxe4 ♖f5 14. ♖xf6 ♗xf6 15. ♖e4 ♖d4 16. ♗e3 ♖xf3 17. ♗xf3 ♗h4 18. ♗e2 ♗f5 19. ♖c3 ♗g5 20. a3 ♗xe3 21. ♗xe3 ♗f7 22. c5, draw, Topalov – Gelfand, Novgorod 1996; 14. ♗b2 ♖xe4 15. ♖xe4 a5 16. b5 b6 17. g3 ♗d7= Sherbakov – Balabaev, Karaganda 1999; 14. ♖e6 ♗xe6 15. dxe6 ♖d4 16. ♗e3 ♖xf3 17. ♗xf3 b6 18. ♖c3 ♗e7 19. ♗h3 c6 20. b5 ♗fe8 21. bxc6 ♗ac8=) 13...♖f5 14. ♗g5 a5 15. bxa5 ♗xa5 16. a4 b6 17. ♖b5, Eljanov – Gaponenko, Polanica Zdroj 2000, 17... ♗d7 18. ♗d2 ♖xe4 19. ♗xe4 ♗a8 20. a5 ♗a6! 21. ♗b1 ♗xb5 22. ♗xb5 ♗xb5 23. cxb5 bxa5 24. ♗xa5 ♗fc8 25. ♗eb1 ♖d4 Black should manage to hold this position.



C1a1) 13. ♗b2

C1a2) 13. ♗e3

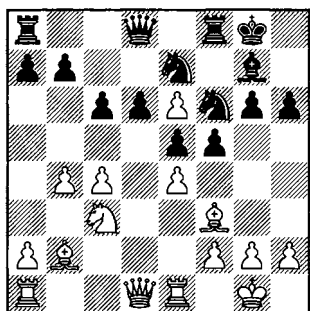
C1a3) 13. ♗b3

13.♖b1 h6 14.♜e6 ♙xe6 15.dxe6 fxe4 16.♜xe4 ♜xe4 17.♙xe4 d5 18.♙c2 ♖d6 19.♖g4, Bareev – Radjabov, Sarajevo 2003, 19... e4 20.♖d1 ♖e5 21.♙b2 ♖b8! with equality.

13.b5 cxb5 14.cxb5 h6 15.♜e6 ♙xe6 16.dxe6 fxe4 17.♜xe4 ♜xe4 18.♙xe4 d5 19.♙a3 dxe4 20.♖xd8 ♖fxd8 21.♙xe7 ♖e8 22.♙c5 ♖xe6 23.♙e3 (23.♖xe4 a6 24.bxa6 ♖exa6 25.a3 ♙f8 26.♙xf8, draw, Pelletier – Radjabov, Kemer 2007) 23... a6! 24.b6 ♙f6 25.g3 ♙g5! and after the trade of the bishop, there arises an equal rook and pawn endgame, Lautier – Ivanchuk, Calvia 2004.

13.♙a3!? h6 14.♜e6 ♙xe6 15.dxe6 fxe4 16.♙xe4 ♜xe4 17.♜xe4 d5 18.♜c5 ♖d6 19.♜xb7 ♖xe6 20.b5, Kramnik – Grischuk, Moscow (blitz) 2008, 20...♖ae8 21.bxc6 ♖xc6 22.♜d6 ♖d8 23.cxd5 ♖a6 24.♜b5 ♖xb5 25.♙xe7 ♖xd5=

C1a1) 13.♙b2!? h6 14.♜e6 ♙xe6 15.dxe6



15...fxe4

Black's other plan is connected with the chase after White's e6-pawn: 15...♖c7!? 16.♖b3 ♖ad8 17.♖ad1 fxe4 18.♜xe4 ♜xe4 19.♙xe4 ♖c8 20.♖h3 ♖f6 21.c5!? (21.♙c2 ♖xe6 22.f4 ♖f8 23.c5 d5 24.fxe5, Paschall – Karatorosian, Budapest 2004, 24...h5 25.♖f1 ♖xf1 26.♖xf1 ♙xe5 27.♙xe5 ♖xe5 28.♖xc8 ♜xc8 29.♙xg6 ♜e7=; 25.♖d3 ♜f5 26.♖f3 ♖e7 27.♖ef1 ♖ef7 28.a4 ♖e6 Black has equalized completely.) 21... ♖xe6 22.cxd6 ♖xd6 23.♖xd6 ♖xd6 24.♖b3 ♜h7. The following exemplary variation illustrates that he has sufficient resources to maintain the equality: 25.♖d1 ♖c7 26.♖c2 ♖d6 27.h4 ♜h8 28.♖e2 ♖d7 29.♖xd6 ♖xd6 30.h5 gxh5 31.♖xh5 ♖xb4 32.♙xe5 ♖e1 33.♜h2 ♖xe4 34.♖xh6 ♖h7=

16.♜xe4

It is worse for White to play 16.♙xe4, since Black succeeds in advancing 16...d5 17.cxd5 (17.♙d3 e4 18.♙f1 ♖b6 19.♖b1 ♜h5 20.c5 ♖c7 21.b5, Bareev – Radjabov, France 2003, 21...♜f4) 17... cxd5 18.♙c2 e4! (18...♖d6 19.♙b3 ♖xe6 20.♜a4, Tukmakov – Hulak, Tucepi 1996, 20...♜d7 21.♖d2 e4 22.♙xg7 ♜xg7 23.♖ad1 ♜f6 24.♜c5 ♖b6 25.f3= Tukmakov) 19.♜a4 (19.♙b3 ♖b6 20.♖c1 ♜h7 21.b5 ♖xe6 22.♙a3 ♖ad8=) 19... b6 20.f3 exf3 21.♖xf3 ♖d6, followed by ♜e4 and Black obtained a slight edge in the game Mista – Antoniewski, Trzebinia 1998.

16...♜xe4 17.♖xe4

5.♟f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♞c6 8.d5 ♞e7 9.b4 ♞h5

White achieves nothing much after 17.♙e4 d5 Peek – David, Amsterdam 2000.

17...d5 18.cxd5

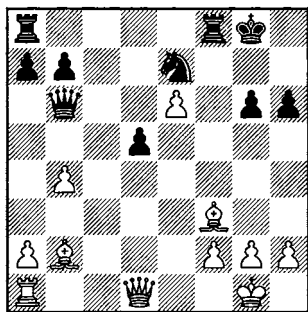
18.♙e1 ♜d6 19.b5 ♜xe6 20.cxd5 cxd5 21.♜b3 ♜f7 22.♙ad1 ♜f5

18...cxd5 19.♙xe5!?

This positional exchange-sacrifice is like an identity card of this variation.

19...♙xe5 20.♙xe5 ♜b6 21.♙b2

21.♜d2 ♜xe6 22.♙e1 ♜xf3 23.gxf3 ♟f5 ♞ Kallai – Barbero, Bern 1997.



21...♜xb4!

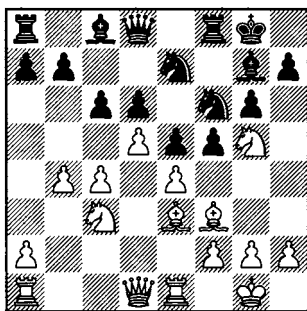
Black's only chance is to play actively. At first, he must prevent White's set-up ♙b2+♜d4 and secondly he must create threats himself.

In the first game, in which this variations was played, there followed 21...♟h7 22.♜e2 (22.♜d2!?) 22...d4 23.h4 ♜f6 24.♙e1 ♜xb4 25.a3 ♜d6 26.h5!↑ with a powerful initiative for White, Shirov – Radjabov, Linares 2004.

22.♙b1, Rudolph – Pantaleev,

Austria 2005, **22...♙ac8! 23.♙e5** (23.♙g7 ♜xb1 24.♜xb1 ♟xg7 25.h4 b6∞) **23...♜a3!** (Black attacks the c1-square.) **24.♜d2 ♟h7 25.♙xb7 ♜c1 26.♙d1 ♜xd2 27.♙xe7 ♟g8 28.♙g7** with a perpetual.

C1a2) 13.♙e3



Black should exchange on d5 immediately in this variation:

13...cxd5 14.cxd5

and continue only later with

14...h6 15.♙e6 ♙xe6 16.

dxe6 fxe4 17.♙xe4 ♙xe4 18.♙xe4 d5 19.♙c2

19.♙c5 dxe4 20.♜xd8 ♜fxd8

21.♙xe7 ♜e8 22.♙c5 ♙xe6 23.♙xe4 ♜d8 24.h4 (24.♙xa7 ♜a6 25.♙e3 ♜xa2 26.♙c1 ♜c2 27.♙a1 ♟f7= A.Spielmann – Nataf, France 2004) 24...a6 25.a4 ♜d5 26.♙e3 ♜c6= The weak pawn on e5 is irrelevant in this position, because of the reduced material, Gyimesi – Baklan, Tusnad 2005.

19...b6 20.♙g4

20.b5 ♜d6 21.♙c1 ♜ad8 22.♙b3 ♟h7 23.a4 ♜xe6 24.♙a3 ♜d7

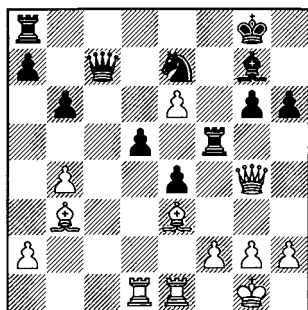
Malakhatko – Sivokho, Polanica Zdroj 1999.

20.♔a4 ♖d6 21.♙d7 ♖xb4 22. ♖b1 ♖h4 23.f3 ♜f5 24.♙f2 ♖f6 25.♙g3 h5 26.h3 ♜f8 27.♙h1 ♖g5 28.♙h2 e4+ Malakhatko – Jenni, Istanbul 2000.

20...e4 21.♙ad1 ♖c7 22. ♙b3

22.♙a4 ♜f5 23.♙d7 ♜af8 24. ♖e2 ♙e5 25.h3 ♙h2 26.♙h1 ♙f4 27.♙d4 ♙e5 28.♙e3 ♙f4 29.♙d4 ♙e5 30.♙e3, draw, Shariyazdanov – Iskusnyh, Tula 1999.

22...♜f5



Theory has gone too far in this line. 22 moves have been played, but this is just the introduction. White has tested in practice numerous alternatives here.

23.♙d2

23.♖e2 ♜af8 24.♜f1, draw, Radjabov – Moreno, Pamplona 2002.

23.♙d4 ♙xd4 24.♜xd4 ♖c3 25. ♖d1 ♜af8= Iskusnyh – Motylev, Moscow 1999.

23.♜e2 h5 24.♖h4 ♙f6 25.♖g3 ♙e5 26.♖h4 ♙f6 27.♖g3 ♙e5

28.♖h4 ♙f6, draw, Xu Jun – Ponomariov, Shenyang 2000.

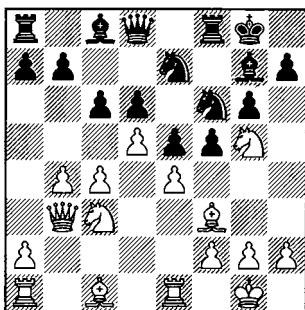
23.♜c1 ♖d6 24.♙ed1, Gerzhoy – Rajlich, Budapest 2002, 24... ♖xb4 25.♜c7 h5 26.♖e2 (26.♖h3 a5 27.g4 hxg4 28.♖h4 ♜e8 29.♙g5 e3!?) 26...♖d6 27.♜xe7 ♖xe7 28. ♜xd5 ♜xd5 29.♙xd5 ♜c8 30.g3 ♙f6=

23...♜af8

23...♖c6!?

24.♙ed1 ♖c6 25.h4 ♙h7 26. ♜c2 ♖xe6= S.Savchenko – Ponomariov, Alushta 2000.

C1a3) 13.♖b3



13...h6 14.♙e6 ♙xe6 15. dxe6 ♖c8 16.♙d1

Black should not be afraid of 16.b5 ♖xe6 17.♙a3 c5!? 18.exf5 gxf5 19.♙xb7 ♜ab8 20.♙f3 (20.♙d5 ♙fxd5 21.cxd5 ♖f7= Korobov – Yevseev, Sochi 2008) 20...e4 21.♙e2 ♙c6! 22.♙b2 ♙d4 23.♖d1 ♙d7+

White's only attempt to hold on to his pawn with 16.c5 can be countered by Black with 16...fxe4 17.cxd6 exf3 18.dxe7 ♜e8 19.♙b2 (19.gxf3 ♜xe7 20.♜xe5 ♙h5 21.♜e3 ♙f4 22.♙b2 ♖f8 23.♜ae1 ♖f6+

5.♟f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♖c6 8.d5 ♜e7 9.b4 ♜h5

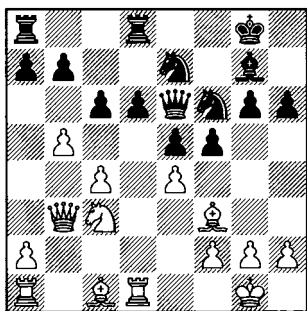
White's extra pawn is immaterial, moreover that Black can recapture the e-pawn at some moment.) 19...♙xe7 20.♙xe5 ♖c7 21.♙ee1 fxe7 Pelletier – Inarkiev, Istanbul 2003.

16.♙a3 ♙xe6 17.♙ad1 ♙fd8 18.b5 ♟h7 19.♙d2 (19.bxc6 bxc6 20.♙a4 f4 21.♙e2 ♙d7 22.♙ed2 ♙ad8, this line transposes to 19.♙d2 ♙d7 20.♙ed1 ♙ad8 21.bxc6 bxc6 22.♙a4 f4) 19...♙d7 20.bxc6. White must play like this, since Black was threatening c5. 20...bxc6 21.♙ed1 ♙ad8= Eljanov – Radjabov, Moscow 2005, with an approximately equal position. White has compensation thanks to his more active pieces, but Black has everything reliably protected.

16...♙d8 17.b5

17.c5 fxe4 18.cxd6 exf3 19.dxe7 ♙xd1 20.♙xd1 ♙xe6 21.♙d8 ♟h7 22.gxf3 ♙g8 23.♙c7 ♙c4 24.♙d2 ♙e8 Kallio – V.Kotronias, Batumi 2002.

17...♙xe6



18.♙a3

18.bxc6 bxc6 19.♙a3 ♟h7 – see

18.♙a3. There arise original positions after 18...♜xc6 19.exf5 ♙xf5 20.♙xb7 ♜d4 21.♙d5 ♟h7 22.♙e3 ♙ab8 23.♙xa7 ♙b2 24.♟h1, Bacrot – Radjabov, Tripoli 2004, 24...♜c2 (24...♜xd5 25.cxd5 ♙c2 26.♙b6 ♙c8 27.♜b5±) 25.♙ab1 ♜xe3 26.♙xb2 ♜xd1 27.♜xd1 ♙d3 28.♜e3 ♜xd5 29.cxd5 ♙c8=

18...♟h7 19.bxc6

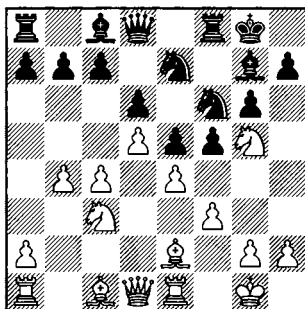
19.♙ab1 ♙d7!? 20.bxc6 ♜xc6 21.exf5 ♙xf5 22.♙xc6 bxc6 23.♙xd6 ♙ad8 24.c5 e4= and Black has nothing to worry about.

19...♜xc6!?

19...bxc6 20.♙b7 ♙ab8 21.♙a6 ♜e8! 22.♙ab1 ♙xb1 23.♙xb1 ♜c7 24.♙a4 fxe4 25.♜xe4 d5 26.♜c5 ♙f5∞

20.exf5 ♙xf5 21.♙xb7 ♜d4 22.♙xd6 ♙ac8 23.♜b5 ♜xf3 24.♙xf3 ♙xf3 25.gxf3 a6 The quick draw is the most probable outcome here.

C1b) 12.f3

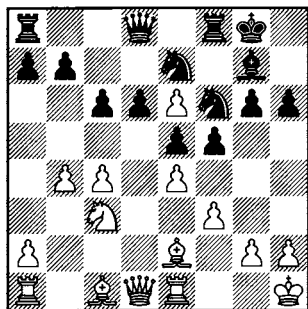


12...c6 13.♟h1

13.♙e3 h6 14.♜e6 ♙xe6 15.dxe6 ♙c7 16.♙b1 (16.♙b3 ♙fd8 17.b5

♖c8= Black wins a pawn, while his opponent still has the initiative, but he cannot create any serious threats.) 16...♜fd8 17.b5 ♖c8 18.bxc6 bxc6 19.♖a4 ♔h7 20.♞ed1 ♜xe6 21.♞b7 ♞d7 22.♖a6, Komljenovic – A.Kuzmin, Benasque 1999, 22...h5!?, Black begins his kingside counterplay, while White's pressure against the d6-pawn is not effective at all: 23.♞xd7 ♜xd7 24.♙c5 ♘c8 25.♙xd6 ♘xd6 26.c5 ♙f8=

13...h6 14.♞e6 ♙xe6 15.dxe6



C1b1) 15...♞e8

C1b2) 15...♖c7

C1b1) 15...♞e8

This is an interesting attempt by Black to recapture the pawn with the knight.

16.♖b3 ♘c7 17.c5!

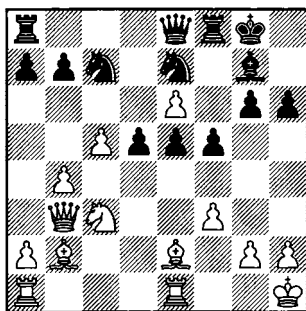
The position is opened now and White is better prepared for this.

17...d5 18.exd5 cxd5 19.♙b2 ♖e8

19...b6!?

19...a5 20.♞ad1 axb4 21.♘xd5

♘xd5 22.♙c4 ♖c7 23.♙xd5 ♜fd8 24.♙c4 ♞xd1 25.♖xd1 ♖xc5 26. ♙b3± Mraz – Spitz, corr. 2004.



20.♘xd5!

This very sacrifice has forced Black to reconsider the evaluation of the variation with 15...♞e8.

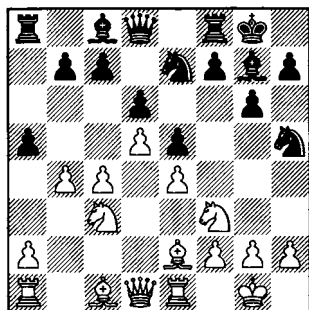
White achieves less with 20.a4 a6 21.♞ad1 (21.♘xd5 ♘cxd5 22.♞ad1 ♖c6 23.♙c4 ♜fd8 24. ♙xe5 ♙xe5 25.♞xe5 ♘f6 26. ♞eel, van Wely – V.Kotronias, Warsaw 2005, 26...♔g7) 21...♞d8 22.♘xd5 (22.b5 ♔h7 23.♙a3 ♘xe6 24.♘xd5 ♘xd5 25.♞xd5 ♘d4 26. ♞xd8 ♖xd8 27.♖b1 axb5 28. axb5 ♘xe2 29.♞xe2 ♖a5 30.♙c1 ♖c3∞; 24.bxa6, Bareev – Topalov, Dortmund 2002, 24...bxa6 25.♙xa6 ♘d4 26.♖a2 ♖d7 27.♙b5 ♘dc6=) 22...♘cxd5 (22...♞xd5 23.♙c4 ♞xd1 24.♞xd1 ♖b8 25.♞d7 ♙f6, van Wely – Stellwagen, Leeuwarden 2005 and here Loek overlooked the possibility of the double strike – 26.♖e3±) 23.♙c4 ♖c6 24.♙xe5 ♙xe5 25.♞xe5 ♘f6 26.♞d7 ♜fe8 27.b5 axb5 28.axb5 ♖c8 Black still holds the position.

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. d5 ♗e7 9. b4 ♖h5

20... ♖cxd5 21. ♗ad1 ♖h7
22. ♗c4 ♖f6 23. ♗xe5 b5 24. ♗f1
a6, van Wely – V.Kotronias,
Goteborg 2005. It is more than
obvious that White has excellent
compensation. He has two passed
pawns for the piece and wonder-
ful squares for penetration on the
d-file. There may follow: 25. ♖g1
♗a7 26. a3±

C1b2) 15... ♗c7 16. b5 ♗fd8
17. bxc6 bxc6 18. ♗b1 ♗c8 19.
♗a4 ♗xe6 20. ♗b7 a5 21. ♗e3
♗d7 22. ♗b6 ♗c7 23. ♗eb1 ♖d7=
Black has parried all his oppo-
nent's threats. His position is a
bit passive indeed, but he should
manage to draw without any
problems.

C2) 10... a5



11. bxa5

Naturally, it would be more
advantageous for White if Black
captures on b4. He can play with
this idea 11. ♗a3, but following
11... axb4 12. ♗xb4 ♖f4 13. ♗f1 (13.
c5 ♖xe2 14. ♗xe2 dxc5 15. ♗xc5

b6 16. ♗b4 ♗a6 17. ♖b5 ♗d7 18. a4
♗fe8 19. ♗ec1 ♖xd5 20. exd5 e4;
16. ♗xe7 ♗xe7 17. ♖b5 ♗a5 18. ♗c4,
Pelletier – Bologan, France 2007,
18... ♗d7) 13... ♗g4 14. h3 ♗xf3
15. ♗xf3, Black has the remarka-
ble resource 15... c5! with the idea
16. dxc6 ♖xc6 17. a3 ♖e6=

11... ♗xa5

It deserves a very serious at-
tention for Black to try the idea
of Smirin – the immediate move
11... f5. For example:

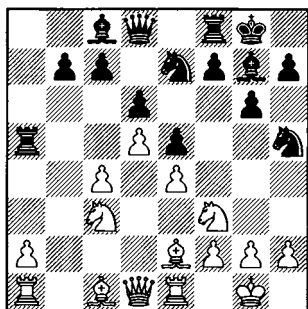
About White's most principled
response 12. a4 ♗xa5 – see 11...
♗xa5;

12. ♖g5 ♖f4 (12... ♖f6!? 13. ♗f3
♗xa5 14. a4 ♖h8 15. ♗a3 fxe4 16.
♖cxe4 ♖xe4 17. ♖xe4, Flumbort
– Nevednichy, Hungary 2005,
17... ♖f5 18. c5 ♖d4 19. cxd6 cxd6
20. ♗xd6 ♗xf3 21. gxf3 ♗xd5 22. ♗c5
♗d7 23. ♗d3 ♗c6) 13. ♗xf4 (13.
♗f1 h6 14. ♖f3 fxe4 15. ♖xe4 ♗g4)
13... exf4 14. ♗c1 ♗xa5 15. ♗d2 h6
16. ♖e6 ♗xe6 17. dxe6 fxe4 18. ♖xe4
♗a8 and Black has an edge;

12. c5 ♗xa5 13. cxd6 cxd6 14. ♗b1
fxe4 (14... ♗c5 15. ♗b3± Mrva –
Smirin, Czech Republic 2004)
15. ♖xe4 ♖f4 16. ♗c4 ♗g4±;

12. ♖d2 ♖f6 (maintaining the
pressure against the e4-square)
13. c5 (White can try to win a
pawn 13. exf5 ♖xf5 14. ♖b3, but
after 14... ♖d4 15. ♗d2 ♗f5 16. ♗c1
c5 17. f3 b6 Black obtains good
compensation for it.) 13... ♗xa5
14. cxd6 cxd6 15. ♖c4 (Black
can counter 15. a4 with 15... ♗h6
16. ♗a3 ♗xd2 17. ♗xd2 fxe4 18. ♗b5

♙f5 19.h3 ♖a8 20.g4 ♙c8 21.♗xe4
♗xe4 22.♙xe4 ♙d7∞ Kramnik –
Smirin, Moscow 2002.) 15...♙a6
16.♗e3 ♖a8 17.f3, A.Rychagov –
Bragin, Voronezh 2002 and here
he had better exchange: 17...fxe4
18.fxe4 ♖a5 19.♙d2 ♙h6 20.♙f3
♙d7= with a good game.



C2a) 12.a4

C2b) 12.♗d2

C2a) 12.a4

This is a thematic move for White's plan, since his queenside offensive includes it always. He is preparing ♙a3-b4 and c5 (if Black prevents this with b6, White pushes a5) and he ensures the wonderful a3-square for his rook.

12...f5

I used to play 12...c5 immediately in the past and it was not refuted: 13.♙a3 (Zigurds Lanka taught me that in case of 13.♗d2 ♗f6 14.♗b3 ♖a6 15.♙c2, with the idea a5, ♗a4-b6, capturing the light-squared bishop, it would be enough for Black to place his knight on d7: 15...♗d7 16.♗b5

f5 17.♗d2 – 17.f3 ♗f6 – 17...♗f6 18.♙d3, Golod – Bologan, Internet 2004, 18...fxe4 19.♗xe4 ♗xe4 20.♙xe4 ♗f5=) 13...♗f6 14.♗h4 (14.♙d2, Kiselev – Bologan, Moscow 1998, 14...h6!? with the idea ♗d7 and f5∞; 14.♙f1, Gulko – Fedorov, Las Vegas 1999, 14...♗d7 15.♗b5 ♖a6 16.♙b2 h6 17.♗d2 f5 18.exf5 ♗xf5 19.♙d3 ♗f6=) 14...♗d7 15.g3 f5 16.f4, Bacrot – Bologan, Enghien-les-Bains 1999 and I had to capture on f4 – 16...exf4 17.♙xf4 ♗e5 18.♗f3 ♗f7! (otherwise, White establishes control over the e5-square) 19.♙d3 fxe4 20.♗xe4 h6, followed by g5, or ♙g4.

13.♗d2

In case of 13.♗g5, Black usually replies with a counterattack 13...♗f4 14.♙xf4 exf4 15.♙c1 ♗xd5 16.♗xd5 ♙xg5 17.exf5 c6+ Kirusha – Manakov, St. Petersburg 1999.

13.♙a3 ♗f6 14.♙f1, I.Sokolov – Smirin, Dresden 1998, 14...fxe4 15.♗xe4 ♗xe4 16.♙xe4 c6=

13...♗f6 14.♙a3

14.f3 c5+

14...b6 15.♙d3

15.exf5, Harikrishna – Fedorov, Dubai 2004, 15...♗xf5 16.♗b5 (16.♙b4 ♖a8 17.a5 bxa5 18.♙xa5 ♗d4) 16...e4 17.♙b4 ♖a8 18.♙b3 ♙h6 19.a5 e3 20.fxe3 ♙xe3 21.♗h1 bxa5 22.♙xa5 ♙b8∞

15...♙h6

Black exerts additional pressure against the e4-square.

16.f3

16.♙b4 ♖a8 17.♗b5 (17.a5 c5)

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. d5 ♗e7 9. b4 ♖h5

17... ♗d7 18. f3 fxe4 19. ♖xe4 ♖xe4
20. fxe4 ♗xb5 21. cxb5 ♖g7 22. ♖a3
♗g8 23. ♗e2 ♖h4= Dydyshko –
Mihajlovskij, Minsk 2006.

16... fxe4 17. ♖dxe4

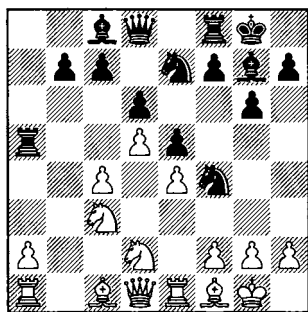
17. fxe4 ♖g4±

**17... ♖f5 18. ♗b4 ♖a8 19. a5
♖xe4 20. ♖xe4**

20. fxe4 ♖e3 21. ♖e2 ♗g4 22.
♖b2 ♖h4→

**20... ♗e3 21. ♖h1 ♗d4 22.
♖a3 bxa5 23. ♖xa5 ♖b8=** with
an equal position.

C2b) 12. ♖d2 ♖f4 13. ♗f1



C2b1) 13...c5

C2b2) 13...b6

C2b1) 13...c5

This move was considered necessary for Black for a long time.

14. a4

14. ♖b3 ♖a6 15. a4 f5 16. g3 ♖h5
17. ♗e2 ♖f6 18. ♗g5 h6 19. ♗xf6 ♖xf6
20. a5 ♖f8 21. ♖a2 ♖h8 22. ♖a4
fxe4 23. ♗g4 ♗xg4 24. ♖xg4 ♖f3
25. ♖b2 ♖f5 26. ♖xe4 ♖d4± Mala-
khatko – Golubev, Ukraine 1997.

14... ♖h8

Alexey Fedorov's plan includes the improvement of the position of the knight, so the g8-square is freed for it and later Black will advance f5, depending on the situation..

It also deserves attention for him to play here 14... ♖h5!? The idea to retreat this knight to my half of the board came to me once after having a bath. The knight is vulnerable on f4 and it hampers the pawn-advance f5. It seemed to me that such slow maneuvers were possible in a closed position like this, for example: 15. g3 ♗h6 16. ♖b5 ♖a6. In case of 15. ♖a3, Black can retreat the knight again: 15... ♖f6 16. ♖b5 ♖e8. Still, after 17. ♗b2 f5 18. f4 exf4 19. e5 (19. ♗xg7 ♖xg7 20. e5 dxe5 21. ♖xe5 ♗d7) 19... dxe5 20. ♗xe5 ♗xe5 21. ♖xe5, van Wely – Fedorov, Leon 2001, 21... ♖d6 22. ♖b3 ♖a8 23. ♖xc5 ♖xb5 24. cxb5 ♖d6 25. ♖d4± White maintains an edge. He is better too following 15. ♖b3 ♖a6 16. a5 ♖f6 17. ♖a4 ♖d7 18. ♗d2 (18. ♗e3 f5 19. f3 f4 20. ♗f2 h5) 18... f5 19. f3 and then ♖c2 and ♖b6±

15. ♖a3

15. ♖b3 ♖a6 16. a5 f5 17. g3 ♖h5
18. exf5 (18. f3 fxe4 19. fxe4 ♖g8
20. ♗e2 ♖hf6 21. g4 h6 22. ♖f1
♖h7=) 18... ♖xf5 19. ♖a4 (19. g4
♖d4) 19... ♖f6 20. ♖a2 ♖h6∞ Gran-
da Zuniga – Nunn, Leon 1997.

15... ♖g8 16. ♖b5

16. g3 ♖h3 (16... ♖h5 17. ♖b5)
17. ♖g2 f6 18. ♖b3 ♖a6 19. a5 ♖g5
20. h4 ♖f7 21. ♖a4 f5.

16. ♖f3 ♗h6 17. ♕d2 ♖a6 (17...f6 18. ♖c1 ♗f7 19. ♕xf4 exf4 20. ♖xf4 f5 21. ♖d2 g5) 18. ♖c1 ♕g4 19. ♕xf4 exf4 20. ♖xf4 f5=

16...♗h6

Black plans to arrange his pieces according to the scheme: ♖a6, f6, ♗f7, or ♕d7 and ♖c8.

17.♗f3 f6

17...♖a6 18. ♕xf4 exf4 19. e5 ♗f5 20. exd6 ♗xd6 21. ♗d2, Eljanov – Fedorov, Dubai 2004, 21...♗xb5 22. cxb5 ♖d6 23. ♕c4 ♖a5 24. ♖c1 ♕f5=

18. ♕xf4 exf4 19. ♖d2 ♗f7 20. ♖xf4 f5 21. ♖d2

21. ♖c1 ♖a8 22. h3 fxe4 23. ♖xe4 ♕f5 24. ♖e1 ♕d7 25. ♖c2 ♗e5 (25...♖a5 26. ♖e7 ♖d8 27. ♖ee3) 26. ♖ee3, Dorfman – Bologan, Belfort 2004, 26...♗xf3 27. ♖xf3 ♖xf3 28. ♖xf3 ♖e7=

21...g5 22. g3 f4 23. e5 dxe5 24. ♗c3 g4 25. ♗h4 ♕f6 26. ♗e4 ♕xh4 27. gxh4 ♖a6 28. ♗g5 ♗xg5 29. hxg5 ♖e8= Sargissian – Fedorov, Moscow 2002.

C2b2) 13...b6

This is a very fresh idea in the theory of this variation. Black wishes to challenge his opponent's straightforward play on the queenside.

14.a4 ♕d7 15.♗b3

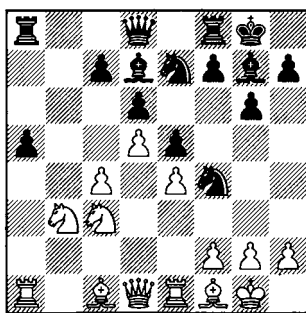
In case of 15. ♕a3, Landa – Maiwald, Muelheim 2009, Black should transfer his queen to the queenside: 15...♖a8 16. ♕b4 ♖a6 17. ♗b5 ♖b7 18. ♖e3 ♖fa8 19. g3 ♗h5, followed by ♗f6-e8, f5 and

c5, or f5.

15...♖a8 16.a5

After for example: 16. ♕d2, he is perfectly prepared to continue with: 16...f5 17. g3 ♗h5, Markus – G.Horvath, Balatonlelle 2001, 18. a5 bxa5 19. ♗xa5 ♗f6 20. f3 c6, solving all his opening problems.

16...bxa5



17.♖xa5

This is a simple and reliable decision. White's attempt to act too quickly – 17.c5!? would not bring him any dividends: 17...a4 18. ♗d2 dxc5 19. ♗c4 ♗c8 20. ♕e3 ♗b6 21. g3 (21. ♕xc5 ♗xc4 22. ♕xc4 ♖g5 23. g3 ♖fb8=) 21...♗h3 22. ♗g2 ♖f6 23. ♗xb6 cxb6 24. ♕b5 ♕xb5 25. ♗xb5 ♗f4= and Black had the initiative in the game Zhigalko – Fedorov, Minsk 2008.

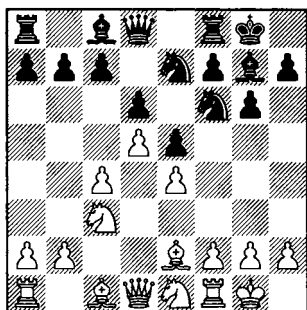
17...♖xa5 18. ♗xa5 ♖b8 19. ♗b5 f5 20. ♕xf4

20. g3 ♗h5 21. exf5 ♗xf5 22. ♗c6 ♖b6 23. ♖c2 ♗f6 24. ♕g2 ♕h6 25. ♕xh6 ♗xh6=

20...exf4 21. exf5 ♗xf5 22. ♗c6 ♖b6= L'Ami – Bologan, Plovdiv 2008.

Chapter 25

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.♘f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♘c6 8.d5
♘e7 9.♘e1



In principle, the d3-square should be the best for White's knight in this position. It supports from there his both strategically important pawn-breaks – f4 and b4.

9...♘d7

A) 10.♘d3

B) 10.f3

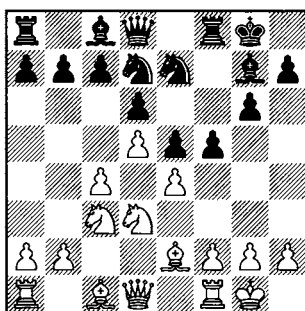
C) 10.♙e3

About 10.♙d2 f5 11.♘d3, or 11.♙c1 ♖h8 12.♘d3 – see variation A.

10.g4 f5 11.f3 ♖h8 12.♖g2 ♘g8 13.g5 f4 14.h4 h6 15.♙h1 ♙f7 16.♘d3 ♙f8 ♞ Giuriati – Nataf, Porto San Giorgio 1997.

10.♖h1 f5 11.exf5 gxf5 12.f4 ♘g6 13.g3 exf4 14.gxf4 ♘f6 15.♘g2 ♘e4 16.♘xe4 fxe4 17.a4 ♘e7 18.♙a3 ♘f5 19.♙g4 ♙e7 20.♙h3 ♖h8 21.b3 c5 ♞ Miles – Romero Holmes, Las Palmas 1996.

A) 10.♘d3 f5



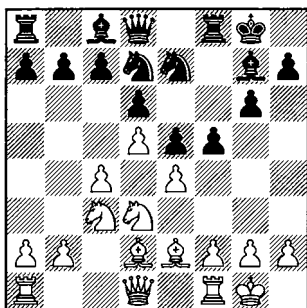
11.♙d2

It is premature for White to play 11.exf5, since Black can react with 11...♘xf5 12.f3 ♘f6 (12...c5 13.♘f2 ♘f6 14.♙d3 ♘d4 15.♘fe4 a6 16.♙e3 ♘h5 17.g3 ♘f6 18.♙f2 ♙b8 19.♙f1 ♘xe4 20.♘xe4 ♙f5 ♞ Vokac – Oral, Olomouc 1995) 13.♘f2 ♙h6 (13...♘d4 14.♘fe4 c6 15.♙e3 ♘xe4 16.♘xe4 cxd5 17.cxd5 ♙f5 18.♙d3

♙xe4 19.♙xe4 ♖b6 20.♟f2 ♜ac8=
Markus – Polzin, Austria 2006;
14.♙e3 ♘h5 15.♟e1 a6 16.♙f1 c5=
Dzindzichashvili – Geller, USSR
1975) 14.♙xh6 ♘xh6 15.♙d3 (15.g4
♘f7 16.♖d2 h6 17.h4 ♘h7, Schulz
– Webersberger, Germany 2003,
18.♖c2 ♘g7 19.♘g2 ♖xh4 20.♟h1
♖e7) 15...♙f5 16.♙xf5 ♙xf5, draw,
Markus – Smirin, Plovdiv 2008.

The position is simplified
after 11.f4, for example: 11...
fxe4 12.♙xe4 ♘f5 13.fxe5 ♘xe5
14.♙g5 ♖e8 15.♙d2 h6 16.♙d2
♖e7 17.♖c1 b6 18.♙c3 ♙a6 19.b3
♟ae8= Varniene – Gaponenko,
Halle 2000.

In answer to the move 11.f3,
fortifying White's centre, Black
should better prepare the appear-
ance of his bishop to h6 with 11...
♘h8 (I believe that he should not
play here 11...f4, reducing the ten-
sion in the centre, since White
has sufficient resources to parry
his opponent's kingside attack,
for example: 12.g4 h5 13.g5 h4
14.♘h1 ♘f7 15.♙d2 ♟h8 16.b4 ♟h5
17.♟g1 ♘g8 18.c5 a6 19.♖b3 ♟xg5
20.c6 ♟xg1 21.♟xg1 ♘f8 22.cxb7
♙xb7 23.♙e1 g5 24.b5 and Black's
defence is very difficult, despite
his extra pawn, Miladinovic –
Korneev, Vrsac 2006.) 12.♙d2
♘g8 13.♟c1 ♙h6 14.b4 ♘df6 15.c5
♙d7 16.a4 ♖e7 17.♘f2 a6 18.cxd6
cxd6 19.a5 ♟ac8 20.♙xh6 ♘xh6
21.♖d2 ♘f7 22.b5 axb5 23.♘xb5
♘h5 24.♟xc8 ♟xc8 25.♟c1 ♖d8=
Figuro – Narciso Dublan, Calvia
2007.



11...♘h8

It deserves attention for Black
to simplify the position a bit with
the idea to gain access to the d4-
square via f5: 11...fxe4!? 12.♙xe4
♘f5 13.♙c3 (13.f3 ♘f6 14.♙df2
♘d4 15.♙xf6 ♖xf6 16.♙e4 ♖e7
17.♙g5 ♖e8 18.♟c1 b6 19.b4 a5=
Black succeeded in opening the a-
file, Krush – Xie Jun, Xiapu 2005;
13.♟e1 ♘f6 14.♙f3 ♘d4 15.♙xf6
♖xf6 16.♙e4 ♙d7 17.♖c1 c5 18.f3
b5 19.cxb5 ♙xb5) Krush – David,
France 2007) 13...a5!? (13...♘f6
14.♙f3 ♘h4 – 14...♙d4!? – 15.♙xf6
♖xf6 16.♙e4 ♙f5 17.f3 ♖g5 18.♖e2
♙h6 19.♘h1 ♖e3 20.♖xe3 ♙xe3
21.♟fel ♙h6 22.c5± with a slight
edge for White, Ftacnik – Ba-
nas, Trnava 1983) 14.g4!? (14.
c5?! ♘f6!=; 14.g3 ♘f6 15.♙f3 ♘d4
16.♙xd4 ♘xe4 17.♙e3 ♘f6 18.♙g2
♙f5=; 14.♟e1 b6 15.♙f3 ♘f6 16.♟c1
♘h4 17.♙xf6 ♖xf6 18.♙e4 ♙f5
19.♟c2 ♖g5 20.♙d2 ♖g4 21.♖xg4
♙xg4 22.f3 ♙d7 23.b3 ♘f5= Ne-
verov – Darban, Abudhabi 2006)
14...♖h4! 15.♙e1 ♘d4 16.♙g2 (16.
♙xd4 exd4 17.f4 ♖e7 18.♖c2 c6) 16...
♖e7 17.f3 b5! Neverov –

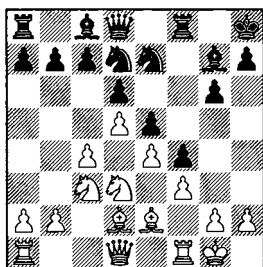
5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. d5 ♖e7 9. ♖e1 ♖d7

Nevednichy, Nikolaev 1993. Black has opened a second front with the help of his wonderful knight on d4. Meanwhile, White's king seems vulnerable.

12. ♖c1

White can hardly achieve much with 12. b4 ♖f6 13. f3 h5 14. exf5 (14. c5 f4) 14... ♖xf5 15. ♖f2 c6, followed by cxd5, ♗d7, ♖b6 with mutual chances, Lutz – Shirov, Santiago 1990.

He has tried in practice 12. f3, but in general, he should better play this move only after ♖f6. 12... f4



and here:

13. ♖c1 h5 14. b4 (14. c5 ♖xc5 15. ♖xc5 dxc5 16. b4 cxb4 17. ♖a4 a5 18. ♖c2 c6, Quiroga – Llanos, Potrero de los Funes 1995) 14... g5 15. c5 ♖f6 16. ♖b5 ♖e8 17. ♖c2 ♗d7 18. ♖f2 a6 19. ♖a3 b5 20. cxb6 cxb6 21. ♖c4 ♖c8 22. ♖d1 b5 23. ♖a5 ♖xc1 24. ♖xc1 ♖b6, Hjartarson – Shirov, Reykjavik 1992;

13. g4 ♖g8 14. ♗e1 (14. ♖g2 ♗f6 15. b4 h5 16. h3, Gritsch – Jurisic, Germany 1991, 16... ♗h4 17. c5 ♖df6) 14... ♗f6 15. b4 (15. ♖g2 h5 16. h3 ♖h6 17. ♖h1 ♗h4

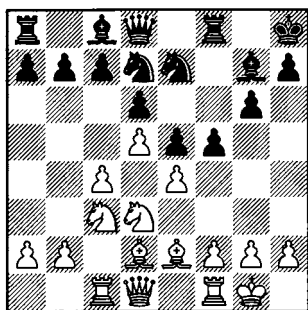
18. b4 ♖f7 19. ♖c1 a5 20. a3 axb4 21. axb4 ♗xe1 22. ♖xe1 ♖f6 23. ♖f2 ♖g7 24. ♗a1 ♖xa1 25. ♖xa1 ♖h8 26. ♖d1 ♗d7 27. ♖d3 ♖h7 28. ♖a1 ♖g5 29. ♖f2 hxg4 30. hxg4 ♖xh1 31. ♖xh1 ♖a8, This is a wonderful example how to play with Black in this pawn-structure, Lassila – Frolov, Jyvaskyla 1994) 15... ♗h4 16. c5, Navarro – Almagro Mazariegos, Cordoba 1990, 16... ♗xe1 17. ♖xe1 g5 18. ♖c1 h5 19. cxd6 cxd6 20. gxf5 ♖df6 21. ♖b5 ♗h3 22. ♖f2 ♖f7, with a double-edged game;

13. b4 h5 14. c5 g5 15. ♖c1 ♖f6 16. cxd6 (16. ♖b5 ♖e8 17. ♖c2 ♗d7 18. ♖f2 a6 19. ♖a3 b5 20. cxb6 cxb6 21. ♖c4 ♖c8 22. ♖d1 b5 23. ♖a5 ♖xc1 24. ♖xc1 ♖b6, Hjartarson – Shirov, Reykjavik 1992; 16. ♖f2 ♖eg8 17. cxd6 cxd6 18. ♖b5 ♖e8 19. a4 – transposing to 16. cxd6) 16... cxd6 17. ♖b5 ♖e8 18. a4 (18. ♖c2 ♗d7) 18... ♖g8 19. ♖f2 ♖h6 20. h3 ♗f6 21. ♖c3 (21. ♖b3 ♗d7 22. ♖c3 ♖b8 23. ♖fc1 ♗d8 24. a5 a6 25. ♖a3 b5) 21... ♖g8 22. ♖c2 ♗d7 23. ♖c1 g4 24. fxg4 ♗h4 25. ♗e1 (25. gxf5 a6 26. ♖a3 b5 27. ♗f3 ♖b6 28. ♗e1 ♗xh3 29. ♖h1 ♗d7 30. ♖e2 ♖f6) 25... a6 26. ♖c7 ♖xc7 27. ♖xc7 hxg4 28. ♖xg4 ♗xg4 29. ♗xg4 ♖xg4 30. hxg4 ♗g3, Silva – Markovic, Buenos Aires 1993.

(diagram)

12... c5

The alternative here is – 12... ♖f6 and only after 13. f3 – 13... c5, for example: 14. g4 (14. dxc6 ♖xc6 15. ♖f2 f4) 14... a6 (14... h6 15. h4 a6 16. ♖b1 ♖h7 17. ♖g2 ♖g8 18. ♖h1



♙f6 19.♚e1± White has prevented maximally Black's kingside actions and his queenside offensive is running smoothly, Kozul – Fedorov, Pula 1997) 15.♘f2 (15. ♖b1 b5) 15...h6 16.h4 f×g4 17.f×g4 ♘eg8 18.♙g2 ♘h7 19.♖h1 ♙f6 (White has problems maintaining his control over the squares g5 and h4.) 20.g5, Gelfand – Kasparov, Linares 1990, 20...♙e7! 21.♙g4 (21.♚b3 ♙d7) 21...h×g5 22.h5 ♚e8 23.h×g6 ♚xg6 24.♚e2 ♘g6. Black seems to defend successfully.

13.f4

13.a3 f×e4 14.♘xe4 ♘f6 15.f3 ♘f5 16.b4 b6∞ Lanka.

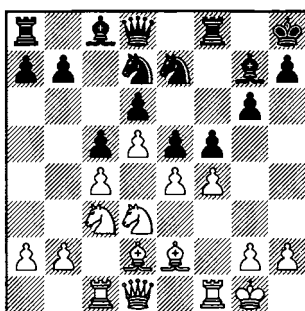
13.b4 c×b4 14.♘xb4 ♘c5 15.♙f3 ♙d7 16.♙e3 b6= Khalifman – Shirov, Lvov 1990.

13.d×c6 ♘xc6 14.f3 ♘c5 15.♙e3 ♘e6 16.♚d2 b6 17.♖fd1 ♙b7 18. ♘e1 ♘cd4 19.♘c2 ♚h4 20.♙f2 ♚h5 21.exf5 ♖xf5 22.♘xd4 ♘xd4 23.♙e3 ♖af8± Akopian – Shirov, Santiago 1990.

13.♖b1 f×e4 14.♘xe4 ♘f6 15. ♘xf6 (15.f3 a5! 16.g4 ♘eg8 17. ♘df2 ♘xe4 18.♘xe4 ♙h6=) 15... ♘xf6 16.b4 b6 17.f3 ♘f5= There

arose a typical pawn-structure for this variation, in which Black has the d4-outpost, while his opponent's possible queenside actions are developing only along the b-file.

13.f3 f4 14.♖b1 h5 15.a3 (15.b4 c×b4 16.♘b5 ♘c5 17.♙xb4 b6=) 15...g5 16.b4 b6 (with the idea ♘g8-h6, Lanka) 17.♘b5 ♖f6 18.h3 ♖g6 19.♘f2 ♘g8∞



13...exf4!

Black must make here several non-standard decisions, based on concrete tactical variations.

It is weaker for him to play 13... ♘g8 14.exf5 g×f5 15.f×e5 (15.♚c2 e4 16.♘f2 ♙d4 17.♘cd1 b5 18.b3 b4= Kozul – Fedorov, Elista 1998) 15...♘xe5 16.♘f4 ♘f6 17.♘e6 ♙xe6 18.d×e6 ♖e8 19.♚c2±

14.♘xf4

14.♙xf4 ♙xc3! 15.b×c3 (15.♖xc3 f×e4 16.♘c1 ♘f5 17.g4 g5; 16.♘e1 ♘f5 17.g4 g5! 18.♙d2 ♘d4∞ Black dominates two important outposts in the centre – d4 and e5 and he has still an extra pawn, so this is more than sufficient

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. d5 ♖e7 9. ♖e1 ♖d7

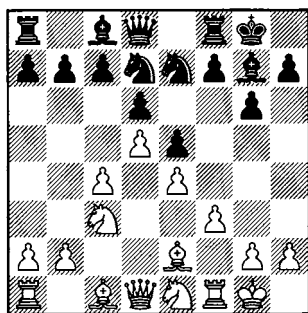
compensation for the absence of his dark-squared bishop and his weakened king.) 15... ♗xe4 16. ♖b2 ♖f5 17. g4 (17. ♖c2 g5 18. ♗d2 e3) 17... g5 18. ♗d2 ♖h4 19. ♖xf8 ♖xf8+ He has restricted completely his opponent's dark-squared bishop and has an extra pawn, so he is clearly better.

14... ♗d4 15. ♖h1 ♖f6 16. ♗d3

16. exf5 ♖xf5 17. ♖e6 ♗xe6 18. dxe6 ♖e7=

16... ♗xe4 17. ♖xe4 ♖xe4 18. ♗xe4 ♗xb2 (18... ♖f5) 19. ♖b1 ♗e5 20. ♖e6 ♖xf1 21. ♖xf1 ♗xe6 22. dxe6 ♖f5= Black is holding this position thanks to his wonderful bishop on e5.

B) 10. f3



This move is connected with the paradoxical idea to organize a counterattack from the position of his own king.

10... f5 11. g4

About 11. ♖d3 ♖h8 – see variation A; 11. ♗e3 f4 – see variation C.

B1) 11... ♖f6

B2) 11... ♖h8

B2) 11... ♖f6

Black plans to close the game with f4 in this line.

12. ♖d3

It is a mistake for White to play 12. h4, because of 12... ♖d7!, and he loses his g4-pawn. There may follow: 13. exf5 gxf5 14. g5 ♖h5 15. f4 ♖xf4 16. ♗xf4 exf4 17. ♖g2 ♖g6+ Dos Santos – Barahona, Maringa 1991.

12. ♖g2 c6 (12... h6 13. ♗d2 c6 14. b4 ♖d7 15. ♖c1 ffg4 16. ffg4 cxd5 17. cxd5 ♖b6 18. ♖h1 ♖d4= Ivkov – Udovcic, Yugoslavia 1963) 13. ♖b1 (13. ♗e3 f4 14. ♗f2 g5, Bertok – F. Portisch, Virovitica 1977, 15. h4 h5 16. hfg5 ♖h7 17. gfh5 ♖hg5 18. ♗h4 ♗f6 19. ♖h1 ♖g7+) 13... cxd5 14. cxd5 ♗d7 15. ♗e3 (15. ♗d2 ♖c8∞ Nikitin – Stein, Kislovodsk 1966) 15... f4 16. ♗f2 g5 17. ♖d3 h5 18. h3 hfg4 19. hfg4 ♖f7 20. ♖b5 ♗xb5 21. ♖xb5 ♖h8 22. ♖bc1 ♖g8 23. ♗e1 ♖h7= Portisch – Stein, Erevan 1965.

In case of 12. ♗e3, Black can prevent White's plans with 12... c5 13. ♖d3 h6 14. ♖h1 ♖f7 15. ♖g1 ffg4 16. ffg4 g5 17. h4, Ovod – Amonatov, Moscow 2007, 17... gfh4 18. g5 hfg5 19. ♗xg5 a6 20. ♗xh4 b5∞

After the more modest development of the bishop – 12. ♗d2, Black can try to undermine his opponent's centre with 12... c6!?

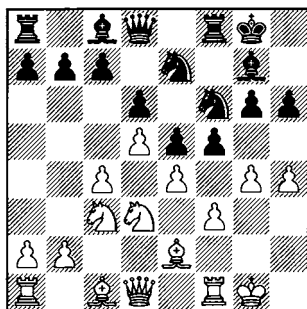
12... h6!?

12...f4 13.b4 (13.h4! h5?! 14.g5± Pinter – Tibensky, Hungary 1991; 13.c5∞) 13...h5 14.g5 ♖h7 15.h4 ♜xg5 16.hxg5 ♜xd5 17.♜xd5 ♝xg5 18.♞h1, draw, Grigorian – Yurtaev, Frunze 1979.

13.h4

13.c5 fxg4 14.fxg4 g5= Greefe – Bouazis, Cleveland 1975.

13.♙d2 fxg4 14.fxg4 g5 15.♙e3 ♜g6 16.♜f2 ♜e7 17.b4 a5 18.a3 ♜f4 19.♙f3 h5 20.♝c1 axb4 21. axb4 ♝a3± Henley – Biyiasas, New York 1977.



13...c6

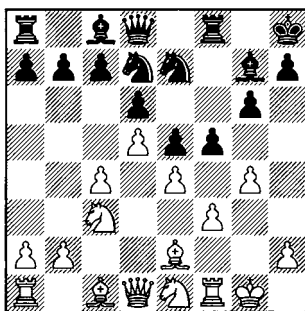
13...c5 14.♝b1 (14.♙d2 a6 15.♝f2 b5 16.cxb5 axb5 17.b4 c4 18.♜b2 ♝b6± Polovets – Kondratiev, Leningrad 1974; 15.♜f2 ♞h8 16.♞g2 ♜eg8 17.♝h1 ♜h7∞ Hanazawa – Kopylov, corr. 1980) 14...♞h7 15.♞g2 ♙d7 16.b4 cxb4 17.♝xb4 b6 18.♙e3 ♝c8 19.♜f2 ♝c7 20.♝g1 ♜eg8 21.a4± The actions on the kingside have come to a stand-still, while on the queenside White can still continue with his initiative, Shtyrenkov – Shulman, Ostrava 1998.

14.♜f2 a6! 15.♙e3

15.♞g2 b5 16.b3 ♙d7 17.♙e3 ♝c8∞ Kozlov – Gufeld, Ordzhonikidze 1978.

15...♞h8 16.♞g2 b5! 17. dxc6, Zaitshik – Podgaets, USSR 1978, 17...f4 18.♙d2 ♜xc6 19. cxb5 ♜d4 20.a4 ♙e6 and Black has good compensation for the pawn.

B2) 11...♞h8



He is preparing the maneuver of his knight g8-f6.

12.♜g2

In case of 12.♜d3, Black manages to block the queenside with 12...a5 (with the idea b6, ♜c5) 13.♙e3 b6 14.b3 (14.g5 ♜c5 15.h4 c6) 14...♜c5 15.g5 ♜xd3 16.♙xd3 f4 17.♙d2 ♙h3 18.♝f2 ♜g8±

12.h4 c6 13.♙e3 ♜f6 14.a4 ♙d7 15.♜d3 ♝c7, followed by ♝ae8∞

12.♙e3 ♜g8 13.♜g2 ♙h6 14. ♙f2 a5 15.a3 ♜c5± 16.b4?! axb4 17.axb4 ♝xa1 18.♝xa1 ♜b3 19.♝d1 ♜d2 20.♝e1 fxg4 21.fxg4 ♝f6 22. ♙g3 ♜f3 23.♙xf3 ♝xf3± Moura-

5.♟f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♘c6 8.d5 ♘e7 9.♞e1 ♞d7

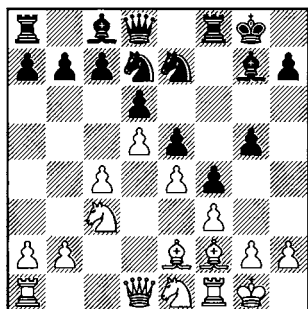
tidis – Kotronias, Thessaloniki 2005.

12...a5 13.h4 ♞c5 14.♙e3 ♟g8 15.♙b1

15.exf5 gxf5 16.g5 f4 17.♙xc5 dxc5 18.♞e4 ♞e7 19.♞xc5 ♞f5 20.♞e4, Zilberstein – Petrushin, USSR 1979, 20...h6, with a double-edged position.

15...♙d7 16.b3 b6 17.a3 a4! 18.b4 ♞b3 Black has succeeded in occupying the b3-square in a typical fashion with his knight and it is ready to go to d4 from there, Pinter – Nunn, Thessaloniki 1988.

C) 10.♙e3 f5 11.f3 f4 12.♙f2 g5



C1) 13.a4

C2) 13.♞d3

C3) 13.♙c1

Before we start analyzing the main lines, we must deal with some other not so popular variations, which may create certain problems for Black.

13.♞b5 b6 14.b4 a6 15.♞c3 h5 16.♞h1 ♞f6 17.c5 g4 18.cxb6 cxb6 19.♙c1 g3 Korchnoi – Ye, Novi Sad 1990.

13.b4 ♞f6 14.c5 ♞g6 15.cxd6 (15.a4 h5 16.c6 bxc6 17.dxc6, Branch – Steinmeyer, corr. 1961, 17...♙e6) 15...cxd6 16.♙c1 ♙f7 17.♞b5 (17.a4 ♙f8 18.a5 ♙d7 19.♞b5g4↑Piket – Kasparov, Tilburg 1989) 17...h5 18.♞xa7 ♙d7 19.a4 g4 20.a5 g3 21.♙b6 gxh2 22.♞h1 ♙e8 Piket – Spasov, Groningen 1989.

It will be also interesting to pay some attention to the paradoxical line: 13.g4 fxe3 (Black must open the position, because his attack will be too slow, if the centre is closed.) 14.hxe3 h5 (White is better after 14...♞g6 15.♞g2 h5 16.♞e3 ♞f6 17.♞f5.) 15.♙d2 ♞g6 16.♞g2 ♙h6 (16...h4 17.g4 ♞f4 18.♞h2 ♞xe3 19.♞xe3± M.Socko – Kachiani-Gersinska, Wuppertal 1998; 16...a5 17.♞a4 b6 18.a3 h4 19.g4 ♞f4 20.♞h2 ♞f6 21.♞e3 ♙d7 22.♞c3 a4 23.♙fb1 ♙a5 24.b4 axb3 25.♙xb3 ♙e7 26.♞b5 ♞e8 27.♙d1 ♙f7 28.♙a2 ♙f6 29.a4 ♙d8 30.♙e1± S.Savchenko – Fedorov, Nikolaev 1993) 17.♙e3 ♞h7 18.b4 a5 19.a3 b6 20.♞a4 h4!±

C1) 13.a4

C1a) 13...♞g6

C1b) 13...a5

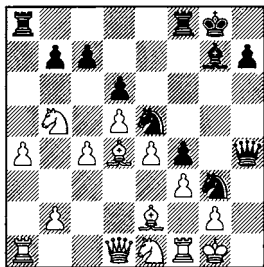
C1a) 13...♞g6

This is too risky for Black, be-

cause his attack is not always successful and White ends up with free hands for queenside actions.

14.a5

As usual in this variation, you have to calculate the complications to the end in many cases: 14.♟b5 ♘f6 15.♟xa7 g4 16.♟xc8 (16.fxg4 ♜xe4 17.♟xc8 ♜xf2 18.♟xf2 e4±) 16...g3 17.hxg3 ♜h5 18.gxf4 exf4, Mietus – W. Schmidt, Polanica Zdroj 1992, 19.♟a7 ♜g3 20.♟b5 ♟h4. You may wonder why I quote such long variations in this book? I believe the fans of this opening need to see them in order to have trust in the position, in the sacrifice and in the King's Indian Defence in general! 21.♟d4 ♜e5



1) 22.♟c3 ♟f6 23.♟xe5 (23.♟c2) 23...dxe5 24.♟d3 ♟g6→

2) 22.♟c2 ♜g4 23.fxg4 ♟xd4 24.♟cxd4 ♟h1 25.♟f2 ♜xe4 26.♟f3 ♜g5=

3) 22.♟xe5 ♟xe5 23.♟d3 (23.♟c2 ♟f6 24.♟d3 ♟h6 25.♟f2 ♟xb2 26.♟b1 ♟c3→) 23...♟h8 24.♟xe5 (24.♟e1 ♟g8 25.♟d1 ♟f6=) 24...dxe5 25.♟d3 ♟g8 26.♟c2 ♟h1

27.♟f2 ♟h4 28.♟f1 c6 29.♟c7 ♜f5 30.♟g1 ♜d4 31.♟f2 ♟xg2 32.♟xg2 ♟g8 33.♟xg8 ♟xg8 and Black's attack is very dangerous.

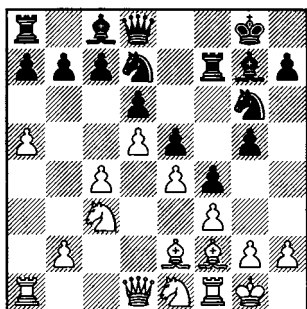
4) 22.♟d3 c6 23.dxc6 bxc6 24.♟c2 cxb5 25.cxb5 ♟h1 26.♟f2 ♟h4 27.♟xe5 ♟xe5 28.♟c4 ♟g7 29.a5 ♟xb2 30.♟a2 ♟f6 31.♟b4 ♜xe4 32.♟g1 ♟c3±

5) 22.♟d3 ♜xc4 23.♟xf4 ♟xd4 24.♟xd4 ♜e3 25.♟c1 ♟xf4 26.♟e1 ♟h6 27.♟f1 c5 28.dxc6 ♟h1 29.♟f2 ♜g4 30.♟xg3 ♟h2 31.♟xg4 h5 32.♟g5 ♟a5!! 33.♟b5 ♟h7 34.♜e6 ♟xg2 35.♟xh5 ♟h3 with a perpetual.

14...♟f7

14...h5 15.♟b5 ♜f6 (15...a6 16.♟a7 ♜f6 17.♜xc8 ♟xc8 18.c5↑) 16.♟xa7 (16.c5 a6 17.♟a3 g4↑) 16...♟d7 (16...g4 17.♜xc8 g3 18.hxg3 fxg3 19.♟xg3 h4 20.♟h2 ♟xc8 21.♟d3± Kozul – Sherser, Biel 1993) 17.c5 g4 18.c6 g3 19.hxg3 fxg3 20.♟xg3 ♟xa7 (20...h4 21.♟f2 bxc6 22.♜xc6 ♟xc6 23.dxc6 ♜h5 and now, White opened the scope of action of his light-squared bishop in a typical fashion: 24.f4! ♜g3 25.♟c4+- Ikonnikov – Strovsky, Metz 1994) 21.cxd7 ♟xd7 (21...h4 22.♟f2 ♟a8 23.♜c2 ♟h6 24.♜e3 ♟f4 25.♜f5± Korchnoi – Xie Jun, Prague 1995) 22.♜c2 ♟aa8 23.♜e3 h4 24.♟f2 ♟h6 25.♜f5± White has again a stable edge, thanks to the transfer of his knight to the f5-square, P.H.Nielsen – Dolmatov, Kemerovo 1995.

5.♟f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♖c6 8.d5 ♗e7 9.♗e1 ♘d7



15.b4

15.♘d3 ♗f6 16.c5 ♙f8 (16...h5 17.cxd6 cxd6 18.♗b5 g4 19.♗xa7 ♙d7 20.♙b6 ♖b8=; 19.♙xa7 and here the exchange-sacrifice would not work for Black 19...♙xa7 20.♗xa7 ♙d7 21.♖b3 ♗h7 22.♖b6 ♖h4 23.♗h1 g3 24.♖g1+; 19...g3 20.♙b6 ♖e7 21.♗c7 ♗xd5 22.♗xd5 ♖h4 23.h3 ♙xh3 24.gxh3 ♖xh3 25.♖f2 ♗h4 26.♖f1 gxf2 27.♗xf2 ♖g3 28.♗h1 ♗xf3 29.♖g2±; 21...♗h7 22.♗xa8 ♖h4 23.h3 ♙xh3 24.gxh3 ♖xh3 25.♖f2 gxf2 26.♗xf2 ♗h4 27.♖f1±) 17.cxd6 ♙xd6 18.♗c5 ♗f8 19.♖b3 ♖e7 20.♗e6 (20.♗xb7 g4 21.♙ac1 ♖g7±) 20...♗xe6 21.dxe6 ♙xe6 22.♖xb7 ♖f8 23.♖a6 g4 24.♙c4 ♙xc4 25.♖xc4 ♗h8= Golubev – Ovsejevitsch, Alushta 1999.

15.♗b5 ♗f6 16.♗xa7 g4 17.♗xc8 (17.fxg4 ♗xe4 18.♗xc8 ♗xf2 19.♙xf2 e4! with a sharp double-edged position, Ikonnikov – Brustman, Crailsheim 1996) 17...g3 18.♗xd6 (18.hxg3 ♗h5 19.gxf4 exf4 20.♗a7 ♗g3 21.♗b5 ♖h4 22.♙d4 ♗e5. White is in trouble and Black continues

with his attack following already analyzed examples: 20.♘d3 ♙xc8 21.♖e1 ♖g5 22.♙d1 ♗g3 23.♗xf4 ♗xf4+ A.Volodin – Purtov, Gyongyos 1995) 18...gxf2 19.♙xf2 ♖xd6 20.♘d3 c5 21.b4 ♗d7∞

15.c5 ♗xc5 (15...♗f6 16.cxd6 cxd6 17.♗b5 g4 18.fxg4 ♗xe4 19.♙xa7 ♙xa7 20.♗xa7 ♙d7 21.♗b5±) 16.♙xc5 dxc5 17.♙c4 ♗h8 18.a6 bxa6 19.♘d3 ♙f8 20.♙xa6 (20.♗a4 g4 21.fxg4 ♖g5 22.♗f2 ♙d6 23.♙a3 ♖b8 24.♙c3 ♖b4∞ Llopis – Volke, Biel 1993) 20...♙xa6 21.♙xa6 c4 22.♗f2 ♙c5 23.♖e2 g4!±

15...♗f6 16.c5 ♙f8 17.c6

17.cxd6 ♙xd6 18.♘d3 h5 19.♗c5 ♗f8 20.♗b5 g4 21.♙h4 ♖g7 22.♖b3 ♗h7 23.♖fd1 ♗g6 24.♙g5 ♗f8 25.♙h4 ♗g6 26.♙g5, draw, Psakhis – Kaminski, Groningen 1993.

17...h5 18.♗h1

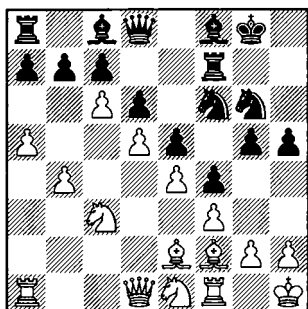
18.♗b5 bxc6!? (18...g4 19.cxb7 ♙xb7 20.fxg4 hxg4 21.♙xg4 ♗xg4 22.♖xg4 ♙c8 23.♖xg6 ♖g7 24.♖xg7 ♙xg7 25.♗xa7± White has an easy plan for actions, connected with the advance of his a-pawn, Pavlovic – Pancevski, Belgrade 2008) 19.♗xa7 cxd5 20.exd5 ♗e7 21.♗xc8 ♖xc8 22.♙c4. White is slightly better, but Black has his counterplay, based on advancing pawns.

(diagram)

18...♖g7!?N

Black's rook is better placed on the g-file.

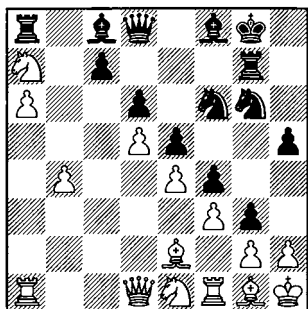
But not 18...♖h7 19.cxb7 ♙xb7 20.a6 ♙c8 21.♗b5 g4 22.♗xa7 g3



23. Qc6 R7 24. Kg1, Korchnoi – Xie Jun, Wenzhou 1995, 24... gxf2 25. f2 h4 26. Qa7±

19. cxb7 Qxb7 20. a6 Qc8 21. Qb5 g4 22. Qxa7 g3 23. Kg1

23. Qc6 R7 White has won some material due to his queen-side actions, but the speed of his attack has diminished considerably. On the other hand, Black sacrifices another pawn, in order to provoke even sharper complications.



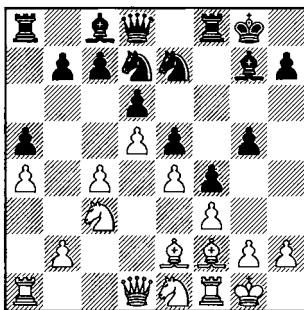
23... Qxa7

Black sacrifices the exchange to advance c7-c5.

24. Qxa7 c5 25. Qxc5 (25. dxc6 Qxa7 26. R7 d2 Qh7 27. Qc4 Qh8

28. h3 Qh4 29. Qg1 Qg5 30. Qa2 Qg7→ followed by the unavoidable Qh3; 25. Qb6 Qxb6 26. bxc5 dxc5 27. Qc4 Qe8∞; 26. Qa4 R7 27. Qa2 Qh7 28. h3 Qh4 29. Qb5 Qg5 30. a7 Qxh3 31. gxf2 Qxh3 32. Qg2 Qf2 33. Qxf2 Qh2 34. Qf1 Qh1 35. Qe2 gxf2 36. Qxf2 Qh4 37. Qe2 Qg1 38. Qa1 Qxf3-+) **25... dxc5 26. d6 Qh7 27. Qc4 Qh8 28. Qa2 Qh4 29. h3 Qxh3** (29... Qg5 30. bxc5) **30. gxf2 Qxh3 31. Qg1 Qh4**. Black is threatening g2, while in case of **32. Qe2** he can simply continue with **32... cxb4 33. a7 Qxa7 34. Qxa7 Qxd6 35. Qa8 Qg7 36. Qa5 Qc8!** Black has only a piece for his two rooks, but he is not worse at all.

C1b) 13... a5!



It is essential for him to defend well, besides attacking effectively. The move a5 slows down White's attack and it deprives him of his standard space advantage on the queenside.

14. Qd3

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♕e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. d5 ♖e7 9. ♖e1 ♖d7

14. ♖b5 b6 15. b4 axb4 16. ♖d3 ♖f6 17. ♖xb4 ♕d7 18. ♖c2 ♖h8 19. ♖a3 ♖g8 20. ♖fa1 ♕f8∞ 21. a5?! ♖xa5 22. ♖xa5 bxa5 23. ♖xa5 c5 24. dxc6 ♖xa5 25. cxd7 ♖xd7 26. ♖d5 ♖xd5 27. exd5 g4↑ Goloshchapov – Barthel, Mainz 1995.

Following 14.g4, Black should simply capture en passant: 14... fxd3 15. hxd3 h5=

14...b6

C1b1) 15. ♖b5

C1b2) 15. b4

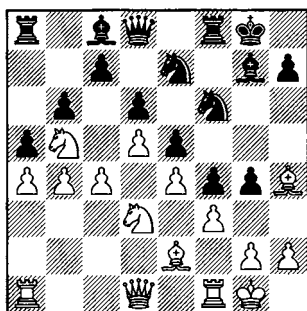
C1b3) 15. ♕e1

C1b1) 15. ♖b5 ♖f6

15... ♖c5!? 16. ♕e1 ♖h8 17. b4 axb4 18. ♕xb4 c6= Suvrajit – Zhou Jianchao, Hyderabad 2005.

16. b4 g4 17. ♕h4

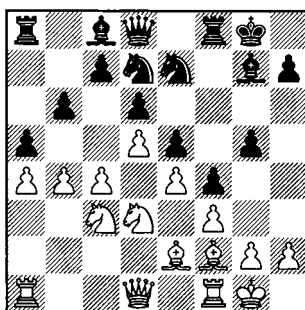
17. ♖h1, Tuominen – Niemela, Vantaa 1991, 17... axb4 18. ♖xb4 g3 19. ♕g1 ♖h5 20. ♖d2 gxh2 21. ♕f2 ♖g3 22. ♕xg3 fxg3 with an attack for Black.



17...g3 18. h3 (18. hxd3 ♖g6 19. ♕xf6 ♕xf6) **18... ♖g6 19. ♕xf6** (After 19. ♕g5 ♕xh3 20. gxh3

♖d7 21. ♖d2 ♖xh3 22. ♕d1 ♖e8+ White's bishop is trapped and his king is just in a pathetic situation, Pacher – Mrva, Tatranske Zruby 2004.) **19... ♖xf6** and Black's attack is overwhelming.

C1b2) 15. b4



15...axb4 16. ♖xb4

16. ♖b5 ♖c5 17. ♕e1 (17. ♖xb4 g4 18. a5 – 18. ♕h4 ♖d7 – 18... g3 19. hxd3 fxg3 20. ♕xg3 ♖xa5 21. ♖xa5 bxa5 22. ♖d3 ♖xd3 23. ♖xd3 ♖g6∞ Zueger – Cvitan, Geneva 1988) 17... g4 18. ♕xb4 g3 19. h3 ♖g6, O. Kalinin – Schamberger, Bayern 2003, 20. a5 ♕xh3 21. gxh3 ♖d7→ Black regains the sacrificed material and his attack is running smoothly.

16... ♖f6 17. ♖a3

17. ♖b5 g4!?

In answer to 17. ♖h1, Black can retreat with his king: 17... ♖h8! 18. ♕e1 ♖d7 19. a5 (19. h3 h5) 19... ♖xa5 20. ♖xa5 bxa5=

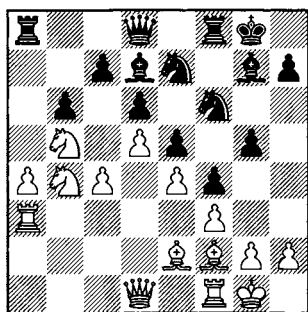
17. ♖c6 ♖xc6 18. dxc6 ♖e8 19. ♖d5 (19. a5 bxa5 20. c5 dxc5 21. ♖a4 g4 22. fxg4 ♕xg4 23. ♕xg4

♟xg4 24.♙xc5 ♟f7 25.♞d5 ♙f8 26.♙xf8 ♟xf8 Mandiza – Ezat, Windhoek 2007) 19...♟f7 (He can also play here 19...♟f7 Kiriakov – Lobzhanidze, Groningen 1996, but it is essential for him not to capture on d5.) 20.a5 bxa5 21.♟a4 (21.♙e1 g4 22.♙xa5 gxf3 23.♙xf3 ♙e6 24.♙c3 ♟xa1 25.♟xa1) 21...g4 22.♟fb1 ♙a6∞

17.♙e1 ♟f7 (17...♟d7 18.♞d3 ♟g6 – 18...g4!?∞ – 19.♞f2 h5 20.h3± Black's kingside attack is practically over, while White's queenside actions continue unopposed, Gladyshev – S.Solovjov, Russia 2005) 18.♞d3 ♙f8 19.♞f2 h5 20.♞b5, Ikonnikov – Khairallah, Dieren 2007, 20...g4 21.fxg4 hxg4 22.♞xg4 ♞xe4∞

17.♞d3 ♟g6 18.♙e1 ♟f7 19.♞f2, Gladyshev – Stets, Chambery 2007, ♙f8 20.♞b5 h5 21.a5 bxa5 22.♟xa5 ♟xa5 23.♙xa5 ♟g7 24.c5 dxc5 25.♟b3 ♞h7 26.♟d1 ♙d6 27.h3 ♟e8= followed by g4.

17...♙d7 18.♞b5



18...g4!?

18...♞h8!? 19.♙e1 ♟g8 20.g4

(20.♞d3 g4 21.a5 bxa5 22.♙xa5 ♙xb5 23.cxb5 ♟d7=) 20...fxg3 21.hxg3 g4 22.♞g2 gxf3 23.♙xf3 ♙h6!? 24.♟h1 ♙g5 25.♞d3 ♟g6, with an equal position, Jussupow – Kasparov, Yerevan 1996.

19.fxg4 ♞xe4 20.♟c2

20.♙d3, Vershinin – Bets, Volgograd 1997, 20...♞xf2 21.♟xf2 ♟c8 22.h3 ♙f6±

20...♞xf2 21.♟xf2 and here it would be interesting for Black to place his bishop on g6:

21...♙e8 22.♙d3 ♙g6 23.♙e4 ♟d7=

C1b3) 15.♙e1 ♞f6 16.♞f2

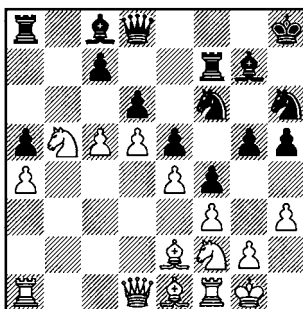
16.b4 axb4 17.♞xb4 – see

C1b2.

16...h5 17.h3 ♞h8 18.♞b5

18.b4 ♞eg8 19.bxa5 bxa5 20.♞b5 ♟f7 21.c5 ♙f8 22.cxd6 cxd6 23.♟c1 ♟g7 24.♟c6, draw, Doric – Zivkovic, Sibenik 2008.

18...♞eg8 19.b4 ♞h6 20.c5 bxc5 21.bxc5 ♟f7



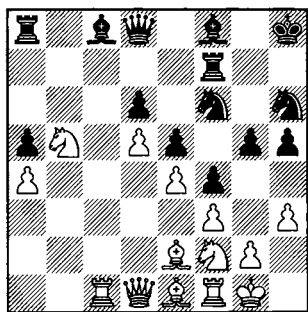
This position can be reached in different fashions, but it is always a result of forced actions.

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♕e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. d5 ♖e7 9. ♖e1 ♖d7

22.cxd6

White can try to deploy his knight to c4, with the idea to capture the a5-pawn: 22.♖a3 ♕f8 23.♖c4. This line looks tremendously slow for White, since Black's attacking pieces are already in the vicinity of the white king on g1. There may follow: 23... g4 (It looks also very good for Black to opt for 23...♖g7 24.♖a3 ♖g8 25.♖xa5 g4 26.fxg4 hxg4 27.hxg4 ♖hxg4 28.♖xg4 ♖xg4 ♣ Ghane – Spasov, Izmir 2003.) 24.fxg4 (24. ♖xa5 gxh3 – 24...♖xa5 25.♖xa5 – 25.gxh3 ♖g7 26.♖h1 ♖g3 27.♖g1 ♖xe4 28.fxe4 ♖h4 29.♖xg3 fxg3 30.♖f1 gxf2 31.♖f3 ♖g4 32.♖g2 ♖e7 ♣) 24...hxg4 25.hxg4 ♖g7 26. ♖a3 (26.♖xa5 ♖hxg4 27.♖xg4 ♖xg4 28.♖xg4 ♖xg4 29.♖d3 ♖g5 → with an attack for Black) 26...♖hxg4 27.♖xg4 ♖xg4 28.♖h3 ♖g8 29.♖h4, Zakhartsov – Voicu, Alushta 2005. 29...♖g5 ♣

22...cxd6 23.♖c1 ♕f8



It is evident that White wishes to occupy the c6, or the c7-square, while Black has already complet-

ed the preparation of the pawn-advance g4.

24.♙c2

24.♖c6, Poniaev – Severiukhina, Izhevsk 2007, 24...g4 25.fxg4 hxg4 26.hxg4 ♗g7↑

24.♖c4 g4! 25.fxg4 (25.♖c2 ♗g7
26.hxg4 hxg4 27.♕c7 g3 28.♕xa8,
draw, Brunner – Helstroffer, Nan-
cy 2006) 25...hxg4 26.hxg4 ♗g7
27.g5 ♗xg5 28.♖c2 ♕h5 29.♙f3
♕g3 30.♕c7, Krivoshey – Or-
tiz, Sort 2006, 30...♕xf1 31.♙xf1
♗g7

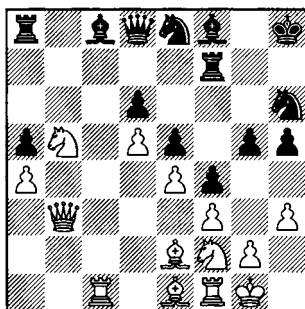
24...♘e8

Black must cover the c7-square, since White is ready to counter 24...g4 with 25.♖c7 gxh3 26.♖xa8 and Black will be a rook down and he can hardly check-mate his opponent!

25.♔b3

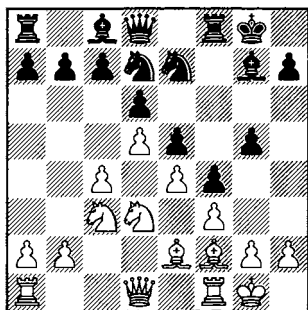
25. ♖d3 ♜g7 26. ♜c2 ♜g8 27. ♖d1
 ♜d7 28. ♖c1, Bachmann – Frolov, Berlin 1994, 28...g4 29. hxg4
 hxg4 30. ♜xg4 ♜xg4 31. fxg4 ♜f6
 32. ♜h4 ♜e7 33. ♜c7 ♜xe4 34. ♜xe7
 ♜xe7 35. ♜xa8 ♖xa8

25.♔c3 g4 26.hxg4 hxg4 27.
fxg4 ♖g7 28.♚d2 ♚h4∞



25...♟g7 26.♞c6 ♔d7 27.♔d2, P.Nielsen – Golubev, Internet 2004. Black is not forced to capture on c6 and he should not be in a hurry to advance g4 either. **27...♞g8** (It is not easy to see how White can improve his position.) **28.♞fc1 g4 29.fxg4 hxg4 30.♔xg4 ♔xg4 31.♔xg4 ♔xg4 32.hxg4 ♞xg4 33.♞h3 ♞g5=** Both sides have a clear-cut plan for actions, so the position is approximately equal.

C2) 13.♔d3



13...♔f6 14.c5

14.g4 fxg3 15.hxg3 a6 16.c5 ♞e8 17.cxd6 cxd6 18.♞g2 ♞g6 19.♞h1 g4 20.♞h4 ♔h6 21.♞g1 ♔g5 22.♞h2 b5± Seickel – Rotermund, Frankfurt 2006.

14.a4 ♔g6 15.c5 – see 14.c5.

14.♞c1 ♔g6 15.c5 – see 14.c5.

14...♔g6 15.a4

15.♞c1 ♞f7 16.cxd6 (16.♔b5 g4 17.a4 g3 18.hxg3 fxg3 19.♔xg3 ♔h5 20.♔h2 ♔h6 21.♞c3 a6 22.♔a3 ♔e3 23.♔f2 ♔f4± with excellent compensation for Black, Du

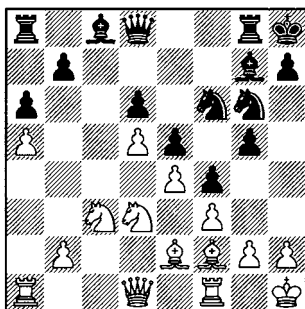
Bois – Bologan, Bern 1997) **16... cxd6 17.♔b5 g4 18.♞c2 (18.♔xa7 g3 19.hxg3 fxg3±) 18...g3 19.hxg3 fxg3 (19...♔h5?! 20.gxf4 exf4 21.♔c7 ♔g3 22.♔xa8) 20.♔xg3** (White cannot afford to leave his opponent's g3-pawn alive...: **20. ♔e3 ♔xd5 21.exd5 ♞h4 22.♞fe1 e4 23.♔xd6 ♞h2 24.♔f1 ♞h1 25.♔g1 ♔d4 26.♔d1 ♞xg1 27.♔e2 ♞xg2** and he resigned, Toth – Durik, Topolcianky 1997.) **20...♔h6 21. ♞cd1**, Jorns – Ermeni, Bern 2000, **21...♔d7 22.♔c3 ♔h5±**

15.cxd6 cxd6 16.♔b5 (16.♞c1 ♞f7 – see 15.♞c1), White's knight is in front of all his army and Black must repel it immediately: **16...a6 17.♔c3 h5 18.♔a4 g4 19.♞c1 ♞f7 20.♞c2 g3 21.hxg3 fxg3 22.♔xg3 b5 23.♔c3 ♔h6 24.♞ce1 h4 25.♔h2 ♔h5±** Lauf – Rigo, Slovakia 1998.

15...♔h8 16.a5 a6 17.♔h1

17.♞c1 ♞g8 18.cxd6 (18.♔a4 ♔f8) 18...cxd6 19.♔a4 g4! (Black exploits the overburdening of White's f3-pawn.) **20.♔b6 ♞b8 21. ♔xc8 ♞xc8 22.♞xc8 ♞xc8 23. ♞b3 g3 24.hxg3 fxg3 25.♔xg3 ♔h6±**

17...♞g8 18.cxd6 cxd6



5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♕e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♜c6 8. d5 ♜e7 9. ♜e1 ♜d7

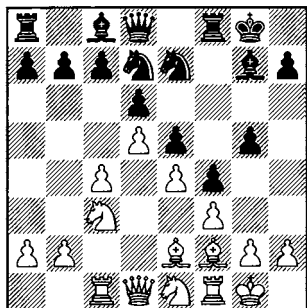
19.b4

19. ♕e1!? ♕d7 20. ♜a4 (20. ♜f2 b5 21. ♜a2 h5 22. ♜b4 ♕f8?) 20... g4 21. ♜b6 ♖b8 22. ♜xd7 ♗xd7 23. ♖a4 gxf3 24. ♕xf3 ♖bc8 25. ♕f2 ♕h6 26. ♗b3 ♕g5, with about equal.

In case of the retreat of the knight on c3 – 19. ♜a4, Black follows as a rule with 19...g4 20. ♜b6 ♖b8 21. b4 (21. ♖c1 g3 22. ♕g1 ♜h4 23. ♜xc8 ♖xc8 24. ♖xc8 ♗xc8 25. h3 h5 26. ♗b3 ♜h7 27. ♖c1 ♗d7 28. ♕f1 ♜g5 29. ♜e1 ♕f6) 21...g3 22. hxg3 (22. ♕g1 gxh2 23. ♕f2 ♜h5) 22... ♜h5 and he obtains excellent counterplay.

19... ♕d7 20. ♖a3 (20. ♜a4 g4 21. ♜b6 ♖b8 22. ♖c1 ♕h6 23. ♖c3 g3 24. hxg3 ♜h5 25. gxf4 ♜gxf4 26. g4 ♜xd3 27. ♕xd3 ♜f4 Black has long-lasting compensation, so he should not worry about the lost pawn.) 20... ♕f8 21. ♜b2 h5 22. ♜c4 g4 23. ♜b6 ♖b8 24. ♜xd7 ♗xd7 25. fxf4 hxg4 26. ♜a4 f3 27. gxf3 ♕h6 28. fxf4 ♜f4 29. ♜b6 ♗h7 30. ♕f3 ♜xe4 31. ♕e1 ♜g5☞ Kozul – Lanka, Batumi 1999.

C3) 13. ♖c1

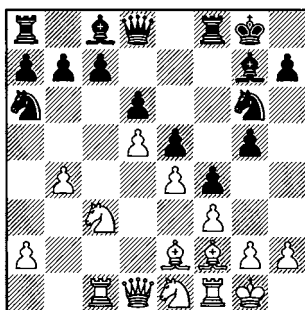


13... ♜g6 14.c5

This is a very complicated strategic situation, so the positional pawn-sacrifice is just a possibility. In this particular case, White obtains compensation, connected with his possible actions along the c-file and against Black's entire queenside.

The preparation of the pawn-break c4-c5 takes time and Black manages to create powerful threats on the kingside, for example: 14. b4 ♜f6 15. c5 ♖f7 16. a4 ♕f8 17. cxd6 ♕xd6 18. ♜d3 ♖g7 19. ♜h1 h5 20. ♜c5 g4☞ Miles – Ree, Amsterdam 1982.

14... ♜xc5 15.b4 ♜a6



C3a) 16. ♜b5

C3b) 16. ♜d3

C3a) 16. ♜b5

White's plan is quite simple. He wishes to capture his opponent's a-pawn.

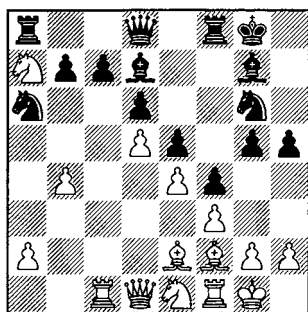
16... ♕d7 17. ♜xa7

17. a4 h5 18. ♜d3 b6 19. ♕e1 ♕h6 20. ♖c4 ♖f7 21. ♜f2 ♖g7 22. ♜h1 ♜f8 23. g4 fxf3 24. hxg3 ♜g6☞ Nemet

– Jenni, Pontresina 2000.

17. ♖a4 h5!? (I am going to enrich the knowledge of my readers how the King's Indian attacking machine works by quoting the following game: 17...g4!? 18.fxg4 f3! 19.gxf3 ♟f4 20.♖d1 h5 21.♟h1 hxg4 22.♟c3 ♟xe2 23.♖xe2 gxf3+ Kozul – Fedorowicz, Wijk aan Zee 1991; 19.♟xf3!? ♟f4 20.♖d1 ♟xg4 21.a3 ♖d7 22.♟g3 ♟h6 23.♞c2 ♟h5 24.♟f2 ♟f4 25.♞c3 ♟h5 26.♖c2 ♖g4 27.♟g3 ♟g6) 18.h3 ♟f6 19. ♖a5 g4 20.fxg4 hxg4 21.♟xg4 ♟xg4 22.hxg4, Chernushevich – Oral, Bratislava 1993, 22...♖d7!=
17...h5

Black plays this move not only to prepare g4, but he ties up his opponent's light-squared bishop with defending against that.



18. ♟xa6

18.a4 ♟h6 19.♞c3 ♟h7 20.♟b5 ♞g8 21.♟h1 ♞g7 22.♞g1 ♟f8 23.g3 fxg3 24.♞xg3 ♟g6 25.♟d3 ♟e8 26.♖c2 ♖f7 27.♞g1 g4↑ Yermolinsky – Kreiman, Philadelphia 1997.

18.a3 ♖f7 19.♖c2 (19.h3!?

♖e8∞) 19...g4 20.♟xa6 bxa6 21. ♖xc7 ♖f8 22.♖b6 h4 23.fxg4 ♟xg4 24.♟c6 h3∞ Korcnoi

18...bxa6 19. ♖c2

19.♟c6, D.Gurevich – Becerra Rivero, Stillwater 2007, 19... ♖e8!? 20.♟a5 ♟a4 21.♖e2 ♖d7=

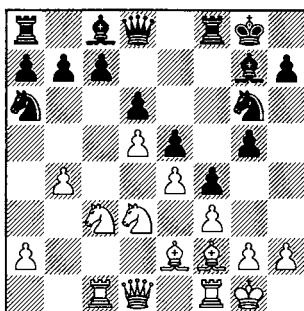
19...♖f7 20.♖xc7 ♖f8, Kesten – Jorczik, Bad Woerishofen 2008. Black gives up the fight on the queenside in the hope of settling the issue with a kingside attack.

21. ♖b6! g4 22. ♖xa6 g3!

This cannot be even called a sacrifice!

23.hxg3 fxg3 24.♟xg3 ♟h6 25.♞c7 ♟e8 26.♞xf7 ♟e3 27.♟f2 ♟xf2 28.♞xf2 ♖xf7 29.♖xd6 ♖xa7 30.♖c5 ♟f4∞. It looks like White has four pawns for the piece, but they are all too far from promotion, while Black has an excellent knight on f4.

C3b) 16. ♟d3



16...♖f7

In this situation, Black will have to play this move anyway.

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♙e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♜c6 8. d5 ♜e7 9. ♜e1 ♜d7

He protects additionally the c7-square and he wishes to place this rook on g7 after ♙f8.

17.a4

16. ♜b5 ♜f7 17. ♜d3 ♙d7 18. a4 h5 19. ♜h1 ♜b8 20. ♜a3 ♜d8 21. ♜b5 ♙f8 22. ♜xa7 ♜g7 23. b5 ♜c5 24. ♜xc5 dxc5 25. ♜c6 ♜f6 26. ♜b3 ♜h7∞ Pavlovic – Fedorov, Warsaw 2005.

17...h5 18. ♜b5 ♙d7

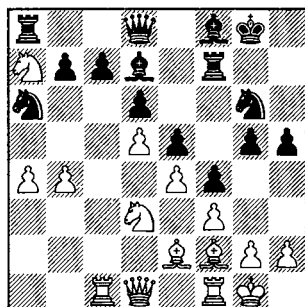
Black should not mind giving up his a7-pawn, moreover that it is extra.

19. ♜xa7

In case of 19. ♜h1, he should better protect his a7-pawn: 19... ♜b8 20. ♜a3 ♜d8 21. ♜b5 ♜b8= with a repetition of moves.

If Black wishes to play for a win, he could try 19... ♙f8 20. ♜xa7 ♜g7 21. ♜b5 (21. b5? ♜c5 22. ♜xc5 dxc5 23. ♜c6 ♜f6!∞ Pavlovic – Fedorov, Warszawa 2005.) 21... ♜h8 22. ♜c2 (22. g3!? fxg3 23. ♙xg3 ♜g6 24. ♜g1, Yermolinsky – Becerra, Chicago 2008, 24... c6 25. ♜c3 ♜c7∞) 22... g4 23. g3 fxg3!? 24. hxg3 ♜f7∞

19... ♙f8



20. ♜b5

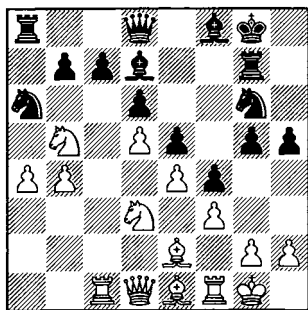
White does not achieve much with 20. b5 ♜c5 21. ♜xc5 dxc5 22. ♜c6 ♜e8!∞ Csiszar – Enders, Balatonlelle 2006.

He has an interesting alternative – 20. ♜c6. This is a very typical motive for similar positions. He gives back the extra piece, in order to ensure domination on the queenside. He relies on a variation like: 20... ♜f6 21. ♜a5 b6 22. b5 ♜c5 23. ♜xc5 dxc5 24. ♜c4, with an advantage for White. We know however, that it is not always reasonable to accept gifts for granted. There are some exceptions to the rule: 20... bxc6 21. dxc6 ♙e6 22. b5 ♜c5 23. ♜xc5 dxc5 24. ♜xd8 ♜xd8 25. ♙xc5 ♙d2 26. ♜f2 ♜a2∞

20... ♜g7 21. ♙e1!?

21. ♜c4 ♜h8 22. g4, Piket – Nijboer, Rotterdam 1999. White needs to play in this fashion, because of the particular deployment of his forces. 22... fxg3. This should be Black's standard reaction to g4. It is essential for him to open the position of White's king. 23. ♙xg3 (23. hxg3!? ♜g6 24. ♜d2 g4. Black is playing intuitively and he prevents his opponent from closing the game. 25. fxg4 h4 26. ♜e1 ♙e7 27. ♙e3 ♜h8∞. It would be worse for Black to opt for 24... h4, since White closes the position with 25. g4± and Black has nothing left, but the f4-square; 24... ♙e7!?) 23... ♜g6 24. ♜h1 c6 25. ♜c3 ♜c7. Black is solidly de-

played in the centre and on the kingside the situation cannot be better for him.



21...d4

He is not in a hurry to advance c6. At first, he transfers his knight to f7 and from there it will support the attack with g4 and it will defend the d6-square.

22.h3 d4f7 23.d2

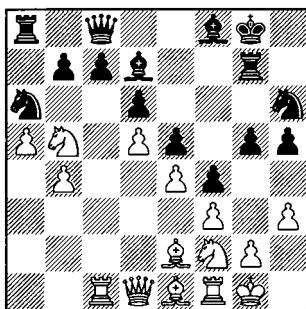
It would be useless for White to play 23.c2, because the c7-square is protected and Black can calmly continue with the regrouping of his forces, for example with 23...d6!?

23...d6 24.a5

24.d2 e7!? 25.c4 g4 26.fxg4 hxg4 27.d4xg4 d4xg4 28.d4xg4 c6! White is in trouble after his opponent has opened a second front.

24.c4 e7 25.c2 e8 (with the idea d8) 26.dxc7 dxc7 27.cxc7 xa4 28.c4 d8 29.xg7 xg7, followed by b6.

24...c8



This is Black's last preparatory move for the thematic pawn advance g4.

25.d2 g4

Here he comes!

26.hxg4 hxg4 27.d4xg4 d4xg4 28.fxg4 e7

Black can postpone recapturing on g4, bringing more pieces into the attack. For example, he is threatening e4-g3 now.

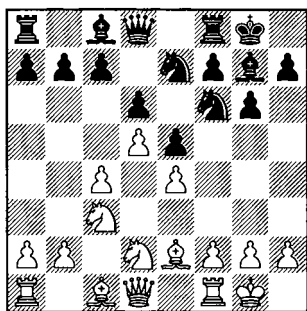
29.f3 e4xg4 30.f3c3 e3h3 31.f3 d7

This is another quiet move in the raging attack.

32.dxc7 e4xg2 33.e4xg2 dxc7 and here White must continue with 34.h5. It would be worse for him to play 34.cxc7, because of 34...h3 35.f1 f3 and Black wins. 34...b5. It looks like Black is better, but both kings are endangered, so the evaluation of the position is rather unclear.

Chapter 26

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.♘f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♘c6 8.d5
♘e7 9.♘d2



This move does not bring White any immediate dividends on the queenside, but it is much more reliable than 9.♘e1.

9...c6

Zigurds Lanka recommended that move to me back in the year 1991. White's pawn-centre seems to be even overprotected; nevertheless, Black hopes to undermine it with b7-b5 if possible.

A) 10.b4

B) 10.♙b1

C) 10.dxc6

D) 10.a3

10.♘b3 h5 11.♙g5 ♘h7 12.♙e3 c5 13.♘d2 f5 14.exf5 gxf5 (14... ♘xf5∞) 15.f4 exf4 16.♙xf4 ♘g6

17.♙e3 h4 ♣ Korotylev – Bologan, Sochi 2004.

A) 10.b4 a5!

This is a result of the flexibility of the move c6, since now Black enters a favourable version of the line with 9.b4.

11.bxa5 ♙xa5 12.♙b2

It is a draw by repetition after 12.♘b3 ♙xc3 13.♙d2 ♙b2 14.♙c1 etc.

12.♙c2 c5 13.a4 ♘d7 14.♘b5 ♙a6 15.♙a3 f5 16.exf5 ♘xf5 17.♘e4 ♘f6 18.♙d2 ♙d8 19.♙d3 ♘xe4 20.♙xe4 ♙f7 21.♙b1 ♙f8 ♣ Pelle-tier – Arakhamia-Grant, Lucerne 1997.

12...♙d8 13.a4

13.♘b3 c5= There arises a position from the already mentioned variation with 9.b4, except that Black has not wasted any tempi for ♘h5-f4-h5-f6 and this is in his favour.

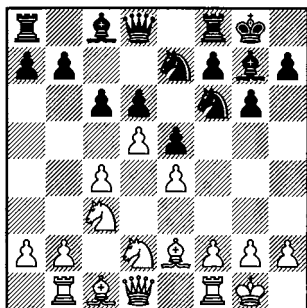
13...c5

He can try to act trickier and not hurry with c5: 13...♘d7!? 14.♙a3 c5 15.♘b5 ♙a6 16.♙b2 f5 17.♙a3 ♘f6 18.exf5 ♘xf5 19.♙d3 ♘d4 20.♘e4 ♘xe4 (20...♘h5 21.♙xd4

exd4 22.g3 ♖f6 23.♞e1 ♗e7 24.♗e2
 ♜g7 25.♗g4 ♜f5= M.Gurevich –
 Bologan, Saint-Pierre 2000) 21.
 ♗xe4 ♜h4 22.♞d3 ♗f5 23.♗xf5
 gxf5 24.♗xd4 cxd4 25.♜c7 e4 26.
 ♞b3 f4↑

14.♜b5 ♜e8 15.f4 exf4 16.
♗xg7 ♜xg7 17.♞xf4 g5 18.♞f2
♜g6 19.♗g4 f5 20.exf5 ♜xf5
21.♞b3 ♜d4 22.♞xf8 ♞xf8 23.
♜xd4 ♞g7 24.♜c2 ♗xg4 van
 Der Sterren – Lautier, Lyons 1990.

B) 10.♞b1



10...b5

This is the essence of Black's idea. He attacks the support of the pawn on d5 and his own pawn can attack the enemy knight on c3.

11.dxc6

In case of 11.b4, Black attacks the d5-pawn 11...bxc4 12.♜xc4 (12.dxc6 ♜xc6 13.♗xc4 ♗e6 14.♗d5 ♞c8 15.♗xc6 ♞xc6 16.♗b2 d5 17.exd5 ♜xd5 18.♜xd5 ♗xd5= Ko-
 skinen – Lanka, Cappelle la Grande 1992) 12...cxd5 13.exd5 ♗b7=

If 11.cxb5, then he should better complete his development first

and capture on d5 only later: 11...
 cxd5 12.exd5, Clausen – Sorensen,
 Copenhagen 1999, 12...♗f5 13.♞a1
 ♜exd5 14.♜xd5 ♜xd5 15.♜c4 (15.
 ♗f3 ♜b4 16.♗xa8 ♞xa8, with an
 excellent compensation for the
 exchange) 15...♜f4 16.♗xf4 exf4
 17.♗f3 ♞c8 18.♞c1 (18.♜xd6 ♗c2
 19.♞d5 ♞c7 20.a4 ♞d7 21.♞c4
 ♗xb2 22.♞ae1 ♞xd6 23.♞xc2
 ♞d2=) 18...♗e6 19.♗d5 ♞e8=

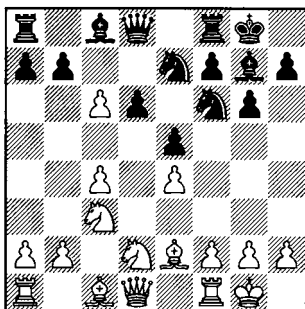
11...b4 12.♜d5 ♜xc6 13.
♜xf6 ♞xf6 14.♜f3

14.b3 ♗b7 15.♞e1 ♞e7 16.♜f1 f5
 17.exf5 gxf5 18.♜e3 ♜d4 19.♗f1 e4
 20.♜d5 ♗xd5 21.cxd5 ♗e5= Vi-
 tiugov – Inarkiev, Sochi 2006.

14...h6 15.♗e3 ♞e7 16.♞d2
♜h7 17.♞fd1 ♞d8=

All these lines are from the
 twenty years old notebooks of my
 life-long coach Zigurds Lanka.

C) 10.dxc6



10...bxc6 11.b4

11.♜b3 ♗e6 12.♗e3 ♞b8 13.
 ♞d2 a5 14.f3 a4 15.♜c1 d5 16.cxd5
 cxd5 17.♗c5 dxe4! 18.fxe4 (18.
 ♗xe7 ♞a7) 18...♞d8 19.♜d3 ♜c6=

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♕e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. d5 ♗e7 9. ♗d2 c6

Karkanaqe – Kr.Georgiev, Xanthi 1991.

11...d5

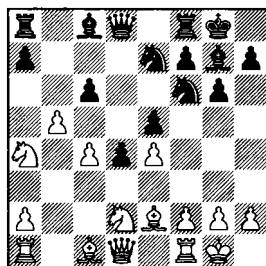
Here, it is not advisable for Black to opt for 11... ♗h5 12. ♕xh5 (12.g3 a6 13. ♖e1 f5 14. ♕f3 ♗f6 15. ♕b2 ♖c7 16. ♖e2 ♖e8 17. ♖ad1 ♕b7 18. ♕g2 ♖ad8∞ Kalinichev – Dydyshko, USSR 1986) 12... gxf5 13. ♖xf5 (13.b5 ♕g4∞) 13... f5 14. ♖d1! d5 (14... ♖c7 15.b5 fxe4 16. ♕a3!±; 14... ♗g6 15. ♗f3±) 15.cxd5 cxd5 16. ♗xd5 ♗xd5 17. exd5 ♖b8 18. ♗f3 f4 19. ♗g5 ♕f5 20. ♗e6± A.Guseinov – Fedorov, Elista 1998.

12.a4

12. ♕a3 a6. Without the support of the a-pawn, the idea b5 is not so effective any more. (Meanwhile, it is also possible for Black to try 12... ♖e8 13. ♖e1 ♕e6 14. ♕f1 dxe4 15. ♗dxe4 ♗xe4 16. ♗xe4 ♗f5 17. ♖a4 ♗d4 18. ♕b2, Ulibin – Antoniewski, Koszalin 1999, 18...a5!? 19.b5 cxb5 20.cxb5 ♕d5=; 17. ♕b2, Ulibin – Bologan, Chalkidiki 1992 and now, Black's most precise reaction would be 17... ♖b6! 18.a3 ♖ed8 19. ♖a4 a5! 20. ♗c5 axb4 21. ♖xb4 ♖c7 22. ♗xe6 fxe6= – White's queen cannot avoid being attacked.) 13. ♖e1 (13. ♕f3 d4 14. ♗a4 h5 Black wishes to transfer his knight to the g5-square and then advance f5, depending on the situation.) 13... ♕e6!? (with the idea ♖a7-d7∞ Ftacnik) 14.exd5 (14. ♕f1 ♖e8 15. ♕b2 ♖b8 16.a3 ♖a7 17. ♗a4 dxe4 18. ♗c5 ♕g4 19. ♖a4 a5 20.b5 cxb5 21.cxb5 e3 22. ♖xe3

♗ed5 23. ♖e1 ♕f5± Marin – Vokac, Bucharest 1985) 14...cxd5 15.cxd5 ♗fxd5 16. ♗ce4 (16. ♗xd5 ♗xd5±) 16... ♗f4± Black's pawns dominate in the centre and all his pieces are more active than their counterparts, so he has already a slight edge.

12.b5 d4 13. ♗a4



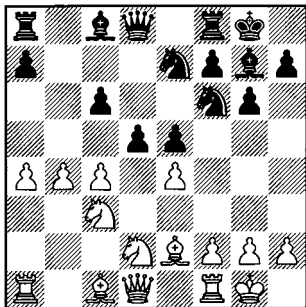
and here:

Black has an interesting pawn-sacrifice: 13... ♗h5!? 14. ♗b3 (14. ♕xh5 gxf5 15. ♕a3 h4∞; 14. ♕a3 ♗f4 15. ♖b1 ♖e8 16. ♖e1 ♗xe2 17. ♖xe2 ♖b8∞) 14... ♗f4 15. ♗ac5 ♗xe2 16. ♖xe2 f5 17.a4 f4 18.f3 g5 19. ♗d3 (19.g4 fxg3 20.hxg3 ♗g6) 19... ♗h8 20. ♕a3 ♖g8 21. ♖d2 g4∞;

13... ♕h6 14. ♗c5 (14. ♕d3 ♗h5 15. ♖e1 ♗h8 16. ♕a3 ♗f4 17. ♗b3 ♗xd3 18. ♖xd3 cxb5 19.cxb5 a6∞ Hoffmann – Watson, Ostend 1987) 14...a6 15.a4 ♗d7 16. ♗xd7 ♕xd7 17. ♕a3 ♖e8 18. ♗b3 axb5 19. axb5 cxb5 20.cxb5 ♖b8 21. ♕d6 ♖xb5! 22. ♕xb5 ♕xb5 23. ♕xe5± Blees – Bologan, Xanthi 1991;

13...d3 14. ♕f3 cxb5 15.cxb5 ♕d7 16. ♗c5 (16. ♗c3 ♖a5 17. ♗b3 ♖xc3 18. ♕a3 ♖c4 19. ♕xe7 ♖fe8

20.♖c1 ♖xb5 White has problems regaining his pawn; 16.♖b1 ♖b8 17.♜c3 ♖a5 18.♙b2 ♖fd8 19.♜b3 ♖b4+; 18.♖b3 ♖fc8 19.♙a3 ♙e6!+ Nesis – Pankevich, corr. 1983;)
16...♙xb5 17.a4 ♙c6 18.♙a3 (18. ♙a3 ♖d6 19.♜xd3 ♖fd8 20.♖c2 ♖ac8 21.♜c4 ♙a8 22.♖c3 ♖e6+; 20.♙b2 ♜d7 21.♖a1 ♖ab8= Black has solved all his problems, Vilela – Vogt, Cienfuegos 1983) 18...♖e8 19.♖c1 ♜d7 20.♜xd3 ♜b6 21.♖e2 ♙xa4 22.♜c5 ♙h6 23.♜xa4 ♖xd2= Farago – Piket, Amsterdam 1985.



12...dxe4!

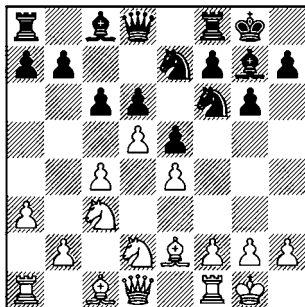
Black reduces the tension in the centre and this is what he needs.

It is more ambitious for him, but worse to opt for 12...d4. The PC programme “Rybka” asserts that Black is better for a while, but White’s knights will gradually occupy dominant squares on the queenside and then he will begin an offensive with the support of his infantry: 13.♖a2 g5!? (13...♗h5!? 14.♙xh5 gxh5 15.♝xh5 ♖g6 16.g3 ♙e6 17.♙a3 ♝d7 18.♞e2; 15...♙e6

16.♠a3 ♖d7 17.b5 ♜f8 18.♗b4
 ♙g4 19.♙g5! f6 20.♙h4 ♗g6 21.
 ♙g3 ♗f4 22.♖h1 Black's initia-
 tive will fade away after a while
 and White will preserve his extra
 pawn.) 14.♞e1 (14.b5 d3 15.♙f3
 g4+) 14...g4 (14...♗g6 15.g3 h5
 16.♠a3 g4 17.b5 ♙b7 18.♙f1 ♞e8
 19.♗b4 ♞c8 20.bxc6 ♙xc6 21.♗xc6
 ♞xc6 22.c5± Nogueiras – Becerra,
 Habana 1998; 16.♙xh5 g4 17.♙xg6
 fxg6 18.♗b3 – 18.♠a3 ♗h7 – 18...
 ♙e6 19.♙g5 ♙xc4 20.♙c2 ♙e6
 21.♗ac1±) 15.♙d3! ♖h8 16.b5 ♞g8
 17.♠a3 h5 18.c5 ♙e6 19.♗c4 ♗d7
 20.♙c1 ♖h7 21.♗d6 ♙h6 22.♙c2±
 White's queenside assault is obvi-
 ously quite effective, while Black's
 achievements on the kingside are
 nowhere to be seen.

13. ♖dxe4 ♜xe4 14. ♖xe4
 ♜f5 15. ♜xd8 ♜xd8 16. ♙g5
 ♜d4= Black has a very good position.

D) 10.a3



10...♘e8 11.b4

In case of 11.dxc6, Black can capture with his knight, because

5.♟f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♞c6 8.d5 ♞e7 9.♞d2 c6

the d4-square is weakened and it can be attacked by both his knights: 11...♞xc6 12.♞b3 ♞c7 13.♙e3 b6 14.♞d2 ♙b7 15.f3 ♞e6 16.♞b5 ♟f6 17.♙ad1 ♙ad8 18.♞c1, Ostenstad – Bologan, Stavanger 1991, 18...♟e7∞

11...cxd5

After 11...f5, White has the insidious resource 12.c5! (It is worse for him to play 12.f3, because then Black can begin an attack on the kingside: 12...cxd5 13.cxd5 f4 14.♞c4 g5 15.♙d2 h5 16.♙e1 ♟f6 17.♙f2 ♙g6±. White would not achieve anything much with 12.♟b3 ♞h8 13.♙b2 ♞f6 14.♙ad1 fxe4 15.♞dxe4 ♞xe4 – 15...♞f5!? – 16.♞xe4 cxd5 17.cxd5 ♞f5 18.b5±; White maintains some pressure; 15.dxc6 ♞xc6 16.♞cxe4 ♞xe4 17.♞xe4 ♞d4 18.♙xd4 – 18.♟e3 ♙f5 – 18...exd4 19.♟g3, M.Gurevich – Bologan, Saint-Pierre 2000, 19...♙e5 20.f4 ♙g7 21.♞g5 ♙f5=, it would be interesting for him to try 12.dxc6 ♞xc6 13.♞f3 f4 14.c5 g5 15.h3 g4 16.hxg4 ♙xg4, M. Gurevich – Shirov, Moscow 1992, 17.♞d5 ♞h8 18.♙d1 ♙xf3 19.♙xf3 dxc5 20.bxc5 ♞c7 21.♟xd8 ♙axd8±; 17.♙a2 dxc5 18.♙d2 ♟c8 19.bxc5±) 12...cxd5 13.exd5 e4 14.♙b2 dxc5 (14...♙xc3 15.♙xc3 dxc5 16.♞b3 ♟xd5 17.♞xc5±) 15.♟b3 ♞xd5 16.♞xd5 (16.♙c4 ♙e6±) 16...♙e6 17.♙c4 ♙xb2 18.♞e7 ♞f7 19.♞xf5±

12.cxd5

12.exd5 ♞f5 13.♞de4 ♞d4 Black can feel confident with a

knight like this.

12...f5 13.♞c4

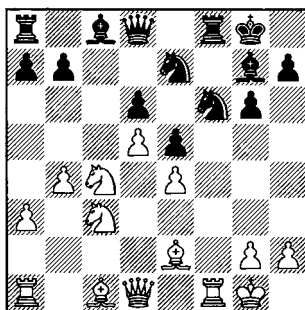
13.f3 ♞f6 (13...f4!?) 14.♞c4 fxe4, transposing to the main line.

13...♞f6 14.f3

White can try a more direct approach here – 14.f4, but Black has a pleasant choice then: 14...♞xe4 15.♞xe4 fxe4 16.fxe5 ♙xf1 17.♟xf1 ♞xd5 18.♞xd6 ♙e6 19.♙b2 ♟b6 20.♞h1 ♟f8±, or 14...exf4 15.♙xf4 ♞xe4 16.♞xe4 fxe4±

14...fxe4 15.fxe4

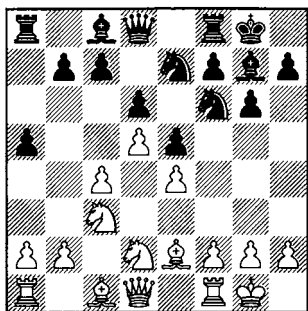
15.♞xe4 ♞f5 16.♙g5 b5±



15...b5! Black seizes the initiative, exploiting the overburdening of his opponent's knight on c3. 16.♞xb5 (16.♞a5 ♟b6 17.♞h1 ♟d4 18.♙b2 ♙d7 19.♟c2 (19.♟b3 ♞xe4) 19...♙ac8, with initiative for Black.) 16...♞xe4 17.♙xf8 ♙xf8 18.♟d3 (But not 18.♙e3, because of 18...♞f5.) 18...a6!?, 19.♞d4 exd4 20.♟xe4 ♙f5 21.♟f3 ♙g7 22.♙b2 ♟c7 The positions of both sides have plusses and minuses, so the prospects are about balanced.

Chapter 27

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♙g7 4.e4 d6
5.♗f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♗c6 8.d5
♗e7 9.♗d2 a5



This is Black's most popular reply to 9.♗d2. If something worries you in the line with 9...c6, then you can have this quite solid possibility in reserve.

White must prepare somehow to advance his queenside pawns in this position.

10.a3

If White acts too slowly – 10.b3, Black can advance without problems f5: 10...♗e8 (10...♗d7 11.♙a3=) 11.a3 (11.♙a3 b6 12.b4 axb4 13.♙xb4 c5= Posytek – Shikalov, ICCF 1996) 11...f5 12.♙b2 ♗f6= Spassov – Jasnikowski, Copenhagen 1981.

10.♙b1 ♗d7 11.b3 (11.b4 axb4 12.♙xb4 b6 13.a4 ♗e8 14.♙c2 f5 15.♗b5 ♗f6= Black has al-

ready pushed f5, while White can hardly prepare a5 any time soon, because his rook is misplaced, M.Dominguez – Prates, Roque Saenz Pena 1997.) 11...♗e8 12.a3 f5 (12...c5 13.b4 axb4 14.axb4 b6 15.bxc5 bxc5 16.♗b3± Polugaevsky – Mestel, Reykjavik 1990) 13.b4 axb4 14.axb4 (14.♙xb4 b6±) 14...♗f6 15.c5 (Otherwise, for example after 15.f3, Black will play 15...c6 16.dxc6 ♗xc6= with equality, Chuchelov – Nunn, Leeuwarden 1995.) 15...♙h6 (It is also good for Black to reduce the tension in the centre: 15...fxe4 16.♗dxe4 ♗f5 17.♙g5 h6 18.♙xf6 ♙xf6 19.b5 b6 20.c6 ♙c8 21.♙d3± Kamsky – Nunn, Monte Carlo 1995; 16...♗xe4!? 17.♗xe4 ♗f5 18.b5 ♗d4, freeing the f5-square for the bishop – 19.♙g5 ♙c8 20.cxd6 ♙f5 21.♙d3 ♙xe4 22.♙xe4 cxd6 and the position looks drawish, because of the eventual presence of bishops of opposite colours on the board.) 16.♗c4 ♙xc1 17.♙xc1 fxe4 18.cxd6, Khalifman – Cheparinov, Amsterdam 2007, 18...♗exd5 19.♗xd5 ♗xd5 20.♗xe5 ♙e6 21.dxc7 ♙xc7=

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♗e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♜c6 8. d5 ♜e7 9. ♜d2 a5 10. a3

A) 10... ♜d7

B) 10... ♗d7

A) 10... ♜d7

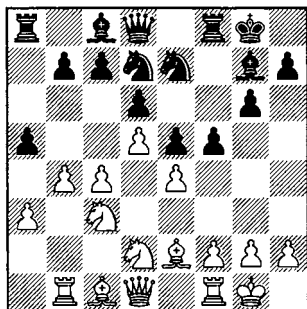
This move is much more popular than ♗d7. Black is planning to attack on the kingside.

11. ♖b1

11. ♖a2 f5 12. b4 ♘h8 13. f3 ♜g8 14. ♖c2 b6 15. ♜b3 ♜gf6 16. ♗e3 ♜h5 17. ♜c1 axb4 18. axb4 ♖a1± Guerras – Paunovic, La Coruna 1990.

11... f5 12. b4

12. f3 ♘h8 13. b4 – see variation **A2**.



12... ♘h8

12... axb4!? 13. axb4 and here Black has not tried in practice yet the immediate reduction of the tension in the centre: 13... fxe4 (13... ♘h8 14. ♖c2 ♜f6 15. f3 g5 16. c5 ♜g6 17. ♜c4 ♜f4 18. cxd6 cxd6 19. ♗e3 g4 20. ♗b6 ♖e7 21. exf5 ♜xe2 22. ♜xe2 gxf3 23. ♖xf3 ♜xd5 24. ♖d2 e4 25. ♖ff1 ♖xf5 26. ♖xf5 ♜xb6 27. ♖xd6 ♖xd6 28. ♜xd6 ♗xf5 29. ♜xf5 and the opponents soon agreed to a draw,

Vaganian – Kasparov, Manila 1992) 14. ♜dx e4 ♜f6 15. ♗g5 (15. c5 ♜f5 16. b5 ♜d4=) 15... ♜xe4 16. ♜xe4 h6 17. ♗d2 ♜f5 18. ♗d3 ♜d4 19. ♗e3 ♗f5 White's position is slightly better, but his pieces in the centre are not well coordinated and there will follow numerous exchanges.

A1) 13. ♖c2

A2) 13. f3

White achieves nothing much with 13. ♜b3 axb4 14. axb4 ♜f6 15. f3 f4 16. c5 h5 Pastukhov – Popovich, Lvov 1996. Black has prepared a pawn-offensive on the kingside in the most economical fashion and he controls the a-file on the queenside, restricting thus the possibilities of his opponent. The position remains double-edged.

13. ♗b2 ♜f6 14. ♗d3 ♜h5 15. exf5 ♜xf5 16. ♜e2 ♜h4 17. ♜e4 axb4 18. axb4 ♖d7± Portisch – Xie Jun, Amsterdam 2001.

13. bxa5 ♜c5 14. a4 ♖xa5 15. ♗a3 b6 16. ♗xc5 bxc5 17. ♖b8 c6 18. ♖b3 ♗h6 19. ♖d1 cxd5 20. cxd5 ♗xd2 21. ♖xd2 fxe4 22. ♖b6 ♜f5 23. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 24. ♖db2 ♖g8, draw, Gleizerov – Thipsay, New Delhi 2009.

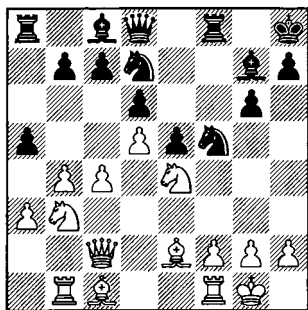
A1) 13. ♖c2 fxe4 14. ♜cxe4

14. ♜dx e4 ♜f5 15. ♗g5 (15. ♖d3 h6±) 15... ♜f6 16. ♖c1 axb4 17. axb4 ♜d4 18. ♗d3 ♗f5 19. ♖a1 ♖xa1 20. ♖xa1 h6 21. ♗e3 ♜xe4 22. ♜xe4 ♖h4 23. f3 ♗xe4 24. fxe4

♖xf1 25.♗xf1 ♔h7= Kishnev – Hazai, Budapest 1991.

14...♖f5 15.♖b3

15.♖f3 ♖f6 16.♙g5, M.Gurevich – van Delft, Hoogeveen 1999, 16... h6 17.♙d2 ♖xe4 18.♗xe4 axb4 19.axb4 ♖d4 20.♖xd4 exd4↑



15...axb4

This is an interesting idea of GM M.Marín. Black impedes the development of the bishop on c1 and he occupies the d4-outpost in the process: 15...a4!? 16.♖bd2 ♖d4, followed by ♖f6 and ♙f5.

16.axb4 ♖f6 17.♙d3 ♖xe4 18.♙xe4 ♗h4 19.♙d2 ♙d7

It looks like White has won the fight for the e4-square, but his knight will be much more comfortable there. Meanwhile, it is stranded on b3, protecting the d4-square...

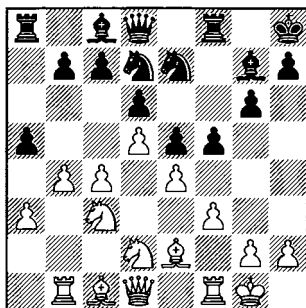
20.♙c3

In case of the overly optimistic 20.c5 ♙b5 21.♙d3, Black's pieces come out on a rampage like an evil spirit out of a bottle: 21... ♙a2 22.♗xa2 ♙xd3 23.♗bd1 ♙xf1 24.♗xf1 ♗e4 (White's d5-pawn

is hanging and his king is endangered as well.) 25.cxd6 cxd6 26.♖a5 ♖h4 27.f3 ♗d4 28.♖h1 ♗d3 29.♗c4 ♗xd2 30.♗xh4 ♗xd5+ Koch – Howell, Groningen 1995.

20...♖d4 21.♖xd4 exd4 22.♙d2, Stohl – M.Marín, Stara Zagora 1990, **22...♙a3**↑

A2) 13.f3



13...axb4 14.axb4 c6 15.♖h1

White's direct attack does not work 15.c5 dxc5 16.d6, since Black can counter it with a spectacular piece-sacrifice for three pawns: 16...cxb4 17.dxe7 ♗xe7 18.♖a4 b5 19.♖b2 ♖c5↑

White's alternatives are:

15.dxc6 ♖xc6 16.♖b3 ♖xb4 17.♗xd6 ♖a2 18.♙b2 ♖xc3 19.♙xc3 ♙a2 20.♗b2 ♗xb2 21.♙xb2 fxe4 22.fxe4 ♗b6 23.♗xb6 ♖xf1 24.♖xf1 ♖xb6= Chuchelov – Roeder, Antwerp 1999;

15.♗f2 ♖f6 16.♖f1 cxd5 17.cxd5 f4 18.♙d2 g5 19.♙e1 ♙g8 20.♙a1

5.♟f3 0-0 6.♙e2 e5 7.0-0 ♘c6 8.d5 ♘e7 9.♞d2 a5 10.a3

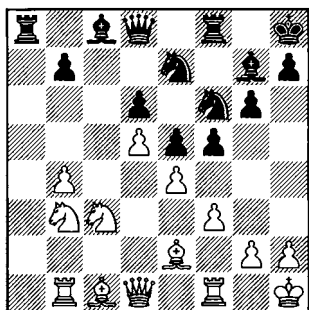
♞xa1 21.♞xa1 g4 22.♞a5 b6 23.♞a7 ♙f8 24.♙d1 ♘g6 25.♞c2 gxf3 26.♙xf3 ♙g4 ♞ Belavsky – Antic, Herceg Novi 2001;

15.♞b3 fxe4 16.fxe4 ♞b6 17.♞h1 (17.c5 ♞xb4 18.♞xf8 ♙xf8 19.♙d2 ♘xc5 20.♞b5 ♞xe4-+; 18.dxc6 bxc6 19.cxd6 ♞xf1 20.♙xf1 ♘g8 21.♞c2 – 21.♙e3 ♙h6! – 21...♞xd6 and White will have problems to hold the draw.) 17...♞xb4 18.♞b5 ♞xf1 19.♙xf1 cxb5 20.♙d2 ♞a4 21.♞a1 ♞xb3! Black's operation is based in this simple tactical strike and White's position is hopeless, Grigore – Motylev, Romania 2001.

15...♞f6 16.♞b3

In case of 16.♙b2, Black can enlarge the front of the attack with 16...g5 17.dxc6 ♘xc6 18.♞b5 ♞e7 19.♞b3 ♙d8 20.exf5 ♙xf5 21.♞be1 ♞ac8 22.♙a3 ♙e6= Sakaev – Delchev, Belgrade 1996.

16...cxd5 17.cxd5



17...♞eg8

Black has already prepared ♙h6 and he can also attack the f4-square after ♞h5.

18.♞a5

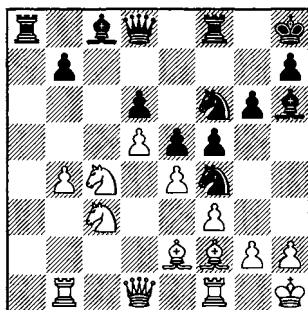
18.♙e3 ♙h6 19.♞d2 (19.♙g1 ♞h5 20.♞a5 ♞f4 21.♞c4 ♞f6 22.♞b6 ♞xe2 23.♞xe2 ♞a6 24.♞xc8 ♞xc8=) 19...♙xe3 20.♞xe3, Grigore – Sofronie, Bucharest 2001, 20...♞h5 21.♞a5 ♞h4 22.♞fe1 ♞gf6 23.♞c4 ♞g3 24.♞g1 ♞xe2 25.♞xe2 fxe4 26.♞xd6 exf3 27. gxf3 ♙f5 28.♙d1 ♞d7=

After 18.b5, Black exchanges the bishops 18...♙h6 19.♙xh6 ♞xh6 20.♞d2 and after this he can calmly continue with 20...f4 21.♞a1 ♞xa1 22.♞xa1, beginning an attack against the enemy king: 22...g5 23.♞a8 g4 ♞

18...♞h5 19.♙e3

19.♞c4 ♞gf6 20.♙e3 20...♞f4, or 20.b5 ♞f4 21.♙a3 ♞e8 22.b6 ♞f6 23.♞b5 ♙d7 with mutual chances.

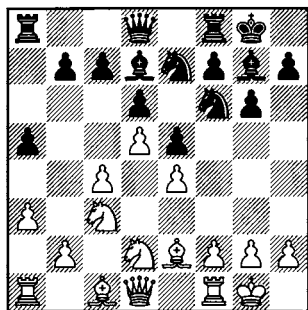
19...♙h6 20.♙f2 ♞gf6 21. ♞c4 ♞f4



22.♞b2, Dumitrache – Vasiesiu, Bucharest 1994. The reduction of the tension in the centre is very important in the King's Indian Defence: 22...fxe4 23.♞xe4

♟xe4 24. fxe4 ♔d7 25.b5 ♟xe2 26.♟xe2 ♟e7 27.♟b6 ♖a3∞ – All Black's pieces are perfectly placed and his potential weaknesses are unapproachable.

B) 10...♔d7



In this variation Black is not necessarily obliged to attack on the kingside. He has sufficient resources on the queenside to neutralize his opponent's actions there. The last modestly looking move is played with the idea either to advance the pawn to a4, or to prepare undermining of White's pawn centre with c6 and b5.

B1) 11.♖b1

B2) 11.b3

Black must counter 11.♖a2 with a precise reaction: 11...c5! 12.dxc6 (12.b4 axb4 13.axb4 cxb4 14.♖xa8 ♟xa8 15.♟b5 ♔xb5 16.cxb5 ♔h6; 12.b3 ♟e8 13.♖b2 f5 14.b4 axb4 15.axb4 b6 16.bxc5 bxc5 17.♟b3, Kamsky – Shirov,

Dos Hermanas 1995, 17...♟f6 18.♟b6 ♟xb6 19.♖xb6 ♖fb8! 20.♖xd6?! ♟c8 21.♖xd7 ♟xd7+ Shirov) 12...bxc6 13.b4 axb4 14.axb4 ♖xa2 15.♟xa2 ♟a8 16.♟c3 d5 17.exd5 cxd5 18.♟f3 e4 19.♟e5 ♔f5 20.♟b5 dxc4 21.♟xc4 ♖d8+ Kolev – Neverov, Odessa 1989.

B1) 11.♖b1 a4

White's perfect pawn-chain is disrupted now and this will impede later his queenside attack.

12.b4

12.b3 axb3 – see 12.b4.

12...axb3 13.♟xb3

13.♖xb3 b6 14.a4! ♟e8 (It is also interesting for Black to play here 14...♔e8, with the idea to free the d7-square for his knight: 15.♖a3 ♟d7 16.♟b3 f5 17.f3, Lputian – G.Kuzmin, Helsinki 1992, 17...♟b8 18.♟b5 ♟f6 19.♟c2 c6!?) 15.♖a3 f5 16.f3 ♟f6 17.♟b3 h5, with a good position for Black, Tratar – Cigan, Slovenia 1993.

13...b6 14.♖a1 ♟e8

14...♔a4 15.♟xa4 ♖xa4 16.♔d3±

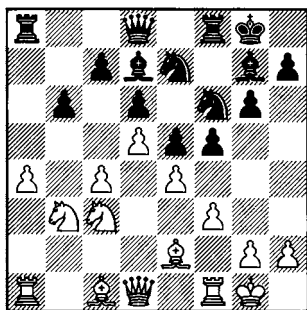
15.a4 f5 16.f3

White's attack is ineffective after 16.a5 bxa5 17.♟xa5 (17.♖xa5 ♖xa5 18.♟xa5 ♟a8 19.♟b3 ♟f6 20.♔d3 ♖b8 21.exf5 gxf5 22.♔c2 ♖b4+ Brunner – Nunn, Nuremberg 1990) 17...♟f6 18.c5 ♟xe4 (18...fxe4 19.♟b7 ♟c8 20.♖xa8 ♟xa8 21.cxd6 cxd6 22.♟xd6 ♟exd5 23.♔c4 ♔c6 24.♟xd5 ♔xd5 25.♔xd5 ♟xd5 26.♟xd5 ♟xd5, draw, Gleizerov – Zhelnin, Prague

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♕e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♖c6 8. d5 ♖e7 9. ♖d2 a5 10. a3

1990) 19. ♖xe4 fxe4 20. ♖b7, draw,
Ulbin – Smirin, Vienna 1998.

16... ♖f6



17. ♕e3

17. a5 bxa5 18. ♖xa5 ♖xa5 19. ♖xa5 c5!=

17. ♖d2 ♖h5 18. a5 bxa5 (18... ♖f4 19. g3! ♖xe2 20. ♖xe2±) 19. ♖xa5, Pekarek – Voller, Pribram 1996, 19... ♖b8 20. c5 ♖f4 21. ♕c4 ♖xa5 22. ♖xa5 ♖b4 23. cxd6 cxd6 24. ♖a4 ♖c5 25. ♖h1 ♕xa4 26. ♖xa4 ♖d4 with equality.

17... ♖h5

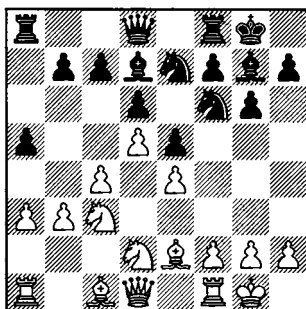
17... ♖h8 18. a5 bxa5 19. c5 a4 20. ♖d2 dxc5, M. Gurevich – Inarkevich, Lugo 2007, 21. ♕xc5±

18. a5

18. g3 f4± It is essential for Black to have a target for his attack.

18... ♖f4 19. axb6 ♖xa1 20. ♖xa1 cxb6= – There has arisen the usual situation for the middle game in the King's Indian Defence. Black protects his queenside weaknesses (♖c8) and he plans kingside actions (fxe4 or g5-g4).

B2) 11. b3



11... c6

I do not like so much the passive line: 11... ♖c8 12. ♕b2 (12. ♖b1 ♖b6 13. ♖c2 ♕h6 14. ♖b5 ♖e7 15. b4 axb4 16. axb4 c6 17. dxc6 ♕xc6 18. ♖c3 ♖fc8 19. ♖b3 ♕xc1 20. ♖fxc1 ♖a4 21. f3 ♖xc3 22. ♖xc3 ♕a4= Wu Shaobin – Al-Modiahki, Beijing 1995; 12. ♖f3 ♖h5 13. g3 f5 14. exf5 gxf5 15. ♖h4 ♖f4 16. ♕xf4 exf4 17. ♖c1 fvg3 18. fvg3 f4= Chuchelov – B. Socko, Greece 2005) 12... ♖b6 13. ♖c2 ♖e7 14. b4 axb4 15. axb4 ♕h6 16. ♖fd1 ♖h5 17. g3 ♖f6 18. ♖a5 ♕g4 19. ♖b3 ♕xe2 20. ♖xe2 ♖d7 21. ♖da1 ♖h3, Roiz – Klenburg, Biel 2007, 22. f3± White has an overwhelming advantage.

B2a) 12. ♖b1

B2b) 12. ♖a2

B2c) 13. ♕b2

The reduction of the tension in the centre leads to quick equality: 12. dxc6 bxc6 13. ♕b2 ♕e6 14. b4 axb4 15. axb4 ♖xa1 16. ♕xa1 d5=

B2a) 12.♖b1

This move is consistent with White's strategy, but it is a bit slow.

12...b5!?

I believe this dynamic move deserves most attention.

In case of 12...♖b8, White succeeds in playing 13.b4! (13.dxc6 bxc6 14.b4 axb4 15.axb4 ♖c8 16.c5 d5 17.♖c2 ♕e6 18.♞e1 h6 19.♙f1 ♜d8 20.h3, draw, Lobron – Hort, Germany 1995) 13...cxd5 14.cxd5 (14.exd5 axb4 15.axb4 b5!?) 14...♖c8 15.♗c4! (15.♙b2 axb4 16.axb4 b5 17.♙d3 ♖b6 18.♗b3 ♙h6 19.♗a5 ♖c7∞ Nemet – Gallagher, Switzerland 1994) 15...b5 16.bxa5 ♖xc4 17.♙xc4 ♖c7, Giacomazzi – Shchekachev, Metz 1995 and here White had to continue simply with 18.♗xb5 ♖xc4 19.♗xd6 ♖a6 20.♖b6 ♖xa5 21.♖b3 ♗c8 22.♖b8 ♖a7 23.♖xa8 ♖xa8 24.♗xc8 ♖xc8 25.f3± with a clear positional advantage for him.

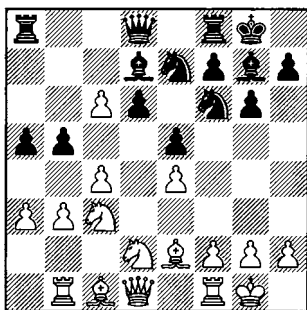
13.dxc6

After 13.c5, Black manages to attack the enemy knight, forcing it to abandon its control over the d5-square: 13...b4! 14.cxd6 bxc3 15.dxe7 ♖xe7 16.♗c4 cxd5 17.exd5 ♙f5 18.d6 ♖e6±

If 13.b4, then White's d5-pawn is weakened: 13...bxc4 14.♗xc4 cxd5 15.exd5, Chuchelov – Jens, Netherlands 2000, 15...axb4 16.♖xb4 (16.axb4, Chuchelov – Langheinrich, Bad Zwosten 2000, 16...♙f5 17.♖b3 ♗e4=) 16...♗f5=

13.cxb5 cxd5 14.exd5 ♙f5 15.

♖b2 ♗fxd5 16.♗xd5 ♗xd5 17.♗b1 (17.♗c4 ♗c3+) 17...♗f4 18.♙xf4 exf4 19.♜d2 ♙e5 and Black has the advantage.



13...b4!

This is an important intermediate move.

14.axb4

14.♗d5 ♗xc6 15.♗xf6 (15.♙b2 ♙e6 16.♖a1 ♗d7 17.f4 exf4 18.♙xg7 ♗xg7 19.♖xf4 ♗c5 20.♗f1 ♖g5± Ftacnik – Gadjiyly, Moscow 1994. This is an exemplary game for the variation with 12...b5.) 15...♙xf6 16.♗f3 ♖e7 17.a4 ♗d8 18.♙h6 ♖e8, Lukacs – Uhlmann, Austria 1995, 19.♙d3 ♗e6±

14.c7 (White plays here an important intermediate move too.) 14...♖xc7 15.♗d5 ♗exd5 16.cxd5 a4! (opening the game advantageously) 17.axb4 ♖fb8 18.♖a1 ♖c3 19.♙a3 axb3 20.♖c1 ♖d4± All White's pieces are hanging, Grigore – Nevednichy, Romania 1995.

14...axb4 15.c7

15.cxd7 bxc3 16.♗f3 ♗xe4±
15.♗d5 ♗xc6 16.♗xf6 ♙xf6 17.

5. ♖f3 0-0 6. ♕e2 e5 7. 0-0 ♜c6 8. d5 ♜e7 9. ♜d2 a5 10. a3

♜f3, Volzhin – Hillarp Persson, Budapest 1996, 17... ♖c7 18. ♗d3 ♕e7 19. ♕e3 ♕e6=

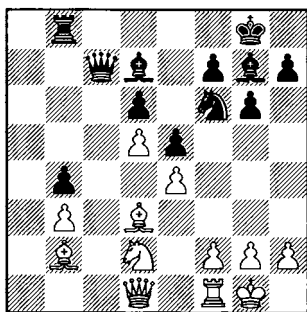
15... ♖xc7 16. ♜d5

16. ♜b5 ♕xb5 17. cxb5 d5 with a position with mutual chances.

16... ♜exd5 17. cxd5 ♖a2 18. ♜d3 ♖b8

18... ♜h5!? 19. ♜c4 ♜f4 20. ♕xf4 exf4 21. ♖f3 ♕b5 22. ♖xf4 ♖c5 and Black prospects are at least equal.

19. ♖b2 ♖xb2 20. ♕xb2



20... ♕e8!

This is another typical resource for Black. He frees the d7-square for the transfer of his knight to c5.

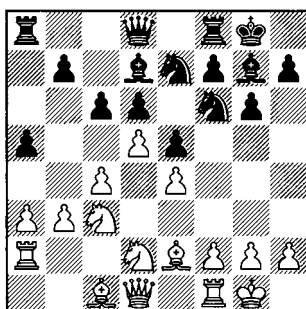
21. ♜c4 ♜d7 22. ♕c1 ♜c5= Gokhale – Mahmoud, Calcutta 1996.

B2b) I have had to encounter in my practice the move

12. ♖a2,

(diagram)

and Black must continue in the



same fashion as against 12. ♕b2 (line **B2c**).

12... ♖b8 13. ♖c2 ♖c8

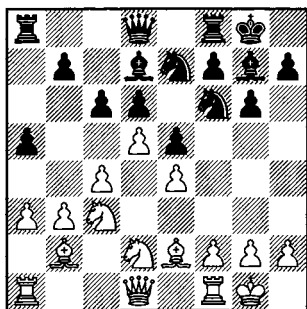
This position resembles very much the Ruy Lopez and Black has an excellent version of it.

14. ♜d3

He can counter 14. ♜db1 with 14... b5 15. cxb5 cxb5 16. b4 axb4 (16... ♜e8 17. ♕e3 f5 18. f3 ♜f6 19. ♖d2 a4 20. ♖f1 ♖c7 21. ♖d3! ♖b7 22. ♜d1 f4 23. ♕f2 g5 24. ♜b2 g4 25. fxg4 ♜xg4 26. ♕xg4 ♕xg4 27. ♜d2 ♜h8= Beliavsky – Stellwagen, Amsterdam 2006) 17. axb4 ♖a1 (White's bishop must either go to b2, or he must put up with the enemy rook on a1.) 18. ♜d3 ♜h5 19. g3 ♖a7 20. ♕g5 f6 21. ♕e3 ♖ac7 22. f3 f5= Sharavdorj – Al-Modiahki, Yangon 1999, with an approximately equal position.

14... cxd5 15. cxd5 b5 16. b4 axb4 17. axb4 ♜h5 Black can attack the pawn on e4 either directly with f5, or in a trickier fashion with ♕h6, Chuchelov – Bologan, Silivri 2003.

B2c) 12.♖b2



12...♞b8

Black is preparing the pawn-break b7-b5.

His alternative is the attempt to organize some piece-play on the queenside, activating his queen immediately: 12...♞b6 13. dxc6 (13.♙c1 c5 14.♙b1 ♖e8 15.b4 axb4 16.axb4 ♜xb4 17.♖b5 ♜a5 18.♙a1 ♜d8 19.♙xa8 ♜xa8 20.♞b3 f5 21.♙a1 ♞b8 – Ruban – Nijboer, Groningen 1993) 13...bxc6 14.♖a4 ♜c7 15.c5 d5 16.♖b6 ♙ad8 17.♖c3, Malakhov – Zvjaginsev, Poikovsky 2004 and here Black should better give up his a5-pawn: 17...♖e6 18.♖xa5 ♜a7 19.exd5 ♖fxd5 20.♖bc4 ♙d7 21.♖b6 ♞b8 22.♞c2 ♖f5= and he has excellent compensation.

13.b4

Black will counter 13.♖a4 with 13...b5.

13.♖h1 ♖e8 (13...cxd5 14.exd5 ♖f5 15.♖ce4 ♖xe4 16.♖xe4 ♖d4 17.f4±) 14.♖a4 ♜a7 15.dxc6, Sherbakov – V.Georgiev, Ubeda 1996 (15.c5 cxd5), 15...♖xc6 16.♖f3

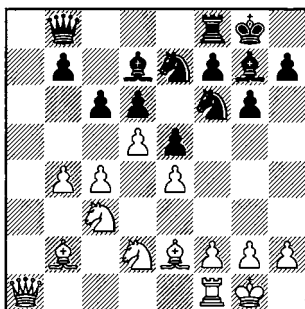
♖d4 17.♖c3 ♖c7=. Black's control over the d4-outpost enables him not only to equalize, but he has good chances of winning after f5.

13.♙b1 ♙c8 14.♖h1, Ftacnik – Battsetseg, Philadelphia 2006, 14...cxd5 15.cxd5 (15.exd5 ♖f5 16.♖de4 ♖xe4 17.♖xe4 ♜c7) 15...b5= Black has equalized.

13...axb4

White is better after 13...cxd5 14.cxd5 ♙c8 15.b5.

14.axb4 ♙xa1 15.♞xa1, Henrichs – Valuet, Differdange 2007.



15...b5!? Black reduces the tension on the queenside with this pawn-sacrifice in order to avoid the necessity to defend laboriously a slightly inferior position. 16.dxc6 ♖xc6 17.♖xb5 (After 17.cxb5 ♖d4 18.♖c4 ♖xb5 19.♜a5 ♖d4 20.b5 ♖h6 21.♖b3 ♙c8, he has the initiative.) 17...♖xb4 18.♖c3 ♖c2 19.♞b2 ♖d4 20.♖xd4 ♜xb2 21.♖xb2 exd4 22.♖xd4 ♙e8 23.♖f3 ♖xe4! 24.♖xe4 ♖xd4 25.♖xd6 ♙e5 – Black is a pawn down indeed, but he should not have problems to make a draw.

Part 6

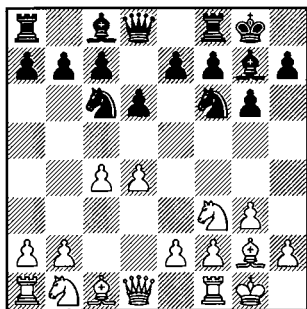
The Fianchetto Systems

In the final 6th part of our book, we will analyze different set-ups, in which White fianchettoes his king's bishop. This is traditionally considered as very reliable for him and this is not surprising. Both sides develop their forces symmetrically, but White's advantage of an extra tempo is very important in the fight for supremacy in the centre. His plan, including the fianchetto, is not aggressive indeed; it is prophylactic and White intends to steer the game into a long positional battle, restricting gradually the possibilities of his opponent and trying to squeeze him. An exquisite positional player like the sixth world champion Mikhail Botvinnik often played this system.

"The King's Indian Household" is a universal response to all possible closed opening systems by White and it can be used by Black even if White keeps his pawn on d2, or he fianchettoes both his bishops. All these schemes have their nuances, their theory and practice and they do not belong to the King's Indian Defence. How should Black play against them? I understand that an answer of the type "Have a look at some other opening monographs." will hardly satisfy our readers, so I have decided to include in the last part of the book some chapters including White's king's fianchetto. He plays in them in the spirit of the English Opening, or the Queen's Pawn.

Chapter 28

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘f3 ♙g7 4.g3 0-0
5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♘c6



More than one hundred years have passed, since the appearance of the Alekhine Defence and you cannot surprise anybody with a move like this. Black completes calmly his development, without being afraid of the pawn-advance d4-d5. His knight will have to go to the edge of the board then, but White closes the diagonal of his fianchettoed bishop and Black will organize counterplay on the queenside. If White leaves the knight on c6 for a while, Black can follow another plan, pushing e7-e5 and occupying the d4-square with his knight.

Here, besides the main line 7.♘c3 (B), White can try to surprise his opponent with some oth-

er variations as early as on move seven.

A) 7.d5

B) 7.♘c3

7.♘bd2 – This is an evident concession by White from the point of view of the fight for the centre and Black equalizes easily after 7...e5 8.d5 ♘e7 9.e4 ♘h5 10.♘e1 c5 11.♘d3 f5 12.f3 ♙d7 13.a3 ♙h6= Sandor – Bilek, Budapest 1954.

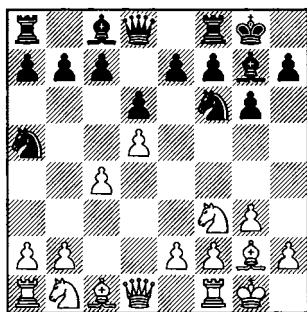
In case of 7.b3, Black should better play immediately 7...e5 8.dxe5 (After 8.♙b2, he can push this pawn even further to e4 – 8...e4 and he can protect it reliably there: 9.♘e1 ♗e8 10.♘c2 ♙f5 11.♘c3 ♗d7= Jovanovic – Cioaltea, Mladenovac 1975.) 8...dxe5 (8...♘g4 9.♙b2 ♘gxe5 10.♘c3 ♘xf3 11.♙xf3 ♙h3=; 10.♘xe5, Witkowski – Kwasniewski, Warsaw 1964, 10...dxe5!? 11.♘c3 ♙f5 12.♗xd8 ♗fxd8 13.♙d5 ♗ab8=, planning ♘d4 and c6) 9.♙b2 e4 10.♘g5 (10.♘d4 ♘xd4 11.♗xd4, Steinfeld – I.Ivanov, USA 1988, 11...♗xd4 12.♙xd4 ♗d8 13.e3

3. ♘f3 ♙g7 4. g3 0-0 5. ♙g2 d6 6. 0-0 ♜c6

c5!=) 10... ♙f5 11. ♜c3 ♜e8 12. ♞xd8 ♞axd8 13. ♜fd1 h6 14. ♜h3 ♜d4 ♞ Black is better thanks to his well-deployed pieces and superior control over the centre, Newman – Beach, Plymouth 1957.

7. ♙f4 – This is not the best square for White's bishop, because it can be attacked by Black with tempo after e5: 7... ♜g4 8. h3 e5 9. ♙g5 ♜f6 10. ♜c3 ♜xd4 11. ♜xd4 exd4 12. ♞xd4 h6 13. ♙d2 ♙f5 14. ♞f4 c6 15. ♞ad1 ♙c2 16. ♜c1 g5 17. ♞f3 ♙g6 18. ♜fd1 ♜e8 19. g4 ♜e4 ♞ Romanishin – Petrosian, Moscow 1976.

A) 7.d5 ♜a5



A1) 8. ♞a4

A2) 8. ♜bd2

If 8. ♜a3, then after 8...c5 9. dxc6 ♜xc6, there arises a habitual position, except that White's knight is misplaced on a3.

After 8. ♜fd2?! Black has a very pleasant choice: to transpose to the main lines with 8... c5 9. a3 ♜d7 10. ♞a2 ♜e5 11. ♞c2

♙d7=, or what is even better for him, to postpone c5 and attack his enemy's d5-pawn with c6, for example: 8... ♜d7 (It is also possible for Black to play immediately 8...c6!?) 9. ♞c2 c6 10. e4 cxd5 11. exd5 ♜e5 12. ♜a3 ♙f5 13. ♙e4 ♙d7 14. ♞b1 ♜c8 15. b3 b5, Kossov – Bologan, Moscow 1995.

A1) 8. ♞a4

This attempt by White to attack the knight on a5 deserves some attention.

8...c5 9. ♙d2

Or 9. dxc6 ♜xc6 10. ♜c3 ♞a5 11. ♞xa5 ♜xa5 12. b3 ♙d7 13. ♙a3 ♞ab8, with mutual chances.

9...b6 10. ♙c3

This is the point. White is not in a hurry to capture his opponent's bad knight.

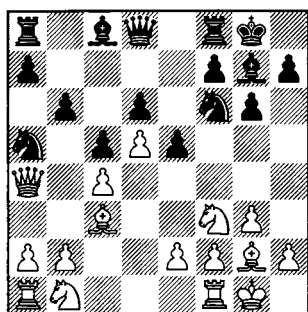
10. ♙xa5 bxa5 11. ♜c3 ♞b8 12. ♞c2 ♜d7 13. e4 ♙a6 14. ♜d2 ♞b6 15. ♞ab1 ♜e5 16. ♜d1 e6 ♞ An. Rodriguez – Flores, Villa Martelli 2008.

10...e5!

White has been distracted by his actions on the queenside, so Black should counter strike in the centre.

It is weaker for him to play 10... ♙d7 11. ♞c2 ♙f5 12. ♞c1 ♞b8 (Black fails to equalize with the temporary pawn-sacrifice – 12... b5 13. cxb5 ♞b8, Kacheishvili – Bologan, Vermont 1999, and here White should have begun a chase for his opponent's bishop with 14. ♜h4 ♙d7 15. ♜a3 ♙xb5 16. ♜xb5

♞xb5 17.b3±, or 13...♙e4 14.♙xf6 ♙xf6 15.♟c3 ♙xc3 16.♞xc3 ♞b6 17.♞e3 ♙xd5 18.♞xe7±) 13.♟bd2 e5 14.♟e1 ♞d7 15.e4 ♙h3 16.♟d3 ♙xg2 17.♟xg2 ♞be8 18.♞c2 ♟b7 19.♞ae1± White has developed his forces in an exemplary fashion for the Yugoslavian variation and he is perfectly prepared to advance f4, Gelashvili – Timoshenko, Cappelle la Grande 2009.



11.dxe6

11.♟bd2 ♟h5 (Black must push f5, before White has placed his knight on d3, so that he cannot counter yet f5 with f4.) 12.e4 f5= Bagaturov – Ivanchuk, Yerevan 2004.

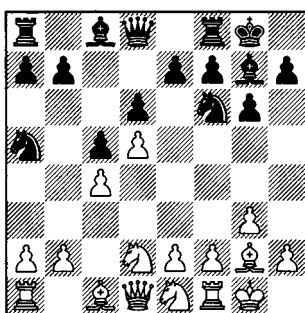
11...♙xe6 12.♟g5 ♙d7 13.♞d1 ♞b8 14.♞xd6 ♟xc4 15.♞f4, Garcia Palermo – Avrukh, Turin 2006, 15...♟xb2!↑

A2) 8.♟bd2 c5 9.♟e1

In case of 9.e4, Black should react in the spirit of the Benko Gambit: 9...b5 (9...a6 10.♞b1 b5 11.b3 ♞b8 12.♞c2 e5 13.♟e1 ♙d7 14.♟d3 ♟h5 15.b4 bxc4 16.♟xc5

dxcc5 17.bxa5± Bondarets – Lee, Dresden 2008) 10.cxb5 a6 11.bxa6 ♙xa6 12.♞e1 ♟d7± He has obtained the typical compensation: he must either place his knight on c4 after ♟b6, or advance c4, followed by ♟c5, Hauchard – Bologan, Belfort 1995.

It is more or less the same after 9.a3 – 9...b5 10.cxb5 ♟xd5 11.♟e1 e6 12.e4 ♟c7 13.♞a4 ♟b7 14.♞b3 ♞b8 15.♟c4 d5 16.♟e3 ♟a5 Kulkov – Bologan, Kstovo 1998.



9...♞b8

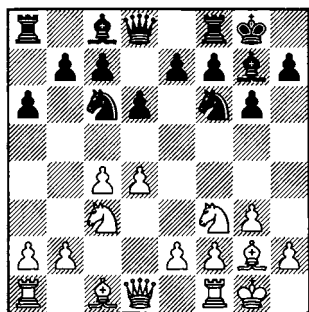
In principle, Black can advance 9...b5!? even without preparation. There might follow: 10.cxb5 a6 11.bxa6 (11.b6 ♞xb6 12.♟c2 ♟b7± with the idea e6) 11...♞xa6 12.♟c2 ♟b7 (planning ♞a8 and e6) 13.b4?! (13.♟e3 ♞a8 14.♟e4 ♟xd5 15.♟xd5 ♙xd5 16.♟f6 ♙xf6 17.♙xd5 ♞a7±; 13.e4!? ♞b6!±, with e6, or ♙a6 to follow) 13... ♟xd5 14.bxa5 ♙xa1 15.♟xa1 ♟c3 16.♙xb7 ♟xd1 17.♙xa6 ♞xa5 18. ♙c4 ♟c3+– Kochyev – Bologan, St. Petersburg 1995.

10.♞b1 b5 11.cxb5 ♞xb5

12. ♜c2 ♗d7 13.b4 cxb4 14. ♜xb4 ♖b6 15.a3 ♜g4 16. ♗b2 ♜e5 17.h3 ♗c8 18.e3 ♜ec4
Black has the initiative, Jurek – Hitzgerova, Schwabisch Gmund 1998.

B) 7. ♜c3 a6

This is a very useful “pass” for Black, resembling the Chebanenko system (4...a6) in the Slav Defence. Black keeps his options about the future of his bishop on c8 and he waits to see the plan of his opponent. In addition, the move with the rook-pawn enables him to create some counterplay on the queenside after ♖b8 and b5.



In this chapter, we will deal with all sensible moves for White except the main lines: 8.d5, 8.h3 and 8.b3.

B1) 8. ♗d2

B2) 8. ♗e1

B3) 8. ♖d3

B4) 8.e3

B5) 8.e4

It is simply bad for White to play 8.a4?!, since Black can counter that with 8...a5 9.b3 ♗g4 10. ♗b2 ♜d7 11.d5 (11.e3 e5 12.dxe5 ♜cxe5, followed by ♜c5) 11... ♗xf3! 12.exf3!? (12. ♗xf3 ♜b4, with the idea ♜c5, c6, ♖b6) 12... ♜b4 (12... ♜d4?! 13. ♖b1 ♜c5 14. ♗c1) 13. ♖e1 ♜c5 14. ♖e3 c6 and Black has a slight advantage thanks to his complete control over the dark squares, Skomorokhin – Bologan, Biel 1993, as well as with 8... ♜a5! 9.b3 c5 (White has problems protecting his weaknesses on b3 and d4.) 10. ♖c2 ♖b6, with initiative for Black.

After 8.a3, Black can again play 8... ♜a5 9. ♜d2 c5 10.d5 ♜g4=, with the idea ♜e5 and b5.

8. ♗g5 – This move does not have separate importance, because the difference, in comparison to the line with 8. ♗d2, is only in the inclusion of h7-h6 and this does not compromise Black’s position. 8...h6 9. ♗d2 (9. ♗e3 ♖b8, preparing the standard pawn-break b5.) 9...e5 10.d5 ♜d4 (Black can go with his knight to e7 as well: 10... ♜e7 11.e4 ♜d7 12. ♜e1 f5 13. ♜d3 ♜f6= Olafsson – Donner, Zurich 1959.) 11. ♜e1 ♗d7 12.e3 ♜f5 13. ♜d3 ♖e7 14.e4 ♜d4 15. ♜e2 ♜xe2 16. ♖xe2 c6!= Lerner – Bologan, Nikolaev 1995. It is essential for Black to prevent his opponent’s play with c5.

I have had to encounter the move 8. ♗f4 too and Black’s simplest reaction against this would

be to prepare b5: 8...♟b8 9.♟c1 ♔d7 10.d5 ♘a5 11.b3 b5 12.cxb5 axb5 13.b4 ♘c4 14.♘d4 ♘h5! (eliminating White's dark-squared bishop) 15.♟c2 ♘xf4 16.gxf4 e5 17.dxe6 fxe6. Black has a powerful bishop-pair and pawn-majority in the centre, Itkis – Bologan, Yugoslavia 1994.

His best reaction against 8. ♘d5 would be 8...e6 9.♘xf6 ♟xf6 10.e3 (10.♙g5 ♟f5 11.♙e3 e5 12.d5 ♘e7 13.h3 ♟d7= Nunn) 10...♔d7 11.♔d2 e5 12.d5 ♘d8 13.e4 ♟e7, with the idea a5, b6, ♘b7-c5, f5, Korchnoi – Nunn, Biel 1986.

In case of 8.♟c2, Black can occupy the h3-c8 diagonal with tempo: 8...♙g4 9.♟d1 ♟c8 10.d5, Teich – Beeker, Germany 1988, 10...♘b4 11.♟a4 (11.♟b3 a5 followed by ♘a6) 11...a5 12.a3 ♔d7 13.♘b5 c6 14.dxc6 ♘xc6 (but not 14...bxc6 15.♘xd6!) 15.♙f4 ♘a7↑ Black doubles his opponent's pawns and he gradually seizes the initiative.

B1) 8.♔d2

This move does not involve any profound idea. White simply develops his bishop and he will continue depending on Black's reaction.

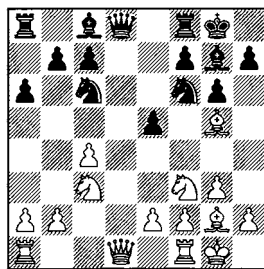
8...e5

8...♟b8 9.♟c1. This move is aimed at preventing b5. (It is premature for White to play 9.d5 ♘a5 10.b3 c5 11.dxc6 ♘xc6 12.♟c1 ♟e8 13.♟d1 ♔d7 14.♘e1 b5 15.♙h6 ♙xh6 16.♟xh6 bxc4 17.bxc4 ♟a5↑

Markowski – Szelag, Opole 2006. It is illogical for White to continue with 9.b3, after he has developed his bishop to d2: 9...e5 10.d5 ♘d4 11.e4? – 11.♙e3 ♘f5= – 11...♙g4 12.♙e3 c5 13.dxc6 bxc6 14.♔xd4 exd4 15.♘e2 ♘xe4 Almeida – Al-Modiahki, Andorra 1999.) It may be paradoxical, but Black can still play 9...b5! (It is weaker for him to opt for 9...♔d7 10.d5 ♘a5 11.b3 c5 12.dxc6 ♘xc6 13.♘d5! ♘e4 14.♙e3 e6 15.♙b6 ♟e8 16.♘f4±; 13...♘xd5 14.cxd5 ♘e5 15.♘xe5 ♙xe5 16.♙h6 ♟e8 17.♟d2 and Black will have problems developing his queen, for example: 17...♟b6 18.♙e3 ♟b5 19.♟c7±) 10.cxb5 axb5 11.d5 ♘a5 12.b4 ♘c4 13.♙e1 ♔d7 14.♘d4 ♟e8 15.♘c6, Mukhin – Tukmakov, Baku 1972, (15.♟b3 ♘xd5) 15...♙xc6 16.dxc6 ♘e5 17.e3 ♘xc6 18.♘d5 ♘xd5 19.♟xd5 ♘e5 20.♙xc7 ♟b6 21.♟b3 e6=, with the idea to follow with d5, equalizing.

9.d5

9.dxe5!? dxe5 10.♙g5. It looks like White has lost a tempo, because his bishop has come to g5 in two moves.



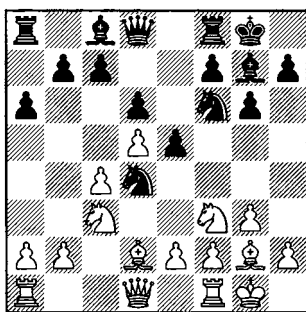
There are some plusses in this

as well. His e2-pawn has remained at its place and his bishop on g2 is still very powerful. The position is symmetrical, but Black must play very precisely in order to hold the balance.

10... ♙e6 11. ♖a4. If White wishes to exploit the d5-square, he should better do it with queens present on the board. (His straightforward play after 11. ♜d5, leads to an equal endgame after: 11... ♙xd5 12.cxd5 ♖xd5 13. ♖xd5 ♜xd5 14. ♜xe5 ♜xe5 15. ♙xd5 c6 16. ♙b3 a5 17. ♖ad1 a4 18. ♙c2 ♖fe8 19.b3 axb3 20. ♙xb3 b5 21. ♖c1 ♜c4= Ribli – Tkachiev, Senek 1998; 16...h6 17. ♙d2 a5 18.a4 ♜d7 19. ♖fb1 ♜c5 20. ♙c2 ♖fd8 21. ♙e1 ♜e6= Ionescu – Djukic, Bucharest 2004. White would not achieve much with 11. ♖xd8 ♖axd8 12. ♜d2 ♜d4 13. ♖fd1 h6 14. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 15. ♙xb7 ♖b8 16. ♙d5 ♖xb2 17.e3 c6 18. ♜de4 ♙g7 19. ♙xe6 ♜xe6 20. ♖d6 ♖c8= Grycel – B.Socko, Lubniewice 2002.) 11...h6 (White is better after 11... ♖e8 12. ♖fd1) 12. ♖fd1 ♖e7 (It looks smart for Black to try 12... ♖b8, but his queen is misplaced on a7: 13. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 14. ♜d2 ♙g7 15. ♜de4 ♖a7 16. ♜d5 ♖ac8 17.b4 ♜h8 18.e3 f5 19. ♜c5 ♙g8 20. ♖ac1 e4 21. ♜f4± Tkachiev – Kasimdzhanov, New Delhi 2000; 20...a5 21. ♜xb7 ♖xb7 22. ♜e7 e4 23. ♖xc6 ♖xc6 24. ♜xc6 axb4 25. ♜e7±) 13. ♙e3 (13. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 14. ♜d5 ♙xd5 15.cxd5 ♜d4 16. ♜xd4 exd4 17. ♙f3 ♖d6=) 13... ♖fd8, establishing again control

over the d5-square with counter chances.

9... ♜d4



10. ♜e1

The exchange of two couples of knights facilitates Black's defence considerably: 10. ♜xd4 exd4 11. ♜e4 ♜xe4 12. ♙xe4 ♙h3=

10... ♙e8 11. ♖c1

11.h3 ♜f5 12.e4 (12.e3 e4) 12... ♜d4 13. ♜e2 (13. ♙e3 c5 14.dxc6 bxc6 15. ♜c2 c5) 13...c5±

11... ♙d7 12.b4

Black's knight seems to be too far from the rest of his forces, but it cannot be trapped, for example: 12.e3 ♜f5 13.e4 ♜d4 14. ♜d3 c5 (This is the habitual additional support for the knight on d4.) 15.dxc6 bxc6 16.c5 (otherwise, Black will play c5 himself) 16... ♙e6, Drasko – Roos, Arco 2000, 17.cxd6 ♖xd6 18. ♙e3 ♖ed8= with a comfortable game for Black.

12...b5!?

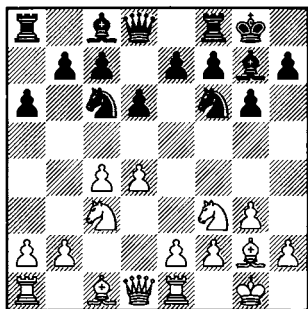
12...a5!? 13.a3±

13.e3 ♜f5 14.a4! e4

14...bxa4 15. ♜xa4 ♖c8 16. ♜d3 c6∞

15.cxb5 axb5 16.a5, Baginskaite – Bologan, Vermont 1999, **16...h5 17.♖c2 h4**?

B2) 8.♞e1



This move should not be defined as bad, because White plays in the centre after all.

8...♞e8

The other rook-move for Black – 8...♞b8 is not bad at all. 9.♞b1 (After 9.e4, there arises a version of 8.e4 and the inclusion of the rook-moves is much rather in favour of Black: 9...♙g4 10.♙e3 ♘d7 11.♞d2 e5 12.d5 ♙xf3 13.♙xf3 ♘d4 14.♙g2 c5= Kestler – Klundt, Germany 1985; 11.♘e2 ♙xf3 12.♙xf3 ♘a5 13.♞c1 c5 14. ♙g2 ♘c6?; 11... ♘a5 12.♞c1 c5 13.b3 ♘c6 14.d5 ♘b4 15.a3 ♘d3 16.♞xd3 ♙xf3= with a comfortable game for him.) 9...e5. This is the most precise move for Black. (White is well-prepared to counter 9...b5 with 10.cxb5 axb5 11.b4! e5 12.dxe5 dxe5 13.♙e3 ♙f5 14.♞c1 ♞e8 15.♙c5 ♞d8 16.♞b3 e4, Stellwa-

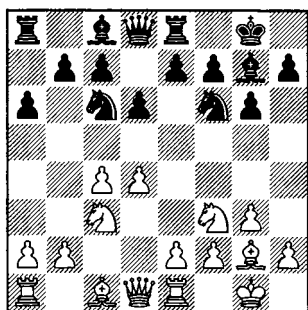
gen – Mamedyarov, Baku 2002, 17.♘xb5 exf3 18.exf3±, or 11...e6 12.e4 ♘e7 13.♘d2 ♘d7 14.♘b3 c6 15.♙g5 h6 16.♙xe7 ♞xe7 17.♘a5± 1997.) 10.d5 (In case of 10.dxe5, Black should better capture with his pawn: 10...dxe5 11.♞xd8 ♞xd8 12.♙g5 h6 13.♙xf6 ♙xf6 14.♘d5 ♙g7 15.♞bd1 ♙e6? He gradually seizes the initiative. He will reply to the capturing of the pawn 15.♘xc7 with 15...e4.) 10...♘e7 (Black's compensation is insufficient after 10...♘d4 11.♘d2 ♙f5 12.e4 ♙d7; 11.♘d4 exd4 12.♞xd4 ♙f5 13.♞a1 ♘e4 14.♞e3 ♘xc3 15. bxc3 b5 16.cxb5 axb5 17.♙a3±) 11.e4 (It would be premature for White to opt for 11.c5 ♘d7 12.cxd6 cxd6 13.e4 h6 and there would arise a habitual position, but Black has already prepared f5 and he has made only one superfluous move, while White has played two, Chochol – Herejk, Czech Republic 1997. White achieves nothing with 11.b4 b5!) 11...c6 12.b4 (12.a4 b5 13.axb5 axb5 14.dxc6 bxc4 15.♞a4 ♞c7 16.♞xc4 ♙e6 17. ♞d3 ♘xc6 18.♙g5 ♘b4 19.♞d2 ♞fd8 20.♞ec1 ♞b7? Riazantsev – Inarkiev, Moscow 2008; 12.dxc6 ♘xc6 13.h3 b5 14.cxb5 axb5 15. b4 ♙e6 16.♙f1 d5!?) 12...cxd5 13. cxd5 b5=

(diagram)

9.d5

White can still refrain from active actions with: 9.♞b1 e5 10.d5 (10.dxe5 dxe5 11.♞xd8 ♞xd8 12. ♙g5 ♙e6?) 10...♘d4 11.♘d2! It is

3. ♖f3 ♗g7 4. g3 0-0 5. ♗g2 d6 6. 0-0 ♜c6



advantageous for White to leave Black's problematic d4-knight on the board. (Black obtains a comfortable game after 11. ♜xd4 exd4 12. ♞xd4 ♗f5 13. ♞a1 ♜e4.) 11... ♗f5 (11... ♗d7 12. e3 ♜f5 13. b3±) 12. ♜de4 ♜xe4 13. ♜xe4 c6 (13... ♞d7 14. e3 ♗xe4 15. ♗xe4 ♜f5 16. ♞c2 ♜e7 17. ♗g2 f5 18. e4 fxe4 19. ♞xe4 a5 20. ♗d2 b6 21. ♗c3 ♜f5 22. ♗h3 ♞f8 23. ♞d3± White has a slight positional edge, Maric – Kachiani, Antalya 2002) 14. e3 cxd5 15. cxd5 ♜b5 16. ♗d2 ♗xe4 17. ♗xe4 f5 18. ♗g2 e4 19. ♞b3 ♞d7. Black's position is quite defensible.

9. h3 ♗d7 10. e4 e5 11. dxe5 (11. d5 ♜d4±) 11... ♜xe5 12. ♜xe5 dxe5 13. ♗e3 ♗e6 14. ♜d5 ♜d7 15. ♞b3 ♞c8 16. ♞a3 ♗f8 17. ♞a5 c6 18. ♞ac1 (18. ♜c7 b6 19. ♗xb6 ♜xb6 20. ♞xb6 ♞b8 21. ♞a5 ♗b4±) 18... b6!, Riazantsev – Inarkiev, Moscow 2008, 19. ♜xb6 ♜xb6 20. ♗xb6 ♗xh3=

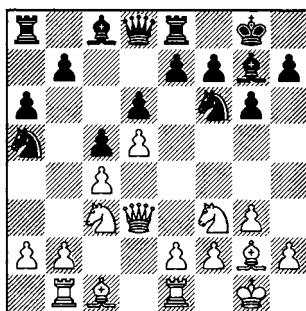
9... ♜a5 10. ♞d3

10. ♜d2 c5 11. a3 ♜g4 12. ♞c2 ♜e5 13. ♜ce4 e6 14. b4 cxb4 15. axb4 ♜xc4 16. ♜xc4 ♜xc4 17. ♞xc4 ♗xa1

18. ♗g5 f6 19. ♗h6 ♗b2 20. ♞b1 ♗e5 21. f4 ♞b6, V. Schmidt – Kosciel-ski, Bad Woerisofen 2001, 22. e3 exd5 (22... ♞xe3 23. ♜h1 f5 24. fxe5 ♞xh6 25. ♜f6±) 23. ♞xd5 ♗e6 24. ♞d3 f5 25. fxe5 fxe4 26. ♗xe4 ♞b5∞

10... c5 11. ♞b1

11. e4 e5 12. dxe6 ♗xe6 13. b3 ♜c6 14. ♗b2 ♜d7 15. ♞d2 ♞a5 16. ♞ad1 ♞ab8 17. ♜e2 ♞xd2 18. ♞xd2 ♗xb2 19. ♞xb2 ♗g4± Ptacnikova – Schoene, Dresden 2007.



11... e6

Black wishes to transfer the game into the Benoni system.

12. ♗g5 h6 13. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 14. dxe6

14. b4 cxb4 15. ♞xb4 exd5 16. ♜xd5 ♗g7=

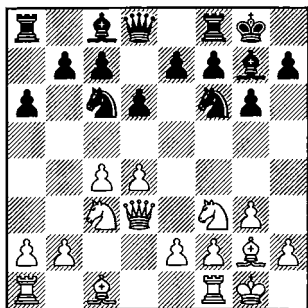
14. a3 exd5 15. ♜xd5 ♗g7=

14... ♗xe6 15. ♜d5 ♗f5!

Black provokes the weakening of the d4-square and the closing of the diagonal of the bishop on g2.

16. e4 ♗g4 17. a3 ♜c6= Karpov – Tkachiev, Cap d'Agde 2000.

B3) 8.♖d3



This move has its venom. White makes a solid move in the centre and he waits for a mistake by his opponent.

8...e5

I have tried several times (rather unsuccessfully, though...) the creative approach 8...♟d7 9.♙e3 h6! It is important to deprive White of the possibility to play later ♙g5. (White is better after 9...e5 10.♖d2 exd4 11.♟xd4 ♟ce5 12.b3 ♟c5 13.h3 c6 14.♙h6 ♙xh6 15.♖xh6± Borovikov – Zubov, Pavlograd 2000.) 10.♖d2 ♟h7 11.b3 (11.d5 ♟a5 12.b3 c5 13.dxc6 bxc6 14.♙ac1 ♙b8 15.♙a7 ♙b7 16.♙d4 c5 17.♙xg7 ♟xg7 18.♟d5, Alekseev – Bologan, Poikovsky 2007, 18...♟c6=) 11...e5 12.♙ad1 ♙b8 13.dxe5 dxe5 14.♖c2 (14.♟e1 ♟d4 15.♟c2 c5 16.♟e4 ♖e7=) 14...f5 15.♟d5 e4 16.♟h4 ♟de5 17.f4±

9.dxe5

After 9.d5, Black can exploit the extra tempo for the move 9...♟b4 and he manages to transfer to the scheme with a knight

on c5 and a pawn on a5: 10.♖d1 a5 11.e4 c6 12.a3 ♟a6 13.♙g5 h6 14.♙xf6 ♙xf6 15.♖d2 ♟h7 16.dxc6 bxc6 17.♙fd1 ♙e7= Razuvaev – Chiburidanidze, Moscow 1981.

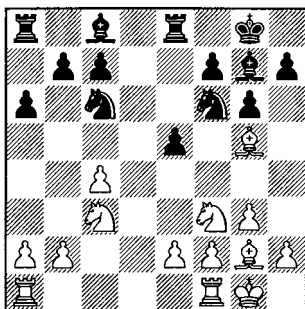
9...dxe5 10.♖xd8

Black must play very accurately in this endgame.

10.♖e3 White has not tried this move in practice yet, but it is quite reasonable. 10...♙e8 11.♙d1 ♙d7 12.♟g5 (12.h3 ♖e7 13.♟d5 ♟xd5 14.cxd5 ♟d4 15.♟xd4 exd4 16.♖xe7 ♙xe7 17.d6 cxd6 18.♙xb7 ♙a7 19.♙f3 ♙xh3=; 12.♖d2 ♙f5 13.♖e1 ♖c8 14.e4 ♙g4=) 12...♟d4 13.♖d3 ♙f5 14.♟ge4 ♟xe4 15.♟xe4 ♟e6= Black has nothing to worry about.

10...♙xd8 11.♙g5 ♙e8

This is better than 11...♙e6 12.♟d2 ♙dc8 13.♙xf6 ♙xf6 14.♟de4 ♙e7 15.♟d5 ♙f8 16.♟g5 ♙xd5 17.cxd5 ♟d4 18.e3 ♟b5 19.♙ac1 ♙e7 20.h4 h6 21.♟e4 ♟d6 22.♟c5 ♙e8 23.e4 ♙d8 24.♙c2± Shinkevich – Kokorev, Vladimir 2002.

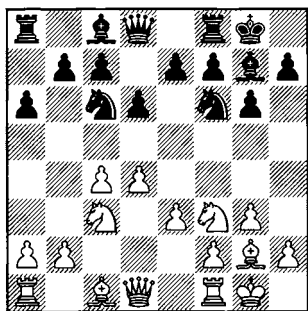


12.♟d5

Otherwise, Black will push h6: 12. ♖fd1 h6 13. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 14. ♜d2 ♜d4 15. ♜de4 ♙d8 16. ♜c5 ♖b8 17.e3 ♜e6 18. ♜d7 ♙xd7 19. ♖xd7 ♜c5 20. ♖d2 a5 21. ♖d5 ♙e7 22. ♜e4 ♜xe4 23. ♙xe4 b6 24. ♙g2, draw, Zugic – Babula, Istanbul 2000, or 12. ♜d2 h6 13. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 14. ♜de4 ♙d8 15. ♜d5 ♙g7 16. ♖fd1 ♜d4=

12... ♜xd5 13.cxd5, Chabannon – Touzane, Montauban 2000. Black had to play here **13... ♜b4 14.e4 c6!**, acting in the same fashion as in the exchange variation, where he attacks the pawn-wedge on d5: **15.a3** (15. d6 f6 16. ♙d2 ♜d3 17. ♙c3 ♜c5=; White's pawn is easily blocked and it might be even captured later.) **15...h6 16.axb4** (16. ♙xh6 ♙xh6 17.axb4 cxd5 18.exd5 ♙g4 19.h3 ♙xf3 20. ♙xf3 e4=) **16... hxg5 17. ♜xg5 f6 18. ♜f3 cxd5 19.exd5 e4 20. ♜d2 f5 21. ♜c4 ♙d7**∞ Black's compensation should be sufficient for a draw.

B4) 8.e3



8... ♖b8

This is the main line for Black.

It also deserves attention for him to try 8... ♙d7 (He postpones e5 for a move.) 9.b3 (9. ♖e2 e5 10. h3 ♖b8 11. ♙d1 ♖c8 12. ♜h2 exd4 13. ♜xd4 ♖e8 14. ♜xc6 bxc6 15. ♖c2 ♖e5⇒ Gasthofer – Lanka, Austria 2006; 10.dxe5 dxe5 11.h3, Stryjecki – Mista, Brzeg Dolny 2001, 11...e4 12. ♜d2 ♖e7 13. ♜h2 ♙f5 14.g4 ♙e6∞; 10.d5 ♜b8 11.e4 a5 12.c5 ♜a6 13.cxd6 cxd6=) 9... e5 10.dxe5 dxe5 11. ♙a3 ♖e8 12. ♜d2 ♙g4 13. ♖c2 a5!? (13... ♖c8 14. ♜d5 ♙h3 15. ♜e4 ♜xe4 16. ♖xe4 ♙xg2 17. ♜xg2 a5 18. ♖fd1± Svidler – Morozovich, Internet 1999) 14. ♙xc6 bxc6 15.f3 ♙f5 16. e4 ♙h3 17. ♖f2 ♜d7=, followed by ♜f8-e6.

9. ♖e2

Black can counter the somewhat strange move 9. ♜e1!? with 9... ♙g4! (9... ♜a5 10.b3 c5 11. ♜c2 ♙d7 12. ♖b1 ♖c7 13.a4 b5 14.axb5 axb5 15. ♜xb5 ♙xb5 16.cxb5 ♖xb5 17.dxc5 dxc5 18. ♜a3 ♖bb8 19. ♖c2 ♖fc8 20. ♙d2 ♖b6 21. ♜c4 ♜xc4 22.bxc4± Dvoirys – Khairullin, Kazan 2005) 10.f3 ♙d7 11. ♜d3 and push only then 11...b5 with a complicated game.

9.b3 b5 10. ♖e2 bxc4 11. ♖xc4 ♜b4 12. ♖e2 a5 13. ♙d1 ♙a6 14. ♖d2 c5 15. ♙a3 ♖c7 16. ♖ac1 (16. ♜e1 cxd4 17.exd4 ♙b7 18.d5 ♜g4 19. ♙b2 ♙a6 20. ♜a4 ♙h6 21. ♖d4 ♜f6 22. ♜c3 ♙g7 23. ♖ac1 ♖d7 24. ♖d2 ♜g4⇒ Tkachiev – Paraguay, Bastia 2003) 16... ♖fc8 17.dxc5 ♖xc5 18. ♜d4 ♖h5 19. ♙xb4 axb4

20.♠a4 ♠g4 21.h3 ♠e5 ♠ Zoler – B.Socko, Biel 2007.

9...b5 10.♠d1

This is the essence of the concept of the set-up beginning with the move 8.e3. White continues with his development behind the solid pawn centre, delaying the active actions for a while.

10...e6

Black is preparing the e7-square for his knight. The other idea of the move is that he takes the d5-square under control.

He would not equalize after 10...b4 11.♠d5 ♠xd5 (It would be slightly better for Black to opt for 11...♠d7 12.h3 ♠e8 13.e4 e6 14.♠e3 e5 15.dxe5 dxe5 16.♠d5 ♠d4 17.♠xd4 exd4, Romanko – Bodnaruk, Moscow 2008, 18.e5±) 12.cxd5 ♠a5 13.e4 c6 14.dxc6 ♠xc6 15.♠e3 ♠a5 16.h3 ♠d7 17.♠f1 f5 18.e5 dxe5 19.♠c4 ♠h8 20.dxe5± Malaniuk – Bonte, Galatzi 2007.

11.♠d2

11.b3 ♠b7! 12.cxb5 axb5 13.♠xb5 ♠a6 14.a4 ♠a7 15.♠c2 ♠xb5 16.axb5 ♠xb5 17.♠d2 ♠a8! Black equalizes exploiting this tactical motive.

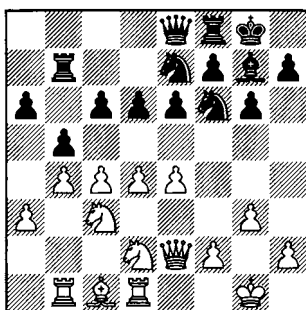
11...♠e7 12.a3 ♠e8 13.♠b1 ♠b7

His defence becomes much easier after the exchange of the light-squared bishops.

14.♠xb7 ♠xb7 15.b4 c6 16.e4 (diagram)

16...d5!

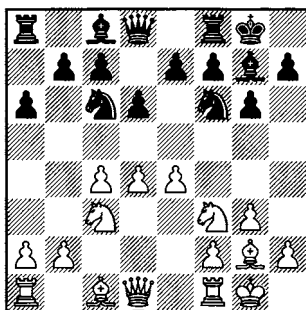
This is the correct strategy. Black must arrange his pawns



on light squares, having a dark-squared bishop on the board.

17.e5 ♠d7 18.c5 ♠f5 19.♠f3, draw, Malaniuk – Fedorov, Samara 1998.

B5) 8.e4



8...♠g4 9.♠e3

White should not be in a hurry to play 9.h3, because after 9...♠xf3 10.♠xf3, Black takes control over the important d4-square. There might follow: 10...e5 11.d5 ♠d4 12.♠g2 c5 13.dxc6 bxc6 14.b4 (14.♠e3 ♠d7 15.♠d2 ♠b8 16.b3 ♠c5 17.♠e2 ♠ce6= Bachtitar – Sharif, Jakarta 1978; 14.♠e2 ♠d7±) 14...c5 (14...♠d7 15.♠e3

c5 16. a3 cxb4 17. axb4 a5 18. bxa5
 ♙xa5 19. ♘b5 ♙xa1 20. ♙xa1 ♘c5=
 Macieja – Acs, Lubniewice 2003;
 14... a5 15. b5 ♙c8 16. ♘e2 ♘d7
 17. ♙e3 cxb5 18. cxb5 ♘xb5 19. a4
 ♘d4 20. ♘xd4 exd4 21. ♙xd4=;
 16. ♙a3 ♙e6 17. ♙d3 ♙fc8 18. ♘e2
 ♘d7= Rustemov – Inarkiev, Sochi
 2004) 15. bxc5 ♙a5 16. ♘d5 ♙xc5,
 with an equal position.

9... ♘d7

This is the main line.

10. ♙d2!?

White allows his opponent to continue with the straightforward plan of occupying the d4-square.

He has tried to solve radically this problem with 10. ♘e2 ♘a5 (Black must bring his c-pawn in the fight for the centre.) 11. ♙c1 (11. ♘d2 c5 12. f3 cxd4 13. ♘xd4 e5 14. ♘c2 ♙e6 15. b3 ♘c6, draw, Mikhalchishin – Manik, Leipzig 2002.) 11... c5 12. b3 ♘c6 13. d5 ♘b4 (Black's knight on b4 is not lost thanks to a tactical motive.) 14. a3 (14. ♙d2 ♘d3 15. ♙c2 b5†) 14... ♙xf3 15. ♙xf3 ♘d3! 16. ♙c2 (16. ♙xd3 ♘e5 17. ♙c2 ♘xf3 18. ♘g2 ♘e5 19. ♘c3, Dautov – Bologan, Mainz 2004, 19... ♘d7 20. f4 ♙b8=) 16... b5 17. ♘c3 (17. ♙g2 bxc4 18. bxc4 ♘b2 19. ♙d2 ♘e5 20. ♙fc1 ♙b8 21. f4 ♘g4?) 17... bxc4 18. bxc4 ♘b2 19. ♙xb2 ♙xc3 20. ♙b7 ♙b8 21. ♙b3 (In case of 21. ♙a7, I was planning a positional pawn-sacrifice with 21... ♙d4!) 21... ♙a5 22. ♙h6 ♙g7 23. ♙g5 ♙fe8= Avrukh – Bologan, Istanbul 2003.

10. h3 ♙xf3 11. ♙xf3 e5 12. d5

♘d4 13. ♙g2 c5 14. dxc6 bxc6 15. b4 ♙e7 16. a4 ♘b6 17. ♙d3 ♙e6? Vuilleumier – Tkachiev, Bastia 2003.

10... ♙xf3

The fight takes another entirely different course after 10... ♘a5 (with the idea c5) 11. b3 c5 and then:

after 12. ♙ab1, Black triumphs in his fight for the d4-outpost: 12... ♙xf3 13. ♙xf3 ♘c6 14. ♘e2 e5 15. dxc5 dxc5 16. ♘c3 ♘d4 17. ♙g2 b5, with equality, Tunik – Motylev, Samara 2000;

In case of 12. ♘e1, Black can afford to opt for 12... b5 (It is not bad for him to try also 12... cxd4 13. ♙xd4 ♙xd4 14. ♙xd4 ♘c6 15. ♙d2 ♙a5 16. ♘c2 ♘f6 17. ♘e3, with only a slight edge for White.) 13. f3 (13. cxb5 axb5 14. h3 – but not 14. ♘xb5, because of 14... ♘xb3 – 14... ♘xb3 15. axb3 ♙xa1 16. hxg4 ♙a3 17. b4 cxb4 18. ♘d5 e6, draw, Motwani – Inarkiev, Catalan Bay 2004. This variation can be prolonged a bit: 19. ♘xb4 ♘b6; 19. ♙xb4 ♙a4 20. ♙xb5 ♙a5 21. ♘e7 ♘h8 22. ♙b4 ♙a6. White's knight on e7 is doomed and he can give it up maximally for a pawn, so the position will be about balanced at the end.) 13... cxd4 14. ♙xd4 ♙xd4 15. ♙xd4 ♙e6 16. f4 ♘f6 17. cxb5 axb5 18. e5 dxe5 19. ♙xd8 ♙axd8 20. fxe5 ♘g4 21. ♘xb5 ♘xe5=;

12. dxc5 This is the most dangerous move for Black. 12... dxc5 (12... ♘xc5!?) 13. ♘g5 h6. He must repel this knight at first. (White is better after 13... ♘e5 14. ♘d5 h6

15.h3 ♖h5 16.♙xc5 ♜ac6 17.♖b6 ♜c8 18.g4 ♙xg4 19.hxg4 hxg5 20.♜xg5 ♜d7 21.♞ac1 e6 22.♙e3±) 14.h3 ♖h5 15.♜xf7 (15.g4 ♙xg4 16.hxg4 hxg5 17.♞ad1 ♜e5 18.♜e2 ♜d7! 19.♜c2 ♙d4!∞) 15...♞xf7 16.g4 ♙xg4 17.hxg4 ♜e5 (White will still have the initiative for a while, but after precise play Black should manage to neutralize it.) 18.♜xd8 ♞xd8 19.♞ad1 ♞xd1 20.♜xd1 b6 21.g5 ♙h7=

11.♙xf3 e5 12.d5 ♜d4 13.♙g2

White gave up the d4-square to his opponent. This is however, all that Black can brag about, while White has in reserve the plan of advancing his f-pawn and a space advantage.

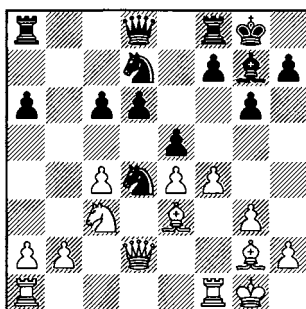
13...c5 14.dxc6 bxc6 15.f4

15.b4 (preventing c5) 15...♜b6 – this is not a new idea, but here, the order of moves is essential. (Black cannot equalize completely with 15...♞c8 16.♞fcl ♜e7 17.♞ab1 ♜e6 18.♜d3 ♜b6 19.♙xd4 exd4 20.♜e2 c5 21.♜f4 ♜e5 22.♜a3 cxb4 23.♞xb4 ♜d7 24.♙h3 ♞cd8 25.♙xd7 ♞xd7 26.♞e1± Nikolic – Ju.Polgar, Wijk an Zee 2000.) 16.♜d3 ♜d7 (Now, White cannot advance c5.) 17.♜e2 and only now, after White's knight is not on c3, Black should push 17...c5 18.a3 ♞ab8 19.♞ab1 ♞fc8 20.♞fcl ♜e6, equalizing.

(diagram)

15...♜a5!?

Black must attack immediately his opponent's queenside with his queen.



If he chooses something else, he will have to defend passively, for example: 15...♞b8 16.♞f2 ♜c5 17.♞af1 f5 18.exf5 gxf5 19.fxe5 dxe5 20.♙xc6 f4 21.♙d5 ♙h8 22.gxf4 ♜h4 23.fxe5 ♜g4 24.♙h1 ♞xf2 25.♞xf2 ♜ce6, Mamedyarov – Kasimdzhanov, Moscow 2007, 26.♞g2 ♜h4 27.♙f2+–; or 15...♜b6 16.♜d3 ♜e7 17.♞f2 c5 18.f5 f6 19.h4 ♜f7 20.♙f1 ♞ab8 21.g4 ♜e7 22.♜d2 ♙h8 23.♙d3± Safin – Shashikant, New Delhi 2009.

16.♞ac1

16.♞ad1? ♜b6 17.b3 ♜xc3! 18.♜xc3 ♜e2 19.♙f2 ♜xc3 20.♞d3? (20.♙xb6 ♜xd1 21.♞xd1 exf4 22.gxf4 ♙h6 23.♙f3 f5±) 20...♜d7–+ Stantic – S.Atalik, Nova Gorica 1999.

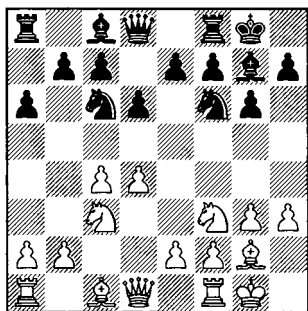
16...♜b4 17.b3 a5 18.♙h1 ♜c5 19.f5 ♞fe8

It is essential for Black not to allow his bishop to be stuck on the h8-square. It will be activated somehow from f8.

20.f6 ♙f8 21.♙h6 ♙h8 22.♞ce1 a4 23.g4, Lomineishvili – Mamedyarov, Batumi 2001, 23...g5±

Chapter 29

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♙f3 ♙g7 4.g3 0-0
5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♘c6 7.♙c3 a6 8.h3



The main idea of the move h3 is to prevent ♙g4 after White pushes e4.

8...♙d7

It is much more popular for Black to play here ♖b8, but we will analyze only ♙d7. Lanka taught me to play like this and this move served me faithfully for more than twenty years. Black has protected his knight and he is ready to continue with ♖b8, b5.

If we have in mind that the moves h3 and ♙d7 are not forced at all, White has numerous possibilities to choose from.

A) 9.♙g5

B) 9.♙e3

C) 9.e4

9.♙h2 ♖b8 10.e4 e5 11.dxe5 ♘xe5 12.♙xe5 dxe5 13.♙g5 h6 14.♙e3 b5 15.cxb5 axb5 16.b4 ♙e6 17.♖c1 h5 18.♖d1 ♖c8 19.♙d5 ♙xd5 20.exd5 ♖d8 21.♖c2 e4= Suba – Bologan, Sovata 1999.

9.♖e1 (I saw this move in two recent games, played by girls...) 9...♖c8 (9...♖b8 10.e4 e5 11.d5 ♘e7 12.c5 ♘h5 13.♙e3 f5, Sachdev – Borosova, Beijing 2008, 14.♖b3±) 10.♙h2 e5 11.d5 ♘d4 12.♘d2 b5 13.e3 ♘f5 14.♘b3, Galojan – Mader, Dresden 2008, 14...bxc4 15.♘d2 ♖b7 16.♘xc4 ♖b4 17.♖e2 ♙b5∞

9.b3 ♖b8 10.♙b2 b5 11.cxb5 axb5 12.♖c1 b4 13.♘a4 ♘a5 14.♘d2 ♙xa4 15.bxa4 ♘d7 16.♘b3 c5 17.♙a1 c4 18.♘a5 ♖xa5 19.♖xc4 ♘b6 20.♖c1 ♘xa4 21.♖b3 e6± Pavlovic – Nevednichy, Nis 1995.

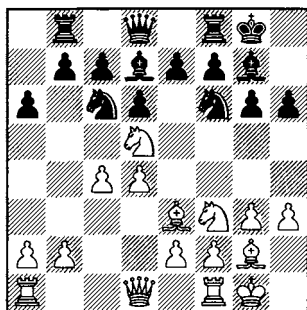
A) 9.♙g5 h6 10.♙e3 ♖b8 11.♘d5

This idea is often encountered in the variation with ♘c6. White wishes to neutralize Black's idea b7-b5, removing the future object of attack.

He has also tried in practice:

11.♖c1 b5 12.♟d2 e6 13.b3 ♞e7 14.g4!? (aimed at preventing ♟f5) 14...h5 15.f3, Maiwald – Wagner, Munich 1992 and only now, after White's pawn-structure has been compromised, Black should have played actively in the centre 15...d5♞, with excellent chances of seizing the initiative.

11.♞c1 ♙h7 12.♟d2 e6 13.a3 ♟e7 14.♞d1 b5 15.cxb5 axb5 16.b4 ♟fd5 17.♟xd5 ♟xd5 18.♟b3, Maric – Safranska, Jakarta 1993, 18...f5 19.♟d2 ♞a8 20.e4 fxe4 21.♟xe4 ♞f6♞ Black has the edge, mostly because of his beautiful knight on d5.



11...b5

In principle, Black would not mind the trade on f6: 11...e6 12.♟xf6 ♞xf6 13.♞d2 ♙h7 14.♞ac1 e5 15.d5 ♟d4 16.♟xd4 exd4 17.b3 ♞fe8 18.♞cd1 ♟f5 19.♞fe1 d3 20.e3 ♟xh3 21.♟d4 ♟g4 22.♞c1 ♟f5 23.♟f1 ♞g5 24.♟xf5 ♞xf5 25.♟g2 ♞e7= Kastanieda – A.Cherniak, Moscow 1995.

12.♟xf6

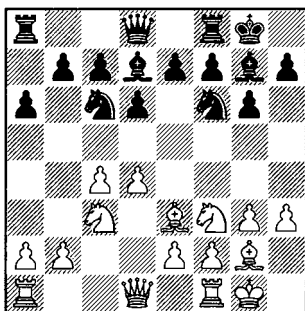
12.♞d2 bxc4 13.♟xf6 exf6 14.♟xh6 ♟xh6 15.♞xh6 ♞xb2 16.♟h4 ♟e7 17.♟d5 ♟xd5 18.♟xg6 fxg6 19.♞xg6 ♙h8 20.♞h6, draw, Timman – Shirov, Amsterdam 1995.

12...exf6 13.cxb5 ♞xb5 14.♞d2 g5 15.d5

15.♟e1 ♟e7♞ Kekki – Norri, Helsinki 1994.

15...♟e7 16.♟d4 ♞xd5!, Lau-tier – Shirov, Manila 1990 and here, if White had started gobbling material – 17.♟xd5 ♟xd5 18.g4 (The game continued with 18.♟f5 ♟xf5 19.♞xd5 ♟xh3, with an unclear position.), Black would still have sufficient compensation: 18...♞e8 19.♟f5 ♞a8 20.♞fd1 ♞e5 21.♟xg7 ♟xg7 22.♞ac1 h5↑

B) 9.♟e3



In general, it is not recommended to deploy the bishop in front of the pawns, but White plays often like that in this variation.

9...♞b8 10.♞c1

10.d5 ♟a5 11.♟d2 c5 12.dxc6 bxc6 13.b3 c5 14.♞c1 ♟c6 15.♟h2 ♟e8 16.♟de4 ♟c7 17.♞d2 ♞c8

3.♟f3 ♙g7 4.g3 0-0 5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7.♜c3 a6 8.h3 ♙d7

18.♟fd1 ♜d4 Zarkua – Ponkratov, Moscow 2004.

10.a4 b6 11.♞a3 ♜a5 12.b3 c5 13.♞c1 ♞c8 14.♞h2 ♙c6 15.d5 ♙b7 16.♙h6 e5 17.e4 ♜d7 18.♞g1 ♞d8 19.♜h2 f5 Abdel – Motylev, Ubeda 2001.

10.♜d2 e6 11.♜b3 b5 12.cxb5 axb5 13.♞d2 b4 14.♜d1 e5 15.d5 ♜e7 16.♙g5 ♞c8 17.♞h2 e4!? Huebner – Kengis, Moscow 1994.

10...b5 11.♜d2

11.c5 b4 (11...dxc5 12.d5±) 12.♜b1 e6! (with the idea ♜e7-f5; it also deserves attention for Black to try 12...d5!? 13.♜e5 ♜e4) 13.♙g5 (13.♙g5 ♞e7 and 14...e5) 13...h6 14.♙xf6 ♞xf6 15.cxd6 cxd6 16.e3 ♟fc8 17.♜bd2 (17.♞e2 ♞d8 18.♟fd1 ♞a5 17...♞e7 (17...♞d8 18.♜e4 ♞e7 19.♞e2 ♜a7!)) 18.♜c4 d5= Huebner – Bologan, Germany 1994.

11.cxb5 axb5 12.d5 ♜a5 13.b3 b4 14.♜a4 c5 15.dxc6 ♜xc6 16.♜d2 d5 17.♜c5 ♙e8 18.♜f3 e5 19.♞d2 ♞b5 Douven – Nijboer, Rotterdam 1990.

11...e6

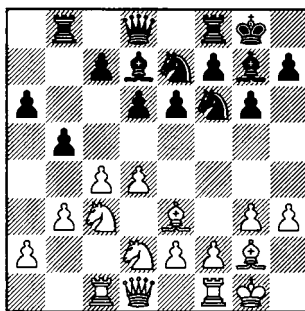
It is about equally strong for Black to continue with 11...e5 12.dxe5 ♜xe5 13.cxb5 axb5 14.b3 b4 15.♜ce4 ♜d5 16.♙d4 ♙e6 17.♜c4, Jakovljevic – Borisek, Bled 1999 and here he should just simplify the situation in the centre with: 17...♜xc4 18.bxc4 ♜f6=

12.b3

12.cxb5 axb5 13.♜ce4 ♜xe4 14.♜xe4 ♜e7 15.♙g5 f6 Papin – Bogner, Neustadt 2008.

12.d5 ♜e7 13.b3 (13.dxe6 fxe6 14.b3 ♞e8 15.♙g5 b4 16.♜ce4 ♜xe4 17.♜xe4 h6 18.♙xe7 ♞xe7 19.c5 d5 20.c6 ♙c8 21.♜c5 ♞b6 22.♜a4 ♞b5 23.h4 ♞h8 Pau-novic – Lanka, Faro 1997) 13...exd5 14.♜xd5 ♜fxd5 15.cxd5 ♜f5 16.♙f4 g5 17.e4 gxf4 18.exf5 ♙xf5 19.♞f3 ♙g5 20.gxf4 ♞f6 21.♟fe1 ♞be8 Korchnoi – McShane, Drammen 2004.

12...♜e7



Both opponents continue maneuvering inside their camps. Black has gradually built up a very flexible defensive line and he has done that scientifically. His pawns are in front and his pieces behind.

13.♙g5

13.f4?! ♜f5 14.♙f2 ♜h5 15.♜de4 b4 16.g4 ♜xf4 17.gxf5 exf5 18.♜g3 bxc3 Danilov – Nevednichy, Romania 1995.

13.♜f3 ♙c6 14.♙g5 b4 15.♜b1 ♜e4 16.♙xe7 ♞xe7 17.♞d3 f5 18.♜fd2 ♜xd2 19.♜xd2 ♙d7 20.e3 e5↑ Huebner – Shirov, Frankfurt 1996.

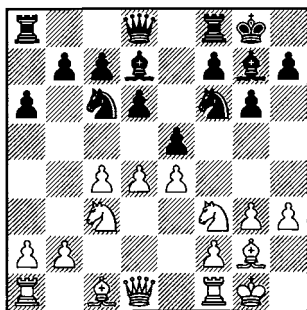
**13...b4 14.♖a4 h6 15.♙xf6
♙xf6 16.e3 ♙g7 17.♖c2 ♙xa4
18.bxa4 c5=** Adianto – Kengis,
Sydney 1991.

C) 9.e4

This is the most principled line for White. In fact, that was why he had played h2-h3 in the first place, to ensure the comfortable advance of his e-pawn.

9...e5!

Black plays strictly in the centre.



C1) 10.dxe5

C2) 10.♙e3

C3) 10.d5

C1) 10.dxe5

White usually exchanges here with the idea to obtain a slight positional advantage, depriving his opponent of counterplay.

C1a) 10...♖xe5

C1b) 10...dxe5

C1a) 10...♖xe5

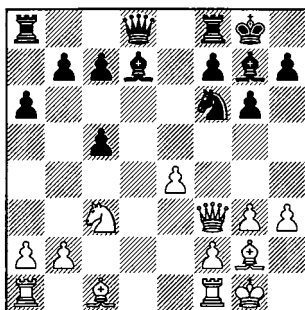
The simplifications are in principle in favour of Black.

11.c5

11.♖xe5 dxe5 12.♙e3 ♙e6 13.♖e2 (13.♖d5 c6 14.♖b6 ♖xd1 15.♖fxd1 ♖ad8 16.♙c5 ♖xd1 17.♖xd1 ♖e8 18.b4 ♙f8, draw, Kuljasevic – Lenic, Nova Gorica 2005) 13...c6 14.♖fd1 (14.♙c5 ♖e8 15.♖fd1 ♖c8 16.♖h2 b5 17.b3 h5 18.h4 ♙f8 19.♙xf8 ♖xf8 20.c5 a5 21.♖d6 ♖c7 22.♖ad1 ♖ed8 23.♙h3 – 23.♖d2 ♖xd6 24.cxd6 ♖b6 25.♖g1 ♖d8 – 23...♙xh3 24.♖xh3 ♖e8 – Roiz – Bologan, Kemer 2007) 14...♖a5 15.a3 ♖ad8 (15...♖fd8 16.♖dc1! ♖e8 17.b4± Mamedyarov – Fedorov, Abu Dhabi 2005) 16.♖dc1 ♖fe8 17.b4 ♖c7 18.♖d5 ♖b8 19.♖b6 ♖d7= After the trade of the knights, White has no chances of obtaining an edge.

11...♖xf3 12.♖xf3 dxc5

12...♙c6 13.cxd6 ♖xd6 14.♙f4 ♖e7 15.♖d5 ♙xd5 16.exd5 ♖h5 17.♖fel ♖d8 18.♙e3 ♙e5 19.♖e2 ♖g7 20.♙c5 ♖e8 21.♖ael ♙d6 22.♖xe8 ♖xe8 23.♙d4± Bauer – Lenic, Turin 2006.



13.♖d1

The game is more or less forced

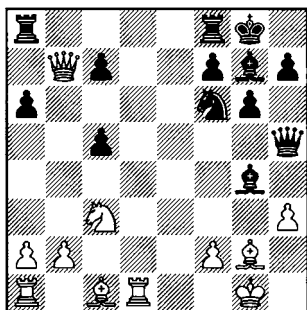
3. ♖f3 ♗g7 4.g3 0-0 5. ♗g2 d6 6.0-0 ♖c6 7. ♖c3 a6 8.h3 ♗d7

after 13.e5 ♗c6 (13... ♖e8 14. ♖d1 ♗c8 15. ♗xb7± Carlsen – Lahno, Lausanne 2004) 14. ♗d1 ♖d7 15. ♗xc6 bxc6 16.f4 ♗e7 17. ♖e4 f6 18. ♗b3 ♖h8±

13... ♗e7 14.e5 ♗xe5 15. ♗xb7 ♗h5

15... ♖ab8 16. ♗xa6 ♗h5 17. ♗f1 (17.g4 ♗xg4 18.hxg4 ♖xg4 19. ♖e4 ♗d4±) 17... ♗e6 18.a4±

16.g4 ♗xg4



Black sacrifices this piece just to maintain the initiative, because he cannot checkmate his opponent anyway.

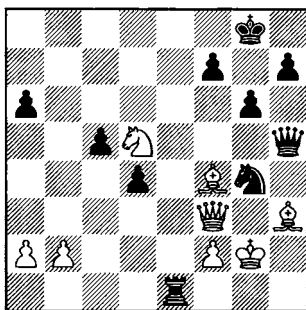
17.hxg4 ♖xg4 18. ♗f3

After 18. ♗d5 ♗e5 19. ♖e4, Black can exchange his two rooks for White's queen and after this his attack becomes really dangerous: 19... ♖ad8 20. ♗xd8 ♖xd8 21. ♖xd8 ♖g7 22. ♗d2 ♗xb2 23. ♖b1 ♗d4 24. ♖b3 ♖f6 25. ♖xf6 ♗d1 26. ♗f1 ♗xd2 27. ♖e8 ♖h6 28. ♖h3 ♖g5 29. ♖g3 ♖h6=

18... ♗d4 19. ♖xd4 cxd4 20. ♖d5 ♖ad8 21. ♗f4

21. ♗xg4 ♖xd5, with initiative for Black.

21...c5 22. ♖e1 ♖fe8 23. ♖xe8 ♖xe8 24. ♗h3 ♖e1 25. ♖g2, Fridman – Hirneise, Germany 2009 and here, Black could have settled the issue in this wonderfully played game with the quiet and exquisite move

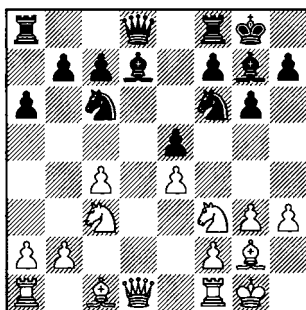


25...c4!!

White is incapable of capturing on g4 with anything.

26. ♗d6 f5 27. ♗g3 ♖f7±

C1b) 10...dxe5



11. ♗e3

After 11. ♖e1, Black manages to continue with the classical plan in the fight for the d4-square: 11...h6

(with the idea ♖h7-g5) 12.♔d5 (12.♙e3 ♙e6 13.♚a4 ♚c8; 12.♙d2 ♙e6 13.♔d5 ♔e8 14.♙c1 ♔d6 15.b3 ♔h7 16.♙c3 ♚d7 17.♔h2 ♙ae8, draw, Magerramov – Sakaev, Dubai 2000; 13...♔d7 14.♙c1 ♔c5 15. ♙c3 ♙d7 16.b4 ♔e6 17.♚d3 ♔cd4 18.♙xd4 exd4 19.e5 a5 20.b5 c6) 12...♔h7 (12...♔h7 13.♙d2 ♔e8 14. c5 ♙e6 15.♙c3 ♚d7 16.♔h2 ♙d8 17.♚a4 ♚c8 18.♙ad1 ♔f6 19.♔xe5± Ilincic – Kosanovic, Novi Sad 2000) 13.♙e3 ♔g5 (Black deflects one of the two enemy pieces protecting the d4-outpost.) 14.♔xg5 hxg5 15.♚b3 (15.♚d2 g4 16.hxg4 ♙xg4 17.f3 ♙e6 18.♙c5 ♙e8 19.♔f2 ♔d4± Cosma – Popovic, Subotica 2002) 15...♙b8 16.♙ad1 ♔d4 17. ♙xd4 exd4 18.e5 c6 19.♔f6 ♙xf6 20.exf6 ♚xf6 21.♚b6 ♙fe8 22.♙f1 ♙f5 23.♙xd4 ♙e2 24.g4 ♙e6= Bologan – Radjabov, Pamplona 2001.

11...♙e6 12.b3

12.♚a4 ♚c8 13.♔h2 ♙e8 (13... ♙d8 14.♙fd1 ♙xd1 15.♙xd1 h6 16.c5 ♚f8 17.♔d5 ♔e8 18.b4 ♙d8 19.b5 axb5 20.♚xb5 ♙b8 21.a4 f5 22.exf5 gxf5 23.♔e1±; 20...♙c8 21.♚c4, Bocharov – Bologan, Moscow 2004, 21...♙e6=) 14.♙fd1 h6 15.c5 ♙d8 16.b4 g5 17.♙xd8 ♚xd8 18.♙d1 ♚f8 19.b5 axb5 20.♚xb5 ♙b8= Mamedyarov – Bologan, Dagomys 2006.

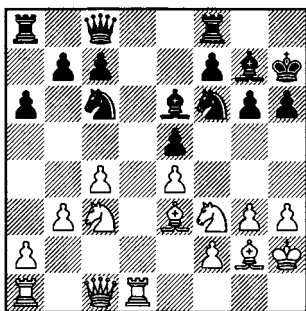
12...h6

12...♙e8 13.♚xd8 ♙exd8 14. ♔d5, draw, Stefansson – Shirov, Turin 2006.

13.♚c1 ♔h7

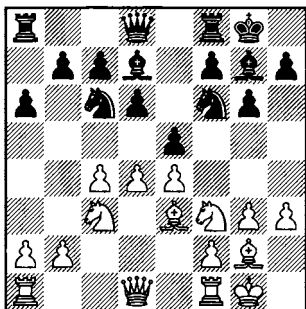
Black's attempt to play aggressively fails after 13...♚c8 14.♔h2 g5?! 15.♔e1 ♚d8, Nikolic – Bologan, Selfoss 2003 and here White had to respond with 16.♚b2! ♚d6 17.♙d1 (17.♔d5 ♔d4 18.♔d3 c5 19.♙xd4 cxd4 20.f4 gxf4 21.gxf4 ♔d7) 17...♔d4 18.f4 gxf4 19. gxf4± with an edge for him.

14.♙d1 ♚c8 15.♔h2



15...♙d8= It is essential for Black to exchange at least one of the rooks, because after this he should have no problems maintaining the balance, Tregubov – B.Socko, ACP Blitz 2004.

C2) 10.♙e3



3. ♖f3 ♙g7 4.g3 0-0 5. ♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7. ♜c3 a6 8.h3 ♙d7

White is following the classical principle: if you can hold the centre, you should better do it.

10...exd4 11. ♜xd4 ♙e8

Now, Black can combine his attack against the central squares with a pawn-offensive on the queenside.

12. ♙e1

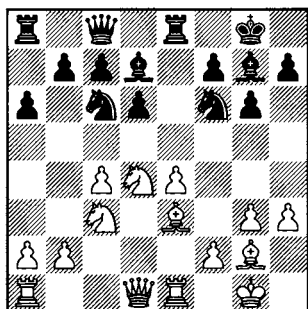
12. ♜d2?! ♜e5 13.b3? c5 14. ♜de2 ♙xh3!

12. ♜de2 ♜e5 13.b3 b5 14.f4 ♜c6 15. ♜c2 bxc4 16.bxc4 ♙b8 17. ♙ab1 ♜a5 18. ♜d3 ♙e6= Huebner – Efimenko, Germany 2004.

12. ♙c1 ♜e5!?N (12... ♜xd4 13. ♙xd4 c5 14. ♙e3 ♙c6 15.f3 b5 16.b3 b4 17. ♜e2± van Wely – Fedorov, Wijk aan Zee 2001) 13.b3 c5 14. ♜de2 ♙c6 15.f4?! ♜ed7 16. ♜xd6 ♜xe4 17. ♙xe4 ♙xe4 18. ♜xe4 ♙xe4 19. ♜f2 ♙e8 20. ♜d3 ♙e6=

12. ♜xc6 bxc6 13.c5 ♜c8! 14.g4 h5 15.g5 ♜h7 16. ♜h2 (16.h4 ♙h3 17.cxd6 cxd6 18.f3 ♙xg2 19. ♜xg2 ♙xc3 20.bxc3 d5 Stohl – Shirov, Batumi 1999) 16...d5 17. ♜d2 ♙b8 18. ♙ad1 ♙b4 19.a3 ♙c4 20.f4 d4= Marin – B.Socko, Batumi 1999.

12... ♜c8



Black's plan is simple: ♜e5, c5, b5.

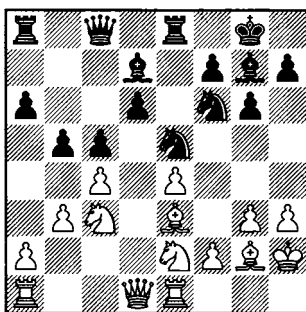
13. ♜h2

13. ♜xc6 bxc6 14.g4 h5 15.f3 hxg4 16.hxg4? Orr – Bologan, Moscow 1994. Having in mind the vulnerability of White's king, Black had to open the centre: 16... ♜b7 17. ♜c2 ♙e6 18. ♜e2 d5=

13... ♜e5 14.b3

14. ♙e2 c5 15. ♜c2 (15. ♜f3 ♜xf3 16. ♜xf3 ♙c6 17. ♙f4 ♙e6 18. ♜d3 ♜h5 19. ♙e3 b5= A.Fominyh – Loskutov, Sochi 2004) 15...b5 16.cxb5 axb5 17. ♜xb5 ♙xb5 18. ♜xb5 ♙b8=

14...c5 15. ♜de2 b5

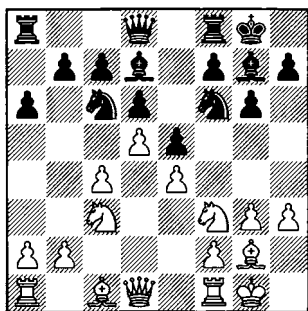


Black can afford to leave his central pawn without protection, because his threats are very dangerous.

16. ♜xd6, Marovic – Bobotsov, Zagreb 1964 (16.cxb5 axb5 17. ♜xd6 c4=; 16. ♙g5 bxc4 17. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 18. ♜d5 ♜d8 19.bxc4 ♜xc4 20. ♙c1 ♜b2 21. ♜xf6 ♜xf6 22. ♜d2 ♙ab8 23. ♜f4 ♜d4= A.Greenfeld – Gdanski, Belgrade 1999) **16... bxc4 17.bxc4 ♙e6 18. ♜xc5 ♙c6**

19. ♖a3 ♜xc4 20. ♖c1 ♜xe3 21.
 ♜xe3 ♜g4 22. hxc4 ♙xc3 23.
 ♜xc3 ♞xc3 24. ♜f4 ♙xg4=

C3) 10.d5



White has three possibilities here, but this is the most principled. On the other hand, Black's game is the easiest after it.

10... ♜d4

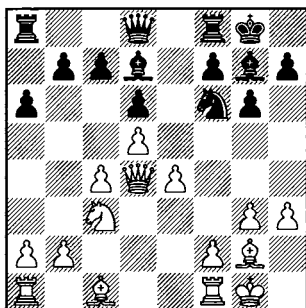
This knight becomes a sacrificial lamb.

11. ♜xd4

After 11. ♙e3 ♜xf3 12. ♜xf3 ♖c8, it is not advisable for White to protect his pawn with 13. ♜h2, because of 13... ♜g4!?. It is stronger for him to play 13. ♙g5, but Black can counter that with a pawn-sacrifice 13... ♜h5 14. g4 (Otherwise, Black will push f7-f5.) 14... ♜f4 15. ♙xf4 exf4 16. ♜xf4 b5, obtaining excellent compensation, thanks to his bishop-pair and the control over the dark-squares. For example: 17. c5 b4 18. ♜d1 ♙b5 19. ♙e1 ♜d8 20. c6 ♙e5 21. ♜d2 ♜f6 22. g5 ♜f4 23. ♜xf4 ♙xf4= Vijayalakshmi – Saravanan, Nagpur 2002.

11... exd4 12. ♜xd4

12. ♜e2, S.Smirnov – Dukaczewski, Brno 1998, 12... ♙e8 13. ♜d3 ♖c8 14. ♜h2 b5 15. b3 bxc4 16. bxc4 c5 17. dxc6 ♙xc6 18. f3 ♜d7 19. ♜xd4 ♜e5 20. ♜e2 ♙d7=



12... ♜c8!

Black has compensation due to the inclusion of this move.

13.h4

After this pawn-advance, Black's knight will have a permanent base on the squares e5-g4, because White's f-pawn cannot control both of them.

We will have a look at the alternatives for White:

13. e5 ♜h5 14. ♜h2 (14. ♜h4 ♙xe5=) 14... ♙xe5 15. ♜d1, Von Hartlieb – Wolter, Muenster 1992, 15... b5=

He can regain his pawn of course, but he obtains no advantage anyway: 13. ♙g5 ♜h5 14. ♜d2 ♙xh3 15. ♙h6 ♙xh6 16. ♜xh6 ♜g4 17. ♙ae1 ♙ae8 18. ♙xh3 ♜xh3 19. ♙e2 ♜g4 20. ♙fe1 ♙e5 21. ♙e3 f5= Malakhov – Bologan, Selfoss 2003.

13... ♜g4 14. ♜d3

3. ♖f3 ♗g7 4. g3 0-0 5. ♗g2 d6 6. 0-0 ♜c6 7. ♜c3 a6 8. h3 ♗d7

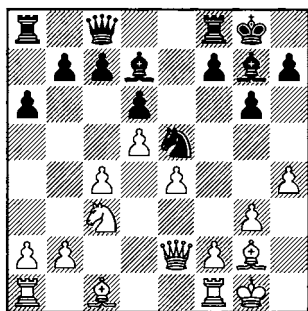
White impedes his opponent to advance b7-b5.

He has also tried two other retreats of his queen:

14. ♖d2 b5 15. cxb5 (15. ♖e2 ♜e5 – see 14. ♖d3 ♜e5 15. ♖e2 b5) 15... axb5 16. ♜e2 ♖b7 17. ♖c2 b4 18. ♗f4 ♖xa2 19. ♖xa2 b3 20. ♖a7 ♖xa7 21. ♖xb3 ♖b8 22. ♖a3 ♖b6 23. b4 h5 24. ♗f3 ♖xb4 25. ♖xb4 ♖xb4 26. ♖c1 ♖b7 27. ♜g2 ♜e5 28. ♗xe5 ♗xe5 An. Kharitonov – Bologan, Kstovo 1997.

14. ♖d1 b5 15. cxb5 (15. ♖b3 ♖b8 16. cxb5 axb5 17. ♜e2 b4; 15. ♜e2 bxc4 16. ♖c2 ♜e5 17. ♗d2 f5 18. ♜f4 fxe4 19. ♖xe4 ♗f5 20. ♖e3 ♜d3 Khismatullin – Loskutov, Serpukhov 2003) 15... axb5 16. ♜e2 ♖a6 (16... ♖a4 17. f3 ♜e5 18. b3 ♖a6 19. ♗e3 f5 20. f4 ♜g4 21. ♗d4 Ne-verov – Bologan, Moscow 2004) 17. ♜d4 ♖b6 18. ♜c6 b4 19. ♖e2 ♗xc6 20. dxc6 ♜e5, with an equal position.

14... ♜e5 15. ♖e2



15... b5!

Black continues to open files and diagonals for his long-range

pieces and he would not mind sacrificing a second pawn.

16. cxb5 axb5 17. ♜xb5

17. ♗f4 b4 18. ♗xe5 ♗xe5 19. ♜d1 ♖b7 20. ♜e3 ♗b5 21. ♜c4 ♖a6 22. ♖ac1 ♖xa2 23. f4 ♗d4 24. ♜h2 ♗xc4 25. ♖xc4 ♖xb2 26. ♖xb2 ♗xb2 27. ♖xb4 ♗a3 28. ♖c4 ♗c5 = Wojtkiewicz – Bologan, Bastia 1999.

17... ♖a6 18. ♜c3 ♖xe2 19. ♜xe2 ♖fb8

In my notebook, written under the dictation of Zigurds Lanka, this position was evaluated as "Black has compensation." Tournament practice confirmed that convincingly.

20. ♜f4!

20. ♜c3 ♜d3 21. a4 ♜xb2 22. ♗xb2 ♖xb2 23. ♖a3 ♖c2 24. ♜d1 ♖xa4 25. ♖xa4 ♗xa4 26. ♜e3 ♖a2 27. ♖c1 ♖a1 28. ♖xa1 ♗xa1 29. f4 h5 30. ♜f2 ♗d4 31. ♜f3 ♜g7 32. ♗f1, draw, S. Atalik – Fedorov, Ohrid 2001.

20... ♜c4 21. ♜d3 ♗a4

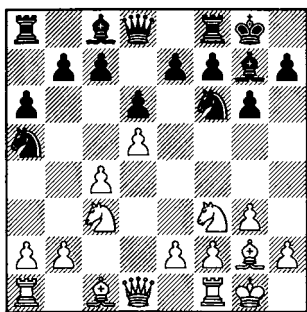
21... ♗b5 22. ♖e1 (22. ♖d1? ♗a4 23. ♖f1 ♜a3 24. ♗f4 ♗c2 25. ♜e1 ♗xb2 26. ♜xc2 ♜xc2 27. ♖ab1, Fridman – Bologan, Santo Domingo 2002, 27... ♖xa2 =) 22... ♗a4 23. f3 (23. e5 ♜xe5 24. ♜xe5 ♗xe5 25. ♖e2 ♗b3 26. a3 ♗a4 27. ♖b1 ♗b5 28. ♖d2 ♖b7 = Pigusov – Bologan, Evry 2004) 23... ♗c2 24. ♗f1 ♗xd3 25. ♗xd3 ♜xb2 26. ♗xb2 ♖xb2 27. ♖ab1 ♖bxa2 =

22. f3 ♗c2 23. ♜e1 ♗b3

All of the five Black's pieces are concentrated against the helpless victims on a2 and b2. The maximum that White can dream about is a draw.

Chapter 30

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘f3 ♙g7 4.g3 0–0
5.♙g2 d6 6.0–0 ♘c6 7.♘c3 a6 8.d5
♘a5



Black has only one real problem in the Yugoslavian variation and this is his knight on a5. In general, his game looks easy – he advances b5 and his dark-squared bishop is very active.

A) 9.b3

B) 9.♘d2

9.♗d3 c5 10.e4 e6 (The other idea for Black is connected with advancing b5: 10...♗b8 11.♘d2 b5 12.♗b1 bxc4 13.♘xc4 ♘xc4 14.♗xc4 a5 and his position is even preferable.) 11.h3 (11.e5 dxe5 12.♘xe5 exd5 13.cxd5 ♗e8! 14.♗e1 ♘g4 15.♘f3 ♗xe1 16.♘xe1 ♙f5↑) 11...exd5 12.cxd5 b5 13.♙f4 b4 14.♘d1 (14.♘b1 c4 15.♗c2 ♘xe4

16.♗xe4 ♙xb2 17.♘bd2 ♙f5) 14...♗e8 15.♗e1 c4 16.♗c2 ♗a7!= followed by ♗ae7, Rossetto – Tal, Portoroz 1958.

A) 9.b3

White wishes sometimes to avoid entering the complications in the Yugoslavian variation (9.♘d2) and he plays this modestly looking move. Black should remain on the alert however, because the move b3 is quite reliable from the positional point of view. It is based on the tactical possibility that White can counter the attractive strike 9...♘xd5, with 10.♘xd5 ♙xa1 (White is better after 10...c6 11.♘d4 cxd5 12.cxd5 e5 13.♘c2 f5 14.♙b2 ♙d7 15.♗c1, Riediger – Schenk, Regensburg 1996.) 11.♙d2 with a double attack against the knight on a5 and the bishop on a1. Even after the most resilient response for Black 11...♘xc4 (but not 11...c6 12.♙xa5 ♗xa5 13.♘xe7 ♘g7 14.♗xa1 f6 15.♘xc8 ♗axc8 16.♗d1 Ilincic – Pesotsky, Budapest 2007) 12.bxc4 ♙g7 13.♙g5 ♗e8 14.♗b3 h6 15.♙d2 e6 16.♘e3 ♗b8 17.h4, White seizes

3.♟f3 ♖g7 4.g3 0-0 5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7.♜c3 a6 8.d5 ♜a5

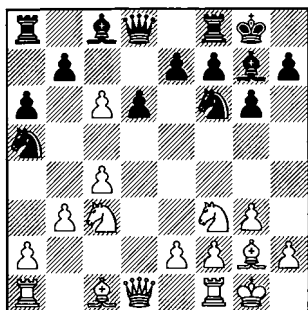
the initiative for long, Barsov – Berbatov, Villa de Roquetas 2008.

A1) 9...c5

A2) 9...♜b8

A1) 9...c5 10.dxc6

After 10.♙b2 ♜b8 11.♞c2 b5 12.♜d2, or 11.♜d2 b5 12.♞c2, the game transposes to the main line of the Yugoslavian variation.



10...bxc6

This move is more ambitious than the simple ♜xc6. Black wishes to obtain pawn-majority in the centre and to open the b-file for his rook. White has the spectacular positional pawn-sacrifice c4-c5, or (if Black plays c5) he can continue with ♜d5.

It is obvious that Black cannot equalize with 10...♜xc6 11.♙b2 ♞a5 12.♜d5 (12.♞c1 ♙f5 13.♞d1 ♞ac8 14.♜d5 ♜xd5 15.♙xg7 ♙xg7 16.♞xd5 ♞c7 17.c5 ♞fd8 18.cxd6 ♞xd6= Ilincic – Kislik, Budapest 2008) 12...♜xd5 13.♙xg7 ♜c3! (Black avoids cxd5, thanks to this intermediate move and he should

equalize gradually.) 14.♙xc3 ♞xc3 15.♞c1 ♞a5 16.♞d2 ♞xd2 17.♜xd2 ♜d4 18.♞fel ♞b8 19.c5 dxc5 20.♞xc5 ♞d8 21.e3 ♜e6 22.♞c2 b5 23.b4 ♙b7= Dobosz – Lanka, Austria 2009.

11.♙b2

White places his bishop on d2 sometimes – 11.♙d2, with the idea to avoid the juxtaposition on the long diagonal. There may follow: 11...c5 12.♞c1 (The other possible set-up for White is connected with the idea to trade the dark-squared bishops: 12.♞c1 ♞e8 13.♜e5 ♙b7 14.♙xb7 ♜xb7 15.♜d3 ♜a5 16.♞d1 ♜c6 17.♙h6 ♙h8 18.f3, Matlak – Toczek, Lubniewice 1998, 18...♜d7 19.♙g2 ♞a5 20.♙d2 ♞c7=; 13.♙h6 ♙h8 14.♜g5, Vaulin – Bratchenko, St. Petersburg 1997, 14...♞b8 15.♞f4 ♙b7 16.♜d5 (16.♙d5 ♙xd5 17.cxd5 ♞b4 18.e4 c4±) 16...♜c6=, followed by ♜d4) 12...♙b7 13.♜d5 ♜c6 14.♙c3 ♜xd5 15.cxd5 (15.♙xg7 ♙xg7 16.♞xd5 ♞a5±) 15...♜b4 16.♙xg7?! (16.♙xb4=) 16...♙xg7 17.♞d2 ♜xd5 18.♜g5 e6 Roiz – Bologan, Dresden 2007.

11.♙g5 c5 12.♞d2 ♙b7 13.♞ac1 ♞e8 14.♞fd1 ♜c6 15.♜e1 ♞b8 16.♜d3 ♜d4 17.♙xb7 ♞xb7 18.♜e1, Olafsson – Avrukh, Istanbul 2003, 18...♜g4!±

11...♞b8 12.♞d2

It looks very smart for White to try here 12.♞c1 (with the idea to counter c5 with ♜d5) 12...c5 13.♜d5 (13.♞d1 ♙d7 14.♜d5 ♜xd5 15.♙xg7 ♙xg7 16.♞xd5 ♜c6 17.h4

f6= Semerene – Popovic, Turin 2006) 13...♟xd5 (13...e6 14.♟xf6 ♟xf6, Fridman – Fleish, Rishon le Zion 1998, 15.♟xf6 ♟xf6 16.♟d2 ♟b7 17.♟g5±) 14.♟xg7 ♟xg7 15. cxd5 ♟b6 16.♟e3 ♟e8 17.♟ac1 ♟b4± White's position maintains some potential, because he can improve the placement of his knight.

12...c5 13.♟g5

13.♟ad1 ♟b7 14.♟a1 ♟c6 15. ♟d5, Xu Jun – Granda Zuniga, Dubai 1986, 15...♟e4 16.♟e3 ♟xa1 17.♟xa1 f5±

13...h6

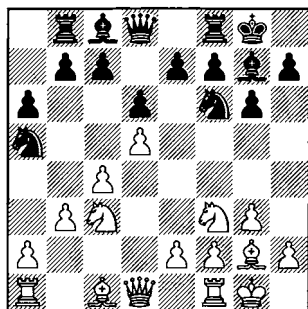
White's position is preferable after 13...♟b7 14.♟d5.

14.♟h3

14.♟ge4 ♟b7 15.♟xf6 ♟xf6 16.♟xb7 ♟xb7 17.♟ab1 ♟h7 18.♟d5 ♟xb2 19.♟xb2 ♟c6=

14...♟b7 15.♟d5, draw, Kirov – Suetin, Polanica Zdroj 1974, 15... ♟xd5 16.♟xd5 ♟xd5 17.♟xg7 ♟xg7 18. cxd5 ♟b6 19. ♟c3 ♟h7 20.♟ac1 ♟fc8= Black is ready to advance c4, while White has no objects to attack on the kingside.

A2) 9...♟b8



This move is played in the spirit of the variation with 8.b3.

10.♟d2

10.♟c2 c5 11.♟b2 b5 12.♟d2 – see variation B2b.

If White tries to prevent b7-b5, by playing 10.♟d4, then Black can opt for advancing c7-c5: 10...♟d7 11.♟b2 (11.♟a3 c5 12.dxc6 ♟xc6 13.♟xc6 ♟xc6) 11...c5 12.dxc6 bxc6 13.♟d2 c5 14.♟f3 ♟c6 15. ♟d3 ♟e4 and he has solved all his problems.

10.♟b2 b5 11.cxb5 axb5 12.♟c1 (12.♟d4 b4 – see Chapter 31, variation C) 12...b4 13.♟a4 ♟b7 (It would be bad for Black to choose here 13...e6, because White would exert powerful pressure along the c and d-files: 14.dxe6 fxe6?! – Black should better play 14...♟xe6 15.♟d4 ♟d7 16.♟c6 ♟xc6 17.♟xc6 ♟e8 18.e3 ♟xc6 19.♟xc6 ♟d7 20.♟c2± – 15.♟c2 c5 16.♟fd1 ♟b7 17.♟e5 ♟a5 18.♟d3 ♟e8 19.♟xc5 ♟b7, Feuerstein – Fischer, New York 1956, 20.♟h3!+–) 14.♟e1 (14.e4 ♟xe4 15.♟xg7 ♟xg7 16.♟d4 ♟f6 17.♟xb4 c5=) 14...e6, Blagojevic – Nevednichy, Herceg Novi 2001, 15.e4 ♟e8 16.♟d2 c5= with equality.

10...c5 11.dxc6

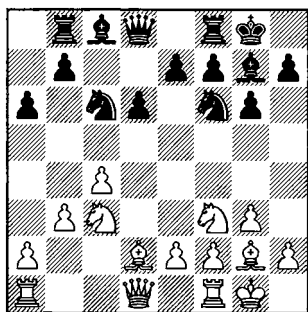
11.a4 e6 (11...e5 12.dxe6 – see 11...e6; 12.♟e1 b6 13.♟d3 ♟h5=) 12.dxe6 ♟xe6 (12...fxe6 13.♟f4 ♟e8 14.♟c1 b6 15.♟g5 h6 16.♟ge4 e5 17.♟e3 ♟e6 18.♟b1 ♟h7 19.♟d2 ♟b7 20.♟fd1 ♟d7, Keene – Liberson, Beer-Sheva 1978, 21.h4±) 13. ♟g5 ♟f5 14.♟h3 ♟e8 15.♟f4 ♟c6

3.♟f3 ♖g7 4.g3 0-0 5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7.♜c3 a6 8.d5 ♜a5

16.♞c1 ♜b4 17.♞e1 ♞e7 18.h3 h5
19.e4 ♙d7 20.♙e3 ♙c6 21.♞d2 ♞f8
22.♜d3 ♜xd3 23.♞xd3 ♞e6 24.
♞cd1 ♞ee8 25.♜d5 ♞bc8 26.♙d2
♙xd5 27.exd5 ♞cd8 28.f4 ♜d7=
Rausis – Tkachiev, France 2005.

11.♞e1 b5 12.♜d1 (12.e4 bxc4
13.♜a4 ♜b7 14.bxc4 ♙d7 15.♜c3
♜a5 16.♞e2 ♜h5) 12...b4 13.♞c1
e6 14.dxe6 fxe6 15.e4 ♜c6 16.♙f4
♜g4 17.♞d2 ♜ge5 18.♜xe5 dxe5
19.♞xd8 ♞xd8 20.♙g5 ♞d7 21.♜b2
♜d4 22.♞cd1 ♙b7 23.♞d2 ♞c8
24.♞fd1 a5 25.♜f1, Aseev – Inar-
kiev, Elista 2001, 25...h6 26.♙e3
g5 27.♜d3 g4 28.h3 h5=

11...♜xc6



12.♞c1

12.♞c1, Andersson – Ribli, Bu-
gojno 1984, 12...♙d7!? 13.♙h6 b5
14.♙xg7 ♜xg7 15.♜d5 e5!? 16.♞d1
bxc4 17.♞xc4 ♞b5 18.♜xf6 ♞xf6
19.e4 ♞b6= Black protects easily
his weaknesses and his knight
eyes already the d4-outpost.

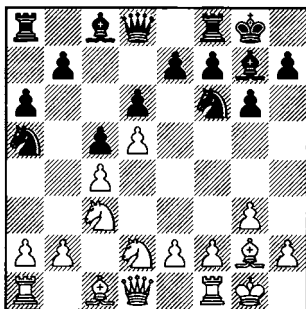
12...♙f5 13.♜e1

13.♜d5 ♙e4 14.♜xf6 ♙xf6 15.
♙c3 ♙xc3 16.♞xc3 d5, draw, Mar-
tinovic – Pavlovic, Cetinje 1992.

13.♜h4 ♙d7 14.h3 ♞c8 15.♜h2
b5 16.♜d5 (16.cxb5 axb5 17.e4
♞a6) 16...bxc4 17.♞xc4 ♜xd5
18.♙xd5 ♞b5.

**13...♞d7 14.♜d3 ♙h3 15.
♙xh3 ♞xh3 16.♜f4 ♞d7 17.
♜fd5 ♜xd5 (17...b5 18.♜xf6 ♙xf6
19. cxb5 axb5 20.♜d5) 18.♜xd5
e6 19.♜b6**, Matamoros – Bolo-
gan, Khanty-Mansyisk 2005. I
had to continue here with **19...
♞c7 20.♙e3 ♜e7 21.c5 dxc5
22.♙xc5 ♞fd8=** with equal pros-
pects.

B) 9.♜d2 c5



White's main line now is –
10.♞c2 (variation **B2**), but he has
a serious alternative in **10.♞b1**
(variation **B1**).

10.e4 ♞b8 11.a4 e6 12.dxe6
♙xe6 13.b3 ♜g4 14.♞c2 ♜c6 15.
♙b2 ♜d4 16.♞d1 ♜e5 17.♜e2 ♜ec6
18.♜xd4 ♜xd4 19.♞a2 b5 Stahl-
berg – Larsen, Wageningen 1957.

In case of 10.a3, Black man-
ages to create pressure against
the c4-square 10...♜d7 11.♞c2 (or
11.♞a2 ♜e5 12.b3 ♞b8) 11...♜e5

12.♟d1 b5= Cuellar – Yanofsky, Amsterdam 1954.

After 10.dxc6 ♟xc6, White's knight on d2 seems to be awkwardly placed.

B1) 10.♟b1 ♟f5

Black maims his opponent's pawn to the centre, so that White cannot use later this square for his cavalry.

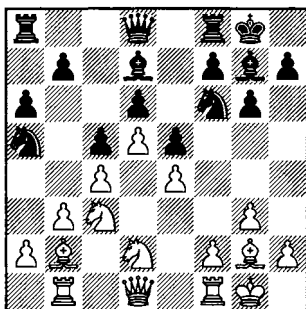
11.e4 ♟d7 12.b3

His queen is not well placed on e2 – 12.♟e2, because after 12...e6 13.a3 exd5 14.cxd5 ♟c7 15.b3 b5, Black's bishop can attack it. For example: 16.♟d1, Hulak – Fedorov, Pula 2001 and here Black had to play immediately 16...c4!, so that after 17.bxc4, he would have the resource 17...♟ac8=

12...e5 13.♟b2

13.♟c2 b5 (13...h5 14.h3 h4 15.g4 ♟h7 16.♟d1 b5 17.♟e3 ♟h6 18.♟f3 ♟b8 19.♟d2 ♟b7 20.♟e1 b4 21.♟d3 a5 22.a3 bxa3 23.♟a1 ♟g5 24.♟xa3± Aronian – Fedorov, Warsaw 2005) 14.♟d1 (14.♟b2 ♟h6 – see 13.♟b2. Black must calculate a very sharp semi-forced line after: 14.cxb5 axb5 15.b4 cxb4 16.♟xb4 ♟c7 17.♟b2 ♟c5, since he loses a pawn: 18.♟xb5 ♟ab8 19.a4 ♟fc8 20.♟b1 – 20.h3 ♟h6 – 20...♟c4 21.♟b3, Hulak – Fedorov, Pula 2001. Alexey had here two possibilities to equalize: 21...♟a5 22.♟a3 ♟xb5 23.♟xb5 ♟xb5 24.axb5 ♟xb5 25.♟g5 ♟c4 26.♟f3 ♟d7=, as well as 21...♟g4!? 22.h3 ♟xf2 23.♟xf2 ♟a5 24.♟c3 ♟xc3

25.♟1xc3 ♟xc3 26.♟xc3 ♟xb4=) 14...♟h6 (Black's attack on the kingside backfires after 14...h5 15.f4 exf4 16.gxf4 ♟g4, because White's knight is already on d1 and he can simply play 17.♟b2±) 15.♟e3 (15.♟d3 bxc4 16.bxc4 ♟c7 17.♟e3 ♟g4 18.♟xg4 ♟xg4=) 15...♟xe3 (15...♟g4 16.♟xg4 ♟xg4 17.♟b2 bxc4 18.♟xc4 ♟xc4 19.bxc4 ♟d7 20.f4 f6 21.♟c3 ♟c7±) 16.fxe3 b4 17.♟f3 ♟b7 18.a4 ♟e7 19.♟d2, draw, Aronian – Inarkiev, Khanty-Mansyisk 2007.



B1a) 13...h5

B1b) 13...b5

B1a) 13...h5!?

This provocative move is played with the idea to weaken White's kingside, in order to minimize the effect of his planned pawn-advance f4.

14.♟c2

But not 14.f4, because of 14...exf4 15.gxf4 ♟g4↑

14.♟e2 h4 15.♟d1 ♟h6 16.♟e3 ♟b8 17.f4 h3 18.♟h1 exf4 19.♟xf4 ♟xf4 20.gxf4 ♟h5 21.♟f3 ♟h4

3.♟f3 ♖g7 4.g3 0-0 5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7.♜c3 a6 8.d5 ♜a5

22.♟f1 ♖be8 23.♙c3 b6 24.f5 ♙h7
25.fxg6 fxg6 26.♟xf8 ♖g5 27.♜g2
♟xf8 28.♟xf8 ♜g7 29.♟f7 hxg2
30.♟xg7 ♙h6—+ Grigoriadis – Er-
dogdu, Athens 2006.

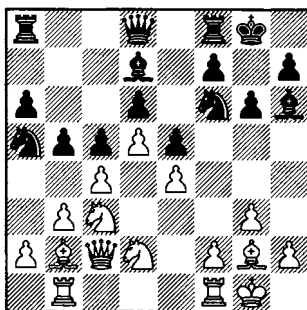
After 14.h3 h4 15.g4!? ♙h6,
White loses his control over the
dark squares: 16.♜f3 ♜h7=

Alexey Fedorov reacted in an
interesting fashion to the move
14.a3. He wished to avoid direct
confrontation on the queenside
and simply to improve the place-
ment of his knight: 14...b6 15.b4
♜b7 16.♟e2 h4 17.♜d1 cxb4 18.
axb4 a5 (This is a typical way of
obtaining a good square for the
knight.) 19.♙a3 axb4 20.♙xb4 ♜c5
21.♜c3 ♙h6 22.♜b5 ♟e7 23.♜b3
♙g4 24.♟c2 h3 25.♙h1 ♜h5, Ara
Minasian – Fedorov, Moscow
2004, with powerful initiative for
Black.

14...h4 15.♟be1, Dizdar –
Smirin, Rabac 2004, **15...b5**
16.♜e2 ♜g4! Black forces his op-
ponent to postpone f4 for a move
and he is now prepared much bet-
ter for it. (It is weaker for him to
play 16...♙h6 17.f4 hxg3 18.hxg3
♜g4 19.♟c3 b4 20.♟d3 ♜b7 21.♜f3
♟e7 22.♙h3±) **17.h3** (17.♟d3 bxc4
18.bxc4 ♖b8 19.♙c3 h3 20.♙h1
f5 21.f4 ♖b4 22.♙f3 exf4 23.♜xf4
fxe4 24.♜xe4 ♙xc3 25.♟xc3 ♙xc4
26.♟a1±; 17...hxg3 18.hxg3 ♟g5=.
This transfer of Black's queen is
much rather prophylactic against
f2-f4, than an attempt to attack
on the kingside.) **17...♜h6 18.f4**
(After 18.g4 g5 19.♙c3 b4 20.♙b2

♜b7=, it is more or less over.) **18...
hxg3 19.fxe5 ♙xe5 20.♙xe5
dxg3 21.♜xg3 ♟g5 22.♙f2 ♜b7
23.♜f3 ♟e7**∞ I believe Black's
position is preferable at the end of
this variation.

B1b) 13...b5N 14.♟c2 ♙h6!



Black increases his pressure
against the c4-pawn and he forces
his opponent to begin active ac-
tions.

15.f4

15.♜d1 bxc4 16.♜xc4 ♜xc4
17.bxc4 ♖b8 (After the exchange
of the bad knight on a5, Black has
nothing to worry about.) 18.f4
exf4 19.gxf4 ♜h5±

15.♜e2 bxc4 16.♜xc4 ♜xc4 17.
bxc4 ♖b8 18.f4 ♜g4 19.♟c3 ♙g7
20.h3 ♙xb2! (White must be con-
stantly on the alert about this tac-
tical strike.) 21.♟xb2 ♜e3 22.♟fc1
exf4 23.♟b6 ♟e7

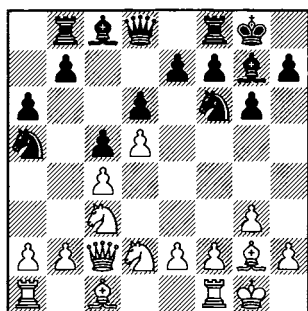
**15...exf4 16.♜e2 bxc4 17.
bxc4 f3 18.♟xf3**

18.♜f3 ♜xe4 19.♟xe4 ♙f5 20.
♟h4 ♟xh4 21.♜xh4 ♙xb1 22.♟xb1
♟ab8±

18.♙xf3 ♖xd2 19.♗xd2 ♜xc4±

18...♖g4 19.♜f4 ♜e5 20.♟f2 ♜b8= Black controls reliably the e5-square and White can hardly organize any effective pressure against it.

B2) 10.♗c2 ♜b8



11.b3

In answer to 11.a3, the young Russian GM Sanan Sjugirov demonstrated a very interesting idea connected with a pawn-sacrifice: 11...b5 12.cxb5 c4!? 13.a4 ♜d7 14.♜f3 ♜c5 15.♙e3 ♜ab3 16.♞a3 ♙f5 17.♗d1 axb5 18.axb5 ♙d7 19. ♞a2 ♙xb5 20.♜xb5 ♞xb5± Shimanov – Sjugirov, St. Petersburg 2008.

11.♞b1 b5 12.b3 (12.cxb5 axb5 13.b4 cxb4 14.♞xb4 ♗c7 15.♗d3 ♙a6 16.♙a3 ♞fc8 17.♞c1 ♗a7± Zhumabaev – Fedorov, New Delhi 2006) 12...h5 13.♙b2 h4 14.♜ce4 ♜xe4 15.♙xe4 ♙xb2 16.♞xb2 e5 17.dxe6 ♙xe6 18.cxb5 axb5 19.b4 ♜c4, draw, Braun – Svidler, Germany 2008.

11...b5

B2a) 12.♞b1

B2b) 12.♙b2

12.cxb5 axb5 13.♙b2 e5 14.e4 ♖g4 15.h3 ♜h6 16.♙h2 f5 17.♜e2 fxe4 18.♜xe4 ♜f5± Brkic – Rashkovsky, Zadar 2000.

B2a) 12.♞b1 e5!?

In principle, Black can also try to simplify the position: 12... bxc4 13.bxc4 ♞xb1 14.♜cxb1 (14. ♗xb1 ♙d7 15.♗c2 ♗c7 16.♙b2 ♞b8 17.♞b1 ♖g4 18.♜d1 ♙xb2 19.♜xb2 e5± Rogozenko – Iordachescu, Bucharest 1998) 14...♙d7 15.♜c3 (15.♙b2 ♗c7 16.♙c3 ♞b8 17.♜a3 ♜e8 18.♞b1 ♙xc3 19.♗xc3 ♞xb1 20.♜axb1 ♗b6 and if we take into account the presence of just a few pieces on the board and the fact that Black has no obvious weaknesses, the position can be evaluated as equal, Zijlstra – van der Kooij, corr. 1991) 15...♗c7 16.♙a3 ♞b8 17.h3 ♙e8= Lehmann – Cobo Arteaga, Havana 1965.

13.♙b2

13.e4 ♙d7 14.♜d1 ♖g4 15.f3 ♜h6 16.♜f2 f5±, draw, Smyslov – Byrne, Monaco 1968.

13.dxe6 ♙xe6 14.♜d5 (14.cxb5 axb5 15.b4 cxb4 16.♞xb4 ♗c7± Bogdan – Ardeleanu, Bucharest 1992) 14...bxc4 15.bxc4 ♞xb1 16.♜xb1 ♜xd5 17.cxd5 ♙d7 18.♙b2 ♙xb2 19.♗xb2 ♞e8 20.e3 ♙b5 21.♞c1 ♜c4 22.♗c3 ♜e5 23.♜d2 h5± Seeman – Sepp, Tallinn 2003.

It is still not too late for White

3.♟f3 ♖g7 4.g3 0-0 5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7.♜c3 a6 8.d5 ♜a5

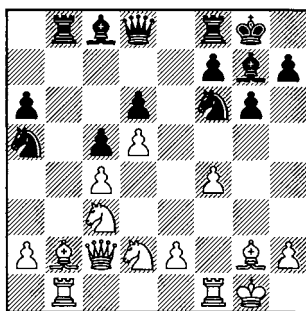
to capture on b5 – 13.cxb5 axb5 and start attacking his opponent's b-pawn: 14.b4 cxb4 15.♞xb4. Black can however, cope with the task: 15...♙d7 16.♞d3 (16.♞b1 ♞e8 17.♙a3 ♞b6 18.e3 ♞b8 19.♞d3 ♜e8 20.♞fb1 ♜c7 21.♞4b2 f5± Sokolowski – Dukaczewski, Koszalin 2006; 16.♙a3 ♜e8 17.♞fb1 ♞c8 18.e4 ♞c7 19.♙b2 ♞c5 20.♙a1 f5 21.♞d1 f4 22.♞e2 fxc3 23.hxc3 ♙h6 24.♜f1 ♜c4∞ Rogozenko – Khalifman, Bad Wiessee 1998) 16...♜b7 (Black cannot protect his pawn anyway, therefore it is better for him to improve the placement of his knight. 16...♜e8 17.♜xb5 ♜c7 18.a4 ♜a6 19.♞b1 ♜c5 20.♞c2± Sorokin – Al Sayed, Calcutta 2002) 17.♞b1 ♜c5 18.♜xb5 ♙g4 (It is amazing, but Black can hold the position with this resource. It would be weaker for him to opt for 18...♙f5 19.e4 ♜xd5 20.exf5 ♜xb4 21.♞xb4 ♜d3 22.♞c4 ♜xc1 23.♞xc1 ♞a5 24.♜c3 ♞fc8 25.♜b3 ♞a3 26.♞f1, Vukic – Filipovic, Biel 1989, 26...gxf5 27.♜b5 ♞xc1 28.♜xa3 ♞xf1 29.♜xf1 e4 30.♜c4±) 19.♞e1 (19.f3 ♙f5 20.e4 ♜xd5 21.♞b2 ♞xb5!) 19...e4! 20.♜c3 e3! (This is the only way for Black to obtain compensation – to sacrifice paradoxically a second pawn!) 21.fxe3 ♞c7 22.♙a3 ♙f5 23.e4 (Black is again better after 23.♞c1 ♞xb4 24.♙xb4 ♜a6 25.♙a3 ♞c8.) 23...♞a7 24.exf5 ♜d3 25.e3 ♜xe1.

13...♙h6

13...♜h5 14.e3 f5 15.f4 exf4 16.

gxf4 (16.exf4 bxc4 17.bxc4 ♙d7 18.♙f3 ♙d4 19.♙g2, Lengyel – I. Polgar, Budapest 1986, 19...♞e8=, followed by ♜f6 with equality) 16...♞e8=

14.f4 bxc4 15.bxc4 exf4 16.gxf4 ♙g7



17.♙a1

White must protect this bishop; otherwise, Black might be ready to give up even a rook for it: 17.h3 ♜h5 18.♜ce4 ♞xb2! 19.♞xb2, Pereyra – Nemeth, Bratislava 1993, 19...f5 20.♜c3 ♙d4 21.♜h2 ♞h4.

17.♜d1 ♞xb2 18.♞xb2 ♜g4 19.h3 ♙d4 20.♜h1 ♙xb2 21.♞xb2 ♜f6 22.♙g1 ♜h5±

17...♞xb1 18.♞xb1

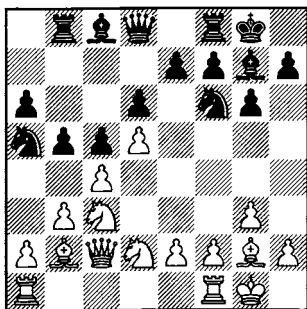
18.♜cxb1 ♙f5 19.e4 ♜xe4 20.♙xe4 ♙xa1=

18...♜g4 19.♜d1 ♙d4!

Black exploits the possibility to increase his presence on his opponent's side of the board.

20.♙xd4 cxd4 21.♞d3 ♞b6 22.♜f3 ♜e3 23.♜xe3 dxe3 24.♞c1 ♞c5 25.♞c3 ♞e8 26.♞d4 ♜b7=

B2b) 12.♖b2



B2b1) 12...h5

B2b2) 12...e5

B2b1) 12...h5?!

This move is interesting, but it is insufficient for equality.

13.♞a1 ♕f5

In case of 13...h4, White exploits advantageously the e4-outpost: 14.♖ce4 ♕f5 (14...h3 15.♖xf6 exf6 16.♕h1 ♞e8 17.♞fe1±) 15.♖xf6 ♕xf6 16.e4 ♕d7 17.cxb5 axb5 18.e5! ♕xe5 19.♕xe5 dxe5 20.♞xc5± Rogozenko – Fedorov, Kishinev 1998.

14.e4 ♕d7 15.♖d1

15.♖e2 e5±

15...e5

Black should better not exchange on c4 immediately: 15...bxc4 16.bxc4 e5 17.♕c3 (17.♖e3 ♖g4 18.♖xg4 hxg4 19.♕c3 ♞c7 20.♞xb8 ♞xb8 21.♞b1 ♞xb1 22.♞xb1 ♕h6 23.♕f1 ♕g5= Filippov – Bologan, Shanghai 2000) 17...♞xb1 18.♞xb1 ♞c7 19.♞b2 ♖b7 20.f4 ♖e8 21.♖f2 exf4 22.♕xg7 ♖xg7 23.gxf4± Sorokin – Kongu-

vel, Raipur 2002.

16.f4!

White accepts the challenge.

In case of 16.♕c3, Black manages to attack the g3-square: 16...h4 17.♖e3 ♖h5 (17...♕h6 18.♞d3 b4 19.♕b2 ♖h5 20.♞e2 f6 21.♖f3 h3 22.♕h1 ♞e8 23.♞be1 ♖b7 24.♖h4 ♕g5 25.♖f3 ♞f7 26.♖xg5 fxg5 27.♖g4 ♞e7 28.♕f3 ♖h7 29.♖xe5 dxe5 30.♕xh5+– Mchedlishvili – Zulfugarli, Tbilisi 2001) 18.♕f3 b4 19.♕b2 hxg3 20.hxg3 ♞g5 21.♕xh5 ♞xh5 22.f4, Marin – Bologan, Sanxenxo 2004 and here, he had to continue with 22...♕h3 23.♞f2 exf4 24.gxf4 ♞h4 25.♖g2 ♕xg2 26.♖xg2 ♞g4=, with a probable draw.

The move 16.dxe6 should be considered a concession by White in similar positions. There may follow: 16...♕xe6 17.f4 ♖c6 18.a3 ♖d4 19.♞d3 bxc4 20.bxc4 h4, with a double-edged game, Burmakin – Morozovich, Perm 1998.

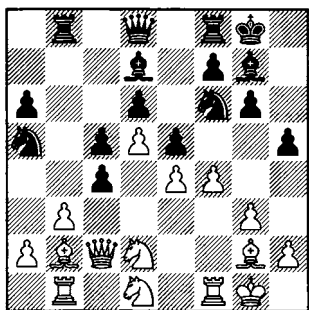
After 16.♖e3, Black can exchange comfortably: 16...♖g4 17.♖xg4 hxg4= and White's pawn-advance f4 becomes practically impossible.

16...bxc4

16...h4?! 17.fxe5 ♖h5 18.exd6 ♕xb2 19.♖xb2 hxg3 20.hxg3 ♖xg3 21.♞f2±

16...exf4 17.gxf4 bxc4 (17...♞e8 18.♕c3 h4 19.♖e3 b4 20.♕a1 h3 21.♕f3 ♖h7 22.♖h1 ♕xa1 23.♞xa1 ♖b7 24.f5±) 18.bxc4 ♞e8 19.♕c3 ♞xb1 20.♞xb1 ♕g4 21.e5± Dizdar – van Der Weide, Sevilla 2007.

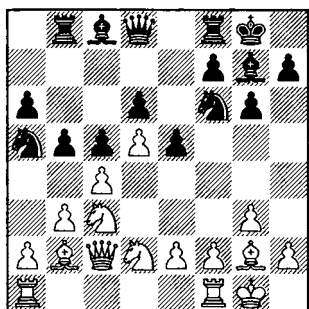
3.♟f3 ♖g7 4.g3 0-0 5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7.♜c3 a6 8.d5 ♜a5



17.fxe5!

This important intermediate move enables White to compromise his opponent's pawn-structure. 17...♟g4 18.exd6 cxb3 19.axb3 ♙xb2 20.♙xb2 ♙b5 21.♙e1 f6 22.♜e3±

B2b2) 12...e5



13.dxe6

After this capturing en passant, the game becomes sharper in an open position, in comparison to the schemes, which we analyze later (13.♙ab1 ♙h6 – see variation **B2a**):

Following 13.♙fb1, my King's Indian guru won a brilliant game

against Arbakov, having demonstrated several ideas for Black from his arsenal: 13...♙f5! 14.e4 ♙d7 15.♜d1 ♙h6! (White cannot play e3 any more...) 16.♜e3?! ♙xe3 17.fxe3 ♟g4± Arbakov – Lanka, Moscow 1989;

In case of 13.♜d1, Black must try to push quickly f5: 13...♜h5 (13...♙e7 14.e4 ♜h5 15.♙c3 b4 16.♙e3 ♜b7 17.♙e2 a5 18.f4 exf4 19.♙xg7, Relange – Lanka, Capelle la Grande 1994, 19...♙xg7 20.gxf4 ♜xf4!; 14.♙c3 b4 15.♙b2 ♜b7 16.e4 ♜h5 17.♜e3 ♙h6 18.♙ae1 f6 19.♙d1 ♜d8 20.f4! with initiative for White) 14.e3 f5 15.f4 exf4, Lengyel – Klundt, Bad Pyrmont 1970, 16.♙xg7 ♟xg7 17.gxf4 ♙f6 18.♙b1 ♙e8 19.♙e1 ♙b7= Black wishes to place his rook on e7 and his knight on b7.

13.e4 ♜h5 14.♙ae1 (14.♜d1 f5 15.f3 ♙h6 16.♙c3 ♙b7 17.♙d3 b4 18.♙b2 ♙bf7 19.♜f2 ♜b7 20.♙ae1 a5 21.exf5 gxf5 22.♙e2 ♙f4 23.♜d3 ♙xg3 24.hxg3 ♜xg3 25.♙d1 f4= Komljenovic – Delchev, Benasque 1997) 14...f5 15.exf5 gxf5 16.♙f3 (16.♜e2 bxc4 17.bxc4 f4 18.gxf4 ♙f5 19.♙c1 ♙d3→) 16...♜f6 17.♜h1 ♙d7 18.♜d1 ♙e8 19.♙c3 b4 20.♙b2 ♜b7, with equality, C. Hansen – Z. Polgar, New York 1987;

13.♙ae1 bxc4 14.bxc4 ♜d7 (Black's knight is transferred to b6 and from there it not only attacks the c4-pawn, but helps the maneuver of the queen to a4.) 15.e4 (15.♜ce4 ♜b6 16.♙b1 ♙f5 17.f4 ♙e7=; 15.♜d1 ♜b6 16.f4 ♙e8

17.♔a1 f6 18.e4 ♖a4 19.♗xa4 ♜xa4
20.♞e3 ♔d7 21.♞b1 ♞xb1 22.♞xb1
♙h6 23.♞f1 ♞b8= Verat – Calistri,
Clichy 2001) 15...♞b6 16.♞d1 ♖e8
(with the idea ♖a4, ♙h6, ♙g4)
17.♞e3 ♖a4 18.♗xa4 ♜xa4 19.♔a1
♔d7 20.♞b1 ♙h6♣ Jurek – Lanka,
Trnava 1986.

In case of 13.♞ae1, it is inter-
esting for Black to try 13...h5. In
principle, he must always consid-
er this move, because it creates
concrete problems for White. 14.
♞d1 (14.e4 bxc4 15.bxc4 h4♣)
14...h4 15.e4 bxc4 (Black should
not be in a hurry to play 15...hxc3,
for example: 16.fxg3 ♜g4 17.♞f2
♞h6 18.♙h3 f5 19.♔c3 ♞b7 20.♗d3
b4 21.♙b2 ♞bf7 22.♖e2 ♞b7 23.
exf5 gxf5 24.♗h5 ♞f6, Jussupow
– Svidler, Germany 2006, 25.♞f3
♞g4 26.♔c1±, or 16.hxc3 ♜g4 17.
♔c3 ♙h6 18.f3 ♞f6 19.f4 ♞g4 –
19...exf4 20.gxf4 ♞g4 21.♗d3 ♞e8
22.♗g3± – 20.♞f2 ♙g7 21.♙f3 ♞xf2
22.♞xf2 ♞b7 23.♞h2 ♖e7 24.♙g2
♔d7 25.♞eh1 ♞d8 26.♞f1 f6 27.
♞e3± van Wely – Anand, Monaco
1998) 16.bxc4 ♙h6 17.♔c3 ♔d7
18.♞e3 ♞h5 19.♙f3 ♞g7 20. ♞g4
♙g5 21.♙e2 ♞h5 (Black must pre-
vent f4 by all means!) 22.♞b1 ♞xb1
23.♞xb1 f5 24.♞xe5 dxe5 25.♞f3
hxc3 26.hxc3 fxe4 27.♙xa5 ♖f6∞

13...fxe6

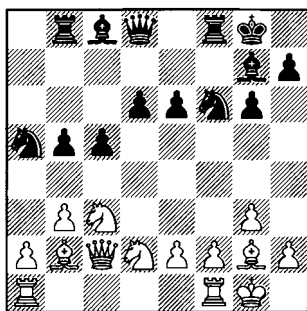
After 13...♙xe6, White can
simplify the position, remaining
with a powerful bishop against
a knight: 14.cxb5 axb5 15.♞ce4
♙f5 16.♞xf6 ♙xf6 17.♞e4 ♙xb2
18.♗xb2 ♙xe4 19.♙xe4± Chekhov

– Tseshkovsky, Sochi 1983.

14.cxb5

14.♞ce4 bxc4=; 14.♞ad1 bxc4
15.bxc4 ♙b7 16. ♙xb7 ♞xb7 17.♔a1
♞c6 18.♞f3 ♖e7 19.♞e4 ♞fb8 20.
♞xf6 ♙xf6 21.♙xf6 ♖xf6 22.♖e4
♞b6 23.♞b1, draw, Rawicz – Za-
wadzka, Wroclaw 2008.

14...axb5



15.♞ce4

15.♞ad1 d5 16.♞de4 ♞xe4 17.
♞xe4 ♙xb2 18.♖xb2 ♖e7 19.♖e5
♞b6 20.♞c3 ♖g7 21.♖xg7 ♙xcg7
22.f4 ♙a6∞ Potts – Byrne, Phila-
delphia 1988.

If White occupies the e4-
outpost with his other knight –
15.♞de4, then Black might not
capture immediately and pre-
pare d5: 15...♖e7 16.♞ac1, An-
tunes – Bologan, Moscow 1994,
16...d5 17.♞xf6 ♙xf6 18.♞xd5
exd5 19.♙xd5 ♙e6 20.♖xc5 ♙xd5
21.♙xf6 ♖xc5 22.♞xc5 ♞xf6 23.
♞xd5 ♞c6♣

15...♞xe4

15...♙b7!? 16.♞ad1 ♞xe4 17.
♙xcg7 (After 17.♞xe4 ♙xe4 18.♙xe4
♙xb2 19.♖xb2, the game trans-

3.♟f3 ♙g7 4.g3 0-0 5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7.♜c3 a6 8.d5 ♜a5

poses to the main line, which we will analyze later, see 15...♜xe4 16.♜xe4 ♙xb2 etc.) 17...♜xg3 18.fxg3! Pcola – Komora, Slovakia 1999 (18.♙xf8 ♜xe2 19.♜h1 ♙xg2 20.♜xg2 ♖xf8) 18...♙xf1 19.♙xf1 ♜xg7 20.♜e4 ♙xe4 21.♖xe4 (21.♙xe4 b4) 21...♖e7 White's compensation for the pawn is insufficient.

16.♜xe4

White can also sacrifice a pawn in order to obtain the two-bishop advantage: 16.♙xg7 ♜xd2 17.♙xf8 ♜xf1 18.♙h6 ♜xh2 19.♜xh2 (19.♖c3 e5 20.♜xh2 ♙b7 21.♖d2 Jobava – Motylev, Ubeda 2001; 19...♖e7 20.♜xh2 b4 21.♖e3 – 21.♖d2 ♙b7 22.e4 ♜c6 – 21...♙b7 22.♙h3 ♙d5 23.♙d1 ♙e8 24.♙f4 ♜b7 25.♜g1 ♖f7, draw, An.Kharitonov – Schmidt, Lodz 1980) 19...♙b7 20.♖c3 ♖c7 21.♙h3 e5!? (21...♙e8 22.b4 ♖f7 23.f3 ♜c6 24.bxc5 b4, Botvinnik – Averbakh, Leningrad 1957, 25.♖e3±) 22.♙d1 ♙c8 23.♙g2 ♙b7= White has a choice. He must either trade the bishops, or close the diagonal of his own bishop, or comply with the repetition of moves. I believe that the last decision is the best for him.

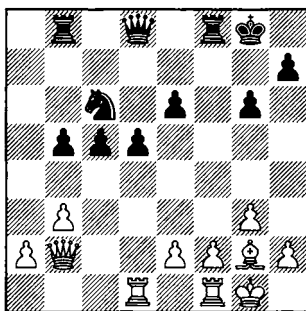
16...♙xb2 17.♖xb2 ♙b7 18.♙ad1

18.b4?! ♜c4 19.♖c3 ♙xe4 20.♙xe4 d5 21.♙g2 cxb4 22.♖xb4 ♖d6 23.♙ab1 ♖xb4 24.♙xb4 ♜d6= with an equal endgame, Anikaev – Kapengut, Leningrad 1969.

18.♙fd1 ♙xe4 (Otherwise, Black cannot protect his pawn.)

19.♙xe4 d5 20.♙ac1 (20.♙g2 ♖b6 21.e3 b4 22.h4 c4= Kagan – Lane, Warwick 2002) 20...c4 21.♙g2 ♜c6! 22.e3?! (It would be stronger for White to play 22.e4 d4 23.e5 ♜xe5 and after that, there will follow numerous exchanges and a drawish endgame at the end: 24.♖xd4 – 24.♙xd4 ♖f6 – 24...♖xd4 25.♙xd4 ♜d3 26.♙c2 ♜b4 27.♙e2 ♙fd8 28.♙xd8 ♙xd8 29.bxc4 ♙d1 30.♙f1 bxc4 31.a3 ♜d5=) 22...♜b4 Ionescu – Iordachescu, Bucuresti 1998.

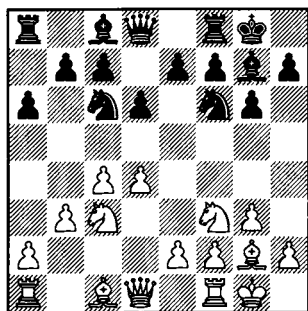
18...♙xe4 19.♙xe4 d5 20.♙g2 ♜c6



Black's pawn-structure looks very beautiful indeed, but he should not be so proud of it. If White manages to disrupt it, he will obtain an advantage. **21.e4** (21.♙fe1 ♙c8 22.e4 d4 23.e5 ♜b4 24.♙d2 ♜d5 25.♙xd5 ♖xd5 26.b4 ♙fd8 27.♙ed1 ♖xe5, draw, W.Schmidt – Sax, Budapest 1977) **21...d4 22.♖c2 ♖b6 23.♙c1 ♜b4=** Black holds the position thanks to his last move, Ftacnik – W.Schmidt, Prague 1984.

Chapter 31

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♘f3 ♙g7 4.g3 0–0
5.♙g2 d6 6.0–0 ♘c6 7.♘c3 a6 8.b3



The double fianchetto has always been one of the most harmonious schemes of development of pieces. It is particularly effective when White controls the centre.

8...♞b8

A) 9.♘d5

B) 9.e3

C) 9.♙b2

9.d5 ♘a5 – see variation **A2** in Chapter 30.

White's attempt to prevent b5 is not convincing at all, because he weakens the entire dark-squared complex on the queenside: 9.a4 a5 10.♙b2 (10.h3 b6 11.e4 ♙b7 12.♞e1 ♘d7 13.♙e3 e5=) 10...♙g4 11.h3 ♙xf3 12.♙xf3 ♘d7 13.e3

e5 14.♘b5 ♘b4, Murdzia – Tizard, Hamburg 1996, 15.♙c3 exd4 16.exd4 ♘f6 17.♞e1 c6 18.♘a3 ♞e8 with equality.

A) 9.♘d5

This is probably the most popular scheme for White lately.

A1) 9...♘h5

A2) 9...e6

A1) 9...♘h5

Black wishes to preserve more light pieces on the board. He will repel the enemy knight with e6 and then he may go back with his knight to f6, if necessary.

10.♙b2

10.♙e3 b5 11.cxb5 axb5 12.♞c1 ♙d7 13.♞d2 e6 14.♘c3 b4 15.♘a4 ♘f6 16.♙h6 ♘e4 17.♞e3 ♙xh6 18.♞xh6 f5 ♘ Butnori – Babula, Batumi 1999.

10.♙g5 h6 11.♙e3 e6 12.♘c3 ♘e7 13.♞c1 b5 14.♞d3 ♙b7 15.♞c2 b4 16.♘a4 ♘f5 17.c5 a5 18.♞fc1 ♘f6 19.c6 ♘xe3 20.fxe3 ♙c8 ∞ Berkes – Al Sayed, Budapest 2001.

10.e4 b5 11.♞d3 e6 12.cxb5 axb5 13.♘e3 ♘e7 14.♙b2 f5 15.

3. ♖f3 ♙g7 4.g3 0-0 5. ♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7. ♜c3 a6 8.b3 ♜b8

♜d2 fxe4 16. ♜xe4 ♜f5 17. ♖d2 ♜f6 18. ♜fel ♜xe3 19. ♜xe3 ♜xe4 20. ♜xe4 d5 21. ♜e2 b4 ♞ Rustemov – S.Pedersen, Morso 2002.

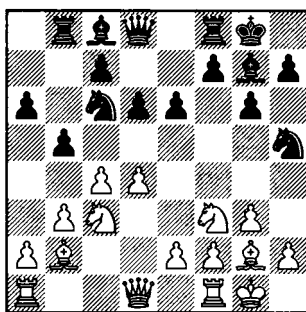
10...e6 11. ♜c3

Black is better after 11. ♜f4 ♜xf4 12. gxf4 b5 13. ♜c1 ♜e7 ♞ Tukmakov – Istratescu, Biel 1994.

If White retreats his knight 11. ♜e3, then Black should better postpone his offensive a bit and retreat his knight at first – 11... ♜e7 (11...f5 12. ♖d2 ♜e7 13. ♜ac1 b6 14.c5 dxc5 15. ♜fd1 f4 16. ♜g4 cxd4 17. ♙xd4 e5 18. ♜gxe5± Akopian – Bologan, Elista 1998; 12...f4 13. ♜c2 b5 14. ♙c3 bxc4 15. bxc4 ♜e7 16. ♜ab1± N.Maiorov – Kovaliev, Minsk 2006) 12. ♜c1 (In case of 12. ♖d2, it is bad for Black to play 12...c5, but he can try instead 12...b6, for example, 13. ♜e1 f5 14.f4 h6 15. ♜d1 ♜f6 16. ♜f2 ♙b7 17. ♙xb7 ♜xb7 18. ♖d3 b5 19.e4 bxc4 20. ♖xc4 d5 21.exd5, Grachev – Krylov, Moscow 2007, 21... ♖xd5 22. ♖xd5 ♜exd5, with mutual chances, or 13. ♜ac1 ♙b7 14. ♜fd1 h6 15.c5 ♜f6. Black controls reliably the light squares c6, d5, e4 – 16.cxb6 cxb6 17. ♙a3 b5 18. ♖b4 ♜e8 19. ♖e1 a5 20. ♙b2 f5= Rausis – Bologan, Enghien 1999.) 12... ♙d7 13.c5 (13. ♖c2 ♙h6 ♞; 13. ♖d2 f5 14. ♜c2 ♜f6 15. ♜b4, Chiburda-nidze – M.Socko, Dresden 2008, 15...♜e4 16. ♖c2 a5 17. ♜d3 a4 18. ♜d2 axb3 19.axb3 ♜f6 and Black's position is quite defensible.) 13...♙h6 14.cxd6 cxd6 15. ♜c2 ♙c6 16. ♜g4 ♙g7 17. ♜e1 ♙xg2 18.

♜xg2 f5 19. ♜4e3 d5 20. ♙a3 ♜e8= Akopian – A.Kuzmin, Dubai 1999.

11...b5



12.d5

White can try to preserve his pawn-centre with: 12. ♜b1!? ♜f6 (12...bxc4 13. bxc4 ♜a5 14. ♖d3 e5?! 15.dxe5 dxe5 16. ♙a3± Burmakin – Komljenovic, Sevilla 2008) 13. ♖c2 bxc4 14. bxc4 ♙d7 15.e3, with a minimal edge for him.

12.cxb5 axb5 13. ♜c1 ♙d7 (13...b4 14. ♜a4 ♙d7 15. ♖c2 ♖e7 16.e3 ♜fc8=, followed by ♜a5, Savon – Lanka, Trnava 1989) 14. ♖d2 b4 15. ♜a4 ♜a5 16. ♖c2 ♙xa4 (16...♙c6!? 17.e4 ♜f6 18. ♜fel ♖d7 Black's position is even slightly preferable) 17.bxa4, Bu Xiangzhi – Inarkiev, Ningpo 2008, 17... ♖d7=

12...♜e7 13.dxe6 ♙xe6

White obtains promising positions after 13...fxe6 14.c5! dxc5 15. ♖c2 ♜c6 (15...♙b7 16. ♜d1 ♖d6 17. ♙xg7 ♜xg7 18. ♜c1 ♜ef5 19. ♖xc5 ♙xf3 20. ♙xf3 ♜d4 21. ♜e3 ♜e8 22. ♜fd1 ♜xf3 23.exf3 ♖xc5

24.♙xc5 ♜xf3 25.♙c6± Karpov – Shirov, Monaco 1999) 16.♙ad1 ♘d4 17.♘d4 cxd4 18.e3 e5 19. exd4 ♙f5 (19...exd4 20.♘d5 ♙g4 21.♙d2 d3 22.♙xd3 ♙xb2 23.♙xb2 c6 24. ♙e4± Ki.Georgiev – Antic, Herceg Novi 2001) 20.♙c1!? exd4 21.♘d5±

14.cxb5

14.♘d4 bxc4 15.♘xe6 fxe6±

14...axb5 15.♙d2

15.♘d4 b4 16.♘xe6 fxe6 17.

♘a4 c5∞

15.♙c2 ♙f5 16.e4 ♙g4 17.♙fe1 ♙e8 18.h3 ♙xf3 19.♙xf3 b4 20.♘a4 ♙xb2 21.♘xb2 ♘g7 22.♙ad1 ♙b6 23.♘a4 ♙b5 24.♙e2 ♙a5 25.♙c4 ♘e6 26.f4 ♙b8 27.♘h2 c6∞ Rustemov – Komljenovic, Sevilla 2002.

15...b4 16.♘e4

White deploys his knight in the centre and Black must attack it immediately.

16.♘a4 ♙d5 17.♙xg7 ♘xg7 18. ♘g5 ♙xg2 19.♘xg2 ♘e6=

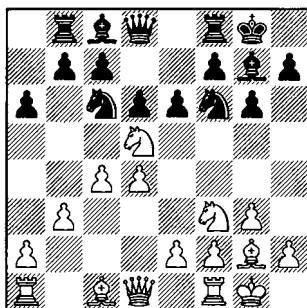
16...♙xb2 17.♙xb2 ♙d5 18. ♘ed2 f5 19.♙fd1 (19.♙fe1 ♘f6, or 19...f4 20.♘g5 ♙xg2 21.♘xg2 ♘d5, with counterplay for Black) **19... ♘f6 20.♙ac1 ♙d7 21.♘c4 ♘e4 22.♘e3 ♙a8=** Black has managed to acquire sufficient space to obtain a comfortable game, Ki.Georgiev – Radjabov, Sarajevo 2002.

A2) 9...e6!?

(diagram)

10.♘xf6

In case of 10.♘e3, Black develops his bishop on the long diagonal, having opened it beforehand:



10...♘e7 11.♙b2 b6 12.♙c1 ♙b7 13. ♙d2 (13.♙d3 ♙e4 14.♙d2 ♘f5∞) 13...♘e4 14.♙c2 f5 15.♘d1 ♘c6 16.d5 ♘b4 17.♙b1 ♙xb2 18.♙xb2 exd5 19.a3 ♘c6 20.cxd5 ♘e7 21. ♘d4 ♙xd5 22.♘e3 ♙d7 23. ♘xd5 (23.♙c2 c5 24.♘xd5 ♘xd5 25.♙xe4 fxe4 26.♙xe4 ♘c7±) 23...♘xd5 24.♙c2, Wojtkiewicz – Bologan, Bastia 1999, 24...♙f7 25.♙xe4 fxe4 26.♙xe4 c5 27.♘f3 ♘f6=

10...♙xf6 11.♙b2

Black's queen cannot be trapped on the f5-square after 11.♙g5 ♙f5, although it looks awkwardly placed there. There might follow:

12.♙e3 e5 13.♙d2 ♙h5 14.d5 ♘e7 15.♘g5 h6 16.♘e4 f5 17. ♙f3 ♙h3 18.♙g2, draw, Graf – McShane, Istanbul 2003.

In case of 12.♙d2, Black follows with a simplifying combination: 12...♘xd4 13.♘xd4 ♙xd4 14.♙xd4 ♙xg5 15.♙a7 ♙d7 16. ♙xb7 ♙a5 (16...a5 17.♙f3 ♙c5 18. ♙xc5 dxc5 19.♙fd1 ♙fd8= P. H. Nielsen – Fedorov, Aars 1999; 17.♙ad1 ♙fd8 18.♙d3 ♘f8 19.♙fd1 ♘e7 20.♙c6 ♙b6, Ruck – Fedo-

3. ♖f3 ♙g7 4.g3 0-0 5. ♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7. ♜c3 a6 8.b3 ♝b8

rov, Fuegen, 2006 21. ♙xd7 ♝xd7 22. ♝f3=; 17. ♝fd1 ♝fd8 18. ♙g2 ♝c5 19. ♝xc5 dxc5 20. ♝d3 ♜f8 21. ♝e3 f6 22.f4, Mamedyarov – McShane, Lausanne 2003, 22... ♙c8=) 17. ♝xa6 (17. ♙f3 ♝b6 18. ♝xb6 ♝xb6 19. ♝fd1 ♙c6 20. ♙xc6 ♝xc6=; 17. ♝fd1 ♝b4 18. ♙g2 ♝a5 19. ♝d3=) 17... ♝xa6 18. ♙xa6 ♝b6, with a drawish endgame.

11... ♝e7 12.e4

12. ♝d2 e5 13.d5 ♜d8 14. ♝ac1 b6 15.e4 f5 16.exf5 gxf5 17. ♝ce1 ♝f6 18. ♝g5 ♝xg5 19. ♜xg5 f4 ♞ Medic – Ionica, Rijeka 2009.

12. ♝c1 e5 13.d5 ♜d8, Ruck – Efimenko, Ohrid 2001, 14.e4 f5 15.exf5 ♙xf5 16. ♜d2 ♜f7 17. ♜e4 ♜g5=

12...e5 13.d5 ♜d8 14. ♜d2!

White is preparing to counter f5.

It is not so good for him to opt for 14. ♝d2 f5 15.exf5 gxf5. This capturing has become possible, because White does not have the resource f4. (Black cannot equalize completely with 15... ♙xf5 16. ♜h4 ♙d7 17.f4 ♜f7 18. ♝ae1 ♝d8 19. ♜f3 and White takes the e5-square under control. 19...exf4 20. ♙xg7 ♜xg7 21.gxf4 ♝f6 22. ♜g5 ♜xg5 23.fxg5 ♝d8 24. ♝c3 ♜g8 25. ♝f6 ♙f5 26. ♙e4!± Romanishin – S.Atalik, Bled 2000) 16. ♝ae1 (16. ♝fe1 ♜f7 17. ♝e2 ♙d7 18. ♝ae1 ♝d8 19. ♜h4 f4 20. ♜f3 ♜g5 21. ♜xg5 ♝xg5 22. ♙e4 ♙f5 23.f3) 16... ♜f7 17. ♜d4 ♝f6 18. ♜e2 ♝g6 and here, after his queen has come to the kingside, Black should not

be afraid of 19.f4 ♙d7 20. ♝c1 (20. ♝a5 b6 21. ♝d2 ♙f6 ♞) 20...b6∞

14...f5 15.exf5 ♙xf5

It is worse for Black to capture on f5 with his pawn: 15... gxf5?! 16.f4 e4 17. ♝c2 c5 18. ♝ae1 h5 19.h3± Supatashvili – Fedorov, Batumi 2002.

16. ♜e4 ♜f7

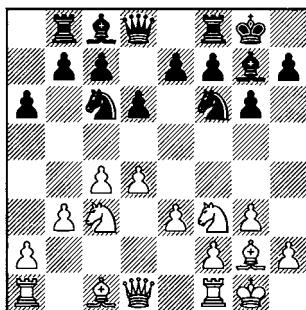
16... ♙xe4 17. ♙xe4 ♜f7 18.h4± Mchedlishvili – Milov, Batumi 2002.

17. ♝d2

17.h4 g5 18.hxg5 ♜xg5 ♞

17... ♙xe4 18. ♙xe4 ♜g5 19. ♝e2 ♜xe4 20. ♝xe4 ♝f5 21.f3, with a minimal edge for White.

B) 9.e3

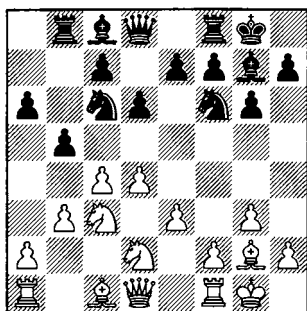


White fortifies his centre, postponing his active actions for a while.

9...b5 10. ♜d2

In case of 10. ♝e2, Black should better open the position: 10... bxc4 (10...b4 11. ♜a4 e5 12.dxe5 dxe5=; 11. ♜d5 ♜xd5 12.cxd5 ♜a7 13. ♙b2 ♙d7 14. ♝fc1 ♙b5 15. ♝d2 c6 16. ♝xb4 cxd5 17. ♜e1 a5, Mo-

radiabadi – Muralidharan, Abudhabi 2005, 18. ♖c3± 11. ♖xc4 (11. bxc4 ♖a5 12. ♖a3 c5 13. dxc5 dxc5 14. ♖fd1 ♖d7 15. ♖ac1 ♖c6 16. ♖e1 ♖c7 17. ♖d2 ♖d8 18. ♖d5 ♖a7 19. ♖d3 e6 20. ♖5f4 ♖b7= Stangl – Ankerst, Germany 1997) 11... ♖a5 (11... ♖b4 12. a3 ♖e6 13. ♖e2 ♖bd5 14. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 15. b4 a5 16. bxa5 c5 17. ♖d2 ♖e4 18. ♖ab1 ♖xb1 19. ♖xb1 ♖xd2 20. ♖xd2 ♖a8 21. ♖e1 ♖xg2 22. ♖xg2 cxd4 23. exd4 ♖e4 24. ♖e1 ♖xd4= Stangl – Baklan, Austria 2007) 12. ♖e2 c5 13. dxc5 ♖d7 14. ♖b2 ♖xc5 15. ♖ac1 ♖c6 16. ♖fd1 a5± Donchenko – Kostin, Moscow 2004.



10 ... ♖g4!

This move is often played by Black in similar positions.

11. f3

White restricts his light-squared bishop and if he plays later f4, he will weaken additionally his position.

11. ♖f3 ♖d7 12. ♖b2 e5 13. d5 ♖e7 14. ♖c1 h5 15. cxb5 axb5 16. b4 h4 17. ♖b3 hxg3 18. hxg3 ♖h7 19. ♖g2 ♖f5∞ Danailov – Hebden,

Toulouse 1990.

There arises a position with mutual chances after 11. ♖e2 ♖a5 12. h3 ♖d7 13. ♖c2 c5∞ Slipak – Milov, Buenos Aires 1996.

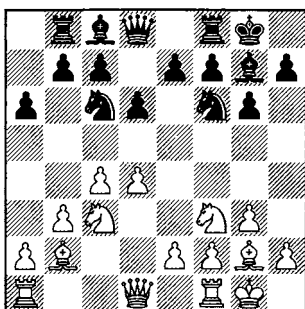
11... ♖d7 12. ♖e2

12. ♖b2 e5 13. d5 ♖e7 14. e4 c6 15. ♖b1 ♖h6 16. ♖e2 cxd5 17. cxd5 ♖b6 18. ♖h1 ♖h5± Schoene – A. Kuzmin, Berlin 1991.

12... ♖a5 13. ♖b2 e5 14. dxe5 dxe5 15. cxb5 axb5 16. b4 ♖b7 17. ♖de4 ♖xe4 18. ♖xe4 f5 19. ♖f2 ♖d6= Karpov – Gelfand, Tilburg 1996.

C) 9. ♖b2

White complies with Black's b5 pawn-advance.



9... b5 10. cxb5

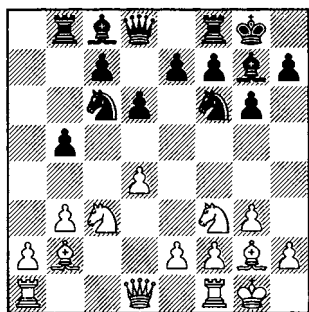
The character of the game remains the same after 10. ♖e1 ♖d7 11. cxb5 axb5 12. ♖c1 b4 13. ♖a4 ♖a5 14. ♖d3 ♖xa4 (14... e6 15. ♖d2 ♖xa4 16. bxa4 ♖d7 17. ♖xb4 ♖xa4 18. ♖c3 ♖d7 19. ♖c2 ♖xb4 20. ♖xb4 ♖xb4 21. ♖xc7 ♖f6 22. ♖b1 ♖a4 23. ♖xd6 ♖xa2 24. ♖a6± Nikolic – Nijboer, Rotterdam 1999; 14...

3.♟f3 ♖g7 4.g3 0-0 5.♙g2 d6 6.0-0 ♜c6 7.♜c3 a6 8.b3 ♞b8

♜e8 15.♞d2 ♙xa4 16.bxa4 ♞d7 17.♜xb4 ♞xa4 18.♙c3± 15.bxa4 ♞d7 16.♞d2 (16.e4 c6 17.♞e1 ♞a7 18.♞d2 b3!± Nemet – Bologan, Biel 1993; 18.e5 ♜d5 19.♞g4 b3 20.a3 ♜b6 21.exd6 exd6 22.♙xc6 ♜xc6 23.♞xc6 ♜xa4±) 16...♞fc8 (16...♞xa4 17.♞xc7 e6, Navrotescu – Nevednichy, Romania 1993, 18.d5 exd5 19.♙xf6 ♙xf6 20.♙xd5 b3 21.axb3 ♜xb3 22.♞f4 ♞xf4 23.♜xf4 ♜c5 24.e3±) 17.♜xb4 ♞xa4 18.♙c3 c6 19.♞b1 d5 20.♜xd5 ♜xd5 21.♙xa5 ♙xd4 22.e3 ♞a8=

About 10.d5 ♜a5 11.cxb5 axb5 – see variation **A2a** from Chapter 30 (10.♙b2 b5 11.cxb5 axb5)

10...axb5



11.♞c1

The other plan for White is connected with the advance of his e-pawn: 11.♞e1 b4 12.♜a4 ♙d7 13.e4 ♜a5. If he plays 14.e5, Black can always respond with 14...♜d5∞

11.♞c2 b4 12.♜d1 ♜a5 13.e4 c6 14.♜e3 ♜g4 15.♞fe1 ♞b6 16.♞ad1 ♜xe3 17.♞xe3 ♙g4 18.h3 ♙xf3 19.♙xf3 e6 20.♞e2 ♞bc8 21.♞d3

♞fd8∞ Konovalov – Kokarev, St. Petersburg 2007.

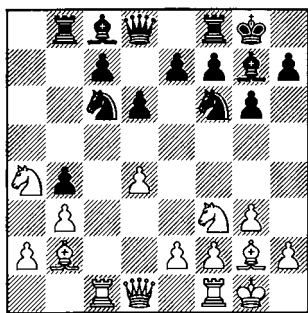
11.♜e1 ♜a5 12.♜d3 b4 13.♜e4 ♜d5 14.e3 ♙a6 15.♞e1 e6= Topalov – Shirov, Belgrade 1995.

White can try to place his knight on d4 – 11.d5 ♜a5 12.♜d4 b4 13.♜a4 (After 13.♜cb5, Black has a tactical strike at his disposal: 13...♜xd5! 14.♙xd5 ♞xb5 15.♜xb5 ♙xb2 16.♞b1 ♙g7 17.a3 c6 18.axb4 cxd5 19.bxa5 ♞xa5 20.♜d4 ♞b6± Porfiriadis – Spassky, Europapokal 1987; 13.♜b1 ♙b7 14.e4 c5 15.dxc6 ♜xc6 16.♜xc6 ♙xc6± Black has solved all his problems and he has pawn-majority in the centre, while White has not even completed his development yet, R.Sergejev – Bologan, Tallinn 1998.), but then it becomes a target for attack by Black: 13...e5! 14.dxe6 (14.♜c2 ♙d7 15.♞e1 ♙xa4 16.bxa4 ♜c4 17.♞b1 ♜xb2 18.♞xb2 e4 19.♞xb4 ♜xd5 20.♞xe4 ♞b2 21.♞d2 ♜c3 22.♞c4 ♜xa2 23.♙c6 ♞b8± Burmakin – Khalifman, Elista 1995; 15.♜e3 ♙h6 16.♙c1, Arkell – Nunn, England 1983, 16...♞b5 17.♞d3 ♞a8±) 14...fxe6 15.♜c6 ♜xc6 16.♙xc6 e5 17.♞c2 ♙h3 (17...♙e6 18.♞ad1 ♞c8 19.♙c1 ♞a6 20.♙g2 ♞fc8± Khamdamov – Fedorov, Dresden 2008) 18.♙g2 ♙xg2 19.♙xg2 ♞f7± Black has a slight edge, thanks to his pawn-majority in the centre, Najdorf – Nunn, England 1983.

11...b4 12.♜a4

White's knight is of course not well placed at the edge of

the board, but it is protected and more active there, than on b1: 12.♖b1 ♖a7 13.♖e1 (13.♖c2 c6 14.♖e1 ♖a6 15.♖d3 ♖d7 16.♖d2 c5 17.♖f3 ♖xd3 18.♖xd3 ♖b5 19.♖d2 ♖xd4 20.♖xd4 cxd4 21.♖xd4 ♖xd4 22.♖xd4 ♖c5= Richter – Hoffmann, Germany 2008; 13.♖bd2 c6 14.♖e1 ♖d5 15.♖c4 ♖b5 16.♖d2 ♖dc3= Black has the initiative, Ribli – Adorjan, Budapest 1979) 13...♖d7 14.♖d3 ♖a6 15.♖d2 (15.d5 ♖xd3 16.♖xg7 ♖xe2 17.♖xe2 ♖xg7 18.♖d2, Kiss – Kislik, Savaria 2008; Black must not hold on here to his extra pawn and he should better complete his development: 18...♖f6 19.♖c4 ♖d7 20.♖xb4 ♖xb4 21.♖xb4 c5 22.dxc6 ♖xc6 23.♖d2 ♖c8=; 15.♖h3 e6 16.♖c2 c6 – 16...c5!? – 17.♖d2 ♖b6 18.♖f4 ♖f6 19.♖fc1 ♖fe8 20.♖e1 g5 21.♖d3 ♖xd3 22.exd3 ♖a6 23.♖d2 h6 24.♖a1 ♖d5= Lutz – Bologan, Germany 1994) 15...♖xd3 16.♖xd3 c5 17.♖d2 ♖b5= Arishin – Kabanov, Omsk 2001.



12...♖a5

Black's knight is better placed on a5, than on a7.

In case of 12...♖a7, it does not control the c4-square. There may follow: 13.♖c2 (13.♖d2 ♖d7 14.♖c4 ♖xa4 15.bxa4 ♖d7 16.♖c2 c5 17.♖fd1±; 14...♖b5 15.♖e1 e6 16.e4 ♖c8 17.♖d2 ♖xe4 18.♖xe4 d5, Nikolic – McShane, Istanbul 2003 and here White should continue with 19.♖c5 dxe4 20.♖xb4 ♖d6 21.♖e5±) 13...c6 14.e4 ♖a5! (with the idea ♖h5, ♖h3, ♖g4) 15.♖fel (15.h3 ♖a6 16.♖fel ♖b5, planning ♖d7, ♖a4, ♖b6) 15...♖h5 16.e5?! (16.♖d2!?) 16...♖d5 17.♖d2 ♖h3 18.♖e4?! (18.♖f3 ♖g4 19.♖xg4 ♖xg4 20.♖c4=) 18...f5!→ S.Guliev – Bologan, Ostrava 1993.

13.♖c2

In response to 13.d5, Black attacks immediately this pawn – 13...e6 14.♖d4 ♖b5, forcing his opponent to capture on e6: 15.dxe6 ♖xe6 16.♖a7 c5=

13...c6 14.♖e1

After 14.e4, Black transfers his bishop to b5 with tempo: 14...♖a6 15.♖fd1 ♖b5 16.h4 ♖d7 17.e5 ♖d5 18.h5 ♖g4 19.hxg6 fxe6= Brunello – N.Mamedov, Spain 2008.

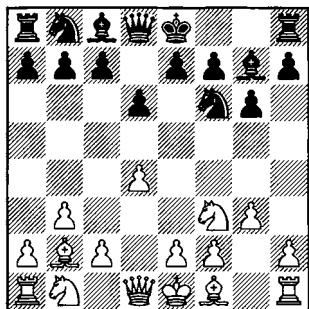
14...♖a6 15.♖d3 ♖b5 16.♖b1, Beilfuss – Bluebaum, Lemgo 1983, 16...♖d5 17.e4 ♖c7 18.♖fd1 ♖d7 with an approximately equal position.

Chapter 32

1.♘f3 ♘f6 2.g3 g6 3.b3 ♙g7 4.♙b2 d6 5.d4

Double Fianchetto for White

The King's Indian players encounter sometimes the double fianchetto and they must play very precisely against it.



5...c5!

It is essential for Black to begin the attack against White's centre prior to his castling.

6.♙g2

6.c3 0-0 7.♙g2 cxd4 8.cxd4 ♗a5 9.♗d2 ♗xd2 10.♘bxd2 ♘c6 11.0-0 ♙f5 12.♗fc1 ♗fc8 13.♘e1 d5, draw, Andersson – Kochyev, Hastings 1979.

6.e3 0-0 7.♙g2 d5 8.0-0 ♘c6 9.dxc5 ♗a5 10.♘d4 ♗xc5 11.♙a3 ♗b6 12.♘xc6 bxc6 13.♙xe7 ♗e8 14.♙xf6 ♙xf6 15.c3 ♙f5 16.♗d2 a5 17.♗c1 ♗ad8 18.♗d1 c5 19.♘d2

d4=, draw, Badea – Grigore, Eforie Nord 2008.

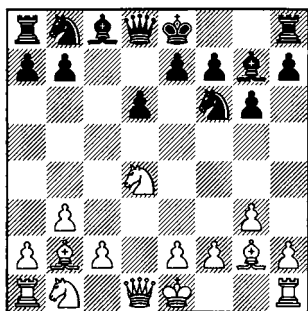
Following 6.dxc5, Black succeeds in capturing on c5 with his queen 6...♗a5! 7.♘bd2 (7.♗d2 ♗xc5 8.♗c3 ♗xc3 9.♙xc3 ♙f5 10.♘d4 ♙e4 11.f3 ♘d5 12.♙b2 ♘e3 13.c3 ♙d5 14.♘a3 ♘c6= Lainburg – Taimanov, Naumburg 2002) 7... ♗xc5, obtaining pawn-majority in the centre: 8.e3 (8.♙d4 ♗a5 9.e3 ♙g4 10.h3 ♙xf3 11.♗xf3 ♘c6 12.a3 0-0= Chigvintsev – Smikovski, Novosibirsk 2002) 8...0-0 9.♙g2 ♘c6 10.0-0 ♗h5= Black's pieces are comfortably placed, Istratescu – Kotronias, Korinthos 2000.

After 6.d5, Black plays 6...b5 and he opens easily later the b-file: 7.♙g2 0-0 8.0-0 ♙b7 9.c4 bxc4 (9...e6!?) 9...♘bd7 10.♘bd2 bxc4 11.bxc4 ♘bd7 11.♘bd2, Petkevich – Arizmendi, Biel 2003, 11...♗a5 12.♗c2 ♗ab8 13.e4 ♘g4 14.♙xg7 ♘xg7 15.♗ab1 ♙a6=

In case of 6.c4, Black can exploit the fact that his opponent's king is in the centre: 6...♘e4 7.♙g2 (7.♗c1 ♗a5 8.♘bd2 ♘xd2 9.♗xd2 ♗xd2 10.♘xd2 ♘c6 11.e3 ♙g4 12.♙e2 ♗b8 13.♘c1 cxd4 14.♘xd4

h5 ♖ Korchnoi – Kasparov, Paris 1990) 7... ♖a5 8. ♘fd2 ♘xd2 9. ♙c3! (this is an important intermediate move) 9... ♖b6 10. dxc5 ♘xb1 11. ♙xg7 ♖b4 12. ♘f1 ♘d2 13. ♙g1 ♙g8 14. ♙d4 (14. ♙h6 ♘xc4 15. bxc4 ♖xc5 16. ♙e3 ♖c7 17. h4 ♙d7 18. h5 ♙c6∞ Dizdarevic – Jacimovic, Struga 1995) 14... dxc5 15. ♙e3 ♘xc4 16. bxc4 ♘c6, Pavlovic – Miljanic, Budva 2004, 17. ♙d5 ♙f5 18. ♙g2 0–0–0∞ White's compensation is sufficient only for a draw.

6...cxd4 7. ♘xd4



7...d5

The fight for the centre is one of the basic principles of development at the opening stage of the game.

8.0–0

8.c4 dxc4 9. bxc4 0–0 10.0–0 ♖b6 – see 8.0–0.

8. ♘f3 0–0 9.0–0 ♘c6 – see 8.0–0.

8...0–0 9.c4

White cannot afford playing slow: 9. ♘a3 e5 10. ♘f3 e4 11. ♘d4 h5 (It might be even simpler for

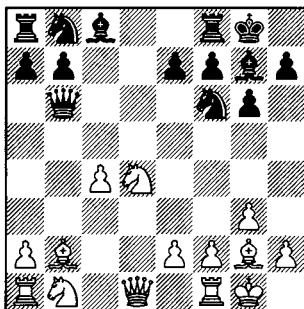
Black to reply with 11... ♘c6=) 12.c4 h4 13. ♘dc2 (13.cxd5 hxg3 14.hxg3 ♖xd5 15. ♘db5 ♖h5 16. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 17. ♘c7 ♙g7) 13...h3 14. ♙h1 ♘c6∞ with an unclear position, Zaichik – Gufeld, Tbilisi 1979.

White can hardly obtain any advantage after 9. ♘f3 ♘c6 10. ♘a3 (10. ♘d2 ♙e8 11. ♘e5, draw, Korchnoi – Shirov, Val Maubuee 1990) 10... ♖a5 (with the idea e5 and d4) 11.c4 (11. ♖e1, Smyslov – Lanka, Rome 1990, 11... ♖xe1) 11...dxc4 12. ♘xc4 ♖h5! White must think seriously about equalizing after this remarkable transfer of Black's queen to the kingside, Giardelli – Borghi, Curitiba 1983.

9...dxc4 10. bxc4

Frankly speaking, I believed, until I started writing this book, that White had an advantage in this position. He has an active knight on d4, a powerful light-squared bishop and in perspective – pressure along the b-file. Now, I think that Black's position is quite acceptable.

10... ♖b6



1. ♖f3 ♗f6 2.g3 g6 3.b3 ♕g7 4. ♖b2 d6 5.d4 c5

11. ♖b3

It is not good for White to play passively 11. ♖b3, because Black seizes the initiative after this: 11... ♖d8 12. ♖c1 ♗c6 13. ♗c3 ♕e6 14. ♗a4 ♖c7 15. ♗ac5 ♕d7 16. ♗d3 ♖ac8 17. ♖f4 ♖xf4 18. ♗xf4 ♗h5! ♢ Jovic – Arsovic, Zlatibor 2008.

In case of 11. ♖c2, Black applies simple central strategy: 11... ♗c6 12. ♗xc6 (12.c5 ♖a6 13. ♗d2 ♖d8 14. ♗xc6 bxc6 15. ♗b3 ♕f5 16. e4 ♕e6=) 12... bxc6 13. ♗d2 ♕f5 14. ♖b3 ♖fd8 15. ♕c3 ♗g4 16. ♕xg7, Malakhov – Svidler, Krasnoyarsk 2003, 16... ♗xg7= It might be possible that Black's position could be slightly preferable, thanks to his more active pieces.

White would not achieve much with the seemingly aggressive line: 11. ♗b5 ♖d8 12. ♖b3 a6 13. ♗5c3 ♖xb3 14. axb3 ♗c6 15. ♗a4 ♕f5 16. ♗b6 ♖ab8 17. ♕xc6 bxc6 18. ♖xa6 ♗d7 19. ♗xd7 ♖xd7 20. ♕xg7 ♗xg7 21. ♖a3 ♕c2= Muse – Brener, Internet 2005.

11. ♖c1 ♕d7 12. ♗d2 ♗c6 13.c5 ♖c7 14. ♗b5 ♖c8 15. ♗e4 ♗xe4 16. ♕xe4 ♗e5 17. ♗d4 ♖b8 18. ♖b1 ♖c7 19. ♖c2 ♖fc8 20. ♖fc1 ♖a5 ♢ Dizdarevic – Svidler, Bled 2002.

11... ♗fd7!

The pin of the knight on d4 is

essential for the success of Black's defence.

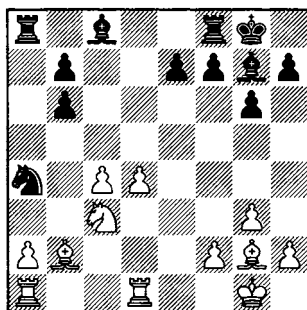
12. ♖d1

12.e3 ♗c6 13. ♖xb6 ♗xb6 14. ♗d2 ♗xd4 15. ♕xd4 ♖d8 16.c5 e5 17. ♕c3 ♗d5 18. ♕a5 b6 19.e4 ♗f4 20.gxf4 bxa5 21. ♗c4 ♕a6 22. ♖fc1 exf4 23. ♖ab1 ♖ac8 24. ♗xa5, Kotic – Mozetic, Yugoslavia 1994, 24... ♖d2.

12... ♗c6 13.e3

13. ♗xc6 ♕xb2 14. ♗xe7 ♗g7 15. ♗xc8 ♖axc8 16. ♖xd7 ♖fd8 17. ♖xb7 ♖xb3 18. axb3 ♖d1 19. ♕f1 ♕xa1 20. ♗a3, Velickovic – Sebenik, Bled 1999, 20... ♖c1.

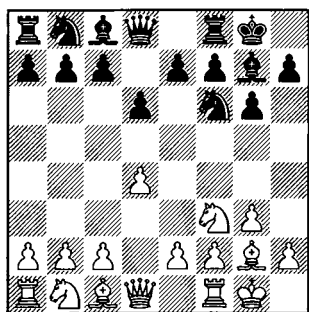
13... ♗c5 14. ♖xb6 axb6 15. ♗c3 ♗xd4 16. exd4 ♗a4 ♢



Suddenly, it turns out that White's pride – his pawns on c4 and d4 only create problems for him.

Chapter 33

1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘f3 g6 3.g3 ♙g7 4.♙g2
0-0 5.0-0 d6
Fianchetto without c2-c4 and ♘c3



In this chapter, we will analyze different plans for White, in which he postpones c2-c4. We will omit only the move 6.♘c3, which leads directly to the Pirc-Ufimzev Defence, or sometimes to the Sicilian Defence. In fact, there are so many cases of different openings transposing into each other that sometimes it is difficult to say to which opening a certain position belongs. Therefore, I will not be surprised if we enter the theory of the Pirc-Ufimzev Defence a bit.

6.a4

White occupies some space on the queenside, preventing Black's counterplay with b7-b5 and he plans to advance his pawn to a6 in some lines, increasing the scope

of action of his light-squared bishop.

In answer to the set-up including the rock-solid move 6.c3, Black should better play ♘c6 and e5 and this plan was successfully used by Tigran Petrosian: 6.c3 ♘c6 7.♘a3 (7.♘bd2 e5 8.dxe5 dxe5 9.♘b3 ♖e7 10.♙e3 ♜d8 11.♖c1 ♙f5 12.♞d1, draw, Stahlberg – Petrosian, Saltsjobaden 1952) 7...a6 8.♙f4 ♘d5 9.♙d2 ♘b6 10.♖c1 e5 11.dxe5 dxe5 12.♙h6 ♖e7 13.♙xg7 ♙xg7 14.♘c2 ♜d8 15.b3 f6 16.♘e3 ♙e6 17.♖c2 ♘d5 18.♘xd5 ♙xd5, draw, Barcza – Petrosian, Bucharest 1953.

The move 6.♘bd2 is also very popular and it was used in Internet blitz-games by Garry Kasparov himself. White cannot rely on opening advantage, so he simply wishes to obtain an original opening position. For example: 6... ♘bd7 7.e4 e5 8.c3 b6 9.♙e1 ♙b7 10.a4 a5 11.b3 ♜e8 12.d5 ♙h6 ♞ Kasparov – Schmaltz, Internet 1998.

In case of 6.b3, Black should better play like against the variation with a double-fianchetto,

which we have already analyzed. After 6...c5 7.♙b2 (Following 7.c4, Black can provoke numerous simplifications in the centre and they lead at the end to a drawish endgame: 7...d5 8.cxd5 ♘xd5 9.♙b2 ♘c6 10.♙d2 ♘c7 11.♙d1 cxd4 12.♘xd4 ♘xd4 13.♙xd4 ♙xd4 14.♙xd4 ♙xd4 15.♙xd4 ♘b5 16.♙d5 ♘d6 17.♘c3 ♙e6 18.♙d2 ♙ac8 19.♘d5 ♙xd5 20.♙xd5 ♙c3= Stoczek – Gallagher, Plovdiv 2003.) 7...cxd4 8.♘xd4 d5, there arises the same position, we have dealt with.

White cannot achieve much with 6.♙e1 ♘bd7 (It is also interesting for Black to play 6...♘c6 7.e4 e5 8.c3 ♙g4 9.d5 ♘e7 10.c4 ♘d7 11.♘c3 f5 12.h3 ♙xf3 13.♙xf3 a5 14.♙f1 f4 15.b3 ♘c5=; 9.h3 ♙xf3 10.♙xf3 exd4 11.cxd4 ♘d7 12.♙e3 ♙f6 13.e5 – 13.d5 ♘b4 14.♘c3 ♘d3, with initiative for him – 13...dxe5 14.dxe5 ♘dxe5 Maki-Uuro – Popovic, Internet 2003; 12.d5 ♘d4 13.♙g2 c5 14.dxc6 bxc6 15.♘c3 ♙b8∞ Panno – Quinteros, Manila 1976) 7.e4 e5 8.dxe5 (8.♘c3 c6 9.a4 – transposing to 6.a4; 8.c3 ♙e8 9.♘bd2 b6 10.♙c2 ♙b7 11.d5 c6 12.dxc6 ♙xc6 13.c4 ♙c8 14.b3 b5 15.♙a3 d5 16.exd5 ♙xd5 17.♙ad1 ♙c7= Black has an excellent game, Mateuta – Zetocha, Romania 1998) 8...dxe5 9.♘bd2 b6 10.b3 ♙b7 11.♙b2 ♙e8 12.♙e2 a5, draw, Andersson – Bologan, Pamplona 2002.

After 6.h3, it would be reasonable for Black to exploit White's slow play and attack his centre

immediately with 6...c5. (In case of 6...♘bd7, White can transpose to the main line of the Fianchetto system with a black knight on d7: 7.c4 e5 8.♘c3; it is not so good for White to play 7.d5 ♘b6 8.♘c3 c6 9.dxc6 bxc6 10.♘d4 c5! 11.♘c6 ♙d7 12.♘a5 ♙b8 13.a4 ♙a6♣ Kunin – Bologan, Mainz 2004. If Black insists on playing ♘c6 against the main line, then the same move is quite applicable here too – 6...♘c6, since he should not be afraid of 7.d5 ♘a5 8.e4 c6 9.♘c3 ♙d7 10.♙e1 ♙c8 11.dxc6 ♘xc6=) 7.dxc5 (7.♘c3 cxd4 8.♘xd4 d5 9.♘b3 ♘c6 10.♘xd5 ♘xd5 11.♙xd5 ♙xd5 12.♙xd5 ♙xh3 13.♙g2 ♙g4♣; 10.♙e3 e6 11.♙d2 ♘e5 12.♙g5 ♘c4 13.♙c1 ♙b6♣ Baumgartner – Lehner, Ansfelden 2003; 7.c3 ♘c6 8.d5, Berezhuk – Pisk, Moravia 1996, 8...♘a5 9.♘a3 e6 10.dxe6 fxe6∞) 7...dxc5 8.♙xd8 ♙xd8 9.♘c3, Knapp – Polak, Prague 1955, 9...♘c6 10.♙e3 ♘d4 11.♙ad1 ♘e8 12.♙g5 f6 13.♙c1 e5 14.♘xd4 cxd4 15.♘e4 ♙e6 16.♘c5 ♙d5=

6...♘bd7

Black wishes to advance e5, after which he will continue with the development of his queenside with c6, ♙c7, b6, ♙b7.

His other possible plan is connected with the move 6...a5. In this case, Black should aim at the set-up with ♘c5, after the preliminary exchange exd4. 7.♘c3 ♘bd7 8.e4 e5 9.h3 ♙e8 10.♙e1 c6 11.♙e3 (11.dxe5 dxe5 12.♙e3 ♙c7 13.♘d2 b6 14.♘c4 ♙a6 15.♙f1 ♙f8 16.♙f3 ♘h5

17.♠ad1 ♖c5 18.b3 ♘g7 19.♙h6
 ♘ge6 20.♙xf8 ♜xf8 21.♠d2 ♖d4
 22.♞e3 ♠ad8⌚ Yuferov – L.Guliev,
 Moscow 1996) 11...exd4 (11...♞c7
 12.♞d2 exd4 13.♖xd4 ♖c5 14.♙h6
 ♙h8 15.♠ad1±) 12.♙xd4 ♞c7 13.
 ♖d2 b6 14.♖c4 ♠d8 (14...♞e6 15.f4
 ♙a6 16.♖e3 ♠ae8 17.♖g4 ♖xg4
 18.hxg4, Meyer – Issermann, Wi-
 esbaden 2007, 18...f6 19.♞d2 ♠e6
 20.♠ad1 ♖c5 Black's position is a
 bit cramped, but solid enough) 15.f4
 ♙a6 16.♖e3 ♠e8 17.g4, Stu-
 rua – Jojua, Tbilisi 2008 and
 now, he should play 17...h6 with
 an unclear position.

7.♖c3

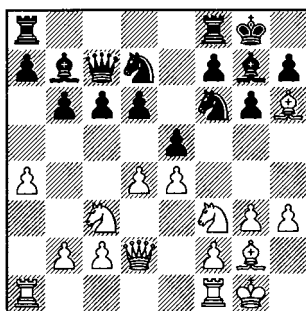
White can continue with his
 idea and advance his rook-pawn a
 square forward – 7.a5, but Black's
 correct reaction against this is
 simple: 7...c6 8.♖c3 ♞c7 9.e4 e5
 10.h3 ♠e8 11.♠e1 (White must
 take care of the e-file. Black is
 better after 11.♙e3 exd4 12.♖xd4
 ♖c5 13.f3 d5! 14.♙f4 ♞d8⌚) 11...
 ♠b8 12.♙e3 b5 13.axb6 axb6 14.d5
 ♙b7 15.♖d2 b5 16.dxc6 ♙xc6 17.b4
 ♖b6 18.♞e2 ♖a4= There has
 arisen, in an amazing fashion, a
 very favourable position for Black
 from the Najdorf variation of the
 Sicilian Defence with g3, Belikov
 – Chadaev, Miass 2007.

7...c6 8.e4 e5 9.h3

Black should not change his
 plan in case of 9.♠e1 ♞c7 10.h3 b6
 11.b3 (His pawn-spring uncoils
 very instructively after: 11.♙e3
 ♙b7 12.♞d2 a6 13.♙h6 b5 14.♞g5
 ♙xh6 15.♞xh6 exd4 16.♖xd4 b4

17.♖d1 c5 18.♖b3 ♠fe8⌚ Emodi
 – Nisipeanu, Odorheiu Secuiesc
 1993.) 11...exd4 12.♖xd4 ♙b7 13.a5
 ♠ad8 14.axb6 axb6 15.♙f4 ♖e5
 16.♞d2 ♠fe8 17.♙h6 ♙h8 18.♖de2
 b5 19.♖f4 b4 20.♖a4 c5= Mega-
 ranto – Al Sayed, Macau 2007.

9...♞c7 10.♙e3 b6 11.♞d2
 ♙b7 12.♙h6



Black preserves this bishop
 sometimes and even if he allows
 its exchange, what is essential
 for him is to advance quickly his
 queenside pawns increasing the
 pressure against his opponent's
 centre in the process.

12...♠fe8 13.♙xg7 ♖xg7 14.
 dxe5

14.♖h4 h6 15.♠ad1 ♠ad8 16.
 ♠fel a6 17.b3 b5 18.dxe5 dxe5
 19.♞e3 ♖f8= Landgraf – Neu-
 schmied, corr. 1996.

14...dxe5

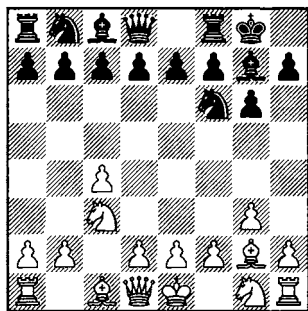
After this exchange, Black
 seizes gradually the initiative.

15.♠fd1 ♠ad8 16.♞e3 ♖c5
 17.a5 ♖e6 18.♙f1 c5 19.axb6
 axb6= Nogueiras – Shirov, Mos-
 cow 1994.

Chapter 34 1.c4 ♘f6 2.♘c3 g6 3.g3 ♙g7 4.♙g2 0-0 King's Indian English

In principle, the King's Indian Defence is a self-sufficient opening and Black should not necessarily study the main lines of the English opening. He can build up his King's Indian set-up in answer to White's king's fianchetto and wait for his opponent's decision, concerning his d-pawn.

After d4, there arises the King's Indian Defence, while in case of d3 – a variation from the English opening.



Black has already furnished his King's Indian household and he waits to see his opponent's intentions.

- A) 5.e4
- B) 5.♘f3

About 5.d4 d6 6.♘f3 (6.e4 c5 7.♘ge2 ♘c6 – see variation **A2**: 5.e4 d6 6.♘ge2 c5 7.d4 ♘c6) 6... ♘c6 7.d5 (7.0-0 – see Chapters 28-31) 7...♘a5 8.♘d2 c5 9.0-0 a6 – see variation **B**, Chapter 30.

A) 5.e4 d6 6.♘ge2

A1) 6...e5

A2) 6...c5

A1) 6...e5

I think this traditional move is not the best decision for Black, because he closes prematurely the long diagonal for his bishop and White will calmly prepare f4.

7.0-0

7.h3 c6 8.0-0 – see 7.0-0

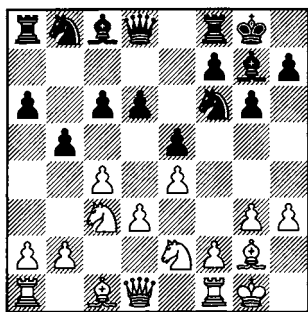
7...c6 8.d3

8.d4 ♘a6 9.h3 (9.d5 cxd5 10.cxd5 h5 11.♙g5 ♙d7 12.♖c1 b5 13.♗d2 b4 14.♘d1 ♙b5 15.f3 ♗e8 16.b3 ♘h7 17.♙e3 f5 ♘ Laylo – Sasi-
kiran, Vung Tau 1999) 9...exd4 10.♘xd4 ♗e8 11.♙f4 ♘c5 12.♖e1 ♘e6 13.♘xe6 ♙xe6 14.♙xd6 ♙xc4 15.♖c1 ♘d7 16.b3 ♙e6 17.f4 ♗a5 18.♗f3 ♗ad8 19.♘h2 ♘b6 20.e5, draw, Ghaem Maghami – De La Riva, Bled 2002.

8...a6 9.h3

In case White wishes to prevent his opponent's counter strike b7-b5, then Black's knight obtains an excellent outpost on b4: 9.a4 a5 10.h3 ♖a6 11.♙e3 ♜d7 12.f4 ♜dc5 13.f5 ♙f6 14.h4, O.Foisor – Bologan, Gibraltar 2008, 14...♜b4 15.d4 exd4 16.♜xd4 ♙e5 Black has occupied three key-squares – b4, c5 and e5, enjoying a slight edge already.

9...b5



10.♙e3

It is rather cowardly for White to opt for 10.cxb5 – of course, he should maintain the tension! 10...axb5 11.b4 ♖a6 12.♞b1 ♙e6 13.a4 bxa4 14.♜xa4 ♞b8 15.♙d2 ♞d7 16.♜h2 c5! Black has exploited the motive of overburdening of White's queen and he has won a pawn, L.Popov – Kavalek, Wijk aan Zee 1975.

10.f4 exf4 11.gxf4 ♜bd7 12.♙e3 ♙b7 13.a3 ♞e8 14.♙f2 ♞c7 15.♞c2 bxc4 16.dxc4, Stryjecki – Krasenkow, Warsaw 2002 and here Krasenkow had better play

16...c5 17.♞ad1 ♞ab8 18.♙d2 ♙c6 19.♙fd1 ♙f8, with an approximately equal position.

10...♜bd7 11.♞d2

11.b4 ♞e8 12.a4 bxc4 13.dxc4 ♜b6 14.♙xb6 ♞xb6 15.♞xd6 ♞e6 16.a5 (16.♞c5 ♞xc5 17.bxc5 ♜d7 18.♜d5!? ♞a7 19.♜b6 ♞e8=) 16...♞xf2 17.♜xf2 ♞xd6 18.c5 ♞d8= Chernin – R.Rodriguez, Bangalore 1981.

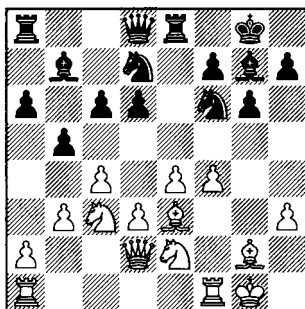
11.b3 ♙b7 12.♞d2 ♞e7 13.♞ac1 ♞fe8 14.♙fd1 ♜c5 15.b4 ♜e6 16.a4 a5 17.♞b2 bxc4 18.dxc4 axb4 19.♞xb4 c5 20.♞b1 ♜d4 21.♞d3 ♙c6 22.♞a1, Eingorn – van der Weide, Bad Wiessee 2004, 22...♞a6 23.♙d2 ♞a7=

11...♙b7 12.f4

12.b3 ♜b6 13.♞ac1 ♞e8 14.♜h2 ♞b8 15.f4 exf4 16.gxf4 bxc4 17.bxc4 c5 18.♞b1, draw, Adorjan – Ghinda, Warsaw 1979.

12...exf4 13.gxf4 ♞e8 14.b3

14.♜g3 ♜b6 15.a4 b4 16.♜ce2 a5 17.b3 c5 18.♞ad1 ♞e7 19.♙f2 ♞ab8 20.♜h2 ♜bd7∞ Lein – Vasiukov, Tbilisi 1966.

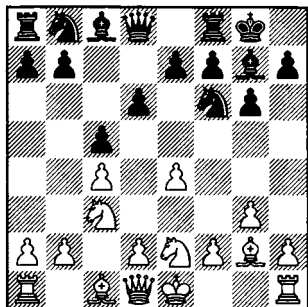


14...b4 15.♜a4 c5 16.♞ael

1.c4 ♘f6 2.♗c3 g6 3.g3 ♙g7 4.♙g2 0-0 5.e4 d6 6.♗ge2

♚c7 17.♙f2, Franco Ocampos – Colovic, Saint Vincent 2000, 17...
 ♙c6 18.f5 ♗e5 19.♙f1 ♗h5 20.
 ♗b2 a5 with a double-edged game.

A2) 6...c5



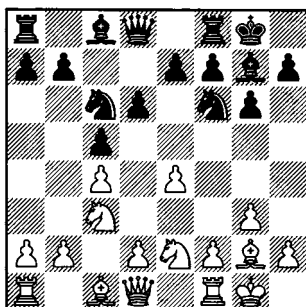
7.0-0

7.d3 ♗c6 8.0-0 – see 7.0-0.

7.d4 ♗c6 8.0-0 (8.d5 ♗a5 9.b3 a6 10.♙d2 ♙d7 11.f4 ♗e8 12.♙c1 b5 13.cxb5 axb5 14.0-0 b4 15.♗b1 ♙b6 – Guimard – Panno, Buenos Aires 1955) 8...cxd4 9.♗xd4 ♗xd4 10.♙xd4 ♙e6 11.♙d3 ♙a5 12.♙b1 ♙fc8 13.b3 ♙ab8 14.♙d2 a6 15.♙fe1 ♙d8 16.♗d5 b5 17.cxb5 axb5 18.♙bc1, draw, Mukhitdinov – Geller, Moscow 1955.

7.a3 ♗c6 8.♙b1 ♙g4 9.h3 (9.b4 cxb4 10.axb4 a5 11.bxa5 ♗e5 12.0-0 ♗xc4 13.♙xb7 ♗xa5 14.♙b1 ♙b8 15.♙xb8 ♙xb8 16.h3 ♙e6 17.d3 ♙b3 18.♙e1 ♙c8 – draw, Seirawan – Nunn, Rotterdam 1989) 9...♙xe2 10.♗xe2 a5 11.0-0 ♗e8 12.d3 ♗c7 13.♙e3 ♗e6 14.f4 ♗ed4 15.♗xd4 ♗xd4 = Lund – Hebden, England 1997.

7...♗c6



In general, we have reached a standard position from the English opening, except that with colours reversed and White has an extra tempo, because of this.

8.d3

8.a3 ♙g4 (It is advantageous for Black to give up his bishop for the knight in this situation.) 9.h3 (Otherwise, White will have to play 9.f3 and this obviously would not improve the prospects of his bishop: 9...♙d7 10.♙b1 a5 11.d3 ♗e8 12.♙e3 ♗c7 13.♙d2 ♙b8 14.♗b5 a4 15.♗ec3 ♗xb5 16.cxb5 ♗d4 17.♗xa4 ♗xb5 – Gusev – Nikitin, Moscow 1964; it is evident that the exchange of the a-pawn for the c-pawn is in favour of Black.) 9...♙xe2 10.♗xe2 ♙b8 11.f4 ♗e8 12.♙a2 ♗c7 13.d3 b5 14.b3 ♗e6 – Black has managed to occupy the d4-square and to establish control over the b-file, Urday – Spasov, Yerevan 1996.

8.♙b1 ♗e8 9.a3 ♗c7 10.b4 b6 11.d3 ♙g4 12.f3 ♙d7 13.♙e3 ♗e6 14.♙d2 ♗ed4 15.b5 ♗a5 16.♗c1 ♙e8 – Simagin – Petrosian, Moscow 1956.

8.h3 ♖e8 9.d3 ♜c7 10.♖b1 ♕d7 11.a3 a5 12.♙h2 ♖e6 13.f4 ♖ed4 14.♜xd4 cxd4 15.♖e2 a4 16.♕d2 ♜a5 17.♕e1 b5↑ Redeker – Nijboer, Zwolle 2001.

8...a6

Black begins the preparation of b5.

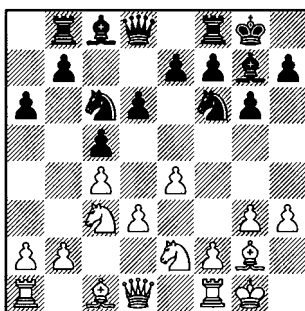
9.h3

White plans kingside actions.

It is an alternative for him to oppose Black's plans on the queenside with: 9.♖b1 ♖b8 10.a3 (10.a4 ♖e8 11.♕e3 ♜c7 12.f4 ♖e6 13.♕f2 ♖ed4 14.♜xd4 ♜xd4 15.b4 cxb4 16.♖xb4 ♖a5 17.♜d5 e6 18.♜e7 ♙h8 19.♖b1 ♕d7 20.♖xb7 ♖e2 21.♙h1 ♜c3 22.♖xb8 ♜xb1 23.♖fb1 h5↑ Maus – Lingnau, Germany 1993; 12.d4 b6 13.♖d2 e5 14.dxe5 ♖xe5 15.b3 b5 16.axb5 axb5 17.cxb5 ♜xb5 18.♜xb5 ♖xb5 19.♜c3, draw, Ribli – G.Kuzmin, Riga 1979; 13.b3 ♕d7 14.h3 e5 15.dxe5 ♖dxe5 16.♜d5 ♖e6 17.b4 cxb4 18.♜xb4 ♜cd4 19.♜xa6 ♖a8 20.♜b4 ♕xa4↑ Lie – Shirov, Drammen 2004) 10...b5 (The line: 10...♕g4 11.b4 is in favour of White.) 11.cxb5 axb5 12.b4 cxb4 13.axb4 e5. There has arisen an almost symmetrical position and White has the advantage that he can advance f4 in one move. 14.h3 ♕e6 (There begins a forced play, since Black is already threatening to push d5.) 15.f4 exf4 (but not 15...♖e7 16.♕e3) 16.gxf4 ♖b6 17.♙h1, Gonzales – Hatanbaatar, Manila 2001 and here Black can play 17...♖fe8, as if provok-

ing 18.f5, but he can counter this with 18...gxf5! 19.♜f4 (He is not afraid of 19.exf5 ♕d7 20.♖e4 ♖e5 21.♜xf6 ♕xf6 22.♜c3, because he succeeds in taking control over the squares d5 and e4: 22...♕c6 23.♖e4 ♕xe4 24.♕xe4 ♖bd8, with an equal position.) 19...♖e7 (Black has parried the first attacking wave of his opponent and his defensive task becomes much easier.) 20.♖xe6 fxe6 21.♖b3 d5 22.exd5 ♖h5!↑ White has already serious problems.

9...♖b8



10.f4

10.♕e3 ♕d7 11.♖d2 b5 12.f4 ♖e8 13.g4 ♜c7 14.♖f2 ♖e6 15.f5 ♖ed4 16.fgxg6 fxxg6 17.♖xf8 ♖xf8 18.♖f1 ♖d8↑ Reshko – Spassky, Kislovodsk 1960.

If White prevents b5 with 10.a4, then Black has an additional resource 10...♖e8 11.♕e3 ♜c7. Now, contrary to the classical English opening, White manages to push 12.d4 cxd4 13.♜xd4 ♖e6 14.♜de2 ♜c5 15.♖b1 ♜b4 16.♜d4 ♕d7 17.b3 e6=, but Black has al-

1.c4 ♖f6 2.♗c3 g6 3.g3 ♙g7 4.♙g2 0-0 5.♗f3 d6 6.0-0

ready occupied the wonderful b4 and c5-squares, while White does not have access to the d5-square, Kubicek – Jansa, Trinec 1972.

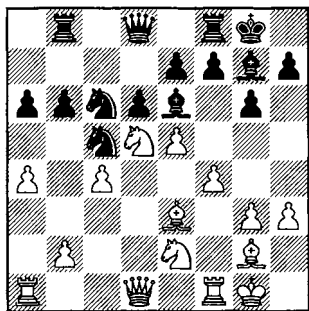
10...♙d7 11.a4

It is instructive to see how both sides realize their plans: 11.♙e3 b5 12.♙d2 ♗e8 13.♙ab1 ♗d4 14.g4 ♗c7, A.Lein – Hoekstra, Saint Paul 2000, 15.f5 e6 16.♙g5 f6 17.♙h4 bxc4 18.dxc4 e5 19.b3 a5= Black has neutralized his opponent's pawn-offensive at the price of closing his bishop, but he has an equal position, because of his control over the centre.

11...♗e8 12.♙e3 ♗c7 13.d4

Otherwise, Black will play ♗e6 and occupy the d4-outpost.

13...cxd4 14.♗xd4 ♗e6 15.♗de2 ♗c5 16.e5 ♙e6 17.♗d5 b6



18.exd6

It would be probably better for White to play here 18.♗d4, but Black solves easily his problems even then: 18...♗xd4 19.♙xd4 a5 (ensuring the c5-square for the knight) 20.♙e1 dxe5 21.fxe5 ♙xd5

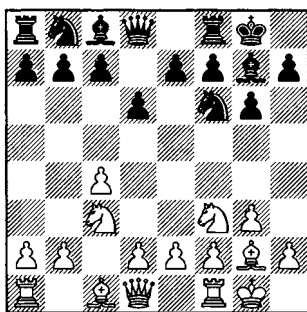
22.cxd5 f6=, forcing White to give up his beautiful bishop on d4.

18...exd6 19.♗ec3 ♗a5 20.♙e2 ♙e8 Zahilas – V.Kotronias, Ano Liosia 1997.

B) 5.♗f3 d6 6.0-0

Now, Black must make up his mind about what variation of the King's Indian Defence he is going to play.

6.d4 ♗c6 7.d5 (7.0-0 – see Chapters 28-31) 7...♗a5 8.♗d2 c5 9.0-0 a6 – see variation B, Chapter 30.



If we take into account that in the main line we recommend the scheme with ♗c6, then here we will analyze only two moves – 6... ♗c6 and 6...a6, in order to enter the main lines of the King's Indian Defence if White plays d4.

B1) 6...a6

B2) 6...♗c6

B1) 6...a6!?

This is a very clever order of moves for Black, because he thus

keeps the option to place a pawn on the c6-square.

7.d3

After 7.d4 ♖c6, the game transposes to the main line (Chapters 28-31).

7.♞b1 e5 8.d3 – see 7.d3.

7...e5 8.♞b1

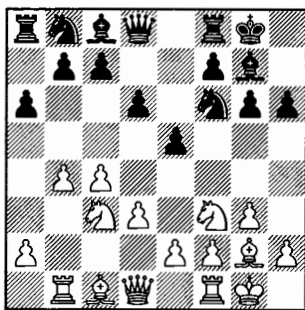
Now, contrary to the variation with 6...♖c6, White's exchange of his dark-squared bishop for Black's knight on f6 is not so effective, since the other black knight is not on c6 yet: 8.♙g5 h6 9.♙xf6 ♜xf6 10.♞b1 ♜d8 11.♖d2 c6 12.a4 (12.b4 e4 13.♞c2 exd3 14.exd3 ♙e6 15.♞fe1 ♖d7 16.♖ce4 ♞c7 17.c5 d5 18.♖d6 ♖f6) 12...a5 Schmenkel – Kachiani-Gersinska, Hessen 1999.

8...h6!?

It is also possible for Black to play 8...♖bd7, because he should not be afraid of ♙g5. In this case, he can capture on f6 with the knight and this is advantageous for him: 9.b4 ♖h5 10.c5! (This move is particularly strong for White when Black cannot respond with d5.) 10...h6 11.cxd6 cxd6 12.♖d2 ♞b8 13.b5 b6 14.bxa6 ♙xa6 15.♙a3 ♖c5 16.♙xc5 dxc5 17.♞a4± Lobron – Lanka, Germany 1995.

9.b4

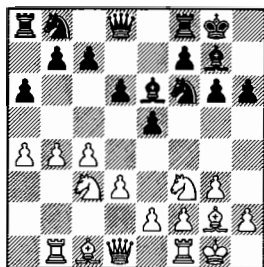
9.♙d2 ♙e6 10.b4 ♖bd7 11.♞c1 ♖h7 12.♖e1 ♞b8 13.a4 c6 14.♞a3 d5 15.c5 ♞e8 16.♖c2 a5 17.b5 ♙f8! 18.bxc6 bxc6 19.♞xb8 ♞xb8 20.♞b1 ♞a7 Kolb – Kachiani-Gersinska, Bad Wiessee 1999.



9...♖h5!?

Black wishes to advance quickly f5.

White can counter 9...♙e6 with a rather unpleasant plan for Black, attacking the b6 and c5-squares: 10.a4 (It would be less precise for him to play 10.♖d2 c6 11.a4, because Black would reply with 11...d5 12.b5 axb5 13.axb5 ♖bd7 14.bxc6 bxc6 15.cxd5 cxd5 16.e4 ♖c5 17.♖xd5 ♖xd5 18.exd5 ♙xd5± Simonovic – Bologan, Yugoslavia 1997.)



10...♖bd7 (10...e4 11.dxe4 ♙xc4 12.♖d2 ♙e6 13.b5±; 10...c6 11.a5 ♖bd7 12.♖d2 d5 13.♖a4 ♞e8 14.♞c2 ♞c8 15.♖b3± Hirzel – Rasik, Winterthur 1996, White takes the b6 and c5-squares un-

1.c4 ♘f6 2.♗c3 g6 3.g3 ♘g7 4.♙g2 0-0 5.♗f3 d6 6.0-0

der control.) 11.♗d2 c6 12.♙a3 ♖c7 (12...d5 13.b5 ♙e8 14.bxc6±) 13.a5!? (This is more precise for White than the move 13.♖b3, played in our game. I managed to block the position after it with 13...b5 14.♙fc1 ♙ac8 15.♖d1 ♖b8 16.♗b3 ♙fd8 17.axb5 axb5 18.cxb5 cxb5 19.e4 h5 20.♗a5 ♙h6 21.♙c2, Suba – Bologan, Calarasi 1995, 21...♙c7 22.♗d5 ♗xd5 23.exd5 ♙g4 24.f3 ♙xc2 25.♖xc2 ♙f5 26.♗c6 ♖b6 27.♗f1 ♙e8♞ White's knight on c6 is much rather a victim than an aggressor. 22.♙c1 ♙xc1 23.♙bxc1 ♙dc8 24.♖d2 ♗g7=) 13...♙fd8, E.Pedersen – Roos, Groningen 1977, 14.♖b3 ♗f8 15.♙bc1 ♙f5 16.e4 ♙d7 17.♙b2 ♗e6 18.♗d5!±

10.e3!?

This is the correct reaction to Black's plan.

10.♙b2 ♗c6 11.a3 ♙e6 12.♗d2 ♙b8 13.♗d5 f5 14.e3 ♗e7 15.♖e2 ♗c8 16.♙bc1 c6 17.♗c3 ♗e7 18.d4 e4 19.♗b3 ♗f6 20.♙fd1 d5= Azariants – Lanka, Cannes 1995.

In case of 10.♗d2, Black can follow with the typical pawn-break 10...e4!? (10...f5 11.c5) 11.♗d5 (11.♗cxe4? f5) 11...exd3 12.exd3 ♗c6 13.♙e1 ♙e6 14.♙b2 ♙xb2 15.♙xb2 ♙e8, with an equal position.

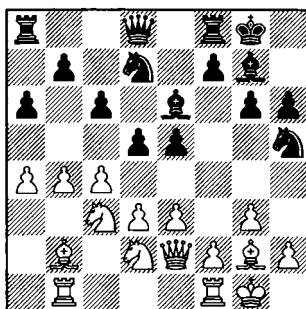
10...♙e6 11.♙b2

11.a4 ♗d7 12.♗d2 ♙b8, with a double-edged game.

11...♗d7 12.♖e2 c6 13.a4 d5 14.♗d2

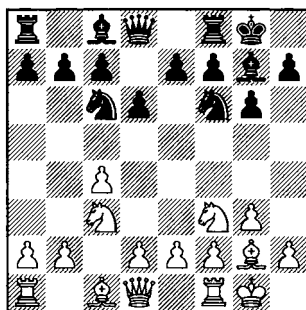
(diagram)

14...♗hf6! 15.b5 (15.e4 dxc4 16.dxc4 a5! 17.b5 ♙e8, with the



idea ♙f8♞) 15...axb5 16.axb5 ♙e8= Black has occupied the centre and his pieces are very well coordinated, Benjamin – Bologan, Moscow 1994.

B2) 6...♗c6



7.d3

After 7.d4 a6, the game transposes to the main line (Chapters 28-31).

7...e5 8.♙b1

8.♗d5 ♗xd5 9.cxd5 ♗e7 10.♖b3 c6 11.dxc6 ♗xc6 12.♙e3 ♖e7 13.♙ac1 ♙e6 14.♖a3 h6= Godes – V.Kozlov, Riazan 1975.

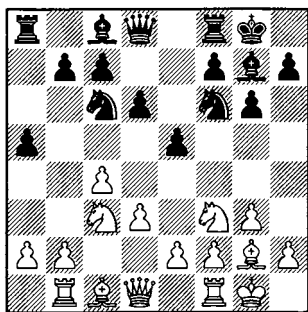
8.e4 a6 9.h3 ♙b8 10.♙e3 b5 11.♖d2 ♗d7 12.♙ac1 bxc4 13.dxc4

♠c5 14.b3 ♙b7 15.♙h2 ♠e6 16.♠g5
♠cd4 17.♠xe6 ♠xe6 18.♙h6 c5 19.
♙xg7 ♙xg7 20.f4 ♠d4 ♠ Sadler –
Bacrot, Enghien 1999.

8.♙d2 ♠d4 9.♠xd4 exd4 10.
♠d5 c6 11.♠f4 a5 12.♙c2 ♙e8 13.
♙ae1 ♙f5 14.♙h1 ♙d7 15.e4 dxe3
16.fxe3 g5 17.♠e2 d5 18.cxd5 cxd5
19.♠d4 ♙g6 ♠ Smetankin – Not-
kin, Minsk 1997.

8.♙g5 h6 9.♙xf6 ♙xf6 10.♙b1
a5 11.a3 ♙g7 12.b4 axb4 13.axb4
♙e6 14.b5 ♠e7 15.♙c2 ♙d7 16.♠d2
♙h3 17.♙xb7 ♙xf1 18.♙xa8 ♙xe2
19.♙g2 ♙g4 ♠ Porrasmaa – Api-
cella, Fuegen 2006.

8...a5



B2a) 9.♙g5

B2b) 9.a3

9.h3 ♠d4 (After 9...h6 10.e4
♠d7 11.♙e3 ♠c5 12.d4 exd4 13.
♠xd4± White controls the centre.)
10.♠d2 c6 11.e3 ♠e6 12.♠f3
♙e8 13.e4 ♙d7 14.♙e3 b5 15.cxb5
cxb5 16.d4 exd4 17.♠xd4 ♠xd4
18.♙xd4 b4 (Black managed to
counter his opponent's offensive
in the centre with a counter at-

tack on the queenside.) 19.♠d5
♠xd5 20.♙xg7 ♙xg7 21.♙xd5 ♙e6
22.♙d4 ♙f6= M.Gurevich – Shi-
rov, New Delhi 2000, with com-
plete equality.

In case of 9.e3, it deserves
attention for Black to play 9...
♙f5!?, provoking e4 (9...h6 10.h3
♙e6 11.e4! This is an important
resource for White. He has not
started the game with this move,
but he can still play it later. 11...
♠d7 12.♙e3 f5, M.Gurevich – Bac-
rot, Cannes 2001, 13.exf5! gxf5
14.♙e1 ♙e8 15.♠b5 ♙c8 16.♙e2
♙h5 17.d4!±). 10.e4 ♙g4 11.h3
♙xf3 12.♙xf3 ♠d7 13.♙g2 ♠d4 14.
♙e3 c6 15.f4 exf4 16.gxf4 f5 17.
♠e2 ♠xe2 18.♙xe2 ♙e7=

If White decides to develop his
bishop on b2 – 9.b3, Black should
not be afraid of b4 any more and
he can play in the centre: 9...h6
10.♙b2 ♙e6 (10...♠h7 11.♠d5 g5
12.♠e1 f5 13.f4 ♠d4 14.e3 ♠e6,
Rotstein – Inarkiev, Izmir 2004,
15.fxe5 dxe5 16.♙a3 ♙e8 17.♙xf5
♠f4 18.♙xe5 ♙xe5 19.exf4 ♙d4
20.♙h1 c6 21.♠c2 ♙g7 22.♠de3±)
11.d4 ♙f5 12.♙c1 exd4 13.♠xd4 (13.
♠a4 ♙e4 14.♠xd4 ♙xg2 15.♙xg2
♠d7=, exchanging almost all light
pieces) 13...♠xd4 14.♙xd4 ♠e4
15.♙d1 ♙e8 16.♙a1 ♠xc3 17.♙xc3
♙xc3 18.♙xc3 ♙f6 19.♙d2 ♙e4 20.
♙fc1 ♙g5 21.♙xg5, draw, Speel-
man – Watson, Brighton 1984.

B2a) 9.♙g5

White's plan is connected with
the exchange of the bishop for the

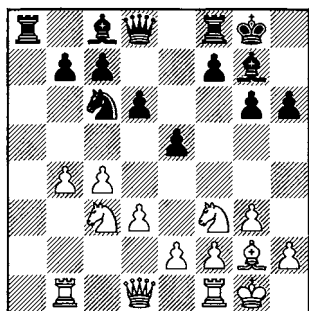
1.c4 ♘f6 2.♗c3 g6 3.g3 ♙g7 4.♙g2 0-0 5.♗f3 d6 6.0-0

knight and he will follow this with advancing his queenside pawns.

9...h6 10.♙xf6 ♙xf6 11.a3 ♙g7

It is not so good for Black to transfer his knight to e6: 11...♗d4 12.♗d2 c6 13.e3 ♗e6 14.b4 axb4 15.axb4 ♙g7 16.♖c2 f5 17.b5 ♙d7 18.♗a4 cxb5 19.cxb5 ♖a5, Dzindzichashvili – Sutovsky, Philadelphia 1993 and here the best line for White would be: 20.♗b2 ♖fc8 21.♗bc4 ♖c7 22.b6 ♖b8 23.♖a1± with a slight advantage for him.

12.b4 axb4 13.axb4



13...♙e6

13...♗e7!? 14.b5!? (14.♖b3 c6 15.b5 d5 16.bxc6 bxc6 17.cxd5 cxd5 18.♖fc1 ♙e6± Black has completed his development and he controls the centre having the bishop-pair. De Souza – Martin del Campo, Merida 1993) 14...c6 15.♗d2 e4!= This is a well-known tactical motive enabling Black to seize the initiative, Istratescu – Navratescu, Bucuresti 1999. White can capture the pawn with

neither of his knights, because of 16...f5 and Black wins a piece.

14.b5

14.♖c2 ♗e7 15.♗d2 (15.b5 – see 14.b5) 15...c6 16.e4 f5 17.exf5 gxf5 18.c5 d5 19.♗e2 f4± R.Hernandez – Dominguez, Santa Clara 2000.

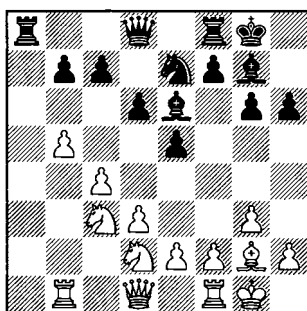
14.♗d2 e4!? 15.b5 (15.♗cxe4?! f5 16.d4 ♙xd4 17.♗b3 ♙g7±) 15...♗e7 16.♖c2 exd3 17.exd3 c6 18.♖fe1 ♖d7 19.bxc6 bxc6 20.♗e2 d5 Adianto – Paragua, Doha 2003.

14.♗e1 ♖b8 15.♗c2 ♗e7 16.b5 ♖d7 17.♗b4 c6 18.♖a4 ♖a8 19.bxc6 bxc6 20.♙xc6 ♖xa4 21.♙xd7 ♙xd7 22.♗xa4 ♙xa4 23.♖a1 ♙d7 24.♖a7 ♖d8 25.e4 ♙f8± Budnikov – Watson, Cologne 1993.

14...♗e7 15.♗d2

This move is played with the idea to impede the regrouping of Black's forces with ♖d7 and ♖fb8.

15.♖c2 ♖d7 16.♗d2, Erdelyi – J.Kristiansen, Ballerup 1985, 16...♖fb8 17.♖a1 c6=



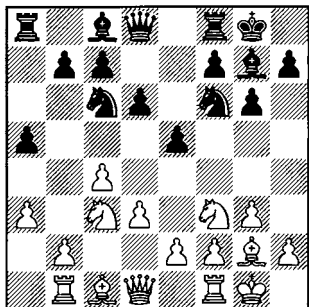
15...e4!

We know already this tactical trick. There may follow:

16.♖b3 exd3 17.exd3 ♖b8

18.♖a1 ♖d7 19.♞fe1 ♜f5 20.♖a7 ♜d4 21.♞a4 b6 22.♜d5 ♙xd5 23.♙xd5 ♞fe8= Viljava – Sammalvu, Finland 1992.

B2b) 9.a3



9...♜d4!

It is important for Black to create tension in the centre, before White has occupied space on the queenside.

It is less convincing for Black to play the popular move 9...h6, because in reply to this White can continue with his queenside-of-fensive in numerous ways, while Black's kingside counterplay is too slow: 10.b4 axb4 11.axb4 ♙e6 12.b5 ♜e7 13.♞b3 (13.♙b2 ♖d7 14.♞e1 ♙h3 15.♙h1 ♜g4 16.d4 ♞f5 17.e4 ♞h5 18.dxe5 dxe5 19.♜d5 ♜xd5 20.exd5 ♞fe8 21.♜d2 ♙f8 22.♜e4± Haub – Sadewasser, Bad Zwesten 1999; 13.♜d2 ♞c8 14.♞e1 ♜h7 15.♞b3 ♙h3 16.♙h1 ♜d7 17.♙a3 f5 18.b6 c5 19.♜b5 ♞f6 20.♜c7 ♞b8, S.Novikov – S.Zhigalko, Budva 2009, 21.♖a1±) 13...c6 (13...♖d7 14.♙a3 ♜h7

15.♜d2 ♞ab8 16.♜d5 h5 17.b6 c5, Iordachescu – Vasiesiu, Romania 1998, 18.♜xe7 ♞xe7 19.♜e4 h4 20.♜c3±) 14.♙a3 ♖d7 15.♖a1 ♞fe8 16.♞fb1 ♜h7 17.♜d2 f5 18.♜a4 ♜c8 19.bxc6 bxc6 20.♙b2 ♞c7 21.♙c3 ♖a7 22.♞b8 ♜f6 23.♞xc7 ♞xc7 24.c5± Malakhov – Inarkiev, Budva 2009.

10.b4

Black should not be afraid of the line: 10.e3 ♜xf3 11.♞xf3 c6 12.h3 ♙e6 13.b4 axb4 14.axb4 ♖d7 15.♜h2 ♜g4! 16.♜g1 (16.hxg4? ♙xg4 17.♞e4 f5) 16...f5 17.hxg4 e4 18.♖d1 ♙xc3 19.gxf5 gxf5 20.♞c2 ♙e5 21.dxe4 ♞f7 22.exf5 ♙xc4 23.♞d1 ♙a2± He has failed to trap his opponent's queen, but he wins the exchange, Lindner – Jansa, Neurnberg 1987.

10.♙e3 ♜xf3 11.♙xf3 c6 12.b4 axb4 13.axb4 ♙h3 14.♞e1 ♜g4 15.♙d2 f5 16.e4 ♖d7 17.♞b2 ♖a3∞ Mastrovasilis – Miladinovic, Chalkidiki 2002.

White's capturing 10.♜xd4 is in favour of Black: 10...exd4 11.♜b5 (11.♜e4 ♜xe4 12.♙xe4 c6 13.e3 dxe3 14.♙xe3 ♙e6 15.♞c2 ♞e8 16.♞fd1 a4= Wagner-Michel – Bade, Germany 1990; 11.♜d5 ♜d7 12.b4 ♞e8 13.♞c2 h6 14.e4 g5 15.bxa5 ♞xa5 16.♖d2 ♞c5 17.f4 c6 18.♜b4 gxf4 19.♞xf4 ♞e7± Norwood – Akopian, Baguio 1987) 11...♜g4 (It is also possible for Black to opt for 11...♜e8 12.e3 dxe3 13.♙xe3 c6 14.♜d4 ♜f6 15.h3 a4 16.♜e2 ♞e8 17.♜c3 d5!, equalizing thanks to his ac-

1.c4 ♘f6 2.♗c3 g6 3.g3 ♙g7 4.♙g2 0-0 5.♗f3 d6 6.0-0

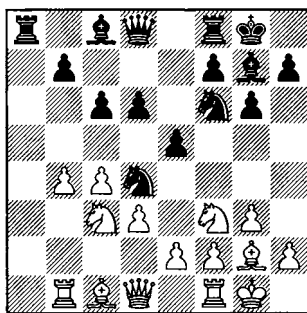
tive actions in the centre: 18.cxd5 ♗xd5 19.♗xd5 cxd5= A.Minasian – Jobava, Batumi 2003.) 12.a4 (12.h3 c6 13.hxg4 ♙xg4 14.a4 cxb5 15.axb5 ♖e8 16.♙f3 ♙xf3 17.exf3 d5⇒ Huebner – Smyslov, Solingen 1976) 12...c6 13.♗a3 h5 14.♗c2 h4 15.h3 ♗h6⇒, draw, Halkias – Sutovsky, Subotica 2008.

After 10.♙g5 ♗e6, Black saves a tempo for the move h6. (In case of 10...h6 11.♙xf6 ♙xf6, White transposes advantageously to the game Dzindzichashvili – Sutovsky, Philadelphia 1993, which we have already analyzed.) 11.♙xf6 (11.♙d2 ♖e8 12.b4 axb4 13.axb4 c6 14.♗g5 h6 15.♗xe6 ♙xe6 16.b5 d5 17.bxc6 bxc6 18.♗a4 ♙g4 19.♖e1 e4↑ C.Foisor – Pavlovic, Crans Montana 1999) 11...♙xf6 12.b4 axb4 13.axb4 ♙g7 14.b5 (14.♖b3 h6 15.b5 ♗h7 16.e3 f5 17.♖bd1 f4 18.♖c2 ♗c5 19.exf4 exf4 20.♗d5 fxg3 21.fxg3 ♙g4⇒ Bareev – Milov, Bastia 2007) 14...♙d7 15.♖a1 c6 16.♖xa8 ♖xa8 17.♖b3 ♖a5 18.♖b1 ♗c5 19.♖c2 f5 20.bxc6 bxc6 21.♖d2 ♖a8 22.d4 e4 23.♗g5 ♗e6 24.♗xe6 ♙xe6⇒ Adianto – Pavlovic, Biel 1998.

It is sensible to analyze White's possibility to avoid the trade of the knights: 10.♗d2 c6 11.e3 (11.b4 axb4 12.axb4 – see 10.b4, 12.♗d2) 11...♗e6 12.♗f3 (12.♗de4 ♗xe4 13.dxe4 ♖e7 14.♗a4 ♖c7 15.♖c2 ♗c5 16.♗xc5 dxc5 17.a4 ♙g4 18.h3 ♙e6= Karlsson – C.Hansen, Esbjerg 1984; 12.b4 axb4 13.axb4 d5 14.♗b3 h5 15.b5 ♖e8 16.bxc6 bxc6

17.♙b2 ♖b8 18.cxd5 cxd5 19.♗e2 ♖d6⇒ Gorbатов – Hebden, Cappel la Grande 1995) 12...♗c5 Black exploits a tactical motive in order to occupy the wonderful c5-square. (It is weaker for him to play 12...♖c7 13.b4 axb4 14.axb4 d5 15.cxd5 cxd5 16.♙b2 ♖d8 17.♗xe5! d4 18.exd4 ♗xd4 19.♖e1± Snape – Hebden, Hastings 2009.) 13.b4 (13.e4 ♙g4 14.h3 ♙xf3 15.♙xf3 ♗e6 16.♙g2 ♗d7=) 13...axb4 14.axb4 ♗xd3! 15.♖xd3 e4 (making use of White's misplaced rook on b1) 16.♗xe4 ♗xe4 17.♙b2 (17.♗d4 ♗f6 18.♙b2 ♖e7 19.♖a1 ♗d7⇒ Hickl – Klundt, Bad Wiessee 1997) 17...♙xb2 18.♖xb2 ♖f6 19.♖d4 ♙e6 20.♖c1 ♖a4= Leko – Sutovsky, Dortmund 2005.

10 ...axb4 11.axb4 c6



12.b5

The exchange of the bishop for the knight is not so dangerous for Black in this position: 12.♙g5 h6 13.♙xf6 ♙xf6 14.b5 ♙g7=, he has managed to build a shelter on the light squares, Johansen – Skembris, Moscow 1994.

After 12.♖d2, Black succeeds in pushing 12...d5 13.b5!? (13.♙b2 ♙e6 14.♚e1 – 14.e3 ♖f5 15.b5 d4 – 14...b5 15.cxb5 cxb5 16.e3 ♖c6 17.♖xb5 ♚b6 18.♖c3 ♖xb4 19.♖f3 ♖d7 20.♖g5 ♚fb8= Hickl – Nijboer, Venlo 2000) 13...♙e6 14.♙b2 ♚e7! (14...♙e8 15.♚e1!? ♚c8 16.♙a1 h5 17.bxc6 bxc6 18.♖a4, draw, Andersson – Gligoric, Vrbas 1977; 14...♚d6 15.e3 ♖f5 16.bxc6 bxc6 17.cxd5 cxd5 18.♖b5 ♚c5 19.♙xe5 ♖xe3 20.d4+- Gavrjushin – Zhidkov, Moscow 1995) 15.e3 ♖f5 16.♚e2 ♖d6= Black has not only advanced d5, but also he controls reliably all the central squares.

12...♙g4

I like the plan including ♖d4, because Black does not hide in the corner and he develops his pieces to active positions.

13.♙g5

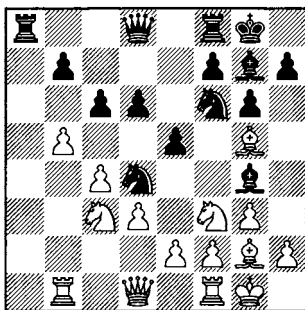
13.e3 ♖xf3 14.♙xf3 ♙xf3 15.♚xf3 d5 16.bxc6 bxc6 17.cxd5 ♖xd5 18.♖e2 f5 19.e4 fxe4 20.♚xe4 ♚f7 – Moradiabadi – Salem, Abudhabi 2005.

13.♖xd4 exd4 14.♖e4 ♖xe4 15.♙xe4 ♙e8 16.♚b2 d5 17.cxd5 cxd5 18.♙g2 ♙a1 19.h3 ♙e6 20.♚b3


♚d7 21.♖h2 ♙ea8 22.♙f4 ♙1a3† Augustin – Tal, Moscow 1977.

13.♙e3 ♖d7 14.h3 ♙xf3 15.exf3 ♖c5 16.bxc6 bxc6 17.♖e4 ♖ce6 18.♖c3 ♙a3† Skembris – Miladinovic, Kavala 1997.

13.bxc6 bxc6 14.♙e3 (14.♖xd4 exd4 15.♖e4 ♖xe4 16.♙xe4 ♚d7= Anikaev – Tal, Minsk 1979) 14... ♖xf3 15.exf3 ♙f5 16.♚b3 ♚b8= Relange – Nijboer, Pula 1997.



13...♙xf3 14.♙xf3 ♖xf3 15. exf3 h6 16.♙xf6 ♙xf6 17.bxc6 bxc6 18.♚b7 ♙a3 19.♚c2 ♙g7= Donaldson – Nijboer, Hertogenbosch 1999. White has no targets to attack in Black's camp, therefore the opponents agreed to a draw on the next move.



Grandmaster Victor Bologan has won more than 40 international tournaments. His trophy list includes New York Open 1997, Aeroflot Open 2003, Dortmund 2003, Mainz 2002 and 2007.

Bologan is Ph.D. in pedagogy. He wrote the books "Victor Bologan Selected Games 1985-2004", 2006, and "The Chebanenko Slav According to Bologan", 2008. Current ELO 2690.

www.bologan.md

ISBN 978-9-548782-71-5



9 789548 782715 >